MEDIEVAL LATIN SERIES · VOLUME 14

The History of the Kings of Britain

Geoffrey of Monmouth

Historia Regum Britanniæ

The History of the Kings of Britain

From Brutus to Cadwallader

---

with a word-for-word interlinear English translation

preserving the original word order

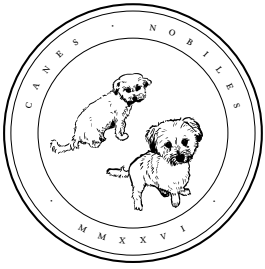


CANES NOBILES · MMXXVI

Copyright © 2026 Christopher Hench
All rights reserved

Published by Canes Nobiles
canesnobiles.com

The source text is in the public domain



Volume 14 of the Canes Nobiles Medieval Latin interlinear texts

The Medieval Latin text follows J. A. Giles's edition,
Galfredi Monumetensis Historia Britonum (London, 1844)

Translated and composed with AI, edited by Christopher Hench
Artwork by Esther Steves

CONTENTS

BOOK I

I · Dedication to Robert of Gloucester 13
II · The First Inhabitants of Britain 15
III · Brutus, Exiled, Goes to Greece 17
IV · Brutus' Letter to Pandrasus 21
V · Brutus Routs Pandrasus and Captures Antigonus 22
VI · Pandrasus Besieges Sparatinum 24
VII · The Townsmen Ask Brutus for Help 26
VIII · Anacletus Betrays the Greek Army 28
IX · Brutus Takes Pandrasus Alive 30
X · The Council over the Captive Pandrasus 32
XI · Brutus Marries Ignoge; Diana Foretells His Land 35
XII · Brutus and Corineus Come to Aquitaine 42
XIII · Brutus Routs Goffarius 46
XIV · Brutus Lays Waste Aquitaine 48
XV · Brutus Fights Goffarius 49
XVI · Brutus and Corineus Divide Albion 54
XVII · Brutus Founds New Troy 57
XVIII · Brutus Gives the City to Its Citizens 59

BOOK II

I · The Three Sons of Brutus Divide the Kingdom 60
II · Locrinus Defeats Humber and Loves Estrildis 61

BOOK II

(continued)

III · Corineus' Anger 63
IV · Locrinus Marries Guendolaena, Corineus' Daughter 64
V · Locrinus Killed, Estrildis and Sabre Drowned 65
VI · Maddan and Mempricius 66
VII · Ebraucus Conquers in Gaul and Founds Cities 68
VIII · The Twenty Sons and the Daughters of Ebraucus 69
IX · Brutus Greenshield, Leil, and Hudibras 71
X · Bladud Practices Magic 72
XI · Leir Divides the Kingdom Among His Daughters 73
XII · Leir, Deprived of Power, Goes to Gaul 78
XIII · Cordelia Receives Her Father Kindly 83
XIV · Leir Recovers His Kingdom 84
XV · The Deaths of Cordelia and Marganus 85
XVI · The Brothers Porrex and Ferrex at War 88
XVII · Dunwallo Molmutius and His Laws 90

BOOK III

I · The Quarrel of Brennius and Belinus 93
II · Brennius' Sea Fight with Guichthlacus 95
III · Belinus Routs Brennius, Who Goes to Gaul 97
IV · The King of Denmark Released 99
V · Belinus Confirms the Molmutine Laws 100
VI · Brennius Becomes Duke of the Allobroges 102
VII · Their Mother Reconciles the Brothers 104
VIII · Having Subdued Gaul, They March on Rome 107
IX · The Romans Break the Treaty, and Rome Is Taken 108
X · Brennius in Italy, Belinus at Home 113
XI · Gurgiunt Brabtruc Subdues the Danes 115
XII · Ireland Is Given to the Barclenses 116

BOOK III

(continued)

XIII · Guithelinus and the Martian Law 117
XIV · The Kings After Guithelinus 118
XV · A Beast Devours Morvidus 119
XVI · Gorbonianus, the Most Just of Kings 121
XVII · Arthgallo Deposed and Restored 122
XVIII · Elidurus Reigns Again 125
XIX · Thirty-Three Kings After Elidurus 127
XX · Lud, Nennius, and Cassibellaunus 129

BOOK IV

I · Julius Caesar Comes to Britain 131
II · Cassibellaunus' Letter to Caesar 133
III · Cassibellaunus Defeats Caesar 134
IV · Nennius Dies of Caesar's Blow 138
V · Caesar Returns to Gaul Without Glory 139
VI · Iron Stakes in the Thames 141
VII · Cassibellaunus Routs Caesar Again 142
VIII · Evelinus Kills Hirelglas 144
IX · Cassibellaunus, Besieged, Sues for Peace 149
X · Androgeus Persuades Caesar to Make Peace 154
XI · Tenuantius Becomes King 156
XII · The Emperor Claudius Comes to Britain 157
XIII · Hamo Kills Guiderius 158
XIV · Arviragus, Made King, Submits to Claudius 160
XV · Arviragus Marries Genuissa 162
XVI · Arviragus Renews the War 164
XVII · Marius Defeats Rodric, Leader of the Picts 167
XVIII · Coillus Takes the Kingdom 169

BOOK IV

(continued)

XIX · Lucius, the First Christian King 170
XX · The Two Bishops Return to Rome 172

BOOK V

I · Lucius Endows the Churches 173
II · Severus and Fulgenius 174
III · Carausius Seizes the Throne of Britain 177
IV · Carausius, Allectus, and Asclepiodotus 179
V · Diocletian's Persecution 182
VI · Coel, Helena, and Constantius 185
VII · The Romans Appeal to Constantine 187
VIII · Constantine Wins the Empire 189
IX · Maximianus Is Chosen for the Kingdom 192
X · Maximianus Comes to Britain 195
XI · Maximianus Wins the King's Daughter 199
XII · Maximianus Invades Armorica 202
XIII · The City of Rennes Is Taken 204
XIV · Maximianus Rules from Trier 206
XV · Conan Sends to Britain for Wives 207
XVI · The Eleven Thousand Virgins 209

BOOK VI

I · Gratian Killed; the Britons Appeal to Rome 212
II · Guethelinus Urges the Britons to Arms 214
III · Guanius and Melga Invade Again 217
IV · Guethelinus Asks Aldroenus for Help 220
V · Constantine, King of Britain 224
VI · Constans Takes the Kingdom 225
VII · Vortigern Plots to Depose Constans 227

BOOK VI

(continued)

VIII · Constans Is Murdered 232
IX · Vortigern Takes the Crown 233
X · Hengist and Horsa Come to Britain 234
XI · Hengist Wins Land 238
XII · Vortigern Marries Rowena 241
XIII · Germanus, Lupus, and Vortimer 244
XIV · Vortimer Dies of Sickness 248
XV · The Treachery of the Long Knives 250
XVI · Vortigern Ransomed 254
XVII · The Youth with No Father 256
XVIII · Merlin's Mother 258
XIX · Merlin Advises the King on the Tower 260

BOOK VII

I · The Author's Preface 263
II · To Alexander 264
III · The Prophecy of Merlin 266
IV · The Prophecy of Merlin Continued 276

BOOK VIII

I · Vortigern Asks Merlin About His Death 289
II · Aurelius Ambrosius Burns Vortigern 291
III · The Praises of Aurelius Ambrosius 294
IV · Hengist Marches Against Ambrosius 296
V · The Battle of Hengist and Ambrosius 298
VI · Eldol Takes Hengist Alive 301
VII · Eldol Beheads Hengist 303
VIII · Octa Surrenders at York 304
IX · Aurelius Restores the Kingdom 306

BOOK VIII

(continued)

X · The Giants' Dance 308
XI · Uther Pendragon Sails to Ireland 310
XII · The Giants' Dance Brought to Britain 312
XIII · Pascentius Brings Back the Saxons 315
XIV · The Death of Aurelius Ambrosius 317
XV · How the Comet Foretold Uther's Reign 321
XVI · Pascentius and Gillomanius Killed 322
XVII · Uther Pendragon Becomes King of Britain 324
XVIII · Octa and Eosa Are Captured in Battle 325
XIX · Uther and Igerna 329
XX · Gorlois Is Killed, and Uther Marries Igerna 335
XXI · Octa and Eosa Renew the War 337
XXII · Uther Carried to Battle in a Litter 339
XXIII · Octa and Eosa Killed 340
XXIV · Uther Dies from a Poisoned Spring 343

BOOK IX

I · Arthur Besieges Colgrin 345
II · Hoel Comes to Help Arthur 349
III · Arthur Subdues the Saxons 350
IV · The Battle of Bath 353
V · The Saxons Surrender to Cador 357
VI · Loch Lomond 358
VII · Arthur Tells Hoel of the Wonderful Lakes 361
VIII · Arthur Restores York 362
IX · Arthur Restores Auguselus, Urian, and Lot 363
X · Arthur Conquers Ireland and the Islands 365
XI · Arthur Conquers Norway and Gaul 366
XII · The Court at the City of the Legions 373

BOOK IX

(continued)

XIII · The Crowning of Arthur 377
XIV · Arthur Enriches All with Gifts 381
XV · Lucius Tiberius Sends a Letter to Arthur 382
XVI · Arthur Takes Counsel 386
XVII · Hoel Gives His Opinion on the Roman War 389
XVIII · Auguselus' Opinion 391
XIX · All Agree on War 392
XX · Arthur Prepares for War 394

BOOK X

I · Lucius Gathers the East 395
II · Arthur's Dream at Hamo's Port 396
III · Arthur Kills the Giant 398
IV · Petreius Cotta Captured 405
V · The Romans Ambush the Escort 412
VI · The Valley of Saussy 416
VII · Arthur Exhorts His Knights 419
VIII · Lucius Addresses His Soldiers 421
IX · The Battle with the Romans 425
X · Hoel and Gawain 429
XI · The Death of Lucius Tiberius 431
XII · Some Romans Flee and Others Surrender 435
XIII · The Dead Are Buried 436

BOOK XI

I · Mordred Driven to Winchester 438
II · The Battle of Cambula 441
III · The Saxons Rebel 446
IV · Constantine and Mordred's Sons 447
V · Conan Takes the Throne 448

BOOK XI

(continued)

VI · Vortiporius Succeeds Conan 449
VII · King Malgo's Vice 449
VIII · Careticus and Gormund 450
IX · The Author's Reproach to the Britons 452
X · The Britons Flee to Cornwall and Wales 454
XI · So the Britons Lose the Kingdom 455
XII · Augustine Comes to Britain 456
XIII · Ethelfrid Kills the Monks of Bangor 458

BOOK XII

I · Cadvan and Ethelfrid 461
II · Cadwallo and Edwin 463
III · The Anger Between Cadwallo and Edwin 466
IV · Edwin Drives Cadwallo from the Kingdom 467
V · The Speech of King Salomon of Armorica 471
VI · Cadwallo's Reply 473
VII · Brian Kills Edwin's Magus 476
VIII · Cadwallo Captures Penda 479
IX · Cadwallo Kills Osric and Aedan in Battle 481
X · Oswald Becomes King of Northumbria 482
XI · Oswy Submits to Cadwallo 484
XII · Margadud Counsels Cadwallo 486
XIII · Penda Is Killed by Oswy 487
XIV · Cadwallo's Son Cadwallader Succeeds 489
XV · Cadwallader's Lament 490
XVI · The Saxons Take All Britain 493
XVII · An Angel Forbids the Return 494
XVIII · Cadwallader Goes to Rome and Dies There 496
XIX · Ivor and Ini Harass the Saxons in Vain 497
XX · The Author Ends His History 499

BOOK I

Roberto comiti Claudiocestriæ epistola dedicatoria

I · DEDICATION TO ROBERT OF GLOUCESTER

Geoffrey marvels that Gildas and Bede say nothing of the kings of Britain before Christ, or of Arthur and his successors. Walter, archdeacon of Oxford, offers him a very old book in the British tongue telling their deeds in order, and Geoffrey translates it into Latin in a plain style. He commends the work to Robert, earl of Gloucester, son of King Henry, for correction.

Cum multa mecum et de multis sæpius animo revolvens,
when many-things with-myself and about many more-often in-mind turning-over
in historiam regum Britanniæ inciderem: in mirum contuli,
into the-history of-the-kings of-Britain I-happened into wonder I-brought
quod intra mentionem quam de eis Gildas et Beda luculento
that within the-mention which about them Gildas and Bede in-a-lucid
tractatu fecerant, nihil de regibus qui ante incarnationem
treatise had-made nothing about the-kings who before the-incarnation
Christi Britanniam inhabitaverant: nihil etiam de Arturo,
of-Christ Britain had-inhabited nothing even about Arthur
cæterisque compluribus qui post incarnationem successerunt,
and-the-others very-many who after the-incarnation succeeded
reperissem: cum et gesta eorum digna eternitatis laude
I-had-found although both the-deeds of-them worthy of-eternity of-praise
constarent, et a multis populis quasi inscripta jucunde et
stood and by many peoples as-if written pleasantly and
memoriter prædicentur. Talia mihi et de talibus multoties
from-memory are-proclaimed such-things to-me and about such many-times
cogitanti, obtulit Walterus Oxinefordensis archidiaconus,
thinking offered Walter of-Oxford archdeacon
vir in Oratoria arte atque in exoticis historiis eruditus,
a-man in oratorical art and in foreign histories learned

quendam Britannici sermonis librum vetustissimum, qui a
a-certain of-British of-speech book most-ancient which from
Bruto primo rege Britonum usque ad Cadwaladrum filium
Brutus first king of-the-Britons all-the-way to Cadwallader son
Cadwalonis, actus omnium continue et ex ordine perpulcris
of-Cadwallo the-acts of-all continuously and in order in-most-beautiful
orationibus proponebat. Rogatu illius itaque ductus, tametsi
speeches set-forth at-the-request of-him and-so led although
intra alienos hortulos falerata verba non collegerim, agresti
within others' gardens decked-out words not I-may-have-gathered with-rustic
tamen stylo propriisque calamis contentus, codicem illum
yet style and-with-my-own pens content the-book that
in Latinum sermonem transferre curavi. Nam si ampullosis
into the-Latin speech to-translate I-took-care for if with-bombastic
dictionibus paginam illevissem: tædium legentibus ingererem,
diction the-page I-had-smeared weariness on-the-readers I-would-heap-on
dum magis in exponendis verbis quam in historia intelligenda,
while more in explaining words than in the-history understanding
ipsos commorari oporteret. Opusculo igitur meo, Roberte
them to-linger it-behooved to-the-little-work therefore my O-Robert
dux Claudiocestriæ, faveas, ut sic te ductore, te
duke of-Gloucester may-you-show-favor that thus you as-guide you
monitore corrigatur, ut non ex Galfredi Monumetensis
as-adviser it-may-be-corrected so-that not from of-Geoffrey of-Monmouth
fonticulo censeatur exortum, sed sale Minervæ tuæ
the-little-spring it-may-be-thought sprung but with-the-salt of-Minerva your
conditum: illius censeatur editio, quem Henricus illustris
seasoned of-him it-may-be-thought the-edition whom Henry illustrious
rex Anglorum generavit; quem philosophia liberalibus artibus
king of-the-English begot whom philosophy in-the-liberal arts
erudivit: quem innata probitas in militia militibus præfecit:
trained whom inborn prowess in knighthood over-the-knights set

unde Britannia tibi nunc temporibus nostris, ac si alterum
whence Britain to-you now in-times our as if another
Henricum adepta, interno gratulatur affectu.
Henry having-obtained with-inward congratulates affection

De primis Britanniæ incolis

II · THE FIRST INHABITANTS OF BRITAIN

Britain, best of islands, lies in the western Ocean between Gaul and Ireland, rich in metals, fields, forests, meadows, springs, and fish-filled rivers, with the Thames, the Severn, and the Humber for its arms. Once it held twenty-eight cities. Five peoples now live in it, but the Britons held it from sea to sea until God's vengeance on their pride made them yield to the Picts and Saxons.

Britannia insularum optima, in occidentali Oceano inter
Britain of-islands the-best in the-western Ocean between
Galliam est et Hiberniam sita: octingenta millia in longum:
Gaul is and Ireland situated eight-hundred miles in length
ducenta vero in latum continens: quicquid mortalium
two-hundred indeed in breadth containing whatever of-mortals
usui congruit, indeficienti fertilitate ministrat. Omni enim
to-the-use is-fitting with-unfailing fertility it-supplies with-every for
genere metalli fœcunda, campos late pansos habet, collesque
kind of-metal fruitful plains widely spread-out it-has and-hills
præpollenti culturæ aptos, in quibus frugum diversitates
surpassing for-cultivation fit in which of-crops the-varieties
ubertate glebæ temporibus suis proveniunt. Habet et
by-the-richness of-the-soil in-seasons their-own come-forth it-has also
nemora universis ferarum generibus repleta: quorum in saltibus
forests with-all of-wild-beasts kinds filled of-which in the-glades
et in alternandis animalium pastibus gramina conveniunt,
and in alternating of-animals pastures grasses are-suitable

et advolantibus apibus flores diversorum colorum mella
and to-the-flying-to bees flowers of-various colors honeys
distribuunt. Habet prata sub aëriis montibus amœno situ
distribute it-has meadows under airy mountains in-a-pleasant situation
virentia, in quibus fontes lucidissimi per nitidos rivos leni
green in which springs most-clear through bright streams with-gentle
murmure manantes, suaves sopores in ripis accubantibus
murmur flowing sweet sleeps on the-banks to-those-lying
irritant. Porro lacubus atque piscosis fluviis irrigua est: et
invite further with-lakes and with-fish-filled rivers watered it-is and
præter meridianæ plagæ fretum quo ad Gallias navigatur,
besides of-the-southern region the-strait by-which to the-Gauls it-is-sailed
tria nobilia flumina, Tamesis videlicet et Sabrinæ, necnon
three noble rivers of-the-Thames namely and of-the-Severn nor-not
et Humbræ, velut tria brachia extendit: quibus transmarina
also of-the-Humber like three arms it-stretches-out by-which overseas
commercia ex universis nationibus ejusdem navigio feruntur.
commerce from all nations of-the-same by-ship are-carried
Bis denis etiam bisque quaternis civitatibus olim decorata
twice with-ten also and-twice with-four cities once adorned
erat: quarum quædam dirutis mœnibus in desertis locis
it-was of-which some ruined walls in deserted places
squalescunt: quædam vero adhuc integræ templa sanctorum
lie-squalid some indeed still whole temples of-saints
cum turribus perpulcra proceritate erecta continent, in
with towers of-most-beautiful height raised contain in
quibus religiosi cœtus virorum ac mulierum obsequium
which religious gatherings of-men and of-women service
Deo juxta Christianam traditionem præstant. Postremo
to-God according-to the-Christian tradition perform finally
quinque inhabitatur populis: Romanis videlicet atque Britannis,
by-five it-is-inhabited peoples by-Romans namely and by-Britons

Saxonibus, Pictis, et Scotis. Ex quibus Britones olim ante
by-Saxons by-Picts and by-Scots of whom the-Britons once before
ceteros a mari usque ad mare insederunt: donec ultione
the-others from sea all-the-way to sea settled until vengeance
divina ob ipsorum superbiam superveniente, Pictis et
divine on-account-of their-own pride coming-upon to-the-Picts and
Saxonibus cesserunt. Qualiter vero et unde applicuerint,
to-the-Saxons they-yielded how but and whence they-may-have-landed
restat nunc prælibare, ut in sequentibus latius explicabitur.
it-remains now to-touch-on as in what-follows more-widely it-will-be-explained

Brutus, post parentes occisos exul, Græciam petit

III · BRUTUS, EXILED, GOES TO GREECE

Aeneas comes to Italy, and his grandson Silvius' child is foretold by the Magi to kill both parents. The boy Brutus' mother dies at his birth, and at fifteen he kills his father with a stray arrow while hunting and is driven from Italy. In Greece he finds the descendants of Helenus held in slavery by King Pandrasus, wins renown, and agrees to lead them with the help of Assaracus, a young Greek noble born of a Trojan mother.

Æneas post Trojanum bellum, excidium urbis cum Ascanio
Aeneas after the-Trojan war the-destruction of-the-city with Ascanius
diffugiens, Italiam navigio adivit. Ibi cum a Latino rege
fleeing Italy by-ship reached there when by Latinus king
honorifice receptus esset, invidit Turnus rex Rutulorum, et
honorably received he-had-been envied Turnus king of-the-Rutulians and
cum illo congressus est. Dimicantibus illis, prævaluit Æneas,
with him engaged he-has fighting them prevailed Aeneas
peremptoque Turno, regnum Italiæ et Laviniam filiam
and-killed Turnus the-kingdom of-Italy and Lavinia daughter

Latini est adeptus. Denique suprema die ipsius superveniente,
of-Latinus has obtained finally with-the-last day his coming-upon
Ascanius regia potestate sublimatus, condidit Albam supra
Ascanius with-royal power raised founded Alba above
Tiberim, genuitque filium, cui nomen erat Silvius; hic
the-Tiber and-begot a-son to-whom name was Silvius this-one
furtivæ Veneri indulgens, quandam Laviniæ neptem uxorem
to-stealthy love indulging a-certain of-Lavinia niece as-wife
duxit, eamque fecit prægnantem. Cumque id patri Ascanio
led and-her made pregnant and-when this to-the-father Ascanius
compertum esset, præcepit Magis suis explorare quem sexum
discovered had-been he-ordered the-Magi his-own to-find-out which sex
puella concepisset. Certitudine ergo rei comperta,
the-girl had-conceived the-certainty therefore of-the-matter found-out
dixerunt Magi ipsam gravidam esse puero, qui patrem
said the-Magi her pregnant to-be with-a-boy who father
et matrem interficeret: pluribus quoque terris peragratis in
and mother would-kill many also lands traveled-through in
exilium, ad summum tandem culmen honoris perveniret. Nec
exile to the-highest at-last peak of-honor would-come nor
illos fefellit vaticinium suum. Nam ut dies partus accessit,
them deceived prophecy their-own for as the-day of-birth approached
edidit mulier puerum, et in nativitate ejus mortua est.
bore the-woman a-boy and in the-birth his died she-has
Traditur autem ille nutrici, vocaturque Brutus. Postremo
is-handed-over moreover he to-a-nurse and-is-called Brutus finally
cum ter quini anni elapsi essent, comitabatur juvenis
when three-times five years elapsed had accompanied the-youth
patrem in venando, ipsumque inopino ictu sagittæ
the-father in hunting and-him with-an-unexpected stroke of-arrow
interfecit. Nam cum famuli cervos in occursum eorum
killed for when the-servants the-stags into the-meeting of-them

ducerent, Brutus telum in ipsos dirigere affectans, genitorem
were-driving Brutus a-weapon at them to-direct aiming his-father
sub pectore percussit. Quo mortuo expulsus est ab Italia,
under the-chest struck whom dead driven-out he-was from Italy
indignantibus consanguineis ipsum tantum facinus fecisse.
indignant the-kinsmen him so-great a-crime to-have-done
Exulans ergo adivit Græciam: invenitque progeniem Heleni
exiled therefore he-reached Greece and-found the-offspring of-Helenus
filii Priami, quæ sub potestate Pandrasi Græcorum regis
son of-Priam which under the-power of-Pandrasus of-the-Greeks king
in servitutem tenebatur. Pyrrhus etenim Achillis filius post
in servitude was-held Pyrrhus for of-Achilles son after
Trojæ eversionem, prædictum Helenum compluresque alios
of-Troy the-overthrow the-aforesaid Helenus and-very-many others
secum in vinculis adduxerat. Et ut necem patris in
with-himself in chains had-brought and so-that the-death of-the-father on
ipsos vindicaret, in captione teneri præceperat. Agnitaque
them he-might-avenge in captivity to-be-held he-had-ordered and-recognized
veterum concivium prosapia, moratus est Brutus apud eos. In
of-the-old fellow-citizens the-lineage stayed has Brutus among them into
tantum autem militia et probitate vigere cœpit, ita ut a
so-great moreover in-knighthood and in-prowess to-flourish he-began so that by
regibus et ducibus præ omni juventute patriæ amaretur.
kings and dukes beyond all the-youth of-the-country he-was-loved
Erat enim inter sapientes sapiens: inter bellicosos bellicosus:
he-was for among the-wise wise among the-warlike warlike
et quicquid auri vel argenti sive ornamentorum acquirebat,
and whatever of-gold or of-silver or of-ornaments he-acquired
totum suis commilitonibus erogabat. Divulgata itaque per
all to-his-own comrades he-paid-out spread-abroad and-so through
universas nationes ipsius fama: Trojani cœperunt ad ipsum
all nations his fame the-Trojans began to him

confluere: orantes ut ipso duce a servitute Græcorum
to-flow-together begging that with-him as-leader from servitude of-the-Greeks
liberarentur: quod facile fieri asserebant, cum in tantum
they-might-be-freed which easily to-be-done they-asserted since into so-great
jam in patria multiplicati essent, ita ut septem millia
now in the-country multiplied they-had-been so that seven thousand
(exceptis parvulis et mulieribus) jam computarentur. Præterea
excepted the-little-ones and the-women now they-were-counted besides
erat quidam nobilissimus juvenis in Græcia, nomine
there-was a-certain most-noble youth in Greece by-name
Assaracus: qui partibus eorum quoque favebat. Ex Trojana
Assaracus who to-the-side of-them also favored from a-Trojan
namque matre natus erat: fiduciamque in illis habebat
for mother born he-had-been and-trust in them he-had
maximam: ut auxilio eorum inquietudini Græcorum resistere
greatest that with-the-help of-them to-the-harassment of-the-Greeks to-resist
quivisset. Arguebat enim eum frater ejus propter tria
he-might-be-able accused for him the-brother his on-account-of three
castella quæ ipsi moriens pater donaverat, quod ea
castles which to-him dying the-father had-given that them
auferre conabatur: quia ex concubina natus fuerat. Erat
to-take-away he-was-trying because of a-concubine born he-had-been was
autem frater patre et matre Græcus: asciveratque regem
moreover the-brother by-father and by-mother Greek and-had-taken-on the-king
ceterosque Græcos parti suæ fautores. Inspiciens ergo
and-the-other Greeks to-the-side his-own as-supporters seeing therefore
Brutus et virorum multitudinem, et Assaraci castella quæ
Brutus both of-men the-multitude and of-Assaracus the-castles which
sibi patebant; petitioni eorum securius acquievit.
to-him lay-open to-the-petition of-them more-securely assented

Brutus epistolam ad Pandrasum mittit

IV · BRUTUS' LETTER TO PANDRASUS

Chosen leader, Brutus fortifies Assaracus' towns and takes the Trojans into the forests and hills. He writes to Pandrasus that a people of Dardanus' race prefers to live on flesh and herbs in freedom than in luxury under his yoke. He asks the king either to let them live free in the forests or to let them depart to other lands.

Electus igitur in ducem convocat undique Trojanos et
chosen therefore as leader he-calls-together from-everywhere the-Trojans and
Assaraci oppida munit. Ipse vero et Assaracus cum tota
of-Assaracus the-towns he-fortifies he-himself but and Assaracus with the-whole
multitudine virorum et mulierum quæ eis adhærebat, nemora
multitude of-men and of-women which to-them clung the-forests
et colles occupant. Deinde Brutus literas suas in hæc verba
and hills occupy then Brutus letters his-own in these words
regi derexit. "Pandraso Græcorum regi, Brutus reliquiarum
to-the-king directed to-Pandrasus of-the-Greeks king Brutus of-the-remnants
Trojæ dux, salutem. Quia indignum fuerat gentem præclaro
of-Troy leader greeting because unworthy it-had-been a-people from-a-famous
genere Dardani ortam, aliter in regno tuo tractari quam
race of-Dardanus sprung otherwise in kingdom your to-be-treated than
serenitas nobilitatis expeteret: sese intra abdita nemorum
the-serenity of-nobility would-demand itself within the-hidden-places of-the-forests
recepit. Præferabat namque ferino ritu, carnibus videlicet
it-has-withdrawn it-preferred for in-wild-beast fashion on-flesh namely
et herbis vitam cum libertate sustentare, quam universis deliciis
and on-herbs life with liberty to-sustain than by-all delights
refocillata, diutius sub jugo servitutis tuæ permanere; quod si
refreshed longer under the-yoke of-servitude your to-remain but if
celsitudinem tuæ potentiæ offendit; non est ei imputandum,
the-loftiness of-your power offends not is to-it to-be-imputed

sed venia adhibenda: cum cujusque captivi communis sit
but pardon to-be-applied since of-every captive common is
intentio, velle ad pristinam dignitatem redire. Misericordia
the-intent to-wish to former dignity to-return with-mercy
igitur super eam motus, amissam libertatem largiri digneris:
therefore over it moved the-lost liberty to-bestow may-you-deign
et saltus nemorum quos, ut servitutem diffugeret,
and the-glades of-the-forests which so-that servitude it-might-flee
occupavit, eam incolere permittas. Sin autem, concede ut
it-occupied it to-inhabit may-you-permit if-not moreover grant that
ad aliarum terrarum nationes cum tua diligentia abscedant."
to of-other lands the-nations with your diligence they-may-depart

Brutus inopinato impetu Pandrasum fugat, fratrem Pandrasi Antigonum cum Anacleto capit

V · BRUTUS ROUTS PANDRASUS AND CAPTURES ANTIGONUS

Pandrasus marches against the Trojans, but Brutus falls on his army by surprise from the town of Sparatinum and drives the Greeks into the river Akalon, where many drown. Pandrasus' brother Antigonus rallies the fugitives and turns to fight, but the unarmed Greeks are cut down. Antigonus and his comrade Anacletus are taken prisoner.

Pandrasus ergo agnita literarum sententia, ultra modum
Pandrasus therefore recognized of-the-letters the-meaning beyond measure
admiratus est ipsos, quos in servitutem tenuerat, tanta
wondered has them whom in servitude he-had-held with-so-great
audacia abundasse, ut ei talia mandata dirigerent.
boldness to-have-abounded that to-him such commands they-should-direct
Convocato itaque procerum suorum concilio, exercitum colligere
called-together and-so of-nobles his-own a-council an-army to-gather

decrevit, ut ipsos persequeretur. Dum autem deserta in
he-decided so-that them he-might-pursue while moreover the-deserts in
quibus eos esse autumaverat: et oppidum Sparatinum peteret,
which them to-be he-had-supposed and the-town Sparatinum he-was-seeking
egressus est Brutus cum tribus millibus virorum, ipsumque
gone-out has Brutus with three thousand of-men and-him
nihil hujusmodi præmeditatum ex improviso invasit. Audito
nothing of-this-kind having-foreseen from unforeseen attacked heard
namque adventu ipsius, sese in prædicto oppido præcedenti
for the-arrival his himself into the-aforesaid town in-the-preceding
nocte immiserat: ut in ipsos inermes et sine ordine
night he-had-put so-that upon them unarmed and without order
ituros inopinam irruptionem faceret. Impetu itaque
about-to-go an-unexpected inroad he-might-make with-an-attack and-so
facto invadunt acriter Trojani, et stragem ingerere nituntur.
made attack fiercely the-Trojans and slaughter to-heap-on strive
Porro Græci confestim stupefacti in omnes partes dilabuntur;
further the-Greeks forthwith stunned into all directions scatter
et rege suo præcedente, fluvium Akalon, qui prope
and with-the-king their-own going-before the-river Akalon which nearby
fluebat, transire festinant. At in transeundo intra voraginem
flowed to-cross they-hurry but in crossing within the-whirlpool
fluctus periclitantur. Quos diffugientes, Brutus infestat,
of-the-flood they-are-imperiled whom fleeing Brutus harasses
infestatos vero partim in undis, partim in ripa prosternit: et
the-harassed indeed partly in the-waves partly on the-bank he-lays-low and
nunc hac nunc illac discurrens, duplicem necem illis ingestam
now here now there running-about the-double death on-them heaped
esse lætatur. Quod ut Antigonus Pandrasi frater intuitus est,
to-be he-rejoices which as Antigonus of-Pandrasus brother beheld has
ultra modum doluit: vagantesque socios in turmam revocavit:
beyond measure he-grieved and-the-wandering comrades into a-troop he-called-back

celerique impetu in sævientes Troës reversus est. Malebat
and-with-swift attack against the-raging Trojans turned he-has he-preferred
namque resistendo interire, quam ignavam fugam faciens,
for by-resisting to-perish than cowardly flight making
luteis gurgitibus submergi. Densa igitur acie incedens,
in-muddy whirlpools to-be-drowned with-dense therefore battle-line advancing
socios viriliter resistere hortabatur: letiferaque tela totis
the-comrades manfully to-resist he-urged and-deadly weapons with-all
viribus contorquet: sed parum vel minimum profecit. Nam
strength he-hurls but little or very-little he-achieved for
Troës armis muniti erant: ceteri vero inermes. Unde
the-Trojans with-arms fortified were the-others but unarmed whence
audacius insistentes cædem miserandam inferebant: nec eos
more-boldly pressing-on slaughter pitiable they-inflicted nor them
hoc modo inquietare desierunt donec cunctis fere interfectis,
in-this manner to-harass they-ceased until with-all almost killed
Antigonum et Anacletum ejusdem socium retinuerunt.
Antigonus and Anacletus of-the-same the-comrade they-held

Pandrasus urbem Sparatinum oppugnat

VI · PANDRASUS BESIEGES SPARATINUM

Brutus garrisons the town with six hundred knights and returns to the forests. Pandrasus gathers his scattered men and besieges Sparatinum, thinking Brutus is inside with the captives. He surrounds the walls, cuts off the exits and the rivers, batters the walls with rams, and sets guards on his camp at night.

Brutus vero potitus victoria, oppidum sexcentis militibus
Brutus but having-gained of-the-victory the-town with-six-hundred knights
munivit: petivitque nemorum abdita: ubi Trojana plebs
fortified and-sought of-the-forests the-hidden-places where the-Trojan common-people

præsidium illius expectabat. At Pandrasus ob fugam
the-protection his awaited but Pandrasus on-account-of the-flight
suam fratrisque captionem anxiatus: nocte illa populum
his-own and-of-the-brother the-capture troubled on-night that the-people
dilapsum resociare vacavit. Et cum postera lux rediisset,
scattered to-regather was-busy and when the-next light had-returned
obsidere oppidum cum resociato populo progressus est.
to-besiege the-town with the-regathered people advanced he-has
Arbitrabatur enim Brutum se immisisse intra ipsum cum
he-supposed for Brutus himself to-have-put within it with
Antigono ceterisque captivis quos ceperat. Ut ergo ad mœnia
Antigonus and-the-other captives whom he-had-taken as therefore to the-walls
accessit, explorato castelli situ, distribuit exercitum suum
he-approached explored of-the-castle the-situation he-distributed the-army his-own
per turmas: diversisque locis in circuitu locavit. Indixit etiam
through troops and-in-various places in the-circuit placed he-ordered also
ut alii egressum inclusis abnegarent, alii cursus fluminum
that some the-exit to-the-shut-in should-deny others the-courses of-the-rivers
averterent, alii crebris arietibus ceterisque machinis
should-turn-aside others with-frequent rams and-the-other engines
murorum compagem dissolverent. Qui præcepta effectibus
of-the-walls the-joining should-break-up who the-orders with-deeds
exequentes, omni nisu contendebant quibus modis obsessos
carrying-out with-all effort strove by-what means the-besieged
crudelius infestarent. Superveniente autem nocte, audaciores
more-cruelly they-might-harass coming-on moreover night the-bolder-ones
eligebant, qui dum ceteri labori fessi quietem soporis caperent,
they-chose who while the-others from-labor tired the-rest of-sleep took
castra et tentoria ab hostium furtiva incursione tuerentur.
the-camp and tents from of-the-enemies stealthy incursion should-guard

Cives Sparatinenses auxilium a Bruto petunt

VII · THE TOWNSMEN ASK BRUTUS FOR HELP

The besieged hold off the Greek engines with fire and boiling water, but hunger drives them to send to Brutus for help. Too weak for a pitched battle, Brutus plans a night attack on the sleeping camp. With a drawn sword he tells Anacletus that he and Antigonus will die unless he lures the Greek watchmen into the forest with a story that Antigonus lies hidden there in chains.

At obsessi, in edito murorum stantes, totis viribus
but the-besieged on the-height of-the-walls standing with-all strength
nituntur ut hostium machinationes contrariis machinationibus
strive that of-the-enemies the-contrivances with-opposing contrivances
repellant, nunc tela, nunc sulphureas tedas ejicientes, sese
they-may-repel now weapons now sulfurous torches throwing-out themselves
unanimiter defendere intendunt. Cum autem parata testudine
with-one-mind to-defend they-aim when moreover prepared the-tortoise
murus suffoderetur, Græco igne atque calidarum aquarum
the-wall was-being-undermined with-Greek fire and of-hot waters
aspergine hostes retrocedere cogebant. Cibi tamen penuria
with-a-sprinkling the-enemies to-fall-back they-forced of-food yet by-the-want
et quotidiano labore afflicti, legatum ad Brutum miserunt,
and by-daily labor afflicted an-envoy to Brutus they-sent
postulantes ut eis in auxilium festinaret. Timebant enim ne
asking that to-them to help he-should-hurry they-feared for lest
in debilitatem redacti oppidum deserere cogerentur. Brutus
into weakness reduced the-town to-abandon they-might-be-forced Brutus
ergo opem subvectare affectans, internis angoribus cruciatur,
therefore aid to-bring-up desiring with-inward anguish is-tormented
quia tot milites non habebat quot ad campestre
because as-many knights not he-had as-many-as for an-open-field

prælium committendum sufficerent. Callido usus consilio,
battle to-be-joined would-suffice crafty having-used counsel
proponit castra hostium noctu adire, ipsosque soporatos,
he-proposes the-camp of-the-enemies by-night to-approach and-them asleep
deceptis eorum vigilibus, interficere. Quoniam autem id
deceived their the-watchmen to-kill since moreover this
fieri non posse sciebat absque alicujus Græci assensu et
to-be-done not to-be-able he-knew without of-some Greek assent and
auxilio, Anacletum socium Antigoni ad se vocavit: illumque
help Anacletus comrade of-Antigonus to himself he-called and-him
evaginato gladio in hunc modum affatus est; "Egregie juvenis,
drawn sword in this manner addressed he-has O-excellent youth
finis vitæ tuæ Antigonique adest, nisi ea quæ tibi
the-end of-life your and-of-Antigonus is-at-hand unless those-things which to-you
præcipiam executus voluntati meæ fideliter acquieveris.
I-shall-order having-carried-out to-will my faithfully you-will-have-assented
Affecto enim in hac sequenti nocte castra Græcorum adire,
I-desire for on this following night the-camp of-the-Greeks to-approach
ut ipsos inopinata cæde afficiam. Sed timeo ne eorum
so-that them with-unexpected slaughter I-may-afflict but I-fear lest their
vigiles, comperto dolo, inceptum impediant. Quia ergo
watchmen discovered the-trick the-undertaking may-hinder because therefore
verti arma in illos prius oporteret: desiderarem illos
to-be-turned arms against them first it-would-behoove I-should-wish them
per te decipere, ut ad ceteros tutiorem aditum aggrediendi
through you to-deceive so-that to the-others a-safer approach of-attacking
haberem. Tu vero callide negotium hujusmodi agens, in
I-might-have you indeed craftily business of-this-kind doing in
secunda noctis hora vade ad obsidionem, et quemque
the-second of-the-night hour go to the-siege and each-one
fallacibus verbis demulcendo, dices te Antigonum a
with-deceitful words by-soothing you-will-say you Antigonus from

carceribus meis abduxisse usque ad convallem nemorum,
prisons my to-have-led-away all-the-way to the-valley of-the-forests
et in eadem illum inter frutices delitere: nec longius abire
and in the-same him among the-bushes to-lie-hid nor farther to-go-away
posse propter pedicas, quibus eum simulabis impeditum;
to-be-able on-account-of the-fetters by-which him you-will-pretend hampered
deinde duces eos ad exitum nemoris quasi eum liberaturos,
then you-will-lead them to the-exit of-the-forest as-if him about-to-free
ubi ego cum armata manu adero paratus illos perimere."
where I with an-armed band shall-be-present ready them to-destroy

Anacletus, præ mortis timore, exercitum Græcorum prodit

VIII · ANACLETUS BETRAYS THE GREEK ARMY

In fear of death, Anacletus goes to the Greek watchmen, claims to have escaped from the Trojans, and begs them to come and free Antigonus. One recognizes him, and they follow him into the forest, where Brutus' armed men cut them down. Brutus then divides his men into three bands to enter the camp's quarters in silence and wait for the trumpet he will sound once he holds the king's tent.

Anacletus igitur viso gladio qui inter hæc verba morti suæ
Anacletus therefore seen the-sword which among these words over-death his-own
imminebat, continuo perterritus, jurejurando promisit sese
hung at-once terrified by-oath promised himself
præceptum executurum, si sibi et Antigono diuturnior vita
the-order about-to-carry-out if to-himself and to-Antigonus longer life
concederetur. Confirmato denique fœdere, in secunda noctis
should-be-granted confirmed finally the-pact in the-second of-the-night
hora quæ jam instabat, versus, obsidionem jussum iter arripuit.
hour which now was-pressing towards the-siege the-ordered route he-took
Cumque tandem prope castra incederet, occurrunt undique
and-when at-last near the-camp he-was-advancing run-up from-everywhere

vigiles, qui abdita locorum explorabant: quæruntque
watchmen who the-hidden-parts of-the-places were-exploring and-ask
ejus adventus causam: et utrum ad prodendum exercitum
his of-coming the-cause and whether for betraying the-army
advenisset. Quibus ille ingentem lætitiam simulans, in hæc
he-had-come to-whom he huge joy feigning in these
verba respondit: "Non equidem gentis meæ proditor venio, sed
words answered not indeed of-people my a-betrayer I-come but
carcerem Trojanorum evadens ad vos diffugio, orans ut mecum
the-prison of-the-Trojans escaping to you I-flee begging that with-me
ad nostrum Antigonum veniatis quem ex vinculis Bruti
to our Antigonus you-may-come whom out-of the-chains of-Brutus
eripui. Illum quidem pondere compedum detentum paulo ante
I-snatched him indeed by-the-weight of-the-fetters held-back a-little before
in exitu nemoris inter frutices delitere jussi: donec aliquos
at the-exit of-the-forest among the-bushes to-lie-hid I-ordered until some
invenirem, quos ad eum liberandum ducerem." Dubitantibus
I-might-find whom to him to-be-freed I-might-lead doubting
autem illis utrum verum diceret, supervenit unus, qui eum
moreover them whether true he-was-saying came-up one who him
agnoverat, et salutato ipso, indicavit sociis quis esset. At
had-recognized and greeted him showed to-the-comrades who he-was but
illi nihil hæsitantes, ceteros, qui aberant, ocius advocaverunt:
they nothing hesitating the-others who were-absent more-swiftly called
et secuti sunt eum usque ad silvam, qua Antigonum
and followed they-have him all-the-way to the-wood where Antigonus
delitere prædixerat. Illis denique inter frutices progredientibus,
to-lie-hid he-had-foretold them finally among the-bushes advancing
emergit Brutus cum armatis catervis et impetu facto in
emerges Brutus with armed bands and with-an-attack made upon
ipsos ocius perterritos dirissima cæde affecit. Deinde
them more-swiftly terrified with-most-dire slaughter he-afflicted then

profectus est ad obsidionem, et divisit socios suos per
set-out he-has to the-siege and divided the-comrades his-own into
tres turmas, præcepitque ut singulæ singulas partes castrorum
three troops and-ordered that each-one separate parts of-the-camp
sapienter et sine tumultu adirent: nec intromissæ cædem
wisely and without tumult should-approach nor let-in slaughter
alicui ingererent, donec ipse cum sua cohorte regis
on-anyone should-heap until he-himself with his-own cohort of-the-king
tentorio potitus, lituum suum in signum ipsis sonaret.
the-tent having-gained the-trumpet his-own as a-signal to-them should-sound

Brutus Pandrasum vivum capit

IX · BRUTUS TAKES PANDRASUS ALIVE

The Trojans slip into the camp, and at Brutus' signal they kill the sleepers in their beds. The waking Greeks flee in the dark without arms, dashing against rocks, breaking limbs, and drowning in the rivers, and hardly anyone escapes unhurt. The townsmen come out and double the slaughter.

Porro ut ipsos quicquid acturi erant edocuit: confestim
further when them whatever about-to-do they-were he-had-taught forthwith
mittunt se leviter intra castra, et jussas partes adepti,
they-put themselves lightly within the-camp and the-ordered parts having-obtained
signum promissum expectant; quod Brutus eis dare non
the-signal promised they-await which Brutus to-them to-give not
distulit, postquam stetit ante Pandrasi tentorium, quod super
delayed after he-stood before of-Pandrasus the-tent which above
omnia æstuabat aggredi. Quo audito enses ocius evaginant,
all-things he-burned to-attack which heard swords more-swiftly they-draw
cubilia sopitorum ingrediuntur, letiferos ictus ingeminant: et
the-beds of-the-sleeping they-enter deadly blows they-redouble and

nullam pietatem habentes, castra in hunc modum deambulant.
no pity having the-camp in this manner they-walk-through
Ad gemitus vero morientium evigilant ceteri, visisque
at the-groans indeed of-the-dying wake-up the-others and-seen
laniatoribus, velut oves ex improviso a lupis occupatæ,
the-butchers like sheep from unforeseen by wolves seized
stupescunt. Nihil enim præsidii expectabant, cum neque arma
they-are-stunned nothing for of-protection they-expected since neither arms
capiendi neque fugam faciendi congruum spatium haberent.
of-taking nor flight of-making fitting space they-had
Discurrunt etiam sine armis inter armatos quo impetus eos
they-run-about also without arms among the-armed where the-impulse them
ducebat. Sed irruentibus hostibus continuo dilacerantur. Qui
led but rushing-on the-enemies at-once they-are-torn-apart who
semivivus evadebat, aviditate fugæ festinans, scopulis vel
half-alive was-escaping with-eagerness of-flight hurrying against-rocks or
arboribus et fruticibus allidebatur, et infelicem animam cum
trees and bushes was-dashed and the-unhappy soul with
sanguine emittebat. Qui solo clypeo vel quolibet alio tegmine
blood was-sending-out who with-only shield or any other covering
munitus, inter eosdem scopulos incidebat timore mortis, celer
protected among the-same rocks was-falling from-fear of-death swift
sub obscura nocte cadebat, cadentique vel brachia vel crura
under dark night he-fell and-to-the-falling either arms or legs
frangebantur. Cui neutrum horum contingebat, inscius quo
were-broken to-whom neither of-these happened unknowing where
fugam faceret, in prope fluentibus fluviis submergebatur.
flight he-should-make in nearby flowing rivers was-drowned
Vix aliquis illæsus abibat, quin aliquo infortunio periclitaretur.
scarcely anyone unhurt went-away without by-some misfortune he-was-imperiled

Oppidani quoque, agnito commilitonum adventu, egressi,
the-townsmen also recognized of-the-comrades the-arrival having-gone-out
cladem quæ dabatur duplicabant.
the-disaster which was-being-given doubled

Quid sit a Pandraso captivo præcipue petendum, consilium capiunt

X · THE COUNCIL OVER THE CAPTIVE PANDRASUS

Brutus binds the captive king, divides the spoils, buries the dead, and asks his nobles what to demand of Pandrasus. Mempricius advises against settling in Greece, where the kin of the slain would never cease their vengeance. He urges them to ask for the king's eldest daughter Ignoge as Brutus' wife, with gold, silver, ships, and grain, and leave to depart.

At Brutus tentorium regis (ut prædictum est) nactus,
but Brutus the-tent of-the-king as said-before it-has-been having-got
ipsum vincire et conservare vacavit. Sciebat enim sese magis
him to-bind and to-keep was-busy he-knew for himself more
vita regis quam morte adepturum quod affectaverat.
by-the-life of-the-king than by-death about-to-obtain what he-had-desired
Turma autem quæ cum eo erat non cessabat stragem facere,
the-troop moreover which with him was not ceased slaughter to-make
quæ partem quam adepta erat, usque ad internecionem
which the-part which obtained it-had all-the-way to extermination
deleverat. Ut igitur noctem in hunc modum consumpserat,
had-destroyed when therefore the-night in this manner he-had-spent
et sub luce auroræ tanta patuit populi ruina, Brutus
and under the-light of-dawn so-great lay-open of-the-people the-ruin Brutus
maximo gaudio fluctuans, sociis peracta cæde spolia
with-greatest joy surging to-the-comrades completed the-slaughter the-spoils

peremptorum juxta libitum suum tractare permisit; deinde
of-the-slain according-to pleasure their-own to-handle permitted then
cum rege oppidum ingreditur, expectaturus, dum gazas
with the-king the-town he-enters about-to-wait while the-treasures
distribueret. Quibus impertitis, munivit iterum castellum,
he-distributed which shared-out he-fortified again the-castle
cadaveraque sepulturæ dari præcepit: resociatisque catervis
and-the-corpses to-burial to-be-given ordered and-regathered the-bands
ad nemora cum læta victoria remeavit. Quæ ut tantam
to the-forests with joyful victory returned which as so-great
suorum animis infudit lætitiam, inclytus dux majores natu
of-his-own into-minds poured joy the-renowned leader the-greater by-birth
convocavit, quæsivitque ab eis quid a Pandraso petendum
called-together and-asked from them what from Pandrasus to-be-sought
laudarent; nam cum in potestate eorum positus esset,
they-would-commend for since in the-power of-them placed he-was
per omnia petitioni eorum acquiesceret, si liber abire
in all-things to-the-petition of-them he-would-assent if free to-go-away
sineretur. Mox illi diversis affectibus diversa cupientes,
he-were-allowed soon they with-various feelings various-things desiring
pars regni partem ad inhabitandum petere hortabatur,
part of-the-kingdom a-part for inhabiting to-seek urged
pars vero licentiam abeundi et ea quæ itineri
part indeed leave of-going-away and those-things which for-the-journey
suo utilia forent. Cumque diu in ambiguo extitissent,
their-own useful would-be and-when long in doubt they-had-been
surrexit unus ex illis Mempricius nomine, rogatoque silentio,
rose-up one of them Mempricius by-name and-asked silence
audientibus ceteris ait: “Ut quid hæsitatis, patres, in
listening the-others says to what-end do-you-hesitate O-fathers in
his quæ saluti vestræ reor accommoda? unum petendum
these-things which for-safety your I-think fitting one-thing to-be-sought

est, videlicet licentia abeundi, si vobis posterisque vestris
is namely leave of-going-away if for-you and-for-descendants your
eternam pacem habere desideratis. Nam si eo pacto vitam
eternal peace to-have you-desire for if on-this condition life
concesseritis Pandraso, ut per eum partem Græciæ
you-will-have-granted to-Pandrasus so-that through him a-part of-Greece
adepti inter Danaos manere velitis, nunquam diuturna
having-obtained among the-Danaans to-remain you-should-wish never lasting
pace fruemini, dum fratres, et filii, et nepotes eorum
peace you-will-enjoy while the-brothers and sons and grandsons of-them
quibus hesternam stragem intulistis, vobis immixti vel vicini
on-whom yesterday's slaughter you-brought with-you mingled or neighbors
fuerint. Semper enim necis parentum suorum memores,
will-have-been always for of-the-death of-the-parents their-own mindful
eterno vos habebunt odio: quibusvis etiam nugis incitati
with-eternal you they-will-hold hatred by-any even trifles roused
vindictam sumere nitentur. Nec vobis, pauciorem turbam
vengeance to-take they-will-strive nor to-you a-smaller crowd
habentibus, ea vis erit, ut tot civium inquietationibus
having that strength will-be that so-many of-citizens to-the-harassments
resistere queatis. Quod si decertatio inter vos accesserit,
to-resist you-may-be-able but if a-contest between you will-have-arisen
numerus eorum quotidie augebitur: vester vero minuetur.
the-number of-them daily will-be-increased yours indeed will-be-lessened
Laudo igitur ut petatis ab eo suam filiam primogenitam,
I-advise therefore that you-seek from him his-own daughter first-born
quam Ignogen vocant, Duci nostro conjugem et cum ea
whom Ignoge they-call for-the-leader our as-wife and with her
aurum et argentum, naves et frumentum: et quodcunque
gold and silver ships and grain and whatever

itineri nostro necessarium erit. Et si id impetrare
for-journey our necessary will-be and if that to-obtain
poterimus licentia ipsius alias nationes petamus."
we-shall-be-able with-the-leave his other nations let-us-seek

Brutus Ignogen matrimonio ducit, in insulam desertam ejectus ex oraculo Dianæ discit, quam terram sit habitaturus

XI · BRUTUS MARRIES IGNOGE; DIANA FORETELLS HIS LAND

Under threat of death Pandrasus gives Brutus his daughter Ignoge, 324 ships, and provisions, and the Trojans sail while Ignoge weeps for her homeland. On the deserted island of Leogecia, Brutus prays at Diana's temple, and in sleep the goddess promises him an island beyond Gaul, once held by giants, where a second Troy will rise. The fleet sails for thirty days to Africa and beats off pirates.

Ut his et consimilibus finem dicendi fecit, acquievit ei
when to-these and similar-things an-end of-speaking he-made assented to-him
tota multitudo, atque suasit ut Pandrasus in medium
the-whole multitude and urged that Pandrasus into the-middle
adduceretur: et nisi huic petitioni faveret, sævissima morte
should-be-led and unless to-this to-the-petition he-favored by-most-cruel death
damnaretur. Nec mora, adductus est, et in cathedra
he-should-be-condemned nor delay led he-was and on a-seat
celsior positus: edoctus quoque quibus tormentis affligendus
higher placed taught also by-what torments to-be-afflicted
erat, nisi ea faceret quæ jubebatur: in hunc modum
he-was unless those-things he-did which he-was-ordered in this manner
respondit: "Quoniam adversi Dii me meumque fratrem
answered since hostile the-gods me and-my brother
Anacletum in manus vestras tradiderunt, parendum est
Anacletus into hands your have-handed-over to-be-obeyed is

petitioni vestræ, ne vitam quæ nobis arbitrio vestro et
to-the-petition your lest the-life which for-us by-choice your both
adimi et concedi potest (si repulsam passi fueritis)
to-be-taken-away and to-be-granted can-be if refusal suffered you-will-have
amittamus. Nihil enim vita præstantius, nihil jucundius
we-may-lose nothing for than-life more-excellent nothing more-pleasant
censeo: nec est mirandum si illam extremis rebus redimere
I-judge nor is to-be-wondered-at if it with-utmost things to-redeem
velim. Quamvis autem invitus præceptis vestris obediam;
I-should-wish although moreover unwilling to-the-orders your I-obey
solatium tamen habere videor, quia filiam meam tantæ
comfort yet to-have I-seem because daughter my of-so-great
probitatis adolescenti daturus sum, quem ex genere Priami
prowess to-a-youth about-to-give I-am whom from the-race of-Priam
et Anchisæ procreatum, et nobilitas quæ in ipso pullulat,
and of-Anchises begotten both the-nobility which in him sprouts
et fama nobis cognita declarat. Quis etenim alter exules
and fame to-us known declares who for other the-exiles
Trojæ in servitutem tot et tantorum principum positos
of-Troy into servitude of-so-many and so-great princes placed
eorundem vinculis eriperet? Quis cum illis Græcorum
of-the-same from-the-chains would-snatch who with them of-the-Greeks
genti resisteret, aut cum tam paucis tantam armatorum
to-the-people would-resist or with so few so-great of-armed-men
copiam ad prelium convocaret, initoque congressu regem
a-host to battle would-call-out and-entered the-engagement the-king
eorum vinctum duceret? Quia ergo tantus juvenis tanta
of-them bound would-lead because therefore so-great a-youth with-so-great
probitate mihi resistere potuit, do ei meam filiam
prowess to-me to-resist was-able I-give to-him my daughter
Ignogen, do ei etiam aurum et argentum, naves,
Ignoge I-give to-him also gold and silver ships

frumentum, vinum et oleum, et quicquid itineri ejus
grain wine and oil and whatever for-the-journey his
esse necessarium duxeritis. Et si a proposito vestro
to-be necessary you-will-have-thought and if from purpose your
divertentes, cum Græcis permanere volueritis, tertiam
turning-aside with the-Greeks to-remain you-will-have-wished the-third
regni mei partem vobis ad inhabitandum concedo. Sin
of-kingdom my part to-you for inhabiting I-grant if-not
autem, promissa mea effectu prosequar. Et ut securiores
moreover the-promises my in-effect I-shall-follow-up and so-that more-secure
sitis, vobiscum quasi obses manebo dum omnia
you-may-be with-you as-it-were a-hostage I-shall-remain while all-things
perfecero. Conventione itaque facta, diriguntur legati
I-shall-have-completed with-agreement and-so made are-directed envoys
per universa Græciæ littora colligere naves. Quæ ut
through all of-Greece the-shores to-gather ships which when
collectæ fuerunt, trecentæ et viginti quatuor numero,
gathered they-had-been three-hundred and twenty four in-number
præsentantur, omni generis farris onerantur: filia Bruto
are-presented with-every kind of-grain they-are-loaded the-daughter to-Brutus
maritatur; et quisque, prout dignitas expetebat, auro
is-married and each-one according-as dignity demanded with-gold
et argento donatur. Peractis igitur cunctis, rex liber a
and with-silver is-presented completed therefore all-things the-king free from
carcere dimittitur: Troës ab ejus potestate secundis ventis
prison is-sent-away the-Trojans from his power with-favorable winds
abscedunt. At Ignoge in excelsa puppi stans, sæpius inter
depart but Ignoge on the-high stern standing very-often among
Bruti brachia in extasi collabitur, fusisque cum singultu
of-Brutus the-arms in a-swoon collapses and-poured with sobbing
lacrymis parentes et patriam deserere conqueritur: nec
tears parents and country to-desert she-laments nor

oculos a littore avertit, dum littora oculis patuerunt.
the-eyes from the-shore turns-away while the-shores to-the-eyes lay-open
Quam Brutus blanditiis mitigans, nunc dulces amplexus:
whom Brutus with-caresses soothing now sweet embraces
nunc dulcia basia innectit; nec cœptis suis desistit,
now sweet kisses weaves nor from-undertakings his-own desists
donec fletu fatigata sopori submittitur. Inter hæc et
until with-weeping wearied to-sleep she-is-submitted among these-things and
alia, duobus diebus et una nocte prospero ventorum flatu
others for-two days and one night with-favorable of-the-winds breath
concurrerunt, applicueruntque in quandam insulam, vocatam
they-ran-together and-landed on a-certain island called
Leogeciam, quæ antiquitus ab incursione piratarum vastabatur,
Leogecia which from-of-old by the-incursion of-pirates was-laid-waste
a nemine inhabitabatur. In illam ergo Brutus misit
by no-one was-inhabited into it therefore Brutus sent
trecentos armatos ad explorandum qui eam inhabitarent. Qui
three-hundred armed-men for exploring who it might-inhabit who
neminem reperientes, feras diversi generis intra saltus et
no-one finding wild-beasts of-various kind within the-glades and
nemora inventas cæde afficiunt: veneruntque ad quandam
forests found with-slaughter afflict and-came to a-certain
civitatem desertam, in qua templum Dianæ repererunt. In
city deserted in which a-temple of-Diana they-found in
eodem imago Deæ responsa dabat, si forte ab aliquo
the-same an-image of-the-Goddess answers gave if by-chance by someone
peteretur. Onerati tandem reperta venatione revertuntur ad
it-were-asked loaded at-last with-the-found game they-return to
naves suas: patriæque et situm et civitatem consociis
ships their-own and-of-the-country both the-situation and the-city to-the-comrades
prædicant: suggerunt duci templum adire, atque litatis
they-proclaim they-suggest to-the-leader the-temple to-approach and offered

donis a numine loci inquirere, quæ patria eis
gifts from the-deity of-the-place to-inquire which country to-them
sedem certæ mansionis præberet. Communicatoque omnium
a-seat of-sure dwelling would-offer and-communicated of-all
assensu, assumpsit secum Brutus Gerionem augurem, et
with-the-assent took with-himself Brutus Gerion the-augur and
duodecim majores natu: petivitque templum cum omnibus
twelve greater by-birth and-sought the-temple with all-things
quæ ad sacrificium necessaria erant. Quo ubi ventum est,
which for sacrifice necessary were where when come it-was
circumdati tempora vittis ante adytum veterrimo ritu tribus
surrounded the-temples with-fillets before the-shrine by-most-ancient rite to-three
Diis, Jovi videlicet, et Mercurio, nec non et Dianæ tres
gods to-Jupiter namely and to-Mercury nor not also to-Diana three
focos statuerunt: singulis singula libamina dederunt. Ipse
hearths they-set-up to-single-ones single libations they-gave himself
Brutus ante aram Deæ vas sacrificii plenum vino
Brutus before the-altar of-the-Goddess a-vessel of-sacrifice full with-wine
et sanguine candidæ cervæ dextra tenens, erecto vultu
and with-blood of-a-white hind in-the-right-hand holding with-raised face
ad effigiem numinis, silentium in hæc verba dissolvit: —
to the-image of-the-deity the-silence in these words broke

Diva potens nemorum, terror silvestribus apris,
O-goddess powerful of-the-groves terror to-the-woodland boars
Cui licet amfractus ire per ætherios,
to-whom it-is-permitted the-windings to-go through the-ethereal
Infernasque domos; terrestria jura resolve,
and-the-infernal homes the-earthly laws release
Et dic quas terras nos habitare velis?
and say which lands us to-inhabit you-may-wish

Dic certam sedem, qua te venerabor in ævum,
say a-sure seat where you I-shall-worship into the-age
Qua tibi virgineis dedico templa choris?
where to-you with-virgin I-dedicate temples choirs

Hæc ubi novies dixit, circuivit aram quater: fuditque
these-things when nine-times he-said he-went-round the-altar four-times and-poured
vinum, quod tenebat, in focum: atque procubuit supra pellem
the-wine which he-was-holding into the-hearth and lay-down upon the-skin
cervæ, quam ante aram extenderat: invitatoque somno
of-the-hind which before the-altar he-had-spread-out and-invited sleep
tandem obdormivit. Erat autem quasi hora tertia noctis: qua
at-last fell-asleep it-was moreover about the-hour third of-the-night in-which
dulciore sopore mortales premuntur: tunc visum est illi
by-sweeter sleep mortals are-pressed then seemed it-was to-him
Deam adstare ante ipsum, et sese in hunc modum affari:
the-Goddess to-stand before him and him in this manner to-address

Brute sub occasu solis trans Gallica regna,
O-Brutus under the-setting of-the-sun beyond the-Gallic kingdoms
Insula in Oceano est undique clausa mari:
an-island in the-Ocean is on-all-sides enclosed by-sea
Insula in Oceano est habitata Gigantibus olim,
an-island in the-Ocean was inhabited by-Giants once
Nunc deserta quidem, gentibus apta tuis.
now deserted indeed for-peoples fit your
Hanc pete; namque tibi sedes erit illa perennis:
this seek for to-you seat will-be that everlasting
Hic fiet natis altera Troja tuis.
here will-be-made for-the-children a-second Troy your

Hic de prole tua reges nascentur: et ipsis
here from offspring your kings will-be-born and to-them
Totius terræ subditus orbis erit.
of-the-whole earth subject the-circle will-be

Tali visione expergefactus dux, in dubio mansit an somnus
by-such a-vision awakened the-leader in doubt remained whether a-dream
fuerat quem vidit: an Dea viva fuerat, quæ prædixerat
it-had-been which he-saw or the-Goddess living had-been who had-foretold
terram quam aditurus erat. Vocatis tandem sociis
the-land which about-to-approach he-was called at-last the-comrades
indicavit per ordinem quod sibi dormienti contigerat. At illi
he-showed in order what to-him sleeping had-happened but they
maximo gaudio exultantes hortantur ut ad naves repedarent;
with-greatest joy exulting urge that to the-ships they-should-return
et dum secundus ventus flaret, citissimis velis occasum
and while the-favorable wind was-blowing with-swiftest sails the-setting
versus eant: ad inquirendum quod diva spoponderat.
towards they-should-go for inquiring what the-goddess had-promised
Nec mora, remeant ad socios, altumque ingrediuntur: et
nor delay they-return to the-comrades and-the-deep they-enter and
sulcantes æquora, cursu triginta dierum venerunt ad Africam:
furrowing the-seas in-a-course of-thirty days they-came to Africa
nescii adhuc quorsum proras verterent. Deinde venerunt ad
unknowing still whither the-prows they-should-turn then they-came to
aras Philenorum, et ad locum Salinarum: et navigaverunt
the-altars of-the-Philaeni and to the-place of-the-Salt-pans and they-sailed
intra Ruscicadam et montes Azaræ, ubi ab incursione
between Rusicada and the-mountains of-Azara where from the-incursion

piratarum maximum passi sunt periculum: victoriam tamen
of-pirates greatest suffered they-have danger the-victory yet
adepti sunt, spoliisque eorum et rapinis ditati.
obtained they-have and-with-the-spoils their and plunder enriched

Brutus cum Corineo Aquitaniam devehitur

XII · BRUTUS AND CORINEUS COME TO AQUITAINE

Passing the Pillars of Hercules and the Sirens, the Trojans meet Corineus and his people, also descended from Trojan exiles, and join them. At the mouth of the Loire, King Goffarius' envoys challenge Corineus for hunting in the king's forest, and when one of them, Imbert, shoots at him, Corineus smashes his head with the bow. In the battle that follows, Corineus breaks the Aquitanians with a two-edged axe and mocks them as they flee.

Porro flumen Malvæ transeuntes, applicuerunt in Mauritaniam;
further the-river of-Malva crossing they-landed in Mauretania
deinde penuria cibi et potus coacti egressi sunt e
then by-want of-food and of-drink forced gone-out they-have from
navibus, et dispositis turmis populati sunt regionem illam
the-ships and arranged the-troops ravaged they-have region that
a fine usque ad finem. Refertis vero navibus petierunt
from end all-the-way to end filled indeed the-ships they-sought
columnas Herculis: ubi apparuerunt eis monstra maris
the-pillars of-Hercules where appeared to-them monsters of-the-sea
Sirenes vocata, quæ ambiendo naves fere ipsas obruerunt.
Sirens called which by-surrounding the-ships almost them overwhelmed
Utcumque tamen elapsi, venerunt ad Tyrrhenum æquor:
somehow yet having-escaped they-came to the-Tyrrhenian sea
ubi juxta littora invenerunt quatuor generationes de exulibus
where beside the-shores they-found four generations from the-exiles

Trojæ ortas, quæ Antenoris fugam comitatæ fuerant. Erat
of-Troy sprung which of-Antenor the-flight accompanied had there-was
eorum dux Corineus dictus: vir modestus, consilio optimus,
of-them leader Corineus called a-man modest in-counsel best
magnæ virtutis et audaciæ; qui si cum aliquo gigante
of-great valor and of-boldness who if with some giant
congressum faceret, illico eum obruebat, ac si cum
an-engagement he-made on-the-spot him he-overwhelmed as if with
puero contenderet. Agnita itaque veteris prosapia originis,
a-boy he-were-contending recognized and-so of-old the-lineage of-origin
associaverunt sibi illum, nec non et populum cui
they-associated to-themselves him nor not also the-people over-which
præsidebat: qui de nomine ducis postmodum Cornubiensis
he-presided which from the-name of-the-leader afterward Cornish
vocatus, Bruto in omnibus decertationibus præ cæteris
called to-Brutus in all contests beyond the-others
auxilium præstabat. Deinde venerunt ad Aquitaniam: et
help offered then they-came to Aquitaine and
ostium Ligeris ingressi, anchoras fixerunt. Morati sunt ibi
the-mouth of-the-Loire having-entered anchors they-fixed stayed they-have there
septem diebus, situmque regni exploraverunt. Regnabat
for-seven days and-the-situation of-the-kingdom explored reigned
tunc in Aquitania Goffarius Pictus, ejusdem terræ rex, cui
then in Aquitaine Goffarius the-Pict of-the-same land king to-whom
ut fama indicavit externam gentem cum magna classe in
when fame showed a-foreign people with a-great fleet into
fines regni applicuisse: misit legatos ad inquirendum,
the-borders of-the-kingdom to-have-landed he-sent envoys for inquiring
pacemne an bellum expeterent. Nuncii ergo classem
peace-whether or war they-were-seeking the-messengers therefore the-fleet
petentes obviaverunt Corineo egresso jam cum ducentis viris,
seeking met Corineus gone-out already with two-hundred men

ut intra nemora venationem adquirerent. Mox eum allocuti
that within the-forests game they-might-get soon him addressed
quærunt cujus licentia saltus regis ingressus, feras
they-ask whose by-leave the-glades of-the-king having-entered the-wild-beasts
necaret. Statutum enim ab antiquo fuerat neminem
he-was-killing appointed for from of-old it-had-been no-one
sine jussu principis eas debere prosternere. Quibus
without the-order of-the-prince them to-be-obliged to-lay-low to-whom
cum Corineus respondisset: licentiam hujus rei nequaquam
when Corineus had-answered leave of-this matter by-no-means
debere haberi: irruit unus ex illis, Imbertus nomine,
to-be-obliged to-be-had rushed-in one of them Imbert by-name
et arcu curvato sagittam in eum direxit. Vitavit eam
and with-bow bent an-arrow at him directed avoided it
Corineus, concurritque ocyus in Imbertum, et arcu,
Corineus and-ran more-swiftly at Imbert and with-the-bow
quem tenebat, caput ei in frusta contrivit. Diffugerunt
which he-was-holding the-head to-him into bits crushed fled
ergo cæteri vix e manibus ejus elapsi, atque Goffario
therefore the-others scarcely from the-hands his having-escaped and to-Goffarius
necem socii nunciaverunt. Contristatus illico dux
the-death the-comrades announced saddened on-the-spot the-duke
Pictavensium, collegit exercitum grandem, ut in ipsos
of-the-Poitevins gathered an-army great so-that on them
mortem nuncii sui vindicaret. At Brutus divulgato ejus
the-death of-messenger his-own he-might-avenge but Brutus spread-abroad his
adventu naves munit: mulieres et parvulos in ipsis jubet
arrival the-ships fortifies the-women and the-little-ones in them orders
manere: ipse autem, cum tota multitudine cui vires
to-remain he-himself moreover with the-whole multitude to-whom strengths
florebant, obvius exercitui progreditur. Inito tandem certamine,
flourished meeting the-army advances entered at-last the-contest

dira pugna utrobique committitur: et cum multum diei in
a-dire fight on-both-sides is-joined and when much of-the-day in
agendo cædem consumpsissent, puduit Corineum Aquitanos
doing slaughter they-had-spent it-shamed Corineus the-Aquitanians
tam audacter resistere: nec Trojanos cum triumpho insistere.
so boldly to-resist nor the-Trojans with triumph to-press-on
Unde resumpta audacia sevocavit suos in dexteram partem
whence resumed boldness he-called-aside his-own into the-right part
prælii: et facto agmine celerem impetum in hostes
of-the-battle and made a-column a-swift attack upon the-enemies
fecit: et ut intra eorundem turmas sese densa acie
he-made and when within of-the-same the-troops himself with-dense line
intromisit, non cessavit hostes prosternere, donec penetrata
he-had-thrust not he-ceased the-enemies to-lay-low until pierced
cohorte cunctos in fugam coegit. Fortuna ei, amisso gladio,
the-cohort all into flight he-forced fortune to-him lost the-sword
bipennem administraverat, cum qua quemcunque attingebat
a-two-edged-axe had-supplied with which whomever he-reached
a summo usque ad imum dissecabat. Miratur Brutus,
from top all-the-way to bottom he-cut-apart wonders Brutus
mirantur socii, mirantur et hostes viri audaciam et
wonder the-comrades wonder also the-enemies of-the-man the-boldness and
virtutem, qui bipennem inter fugientes cohortes librans,
valor who the-two-edged-axe among the-fleeing cohorts swinging
timorem non minimum cum his verbis inferebat: “Quo fugitis
fear not least with these words brought-on whither do-you-flee
timidi! quo fugitis segnes! revertimini, ô revertimini, et
O-timid whither do-you-flee O-sluggish return O return and
congressum cum Corineo facite: proh pudor, tot millia me
an-engagement with Corineus make oh shame so-many thousands me
solum fugitis? At tamen habete solatium fugæ, quod ego vos
alone you-flee but yet have as-comfort of-flight that I you

insequar, qui toties soleo Tyrrhenos gigantes in fugam
shall-pursue who so-often am-accustomed the-Tyrrhenian giants into flight
propellere: et ternos atque quaternos ad tartara detrudere."
to-drive and by-threes and by-fours to Tartarus to-thrust-down

Brutus Goffarium fugat

XIII · BRUTUS ROUTS GOFFARIUS

The consul Subardus attacks Corineus, who splits him in two with his axe and then hews through the enemy alone. Brutus brings help, and the Trojans drive Goffarius and his Poitevins from the field. Goffarius flees to the twelve kings of Gaul, who promise to drive the foreigners out of Aquitaine.

Ad hæc verba illius revertitur quidam consul nomine Subardus
at these words his returns a-certain consul by-name Subardus
cum trecentis militibus, et impetum fecit in eum: cujus
with three-hundred knights and an-attack made upon him whose
ictum Corineus prætenso clypeo excipiens, non est oblitus
blow Corineus held-out shield receiving not has forgotten
bipennis quam tenebat, sed erecta illa percussit eum
the-two-edged-axe which he-was-holding but raised it he-struck him
in summitate galeæ, percussumque, a summo usque ad
on the-top of-the-helmet and-the-struck-one from top all-the-way to
imum in ambas partes dissecuit. Sed et confestim irruens
bottom into both parts he-cut-apart but also forthwith rushing
in cæteros, bipennem rotans, stragem acerrimam facit,
upon the-others the-two-edged-axe whirling slaughter most-fierce he-makes
et nunc hac nunc illac discurrens ictus recipere diffugit, nec
and now here now there running-about blows to-receive he-shuns nor
hostes prosternere quiescit: huic brachium cum manu
the-enemies to-lay-low rests from-this-one the-arm with the-hand

amputat: illi scapulas a corpore separat: alii
he-cuts-off from-that-one the-shoulders from the-body he-separates from-another
caput uno ictu truncat: alteri crura a summo dissecat.
the-head with-one blow he-lops from-another the-legs from the-top he-cuts
Omnes in illum solum, et ipse solus in omnes irruebat.
all upon him alone and he-himself alone upon all rushed
Quod Brutus aspiciens, motus amore viri, accurrit cum
which Brutus seeing moved by-love of-the-man runs-up with
una turma ut ei auxilium subvectaret. Tunc oritur
one troop so-that to-him help he-might-bring then arises
clamor inter diversas gentes, tunc crebri ictus inferuntur, tunc
a-shout among different peoples then frequent blows are-dealt then
in utraque parte fit cædes durissima. Nec mora, victoria
on each side is-made a-slaughter most-hard nor delay of-victory
potiuntur Troes, et regem Goffarium cum Pictavensibus
gain-possession the-Trojans and the-king Goffarius with Poitevins
suis in fugam propellunt. Qui vix evadens, partes Galliarum
his-own into flight drive who scarcely escaping the-parts of-the-Gauls
adivit; ut a cognatis et notis succursum haberet.
reached so-that from kinsmen and acquaintances aid he-might-have
Erant tunc temporis duodecim reges in Gallia, quorum
there-were at-that of-time twelve kings in Gaul whose
regimine tota regio pari dignitate regebatur. Qui benigne
by-rule the-whole region with-equal dignity was-ruled who kindly
suscipientes eum, promittunt sese unanimiter expulsuros
receiving him promise themselves with-one-mind about-to-drive
ex finibus Aquitaniæ externam gentem quæ advenerat.
out-of the-borders of-Aquitaine the-foreign people which had-come

Brutus Aquitaniam vastat

XIV · BRUTUS LAYS WASTE AQUITAINE

Brutus enriches his men with the spoils and ravages Aquitaine with fire and slaughter, filling his ships with plunder. He comes to the place where the city of Tours now stands and builds a camp there for refuge. Goffarius arrives near it with the kings and princes of Gaul and a great host.

Brutus ob prædictam victoriam lætus, peremptorum
Brutus on-account-of the-aforesaid victory joyful of-the-slain
spoliis socios ditat, ditatos iterum in turmas
with-the-spoils the-comrades enriches the-enriched again into troops
resociat, resociatos per regionem ducit, affectans eam
he-regathers the-regathered through the-region he-leads desiring it
penitus desolari, et naves suas immensis divitiis replere.
utterly to-be-laid-waste and the-ships his-own with-immense riches to-fill
Accumulato igitur igne civitates incendit, et opes absconditas
heaped-up therefore fire the-cities he-burns and the-wealth hidden
ab eisdem extrahit: agros etiam depopulatur: stragem
from the-same he-draws-out the-fields also he-ravages slaughter
miserandam civibus et plebanis infert, volens infelicem gentem
pitiable on-citizens and commoners he-brings wishing the-unhappy people
usque ad unum delere. At dum tali clade omnem fere
all-the-way to one to-destroy but when with-such disaster all almost
Aquitaniam affecisset: venit ad locum ubi nunc est civitas
Aquitaine he-had-afflicted he-came to the-place where now is the-city
Turonorum, quam ut Homerus testatur, ipse postmodum
of-the-Turones which as Homer testifies he-himself afterward
construxit. Ut igitur loca convenientia refugio inspexit,
built when therefore places fitting for-refuge he-viewed
metatus est ibi castra sua, ut, si opus esset, sese
measured-out he-has there the-camp his-own so-that if need were himself

intra ipsa reciperet. Urgebatur namque timore propter
within it he-might-withdraw he-was-pressed for by-fear on-account-of
adventum Goffarii qui cum regibus et principibus Galliæ,
the-arrival of-Goffarius who with the-kings and princes of-Gaul
et maxima armatorum copia prope eundem locum advenerat,
and the-greatest of-armed-men host near the-same place had-come
ut cum illo bellum committeret. Peractis deinde castris
so-that with him war he-might-wage completed then the-camp
expectavit ibi biduo Goffarium, confidens in prudentia
he-waited there for-two-days Goffarius trusting in prudence
sua atque audacia juventutis suæ cui præsidebat.
his-own and the-boldness of-the-youth his-own over-which he-presided

Brutus cum Goffario manum conserit

XV · BRUTUS FIGHTS GOFFARIUS

Goffarius scorns the exiles, and the Gauls in their twelve columns, thirty times more numerous, drive the Trojans into their camp and besiege it. Corineus slips out by night to the forest and at dawn falls on the Gauls from behind while Brutus attacks, and the Gauls flee. Brutus' nephew Turonus, who kills six hundred men, is buried where Tours takes his name, and Brutus sails for the promised island, landing at Totnes.

Goffarius ergo audita ibidem Trojanorum præsentia,
Goffarius therefore heard in-the-same-place of-the-Trojans the-presence
nec die nec noctu cessavit incedere, donec castra Bruti
neither by-day nor by-night ceased to-advance until the-camp of-Brutus
prope aspexit. Torvo igitur lumine intuens, paulisper
near he-saw with-grim therefore eye gazing for-a-little
subridens in hæc verba prorupit: Proh fatum triste! Castra
smiling into these words burst-out oh fate sad the-camp

etiam sua in regno meo fecerunt ignobiles exules: armate
even their-own in kingdom my have-made ignoble exiles arm
vos viri, armate: et per densatas turmas incedite. Nulla
yourselves O-men arm and through thickened troops advance no
mora erit quin semiviros istos velut oves capiemus: atque
delay will-be but half-men these like sheep we-shall-take and
captos per regna nostra mancipabimus. Armaverunt se
taken through kingdoms our we-shall-sell armed themselves
itaque omnes quos secum adduxerat: et per duodena
and-so all whom with-himself he-had-brought and in twelve
agmina statuti, versus hostes suos incedunt. Contra quos
columns set towards enemies their-own advance against whom
Brutus etiam dispositis catervis non muliebriter graditur,
Brutus also arranged the-bands not in-womanly-fashion steps
sed turmas suas quid acturæ essent sapienter docens,
but troops his-own what about-to-do they-were wisely teaching
qualiter debeant invadere et resistere edicit. Ut ergo
how they-ought to-attack and to-resist he-proclaims when therefore
congressum inceperunt, prævaluerunt initio Troes, et
the-engagement they-began prevailed at-the-beginning the-Trojans and
cædem acerrimam ex hostibus faciunt. Ceciderunt namque ex
slaughter most-fierce of the-enemies they-make fell for of
iis fere duo millia hominum. Unde cæteri stupefacti, fere
them about two thousand of-men whence the-others stunned almost
in fugam versi fuerunt. Sed ubi major numerus hominum
into flight turned were but where a-greater number of-men
abundat, ibi evenire solet triumphus. Galli igitur
abounds there to-come-about is-accustomed the-triumph the-Gauls therefore
quoniam tricies plures erant cæteris, quanquam primo
since thirty-times more they-were than-the-others although at-first
oppressi fuerant: tamen resociati impetum fecerunt undique
overwhelmed had-been yet regathered an-attack made from-all-sides

in Troes: et illata strage ipsos in castra ingredi
upon the-Trojans and brought-on slaughter them into the-camp to-enter
coegerunt. Victoriam igitur adepti, obsederunt eos intra
forced the-victory therefore having-obtained they-besieged them within
castra: meditantes nequaquam prius illinc abscedere, quam
the-camp purposing by-no-means before from-there to-depart than
ipsi inclusi vel colla vincienda catenis traderent, vel
they shut-in either their-necks to-be-bound with-chains should-hand-over or
longa fame afflicti sævissima morte afficerentur. Sequenti
by-long hunger afflicted with-most-cruel death should-be-afflicted on-the-following
interea nocte Corineus inivit consilium cum Bruto, se
meanwhile night Corineus entered counsel with Brutus himself
velle scilicet per quædam divortia in eadem nocte egredi,
to-wish namely through certain by-ways on the-same night to-go-out
et intra nemus quod prope erat, usque ad diem delitere.
and within the-forest which near was all-the-way to day to-lie-hid
Et dum Brutus sub diluculo egressus cum hostibus
and while Brutus at dawn having-gone-out with the-enemies
dimicaret: ipse cum sua cohorte a tergo superveniret,
was-fighting he-himself with his-own cohort from the-back should-come-upon
et facto impetu stragem ingereret. Placuit itaque Bruto
and made the-attack slaughter should-heap-on pleased and-so to-Brutus
Corinei sententia: qui ut prædixerat, callide egressus cum
of-Corineus the-proposal who as he-had-foretold craftily having-gone-out with
tribus milibus, occulta nemorum petivit. Adveniente ergo
three thousand the-hidden-parts of-the-forests sought arriving therefore
postera die statuit Brutus suos per turmas, et apertis castris
the-next day arranged Brutus his-own into troops and opened the-camp
pugnaturus egreditur. Occurrunt igitur confestim Galli, et
about-to-fight goes-out run-up therefore forthwith the-Gauls and
facto agmine cum ipso congrediuntur. Concidunt illico
made a-column with him engage fall on-the-spot

in utraque parte multa virorum millia, dum mutua vulnera
on each side many of-men thousands while mutual wounds
dantur: quia nullus adversario parcebat. Erat ibi quidam
are-given because no-one the-adversary spared there-was there a-certain
Tros nomine Turonus Bruti nepos, quo fortior sive
Trojan by-name Turonus of-Brutus nephew than-whom braver or
audacior nullus, excepto Corineo, aderat. Hic solus solo
bolder no-one excepted Corineus was-present this-one alone with-only
gladio suo sexcentos viros peremit. Sed ab irruentibus
sword his-own six-hundred men destroyed but by the-rushing-on
Gallis citius quam debuisset interfectus est. De nomine
Gauls sooner than he-ought-to-have killed he-was from the-name
ipsius prædicta civitas Turonis vocabulum nacta est: quia
his the-aforesaid city Tours the-name obtained has because
ibidem sepultus fuit. Cum igitur utræque turmæ acrius
in-the-same-place buried he-was when therefore both troops more-fiercely
pugnarent, supervenit ex improviso Corineus, et a tergo
were-fighting came-upon from unforeseen Corineus and from the-back
hostes celeriter invasit. Audaciores proinde insurgentes cæteri
the-enemies swiftly attacked bolder accordingly rising-up the-others
ex altera parte incumbunt, stragemque facere contendunt.
from the-other side press-on and-slaughter to-make strive
Itaque Galli solo clamore Corineensium qui a tergo
and-so the-Gauls by-the-mere shout of-the-Corineans who from the-back
invaserant stupefacti sunt. Et arbitrantes plures advenisse quam
had-attacked stunned were and supposing more to-have-come than
advenerant, campum deserere festinant: quos Troes usque
had-come the-field to-desert they-hurry whom the-Trojans continually
ferientes insequuntur: insequendo prosternunt: nec prosternere
striking pursue in-pursuing lay-low nor to-lay-low
cessaverunt, donec victoriam habuerunt. Brutus itaque, licet
they-ceased until victory they-had Brutus and-so although

tantus triumphus illi maximum intulisset gaudium, dolore
so-great a-triumph to-him greatest had-brought joy with-grief
tamen angebatur, quia numerus suorum quotidie minuebatur,
yet he-was-tormented because the-number of-his-own daily was-lessened
Gallorum autem semper multiplicabatur. In dubio tandem
of-the-Gauls moreover always was-multiplied in doubt at-last
existens, an diutius eos oppugnaret, prælegit naves suas
being whether longer them he-should-assault he-preferred the-ships his-own
salva adhuc majori parte suorum, nec non et victoriæ
safe still the-greater part of-his-own nor not also of-the-victory
reverentia adire, atque insulam, quam ei divinus prædixerat
with-the-honor to-approach and the-island which to-him the-divine had-foretold
monitus, exigere. Nec mora, petivit suorum assensu classem
admonition to-seek-out nor delay he-sought of-his-own with-the-assent fleet
suam, et replevit eam universis divitiis vel deliciis quas
his-own and filled it with-all riches or delights which
acquisiverat, et ipsam ingressus est: prosperis quoque ventis
he-had-acquired and it entered he-has with-favorable also winds
promissam insulam exigens, in Totonesio littore applicuit.
the-promised island seeking-out on the-Totnes shore landed

Brutus et Corineus Albion inter se partiuntur

XVI · BRUTUS AND CORINEUS DIVIDE ALBION

Albion is held only by a few giants, whom the Trojans drive into the mountain caves, and they settle and till the land. Brutus names the island Britain and his people Britons, and Corineus calls his portion Corinea, now Cornwall. When the giant Goemagot attacks a festival, Corineus wrestles him, carries him to a cliff, and hurls him into the sea, and the place is called Goemagot's Leap.

Erat tunc nomen insulæ Albion, quæ a nemine, exceptis
was then the-name of-the-island Albion which by no-one excepted
paucis gigantibus, inhabitabatur, amœno tamen situ locorum
a-few giants was-inhabited by-pleasant yet situation of-places
et copia piscosorum fluminum, nemoribusque prælecta,
and by-the-abundance of-fish-filled rivers and-by-forests preferred
affectum habitandi Bruto sociisque inferebat. Peragratis
a-desire of-dwelling to-Brutus and-to-the-comrades it-brought traveled-through
ergo quibusque provinciis, repertos gigantes ad cavernas
therefore all provinces the-found giants to the-caverns
montium fugant, patriam donante duce sortiuntur.
of-the-mountains they-put-to-flight the-country granting the-leader they-share-by-lot
Agros colere incipiunt, domos ædificare, ita ut brevi tempore
the-fields to-till they-begin houses to-build so that in-short time
terram ab ævo inhabitatam censeres. Denique Brutus
the-land from an-age inhabited you-would-have-thought finally Brutus
de nomine suo insulam Britanniam, sociosque suos
from the-name his-own the-island Britain and-the-comrades his-own
Britones appellat: volebat enim ex derivatione nominis
Britons calls he-wished for from the-derivation of-the-name
memoriam habere perpetuam. Unde postmodum loquela
a-memory to-have perpetual whence afterward the-speech

gentis, quæ prius Trojana sive curvum Græcum nuncupabatur,
of-the-people which before Trojan or crooked Greek was-called
Britannica dicta est. At Corineus portionem regni quæ
British called was but Corineus the-portion of-the-kingdom which
sorti suæ cesserat, ab appellatione sui nominis Corineam
to-lot his-own had-fallen from the-naming of-his-own name Corinea
vocat, populumque Corineiensem, exemplum ducis insecutus:
calls and-the-people Corineans the-example of-the-leader having-followed
qui cum præ omnibus qui advenerant electionem provinciarum
who though before all who had-come the-choice of-the-provinces
posset habere, maluit regionem illam quæ nunc vel a
he-could to-have preferred region that which now either from
cornu Britanniæ, vel per corruptionem prædicti nominis
the-horn of-Britain or through the-corruption of-the-aforesaid name
Cornubia appellatur. Delectabat enim eum contra gigantes
Cornwall is-called it-delighted for him against giants
dimicare, quorum copia plus ibidem abundabat quam
to-fight of-whom the-abundance more in-the-same-place abounded than
in ulla provinciarum, quæ consociis suis distributæ fuerant.
in any of-the-provinces which to-the-comrades his-own distributed had-been
Erat ibi inter ceteros detestabilis quidam nomine Goëmagot
there-was there among the-others detestable a-certain by-name Goemagot
staturæ duodecim cubitorum, qui tantæ virtutis existens,
of-stature of-twelve cubits who of-so-great strength being
quercum semel excussam velut virgam coryli evellebat. Quadam
an-oak once shaken like a-rod of-hazel pulled-up a-certain
die dum Brutus in portu quo applicuerat festivum Diis
day while Brutus in the-harbor where he-had-landed a-festive for-the-gods
diem celebraret, supervenit ille cum viginti gigantibus, atque
day was-celebrating came-upon he with twenty giants and
dirissima cæde Britones affecit. At Britones tandem undique
with-most-dire slaughter the-Britons afflicted but the-Britons at-last from-all-sides

confluentes in eos prævaluerunt: omnesque præter Goëmagot
flowing-together against them prevailed and-all except Goemagot
interfecerunt. Hunc Brutus vivum reservari præceperat, volens
killed this-one Brutus alive to-be-kept had-ordered wishing
videre luctationem ipsius et Corinei, qui ultra modum cum
to-see the-wrestling of-him and of-Corineus who beyond measure with
talibus æstuabat congredi. Itaque Corineus maximo fluctuans
such burned to-engage and-so Corineus with-greatest surging
gaudio, succinxit se, et abjectis armis ipsum ad luctandum
joy girded himself and thrown-aside arms him for wrestling
provocat. Inito deinde certamine hinc stat Corineus,
challenges entered then the-contest on-this-side stands Corineus
hinc gigas, et alter alterum vinculis brachiorum annectens,
on-that-side the-giant and one the-other with-bonds of-arms binding
crebris afflatibus aëra vexant. Nec mora, Goëmagot
with-frequent pantings the-air they-trouble nor delay Goemagot
Corineum maximis viribus astringens, fregit ei tres costas:
Corineus with-greatest strength squeezing broke for-him three ribs
duas in latere dextro, et unam in sinistro. Unde Corineus
two on the-side right and one on the-left whence Corineus
in iram compulsus, suas revocavit vires, et imposuit illum
into anger driven his-own recalled strength and put him
humeris suis, et imposito, quantum velocitas pro pondere
on-shoulders his-own and put-on as-much-as speed for the-weight
sinebat, ad proxima littora cucurrit. Deinde summitatem
allowed to the-nearest shores ran then the-summit
excelsæ rupis nactus, excussit se, et prædictum letale
of-a-lofty cliff having-reached he-shook himself and the-aforesaid deadly
monstrum quod super humeros suos ferebat in mare
monster which upon shoulders his-own he-was-carrying into the-sea
projecit, at ille per abrupta saxa cadens, in mille frusta
hurled but he through steep rocks falling into a-thousand bits

dilaceratus est: et fluctus sanguine maculavit. Locus autem ille
torn was and the-waves with-blood stained the-place moreover that
a præcipitatione gigantis nomen adeptus Lamgoëmagot,
from the-hurling of-the-giant the-name having-obtained Lamgoemagot
id est saltus Goëmagot, usque in præsentem diem vocatur.
that is the-leap of-Goemagot all-the-way into the-present day is-called

Brutus Trojam novam condit

XVII · BRUTUS FOUNDS NEW TROY

Brutus seeks a site for a city and founds it on the Thames, calling it New Troy, later Trinovantum. King Lud, brother of Cassibellaunus, later walls it and names it Kaerlud, the city of Lud, which brings strife with his brother Nennius. Geoffrey passes over the quarrel, since Gildas has told it at length.

Viso tandem regno affectavit Brutus civitatem ædificare.
seen at-last the-kingdom desired Brutus a-city to-build
Affectum itaque suum exequens, circuit totius terræ
the-desire and-so his-own carrying-out he-goes-round of-the-whole land
situm, ut congruum locum inveniret: perveniens autem
the-situation so-that a-fitting place he-might-find arriving moreover
ad Tamensem fluvium, deambulavit per littora, locumque
at the-Thames river he-walked-along through the-shores and-a-place
nactus est proposito suo perspicuum. Condidit itaque
got he-has for-purpose his-own evident he-founded and-so
civitatem ibidem, eamque Trojam novam vocavit: et
a-city in-the-same-place and-it Troy new called and
hoc nomine multis postmodum temporibus appellata tandem
by-this name for-many afterward times called at-last
per corruptionem vocabuli Trinovantum dicta fuit. At
through the-corruption of-the-word Trinovantum called it-was but

postquam Lud Cassibellauni frater, qui cum Julio Cæsare
after Lud of-Cassibellaunus brother who with Julius Caesar
dimicavit, regni gubernaculum adeptus est: cinxit
fought of-the-kingdom the-helm obtained has he-girded
eam nobilissimis muris necnon et turribus mira arte
it with-most-noble walls nor-not also with-towers with-wonderful art
fabricatis: de nomine quoque suo eam Kaerlud dici
built from the-name also his-own it Kaerlud to-be-called
jussit: id est civitas Lud. Unde postea maxima contentio
he-ordered that is the-city of-Lud whence afterward greatest strife
orta est inter ipsum et Nennium fratrem suum: qui graviter
arisen has between him and Nennius brother his-own who heavily
ferebat illum nomen Trojæ in patria sua velle delere.
bore him the-name of-Troy in country his-own to-wish to-destroy
Quam contentionem quia Gildas historiographus satis prolixe
which strife because Gildas the-historian enough at-length
tractavit, eam præterire præelegi, ne id quod tantus scriptor
treated it to-pass-over I-preferred lest that which so-great a-writer
tanto stylo paravit viliori dictamine videar maculare.
with-so-great style he-prepared with-meaner composition I-may-seem to-stain

Urbem conditam civibus donat

XVIII · BRUTUS GIVES THE CITY TO ITS CITIZENS

Brutus gives the new city to its citizens with laws by which to live in peace. Eli the priest then rules in Judea, and the Philistines have taken the ark of the covenant. The sons of Hector reign in Troy, having driven out Antenor's descendants, and Silvius Aeneas, son of Aeneas and Brutus' uncle, reigns in Italy, third king of the Latins.

Postquam igitur prædictus dux prædictam urbem condidit,
after therefore the-aforesaid leader the-aforesaid city founded
dedicavit eam civibus jure victuris, deditque legem qua
he-dedicated it to-the-citizens by-law about-to-live and-gave a-law by-which
pacifice tractarentur. Regnabat tunc in Judæa Heli sacerdos,
peacefully they-might-be-handled reigned then in Judea Eli the-priest
et arca testamenti capta erat a Philisteis. Regnabant in Troja
and the-ark of-the-covenant taken had-been by the-Philistines reigned in Troy
filii Hectoris, expulsis posteris Antenoris. Regnabat in Italia
the-sons of-Hector driven-out the-descendants of-Antenor reigned in Italy
Silvius Æneas, Æneæ filius, avunculus Bruti, Latinorum tertius.
Silvius Aeneas of-Aeneas son uncle of-Brutus of-the-Latins third

Bruto mortuo, tres filii regnum partiuntur

I · THE THREE SONS OF BRUTUS DIVIDE THE KINGDOM

Brutus dies in the twenty-fourth year after his arrival, and his three sons divide Britain. Locrinus takes the middle, called Loegria, Kamber the land beyond the Severn, called Kambria, and Albanactus the north, called Albany. Humber, king of the Huns, lands in Albany, kills Albanactus, and drives his people to Locrinus.

Cognoverat autem Brutus Ignogen uxorem suam: et ex ea
had-known moreover Brutus Ignoge wife his-own and from her
genuit tres inclytos filios, quibus erant nomina, Locrinus,
begot three renowned sons to-whom were names Locrinus
Albanactus, et Kamber. Hi, postquam pater vigesimo
Albanactus and Kamber these after the-father in-the-twentieth
quarto anno sui adventus ab hoc seculo migravit,
fourth year of-his-own arrival from this world departed
sepelierunt eum intra urbem quam condiderat, et diviserunt
buried him within the-city which he-had-founded and divided
regnum Britanniæ inter se, et secesserunt unusquisque
the-kingdom of-Britain among themselves and withdrew each-one
in locum suum. Locrinus, qui primogenitus erat, possedit
into place his-own Locrinus who first-born was possessed
mediam partem insulæ, quæ postea de nomine ejus appellata
the-middle part of-the-island which afterward from the-name his called
est Loëgria. Kamber autem partem illam quæ est ultra
was Loegria Kamber moreover part that which is beyond
Sabrinum flumen, quæ nunc Guallia vocatur, quæ de nomine
the-Severn river which now Wales is-called which from the-name
ipsius postmodum Kambria multo tempore dicta fuit: unde
his afterward Kambria for-much time called was whence

adhuc gens patriæ lingua Britannica sese Kambros
still the-people of-the-country in-the-language British itself Kambri
appellat. At Albanactus junior possedit patriam, quæ
calls but Albanactus the-younger possessed the-country which
lingua nostra his temporibus appellatur Scotia: et nomen
in-language our in-these times is-called Scotland and the-name
ei ex nomine suo Albaniam dedit. Illis deinde concordi
to-it from the-name his-own Albany he-gave them then with-harmonious
pace diu regnantibus, applicuit Humber rex Hunnorum in
peace long reigning landed Humber king of-the-Huns in
Albaniam: et commisso prælio cum Albanacto, interfecit
Albany and joined battle with Albanactus he-killed
eum: et gentem patriæ ad Locrinum diffugere coegit.
him and the-people of-the-country to Locrinus to-flee forced

Locrinus Humbrum vincit, Estrildem amore prosequitur

II · LOCRINUS DEFEATS HUMBER AND LOVES ESTRILDIS

Locrinus and Kamber defeat Humber, who drowns in the river that takes his name. Among the spoils Locrinus keeps three captive girls, one of them Estrildis, daughter of a German king, of a beauty whiter than ivory or snow. He wishes to marry her, which enrages Corineus, whose daughter Locrinus has pledged to wed.

Locrinus igitur rumore audito, associavit sibi fratrem
Locrinus therefore the-rumor heard joined to-himself brother
suum Kambrum: et collegit totam juventutem patriæ,
his-own Kamber and gathered the-whole youth of-the-country
et ivit obviam regi Hunnorum circa fluvium qui nunc
and went to-meet the-king of-the-Huns near the-river which now
vocatur Humber. Inito ergo congressu compulit Humbrum
is-called Humber entered therefore the-engagement he-drove Humber

in fugam, qui usque ad fluvium fugiens, submersus est
into flight who all-the-way to the-river fleeing drowned was
in eo, et nomen suum flumini reliquit. Locrinus ergo
in it and name his-own to-the-river left Locrinus therefore
victoria potitus, hostium spolia sociis largitur: nihil
of-the-victory having-gained of-the-enemies the-spoils to-the-comrades lavishes nothing
sibi ipsi retinens præter aurum et argentum quod intra
for-himself himself keeping except the-gold and silver which within
naves invenit. Retinuit quoque sibi tres puellas miræ
the-ships he-found he-kept also for-himself three girls of-wonderful
pulcritudinis, quarum una cujusdam regis Germaniæ fuerat
beauty of-whom one of-a-certain king of-Germany had-been
filia, quam prædictus Humber cum duabus rapuerat
the-daughter whom the-aforesaid Humber with two had-seized
puellis, dum patriam vastaret: erat nomen illi Estrildis,
girls while the-country he-was-laying-waste was the-name to-her Estrildis
et tantæ pulcritudinis erat, quod non facile reperiebatur
and of-so-great beauty she-was that not easily was-found
quæ ei conferri poterat: candorem carnis ejus nec
who with-her to-be-compared could the-whiteness of-the-flesh her neither
nitidum ebur, nec nix recenter cadens, nec lilia ulla vincebant.
gleaming ivory nor snow newly falling nor lilies any surpassed
Amore illius Locrinus captus, ejus cubile inire voluit,
by-love of-her Locrinus taken her bed to-enter wished
ipsamque sibi maritali teda copulare. Quod cum Corineo
and-her to-himself with-marital torch to-join which when to-Corineus
compertum esset, indignatus est ultra modum: quoniam
found-out had-been indignant he-was beyond measure since
Locrinus pactus fuerat sese filiam ipsius ducturum.
Locrinus pledged had himself the-daughter his about-to-marry

Corineus suam filiam Estrildi postpositam indignatur

III · CORINEUS' ANGER

Corineus comes before the king swinging his axe and asks whether this is the reward for the wounds he took in the service of Locrinus' father. He threatens vengeance while his right hand keeps the strength that slew the giants. Their friends intervene, calm him, and make Locrinus keep his pledge.

Adivit ergo regem, et bipennem in dextra manu
he-went therefore to-the-king and the-two-edged-axe in the-right hand
librans, illum hoc modo allocutus est: "Hæccine rependis
swinging him in-this manner addressed he-has is-it-these-things do-you-repay
mihi, Locrine, ob tot vulnera quæ in obsequio patris
to-me O-Locrinus for so-many wounds which in the-service of-father
tui perpessus sum, dum prælia committeret cum ignotis
your suffered I-have while battles he-joined with unknown
gentibus: ut filia mea postposita, te connubio cujusdam
peoples that daughter my set-aside you to-the-marriage of-a-certain
barbaræ submitteres? Non impune feres, dum
barbarian-woman you-should-submit not unpunished you-will-bear-it while
vigor huic inerit dextræ, quæ tot gigantibus per
strength in-this will-be right-hand which from-so-many giants along
Tyrrhena littora gaudia vitæ eripuit." Hoc iterum, iterumque
the-Tyrrhenian shores the-joys of-life snatched this again and-again
proclamans, librabat bipennem quasi eum percussurus:
proclaiming he-was-swinging the-two-edged-axe as-if him about-to-strike
cum amici utrorumque sese interposuerunt. Sedato vero
when the-friends of-both themselves interposed calmed indeed
Corineo, Locrinum quod pepigerat exequi coegerunt.
Corineus Locrinus what he-had-pledged to-carry-out they-forced

Locrinus Guendolænam, Corinei filiam matrimonio ducit

IV · LOCRINUS MARRIES GUENDOLAENA, CORINEUS' DAUGHTER

Locrinus marries Corineus' daughter Guendolaena but hides Estrildis in an underground chamber in Trinovantum. For seven years he visits her in secret, pretending to offer hidden sacrifices to his gods. Estrildis bears a daughter, Sabre, and Guendolaena a son, Maddan, who is raised by his grandfather Corineus.

Duxit itaque Locrinus filiam Corinei Guendolænam
married and-so Locrinus the-daughter of-Corineus Guendolaena
nomine, nec tamen Estrildis amoris oblitus est: sed facto
by-name nor yet of-Estrildis the-love forgotten has but made
in urbe Trinovanto subterraneo, eam in ipso inclusit,
in the-city Trinovantum an-underground-chamber her in it he-shut
familiaribusque suis honorifice servandam tradidit. Volebat
and-to-the-intimates his-own honorably to-be-kept handed-over he-wished
saltem furtivam Venerem cum ea agere. Timore namque
at-least stealthy love with her to-pursue by-fear for
Corinei anxiatus, non audebat eam patenter habere, sed, ut
of-Corineus troubled not he-dared her openly to-have but as
prædictum est, eam occuluit, frequentavitque septem annis
said-before it-has-been her he-hid and-visited for-seven years
integris nemine comperiente, exceptis illis qui ejus familiaritati
whole no-one discovering excepted those who his to-intimacy
proximiores erant. Nempe quotiescunque eam adibat, fingebat
nearer were indeed as-often-as her he-approached he-pretended
se velle occultum sacrificium diis suis facere. Unde quosque
himself to-wish a-secret sacrifice to-gods his-own to-make whence all
falsa credulitate movebat idipsum existimare. Interea gravida
with-false credulity he-moved the-same-thing to-think meanwhile pregnant
facta est Estrildis ediditque filiam miræ pulchritudinis,
made was Estrildis and-bore a-daughter of-wonderful beauty

quam Sabren vocavit. Gravida etiam facta est Guendolœna,
whom Sabre she-called pregnant also made was Guendolaena
genuitque puerum, cui impositum est nomen Maddan. Hic
and-bore a-boy on-whom imposed was the-name Maddan this-one
Corineo avo suo traditus, ipsius documenta discebat.
to-Corineus grandfather his-own handed-over his teachings learned

Locrinus interficitur: Estrildis et Sabre in fluvium præcipitantur

V · LOCRINUS KILLED, ESTRILDIS AND SABRE DROWNED

When Corineus dies, Locrinus abandons Guendolaena and makes Estrildis queen. Guendolaena raises the youth of Cornwall, and Locrinus is killed by an arrow in battle by the Stour. She takes the kingdom, has Estrildis and Sabre thrown into the river now called the Severn, and names the river Sabren after the girl.

Subsequente tandem tempore, defuncto Corineo, deseruit
following at-last time having-died Corineus deserted
Locrinus Guendolœnam, Estrildemque in reginam erexit.
Locrinus Guendolaena and-Estrildis into queen raised
Itaque Guendolœna ultra modum indignans adivit Cornubiam,
and-so Guendolaena beyond measure indignant went to-Cornwall
collectaque totius regni illius juventute cœpit inquietationem
and-gathered of-the-whole kingdom of-that the-youth began harassment
Locrino ingerere. Conserto tandem utrorumque exercitu,
on-Locrinus to-heap joined at-last of-both the-army
commiserunt prælium juxta Sturam fluvium ubi Locrinus,
they-joined battle beside the-Stour river where Locrinus
ictu sagittæ percussus, gaudia vitæ amisit. Perempto igitur
by-a-stroke of-arrow struck the-joys of-life lost slain therefore
illo, cepit Guendolœna regni gubernaculum paterna furens
him took Guendolaena of-the-kingdom the-helm with-paternal raging

insania. Jubet enim Estrildem et filiam eius Sabren præcipitari
madness she-orders for Estrildis and daughter her Sabre to-be-hurled
in fluvium, qui nunc Sabrina dicitur. Fecitque edictum
into the-river which now Severn is-called and-she-made an-edict
per totam Britanniam, ut fluvius nomine puellæ vocaretur.
through all Britain that the-river by-the-name of-the-girl should-be-called
Volebat etenim æternitatis nomen illi impendere, quia maritus
she-wished for of-eternity a-name on-her to-bestow because husband
suus eam generaverat: unde contigit quod usque in hunc
her-own her had-begotten whence it-happened that all-the-way to this
diem appellatum est flumen Britannica lingua Sabren, quod
day called was the-river in-the-British tongue Sabren which
per corruptionem nominis alia lingua Sabrina vocatur.
through corruption of-the-name in-another tongue Sabrina is-called

Guendolæna Maddan regem facit, cui Mempricius succedit

VI · MADDAN AND MEMPRICIUS

After fifteen years Guendolaena gives the throne to her son Maddan and retires to Cornwall, in the days of Samuel and of Homer. Maddan reigns forty years, and his son Mempricius murders his brother Malim at a parley and rules as a tyrant, destroying the nobles. He abandons his wife for sodomy and in his twentieth year is devoured by wolves while hunting.

Regnavit autem Guendolœna quindecim annis post
reigned moreover Guendolaena for-fifteen years after
interfectionem Locrini: qui decem annis regnaverat. Et cum
the-killing of-Locrinus who for-ten years had-reigned and when
vidisset Maddan filium suum ætate adultum, sceptro
she-had-seen Maddan son her-own in-age grown with-the-scepter
regni eum insignivit: contenta regione Cornubiæ, dum
of-the-kingdom him she-marked content with-the-region of-Cornwall while

reliquum vitæ deduceret. Tunc Samuel propheta regnabat in
the-rest of-life she-should-lead then Samuel the-prophet reigned in
Judæa, et Silvius Æneas adhuc vivebat. Et Homerus clarus
Judea and Silvius Aeneas still lived and Homer a-famous
rhetor et poëta habebatur. Insignitus sceptro Maddan, ex
rhetor and poet was-held marked with-the-scepter Maddan of
uxore genuit duos filios Mempricium et Malim. Regnumque
a-wife begot two sons Mempricius and Malim and-the-kingdom
cum pace et diligentia quadraginta annis tractavit. Quo
with peace and diligence for-forty years he-handled who
defuncto, orta est inter prædictos fratres discordia propter
having-died arisen has between the-aforesaid brothers discord on-account-of
regnum: quia uterque totam insulam possidere æstuabat.
the-kingdom because each the-whole island to-possess burned
Mempricius autem affectum suum adimplere desiderans,
Mempricius moreover desire his-own to-fulfill desiring
colloquium inivit cum Malim, quasi concordiam facturus. Sed
a-parley entered with Malim as-if concord about-to-make but
face proditionis inflammatus, ipsum inter prolocutores
with-the-torch of-treachery inflamed him among the-spokesmen
interfecit. Deinde regimen totius insulæ nactus, tantam
killed then the-rule of-the-whole island having-got so-great
tyrannidem exercuit in populum, quod fere quemque
tyranny he-exercised upon the-people that almost every-one
nobilissimum perimebat. Sed et totam progeniem suam
most-noble he-destroyed but also the-whole offspring his-own
exosus, quemcunque sibi in regno posse succedere
hating whomever to-him in the-kingdom to-be-able to-succeed
timebat, vel vi vel proditione opprimebat. Relicta quoque
he-feared either by-force or by-treachery he-crushed left also
propria uxore sua, ex qua inclytum juvenem Ebraucum
own wife his-own by whom the-renowned youth Ebraucus

genuerat, sese Sodomitanæ libidini dedidit non naturalem
he-had-begotten himself to-Sodomite lust gave not natural
Venerem naturali voluptati præferens. Vigesimo tandem
love to-natural pleasure preferring in-the-twentieth at-last
regni sui anno, dum venationem exerceret, secessit
of-kingdom his-own year while hunting he-was-pursuing he-withdrew
a sociis in quandam convallem, ubi a multitudine
from the-comrades into a-certain valley where by a-multitude
rabiosorum luporum circumdatus, miserrime devoratus est.
of-raging wolves surrounded most-miserably devoured he-was
Tunc Saul regnabat in Judæa, et Eurystheus in Lacedæmonia.
then Saul reigned in Judea and Eurystheus in Lacedaemon

Ebraucus Gallos devincit, Kaerebrauc atque alias quasdam urbes condit

VII · EBRAUCUS CONQUERS IN GAUL AND FOUNDS CITIES

Mempricius' son Ebraucus, a man of great stature and strength, reigns forty years. He is the first after Brutus to lead a fleet to Gaul, and he returns rich with plunder. In the days of King David he founds Kaerebrauc beyond the Humber, Alclud toward Albany, and the town on Mount Agned called the Castle of the Maidens.

Defuncto itaque Mempricio Ebraucus filius ejus, vir magnæ
having-died and-so Mempricius Ebraucus son his a-man of-great
staturæ et miræ fortitudinis, regimen Britanniæ suscepit,
stature and of-wonderful strength the-rule of-Britain undertook
quod quadraginta annis tenuit. Hic primus post Brutum
which for-forty years he-held this-one first after Brutus
classem in partes Galliarum duxit, et illato prælio affecit
a-fleet into the-parts of-the-Gauls led and brought-on battle afflicted
provincias cæde virorum atque urbium oppressione:
the-provinces with-slaughter of-men and of-cities with-oppression

infinitaque auri et argenti copia ditatus cum victoria
and-with-infinite of-gold and of-silver abundance enriched with victory
reversus est. Deinde trans Humbrum condidit civitatem,
returned he-has then beyond the-Humber he-founded a-city
quam de nomine suo vocavit Kaerebrauc, hoc est urbem
which from the-name his-own he-called Kaerebrauc that is the-city
Ebrauci. Et tunc David rex regnabat in Judæa, et Silvius
of-Ebraucus and then David the-king reigned in Judea and Silvius
Latinus in Italia, et Gad, Nathan et Asaph prophetabant
Latinus in Italy and Gad Nathan and Asaph prophesied
in Israel. Condidit etiam Ebraucus urbem Alclud versus
in Israel he-founded also Ebraucus the-city Alclud towards
Albaniam, et oppidum montis Agned: quod nunc castellum
Albany and the-town of-the-mount Agned which now the-castle
puellarum dicitur, et montem Dolosorum.
of-the-maidens is-called and the-mount of-the-Deceitful

Ebrauci filii viginti ad Germaniam, viginti filiæ ad Italiam navigant

VIII · THE TWENTY SONS AND THE DAUGHTERS OF EBRAUCUS

Ebraucus has twenty sons and thirty daughters by twenty wives and rules sixty years. He sends his daughters to Silvius Alba in Italy, where they marry Trojan nobles whom the Latin and Sabine women refuse. His sons, led by Assaracus, sail to Germany and win a kingdom there with Silvius Alba's help.

Genuit autem viginti filios ex viginti conjugibus quas habebat,
he-begot moreover twenty sons of twenty wives whom he-had
necnon et triginta filias: regnumque Britanniæ sexaginta
nor-not also thirty daughters and-the-kingdom of-Britain for-sixty
annis fortissime tractavit. Erant autem nomina filiorum ejus,
years most-bravely he-handled were moreover the-names of-the-sons his

Brutus, Viride-scutum, Margadud, Sisillius, Regin, Moravid,
Brutus Greenshield Margadud Sisillius Regin Moravid
Bladud, Lagon, Bodloan, Kincar, Spaden, Gaul, Darden, Eldad,
Bladud Lagon Bodloan Kincar Spaden Gaul Darden Eldad
Juor, Gangu, Hector, Kerin, Rud, Assarach, Buel. Nomina
Juor Gangu Hector Kerin Rud Assaracus Buel the-names
autem filiarum, Gloigni, Ignogni, Oudas, Guenliam, Gaudid,
moreover of-the-daughters Gloigni Ignogni Oudas Guenlian Gaudid
Angarad, Guendoloe, Tangustel, Gorgon, Medlan, Methahel,
Angarad Guendoloe Tangustel Gorgon Medlan Methabel
Ourar, Malure, Kambreda, Ragan, Gael, Ecub, Nest, Cheun,
Ourar Malure Kambreda Ragan Gael Ecub Nest Cheun
Stadud, Gladud, Ebren, Blagan, Aballac, Angaes, Galaes
Stadud Gladud Ebren Blagan Aballac Angaes Galaes
omnium pulcherrima quæ tunc in Britannia sive Gallia fuerant,
of-all most-beautiful who then in Britain or Gaul had-been
Edra, Anaor, Stadial, Egron. Has omnes direxit pater in
Edra Anaor Stadial Egron these all sent the-father into
Italiam ad Silvium Albam qui post Silvium Latinum regnabat.
Italy to Silvius Alba who after Silvius Latinus reigned
Fuerunt ibi maritatæ nobilioribus Trojanis, quorum cubilia
they-were there married to-the-more-noble Trojans whose beds
et Latinæ et Sabinæ diffugiebant. At filii duce
both the-Latin-women and the-Sabine-women shunned but the-sons as-leader
Assaraco fratre direxerunt classem in Germaniam: et auxilio
Assaracus the-brother directed a-fleet into Germany and with-the-help
Silvii Albæ usi, subjugato populo adepti sunt regnum.
of-Silvius Alba having-used subjugated the-people obtained they-have a-kingdom

Brutus, Leil, Hudibras, ordine reges fiunt

IX · BRUTUS GREENSHIELD, LEIL, AND HUDIBRAS

Brutus Greenshield reigns twelve years, and his son Leil founds Kaerleil in the north while Solomon builds the Temple. Leil's weak old age brings civil strife, which his son Hudibras ends. Hudibras founds Canterbury, Winchester, and Shaftesbury, where an eagle speaks while the wall is built.

Brutus autem cognomento Viride-scutum cum patre remansit,
Brutus moreover by-surname Greenshield with the-father remained
regnique gubernaculo potitus post patrem, duodecim
and-of-the-kingdom of-the-helm having-gained after the-father for-twelve
annis regnavit. Huic successit Leil ejus filius, pacis atque
years reigned to-him succeeded Leil his son of-peace and
æquitatis amator. Qui ut prosperitate regni usus est,
of-justice a-lover who when the-prosperity of-the-kingdom enjoyed he-has
in Aquilonari parte Britanniæ civitatem ædificavit, de nomine
in the-northern part of-Britain a-city built from the-name
ejus vocatam Kaerleil. Tunc Salomon cœpit ædificare templum
his called Kaerleil then Solomon began to-build the-temple
Domini in Hierusalem: et regina Saba venit audire sapientiam
of-the-Lord in Jerusalem and the-queen of-Sheba came to-hear the-wisdom
ejus: et tunc Silvius Epitus patri Albæ in regnum successit
his and then Silvius Epitus to-the-father Alba in the-kingdom succeeded
apud Latinos. Vixit deinde Leil post sumtum regnum viginti
among the-Latins lived then Leil after taken the-kingdom for-twenty
quinque annis, sed regnum tepide in fine rexit. Quocirca
five years but the-kingdom feebly at the-end he-ruled wherefore
segnitia insistente, civilis discordia subito in regno orta
sloth pressing civil discord suddenly in the-kingdom arisen
est. Post hunc regnavit filius ejus Hudibras triginta novem
has after this-one reigned the-son his Hudibras for-thirty nine

annis: qui populum ex civili dissidio in concordiam reducens
years who the-people from civil dissension into concord leading-back
condidit Kaerlem, hoc est Kantuariam. Condidit etiam Kaerguen
founded Kaerlem that is Canterbury he-founded also Kaerguen
hoc est Guintoniam, atque oppidum montis Paladur, quod
that is Winchester and the-town of-the-mount Paladur which
nunc Sefovia dicitur. Ibi tunc aquila locuta est, dum murus
now Shaftesbury is-called there then an-eagle spoken has while the-wall
ædificaretur: cujus sermones si veros esse arbitrarer sicut
was-being-built whose speeches if true to-be I-thought as
cetera, memoriæ tradere non diffugerem. Tunc Capys filius
the-other-things to-memory to-hand-down not I-would-shun then Capys son
Epiti regnabat: et Aggeus, Amos, Joel, Azarias prophetabant.
of-Epitus reigned and Haggai Amos Joel Azariah prophesied

Bladud artem magicam exercet

X · BLADUD PRACTICES MAGIC

Bladud founds Bath, with hot baths under the care of Minerva, whose temple keeps undying fires that turn to stony balls. In his time Elijah prays that it not rain, and it does not rain for three and a half years. Bladud teaches necromancy throughout Britain, makes himself wings, tries to fly, and is dashed to pieces on the temple of Apollo in Trinovantum.

Successit deinde Bladud filius, tractavitque regnum viginti
succeeded then Bladud the-son and-handled the-kingdom for-twenty
annis. Hic ædificavit urbem Kaerbadum, quæ nunc Badus
years this-one built a-city Kaerbadum which now Bath
nuncupatur, fecitque in illa calida balnea ad usus mortalium
is-called and-made in it hot baths for the-uses of-mortals
apta. Quibus præfecit numen Minervæ: in cujus æde
fit over-which he-set the-deity of-Minerva in whose temple

inextinguibiles posuit ignes, qui nunquam deficiebant in
inextinguishable he-placed fires which never failed into
favillas, sed ex quo tabescere incipiebant, in saxeos globos
ashes but from when to-waste-away they-began into stony balls
vertebantur. (Tunc Elias oravit ne plueret super terram,
were-turned then Elijah prayed lest it-should-rain upon the-earth
et non pluit annos tres et menses sex.) Hic admodum
and not it-rained years three and months six this-one very
ingeniosus homo fuit, docuitque necromantiam per regnum
ingenious a-man was and-taught necromancy through the-kingdom
Britanniæ: nec præstigia facere quievit, donec paratis sibi alis
of-Britain nor illusions to-make ceased until prepared for-himself wings
ire per summitatem aëris tentavit, ceciditque super templum
to-go through the-top of-the-air he-tried and-fell upon the-temple
Apollinis intra urbem Trinovantum, in multa frusta contritus.
of-Apollo within the-city Trinovantum into many bits crushed

Leir, cui filius deerat, regnum inter filias dividit

XI · LEIR DIVIDES THE KINGDOM AMONG HIS DAUGHTERS

Leir, founder of Leicester, has three daughters and in old age tests which loves him most. Goneril and Regau flatter him and are promised a third of Britain each, but Cordelia says that as much as he has, so much he is worth, and so much she loves him. Angry, he gives her no share, but Aganippus, king of the Franks, takes her as his wife without a dowry.

Dato igitur fatis Bladud, erigitur Leir filius ejusdem in
given therefore to-the-fates Bladud is-raised Leir son of-the-same into
regem, qui sexaginta annis patriam viriliter rexit. Ædificavit
king who for-sixty years the-country manfully ruled he-built
autem super fluvium Soram civitatem quæ Britannice Kaerleir,
moreover upon the-river Soar a-city which in-British Kaerleir

Saxonice vero Leir-Cestre nuncupatur. Cui negata masculini
in-Saxon indeed Leicester is-called to-whom denied of-the-male
sexus prole, natæ sunt ei tantummodo tres filiæ, vocatæ,
sex offspring born were to-him only three daughters called
Gonorilla, Regau, Cordeilla. Qui eas miro amore, sed
Goneril Regau Cordelia who them with-wonderful love but
magis natu minimam, videlicet Cordeillam, diligebat. Cumque
more by-birth the-least namely Cordelia loved and-when
in senectutem vergere cœpisset: cogitavit regnum suum
into old-age to-decline he-had-begun he-thought the-kingdom his-own
ipsis dividere: easque talibus maritis copulare qui easdem
to-them to-divide and-them to-such husbands to-join who the-same
cum regno haberent. Sed ut sciret quæ illarum
with the-kingdom should-have but so-that he-might-know which of-them
majori regni parte dignior esset, adivit singulas ut
of-the-greater of-the-kingdom part more-worthy might-be he-went to-each-one to
interrogaret quæ ipsum magis diligeret. Interrogante ergo
ask which him more loved asking therefore
illo, Gonorilla prius numina cæli testata est, patrem
him Goneril first the-deities of-heaven called-to-witness has the-father
sibi plus cordi esse quam animam quæ in corpore suo
to-her more at-heart to-be than the-soul which in body her-own
degebat. Cui pater: "Quoniam senectutem meam vitæ tuæ
dwelt to-whom the-father since old-age my to-life your
præposuisti, te, carissima filia, maritabo juveni quemcunque
you-have-preferred you O-dearest daughter I-shall-marry to-a-youth whomever
elegeris, cum tertia parte Britanniæ." Deinde Regau,
you-will-have-chosen with the-third part of-Britain then Regau
quæ secunda erat, exemplo sororis suæ, benivolentiam
who second was by-the-example of-sister her-own the-goodwill
patris allicere volens, jurejurando respondit se nullatenus
of-the-father to-entice wishing by-oath answered herself by-no-means

conceptum exprimere aliter posse, nisi quod ipsum super
the-thought to-express otherwise to-be-able except that him above
omnes creaturas diligeret. Credulus ergo pater, eadem
all creatures she-loved credulous therefore the-father with-the-same
dignitate quam primogenitæ promiserat, cum alia tertia
dignity which to-the-first-born he-had-promised with another third
parte regni eam maritavit. At Cordeilla ultima, cum
part of-the-kingdom her married but Cordelia the-last when
intellexisset eum prædictarum adulationibus acquievisse,
she-had-understood him of-the-aforesaid-ones to-the-flatteries to-have-assented
tentare illum cupiens, aliter respondere perrexit: "Est uspiam,
to-test him desiring otherwise to-answer proceeded is anywhere
mi pater, filia quæ patrem suum plusquam patrem
my father a-daughter who father her-own more-than a-father
diligere præsumat? non reor equidem ullam esse quæ hoc
to-love would-presume not I-think indeed any to-be who this
fateri audeat: nisi jocosis verbis veritatem celare nitatur.
to-confess would-dare unless with-jesting words the-truth to-hide she-strives
Nempe ego dilexi te semper ut patrem: et adhuc a
indeed I have-loved you always as a-father and still from
proposito meo non divertor. Etsi a me magis extorquere
purpose my not I-turn-aside even-if from me more to-wring
insistis, audi certitudinem amoris, quem adversus te habeo:
you-insist hear the-certainty of-the-love which towards you I-have
et interrogationibus tuis finem impone. Etenim quantum
and to-questions your an-end impose for as-much-as
habes, tantum vales, tantumque te diligo." Porro pater
you-have so-much you-are-worth and-so-much you I-love further the-father
ratus eam ex abundantia cordis dixisse, vehementer
having-thought her from the-abundance of-the-heart to-have-spoken vehemently
indignans, quod responsurus erat manifestare non distulit:
indignant what about-to-answer he-was to-make-plain not delayed

"Quia in tantum senectutem patris tui sprevisti, ut
because to such-a-degree the-old-age of-father your you-have-spurned that
vel eo amore quo me sorores tuæ diligunt dedignata
even with-that love with-which me sisters your love disdained
es diligere, et ego dedignabor te, nec usquam in regno
you-have to-love also I shall-disdain you nor anywhere in kingdom
meo cum tuis sororibus partem habebis. Non dico tamen,
my with your sisters a-part you-will-have not I-say yet
cum filia mea sis, quin te externo alicui (si illum
since daughter my you-are but-that you to-a-foreign someone if him
fortuna obtulerit) utcunque maritem. Illud autem affirmo,
fortune will-have-offered somehow I-may-marry that moreover I-affirm
quod nunquam eo honore quo sorores tuas te
that never with-that honor with-which sisters your you
maritare laborabo. Quippe cum te hucusque plusquam ceteras
to-marry I-shall-labor indeed since you hitherto more-than the-others
dilexerim: tu vero me minus quam ceteræ diligas. Nec
I-have-loved you indeed me less than the-others love nor
mora: consilio procerum regni dedit prædictas puellas
delay by-the-counsel of-the-nobles of-the-kingdom he-gave the-aforesaid girls
duas duobus ducibus, Cornubiæ videlicet et Albaniæ, cum
two to-two dukes of-Cornwall namely and of-Albany with
medietate tantum insulæ: dum ipse viveret. Post obitum
half only of-the-island while he-himself should-live after the-death
autem ejus, totam monarchiam Britanniæ concessit habendam.
moreover his the-whole monarchy of-Britain he-granted to-be-had
Contigit deinde quod Aganippus rex Francorum audita fama
it-happened then that Aganippus king of-the-Franks heard the-fame
pulchritudinis Cordeillæ, continuo nuncios suos ad regem
of-the-beauty of-Cordelia at-once messengers his-own to the-king
direxerit, rogans ut Cordeilla sibi conjugali teda copulanda
directed asking that Cordelia to-him by-the-conjugal torch to-be-joined

traderetur. At pater in prædicta adhuc ira perseverans
should-be-handed-over but the-father in the-aforesaid still anger persisting
respondit, se illam libenter daturum, sed sine terra et
answered himself her gladly about-to-give but without land and
pecunia. Regnum namque suum cum omni auro et argento
money the-kingdom for his-own with all gold and silver
Gonorillæ et Regau, sororibus Cordeillæ distribuerat. Cumque
to-Goneril and to-Regau the-sisters of-Cordelia he-had-distributed and-when
id Aganippo nunciatum fuisset, amore virginis inflammatus,
this to-Aganippus announced had-been by-love of-the-maiden inflamed
misit iterum ad Leirum regem, dicens se satis auri
he-sent again to Leir the-king saying himself enough of-gold
et argenti, aliarumque possessionum habere: quia tertiam
and of-silver and-of-other possessions to-have because the-third
partem Galliæ possidebat: se vero tantummodo puellam
part of-Gaul he-possessed himself indeed only the-girl
captare, ut ex illa hæredes haberet. Denique confirmato
to-seek so-that from her heirs he-might-have finally confirmed
fœdere mittitur Cordeilla ad Galliam, et Aganippo maritatur.
the-pact is-sent Cordelia to Gaul and to-Aganippus is-married

Leir, a filiabus regia potestate privatus, Galliam petit

XII · LEIR, DEPRIVED OF POWER, GOES TO GAUL

The dukes of Albany and Cornwall, Leir's sons-in-law, seize his kingdom. Goneril cuts his sixty knights to thirty, Regau to five, and Goneril again to one, and he crosses to Gaul lamenting that friends loved his gifts and not him. At Karitia, Cordelia secretly provides money, clothes, and forty knights so that he may come to her court as a king.

Post multum vero temporis, ut Leir torpere cœpit
after much indeed of-time when Leir to-grow-torpid began
senio, insurrexerunt in eum prædicti duces, quibus
with-old-age rose-up against him the-aforesaid dukes to-whom
Britanniam cum duabus filiabus diviserat, abstuleruntque
Britain with two daughters he-had-divided and-they-took-away
ei regnum regiamque potestatem, quam usque ad illud
from-him the-kingdom and-the-royal power which all-the-way to that
tempus viriliter et gloriose tenuerat. Concordia tamen habita
time manfully and gloriously he-had-held with-concord yet had
retinuit eum alter generorum Maglaunus dux Albaniæ cum
kept him one of-the-sons-in-law Maglaunus duke of-Albany with
sexaginta militibus, ne secum inglorius maneret. Elapso
sixty knights lest with-him inglorious he-should-remain having-elapsed
deinde biennio, moram ipso apud generum faciente, indignata
then two-years a-stay he with the-son-in-law making indignant
est Gonorilla filia ob multitudinem militum ejus,
was Goneril the-daughter on-account-of the-multitude of-knights his
qui convicia ministris inferebant, quia eis profusior
who insults on-the-servants heaped because to-them more-lavish
epinomia non præbebatur. Proinde maritum suum affata,
provision not was-offered accordingly husband her-own having-addressed

jussit patrem obsequio triginta militum contentum esse,
she-ordered the-father with-the-service of-thirty knights content to-be
relictis ceteris triginta quos habebat. Unde rex iratus, relicto
left the-other thirty whom he-had whence the-king angry left
Maglauno, petivit Hernuinum ducem Cornubiæ cui alteram
Maglaunus sought Hernuinus duke of-Cornwall to-whom the-other
natam Regau maritaverat. Et cum a duce honorifice receptus
daughter Regau he-had-married and when by the-duke honorably received
fuisset, non præteriit annus quin inter eorum familias
he-had-been not passed a-year but-that between their households
discordia orta fuerit: quamobrem Regau in indignationem
discord arisen had wherefore Regau into indignation
versa, præcepit patri cunctos milites suos deserere præter
turned ordered to-the-father all knights his-own to-desert except
quinque qui ei obsequium præstarent. Porro pater ultra
five who to-him service should-offer further the-father beyond
modum anxius, reversus est iterum ad primogenitam, sperans
measure anxious returned has again to the-first-born hoping
se posse eam in pietatem commovere, ut cum familia
himself to-be-able her to pity to-move that with household
sua retineretur. At illa a cœpta indignatione nequaquam
his-own he-might-be-kept but she from begun indignation by-no-means
reversa est, sed per numina cæli juravit, quod nullatenus
returned has but by the-deities of-heaven swore that by-no-means
secum remaneret, nisi postpositis ceteris, solo milite
with-herself he-should-remain unless set-aside the-others with-a-single knight
contentus esset. Increpabat etiam eum senem, et nulla
content he-were she-rebuked also him an-old-man and in-no
re abundantem, velle cum tanta militia incedere. Cumque
thing abounding to-wish with so-great knighthood to-go-about and-when
illa assensum voluntati ejus nullatenus præbuisset: paruit
she assent to-will his by-no-means had-offered obeyed

ille, et relictis cæteris cum solo milite contentus remansit.
he and left the-others with a-single knight content remained
At cum in memoriam pristinæ dignitatis reductus fuisset,
but when into memory of-former dignity led-back he-had-been
suam detestando miseriam in quam redactus erat: cogitare
his-own cursing misery into which reduced he-was to-think
cœpit minimam filiam trans Oceanum adire. Sed dubitabat
he-began the-youngest daughter across the-Ocean to-approach but he-feared
nihil ipsam sibi velle facere, quoniam tam ingloriose, ut
nothing her for-him to-wish to-do since so ingloriously as
prædictum est, eam habuisset. Indignans tamen miseriam
said-before it-has-been her he-had-held indignant yet misery
suam diutius ferre, in Gallias transfretavit. Sed transfretando
his-own longer to-bear into the-Gauls he-crossed but in-crossing
cum se vidisset tertium inter principes qui aderant: in
when himself he-had-seen third among the-princes who were-present into
hæc verba cum fletu et singultu prorupit: "O irrevocabilia
these words with weeping and sobbing burst-out O irrevocable
factorum decreta, quæ solito cursu iter fixum tenditis!
of-deeds decrees which by-the-accustomed course a-path fixed you-hold
Cur unquam me ad instabilem felicitatem promovere voluistis:
why ever me to unstable happiness to-advance did-you-wish
cum major pœna sit ipsam amissam recolere, quam sequentis
since greater penalty it-is it lost to-recall than of-following
infelicitatis præsentia urgeri. Magis enim aggravat me illius
unhappiness by-the-presence to-be-pressed more for weighs-down me of-that
temporis memoria, quo tot centenis milibus militum
time the-memory in-which so-many hundreds thousands of-knights
stipatus et mœnia urbium diruere, et provincias hostium
surrounded both the-walls of-cities to-pull-down and the-provinces of-enemies
vastare solebam: quam calamitas miseriæ meæ, quæ ipsos,
to-lay-waste I-was-accustomed than the-calamity of-misery my which them

qui jam sub pedibus meis jacebant, debilitatem meam
who already under feet my lay weakness my
deridere coegit. O irata fortuna! venietne dies unquam
to-mock has-forced O angry fortune will-come-whether a-day ever
qua ipsis vicem reddere potero: qui sic tempora mea
in-which to-them a-return to-render I-shall-be-able who thus times my
sicut paupertatem meam diffugerunt! O Cordeilla filia, quam
as poverty my have-fled O Cordelia daughter how
vera sunt dicta illa quæ mihi respondisti, quando quæsivi
true are words those which to-me you-answered when I-asked
a te, quem amorem adversus me haberes: dixisti enim,
from you what love towards me you-had you-said for
Quantum habes, tantum vales, tantumque te diligo: dum
as-much-as you-have so-much you-are-worth and-so-much you I-love while
igitur habui quod dare potui, visus fui valere eis qui
therefore I-had what to-give I-could seemed I-was to-be-worth to-those who
non mihi sed donis meis amici fuerant. Interim dilexerunt
not to-me but to-gifts my friends had-been meanwhile they-loved
me, sed magis munera mea. Nam abeuntibus muneribus,
me but more gifts my for going-away the-gifts
et ipsi abierunt. Sed qua fronte, carissima filia, te
also they went-away but with-what face O-dearest daughter you
audebo adire, qui ob prædicta verba iratus putavi
shall-I-dare to-approach who on-account-of the-aforesaid words angry I-thought
te deterius maritare quam sorores tuas, quæ post tot
you worse to-marry than sisters your who after so-many
beneficia quæ eis impendi, me exulem et pauperem esse
benefits which on-them I-bestowed me an-exile and poor to-be
patiuntur." Ut tandem hæc et his similia dicendo
allow when at-last these-things and to-these similar-things saying
applicuit, venit Karitiam, ubi filia sua erat. Expectans
he-landed he-came to-Karitia where daughter his-own was waiting

autem extra urbem, misit ei nuncium suum qui indicaret
moreover outside the-city he-sent to-her messenger his-own who should-show
ipsum in tantam miseriam collapsum, et quia non habebat
him into so-great misery fallen and because not he-had
quod comederet aut indueret, misericordiam illius petebat.
what he-might-eat or might-put-on the-mercy of-her he-sought
Quo indicato, commota est Cordeilla, et flevit amare,
which shown moved was Cordelia and wept bitterly
quæsivitque quot milites secum haberet: qui respondit,
and-asked how-many knights with-himself he-had who answered
ipsum neminem habere, excepto quodam armigero qui foris
him no-one to-have excepted a-certain squire who outside
cum eo expectabat. Tunc illa cepit quantum opus erat auri
with him was-waiting then she took as-much-as need was of-gold
et argenti, deditque nuncio, præcipiens ut patrem ad
and of-silver and-gave to-the-messenger ordering that the-father to
aliam civitatem duceret, ibique ipsum infirmum fingeret
another city he-should-lead and-there him sick he-should-pretend
et balnearet, indueret et foveret. Jussit etiam ut
and should-bathe should-clothe and should-cherish she-ordered also that
quadraginta milites bene indutos et paratos retineret, et
forty knights well clothed and ready he-should-keep and
tunc demum mandaret regi Aganippo et filiæ suæ
then at-last should-send-word to-the-king Aganippus and to-daughter his-own
sese advenisse. Nuncius illico reversus, direxit Leirem
himself to-have-arrived the-messenger on-the-spot having-returned directed Leir
regem ad aliam civitatem, absconditque eum ibi, donec
the-king to another city and-hid him there until
omnia quæ Cordeilla jusserat perfecisset.
all-things which Cordelia had-ordered he-had-completed

Cordeilla patrem benigniter accipit

XIII · CORDELIA RECEIVES HER FATHER KINDLY

Richly equipped, Leir sends word to Aganippus and Cordelia that his sons-in-law have driven him from Britain and he has come for their help. Aganippus and Cordelia come out with the consuls and nobles to receive him with honor, and they give him command of all Gaul until he is restored to his former dignity.

Mox ut regio apparatu et ornamentis et familia
soon when with-royal equipment and with-ornaments and with-household
insignitus fuit, mandavit Aganippo et filiæ suæ, sese a
marked-out he-was he-sent-word to-Aganippus and to-daughter his-own himself by
generis suis expulsum esse e regno Britanniæ, et ad
sons-in-law his-own driven-out to-be from the-kingdom of-Britain and to
ipsos venisse ut auxilio eorum patriam suam recuperare
them to-have-come that with-the-help of-them country his-own to-recover
valeret. At illi cum consulibus et proceribus obviam
he-might-be-able but they with consuls and nobles to-meet
venientes honorifice susceperunt illum, dederuntque ei
coming honorably received him and-gave to-him
potestatem totius Galliæ donec eum in pristinam dignitatem
the-power of-all Gaul until him into former dignity
restaurassent.
they-had-restored

Leir regnum recuperat

XIV · LEIR RECOVERS HIS KINGDOM

Aganippus gathers every armed knight in Gaul, and Leir leads him, Cordelia, and the host to Britain, where they defeat the sons-in-law. Leir dies in the third year, and Aganippus dies too. Cordelia takes the throne and buries her father in a chamber she had made under the Soar at Leicester, built in honor of two-faced Janus.

Interea misit Aganippus legatos per universam Galliam ad
meanwhile sent Aganippus envoys through all Gaul for
colligendum in ea omnem armatum militem, ut auxilio suo
gathering in it every armed knight so-that with-help his-own
regnum Britanniæ Leiro socero reddere laboraret. Quo facto,
the-kingdom of-Britain to-Leir father-in-law to-restore he-might-labor which done
duxit secum Leir Aganippum filiamque suam et collectam
led with-himself Leir Aganippus and-daughter his-own and the-gathered
multitudinem in Britanniam, pugnavitque cum generis,
multitude into Britain and-fought with the-sons-in-law
et triumpho potitus est. Deinde cum omnes in potestatem
and of-the-triumph gained has then when all into power
suam redegisset: tertio post anno mortuus est. Mortuus
his-own he-had-brought in-the-third after year died he-has dead
est etiam Aganippus. Cordeilla vero regni gubernaculum
is also Aganippus Cordelia but of-the-kingdom the-helm
adepta, sepelivit patrem in quodam subterraneo quod
having-obtained buried the-father in a-certain underground-chamber which
sub Sora fluvio intra Legecestriam fieri præceperat. Erat
under the-Soar river within Leicester to-be-made she-had-ordered was
autem subterraneum illud conditum in honorem bifrontis
moreover underground-chamber that founded in honor of-two-faced

Jani. Ibi omnes operarii urbis adveniente solemnitate
Janus there all the-workmen of-the-city arriving the-festival
diei, opera quæ per annum acturi erant, incipiebant.
of-the-day the-works which through the-year about-to-do they-were began

Cordeilla se ipsa interficit: Margan novarum rerum cupidum Cunedagius vita privat

XV · THE DEATHS OF CORDELIA AND MARGANUS

After five years of peace, Cordelia's nephews Marganus and Cunedagius rise against her, unwilling that Britain be ruled by a woman, and imprison her, where she kills herself in grief. They divide the island at the Humber, but Marganus invades Cunedagius' land and is defeated and killed in Kambria, in a district still called Margan. Cunedagius reigns thirty-three years, and Rome is founded.

Quum igitur Cordeilla per quinquennium pacifice regnum
when therefore Cordelia for five-years peacefully the-kingdom
tractasset, cœperunt eam inquietare duo filii sororum suarum,
had-handled began her to-harass two sons of-sisters her-own
Marganus videlicet et Cunedagius, quæ Maglauno et Henuino
Marganus namely and Cunedagius who to-Maglaunus and to-Henuinus
ducibus conjugatæ fuerant. Ambo juvenes præclaræ probitatis
the-dukes married had-been both youths of-famous prowess
formam habebant: quorum alterum videlicet Marganum
the-form had of-whom one namely Marganus
Maglaunus generaverat: Cunedagium vero Henuinus. Hi itaque
Maglaunus had-begotten Cunedagius but Henuinus these and-so
cum post obitum patrum in ducatus eisdem successissent,
when after the-death of-the-fathers in the-dukedoms to-the-same they-had-succeeded
indignati sunt Britanniam fœminæ potestati subditam esse.
indignant were Britain of-a-woman to-the-power subject to-be

Collectis ergo exercitibus in reginam insurrexerunt, nec
gathered therefore armies against the-queen they-rose nor
a sævitia sua desistere voluerunt, donec quibuscumque
from savagery their-own to-desist they-wished until with-whatever
provinciis vastatis, prælia cum ipsa commiserunt, eamque
provinces laid-waste battles with her they-joined and-her
ad ultimum captam in carcerem posuerunt: ubi, ob
at the-last taken into prison they-put where on-account-of
amissionem regni dolore obducto, sese interfecit. Exin
the-loss of-the-kingdom with-grief overcome herself she-killed thence
partiti sunt juvenes insulam, cujus pars illa quæ trans
divided have the-youths the-island of-which part that which beyond
Humbrum extenditur versus Cathenesiam Margano cessit.
the-Humber stretches towards Caithness to-Marganus fell
Alia vero quæ ab altera parte fluvii ad occasum vergit,
the-other indeed which from the-other side of-the-river to the-west slopes
Cunedagio committitur. Emenso deinde biennio, accesserunt
to-Cunedagius is-committed elapsed then two-years approached
quibus turbatio regni placebat, ad Marganum,
those-to-whom disturbance of-the-kingdom was-pleasing to Marganus
animumque illius subducebant, dicentes turpe dedecus esse
and-the-mind his drew-aside saying shameful disgrace to-be
ipsum, cum primogenitus esset, toti insulæ non
him since the-first-born he-was over-the-whole island not
dominari. Cumque his et pluribus aliis modis incitatus
to-be-lord and-when by-these and by-many other ways roused
fuisset: duxit exercitum per provincias Cunedagii, ignemque
he-had-been he-led an-army through the-provinces of-Cunedagius and-fire
accumulare incepit. Orta igitur discordia, obviavit ei
to-heap he-began having-arisen therefore discord met him
Cunedagius cum omni multitudine sua, factoque congressu,
Cunedagius with all multitude his-own and-made an-engagement

cædem intulit non minimam, et Marganum in fugam
slaughter he-inflicted not least and Marganus into flight
propulit: deinde secutus est eum fugientem a provincia in
drove then followed he-has him fleeing from province into
provinciam, et tandem intercepit eum in pago Kambriæ, qui
province and at-last intercepted him in a-district of-Kambria which
post interfectionem Margani, ejus nomine, videlicet Margan,
after the-killing of-Marganus his by-name namely Margan
hucusque a pagensibus appellatus est. Potitus itaque
hitherto by the-countrymen called was having-gained and-so
victoria Cunedagius, monarchiam totius insulæ adeptus est,
the-victory Cunedagius the-monarchy of-the-whole island obtained has
eamque triginta tribus annis gloriose tractavit. Tunc Esaias
and-it for-thirty three years gloriously handled then Isaiah
et Osee prophetabant: et Roma condita est undecimo
and Hosea prophesied and Rome founded was on-the-eleventh
Calendas Maii, a geminis fratribus Remo et Romulo.
Kalends of-May by the-twin brothers Remus and Romulus

Porrex et Ferrex fratres bellum inter se conserunt. Ferrex moritur

XVI · THE BROTHERS PORREX AND FERREX AT WAR

In the reign of Rivallo it rains blood for three days, and after a line of kings Gorbogudo's sons Ferrex and Porrex quarrel over the succession. Ferrex escapes Porrex's ambush, returns with help from Suhard of the Franks, and is killed in battle with his whole following. Their mother Widen, who loved him more, tears Porrex to pieces in his sleep, and five kings divide the kingdom in civil war.

Postremo, defuncto Cunedagio successit ei Rivallo filius
finally having-died Cunedagius succeeded to-him Rivallo son
ipsius, juvenis pacificus et fortunatus, qui regnum cum
his a-youth peaceful and fortunate who the-kingdom with
diligentia gubernavit. In tempore ejus tribus diebus cecidit
diligence governed in the-time his for-three days fell
pluvia sanguinea, et muscarum affluentia: quibus homines
rain bloody and of-flies an-abundance by-which men
moriebantur. Post hunc vero successit Gurgustius filius ejus:
died after him indeed succeeded Gurgustius son his
cui Sisillius; cui Lago Gurgustii nepos; cui Kinmarcus
to-whom Sisillius to-whom Lago of-Gurgustius nephew to-whom Kinmarcus
Sisillii filius: post hunc Gorbogudo. Huic nati fuerunt duo
of-Sisillius son after him Gorbogudo to-this-one born were two
filii: quorum unus Ferrex, alter Porrex nuncupabatur. Cum
sons of-whom one Ferrex the-other Porrex was-called when
autem in senium vergeret pater, orta est contentio inter eos,
moreover into old-age was-declining the-father arisen has strife between them
uter eorum in regno succederet. At Porrex majori cupiditate
which of-them in the-kingdom should-succeed but Porrex by-greater greed
subductus, paratis insidiis Ferrecem fratrem interficere parat.
drawn-on prepared ambushes Ferrex the-brother to-kill prepares

Quod cum illi compertum fuisset, vitato fratre, in Gallias
which when to-him discovered had-been avoided the-brother into the-Gauls
transfretavit. Sed Suardi regis Francorum auxilio usus,
he-crossed but of-Suhard king of-the-Franks the-help having-used
reversus est et cum fratre dimicavit. Pugnantibus autem
returned he-has and with the-brother fought fighting moreover
illis, Ferrex est interfectus, et tota multitudo quæ eum
them Ferrex was killed and the-whole multitude which him
comitabatur. Porro eorum mater, cui nomen Widen, cum
accompanied further their mother to-whom the-name Widen when
de filii nece certitudinem habuisset, ultra modum
about of-the-son the-death certainty she-had-had beyond measure
commota, in alterius odium versa est. Diligebat namque illum
moved into of-the-other hatred turned has she-loved for him
magis altero. Unde tanta ira ob ipsius mortem
more than-the-other whence with-so-great anger on-account-of his death
ignescebat, ut ipsum in fratrem vindicare affectaret. Nacta
she-blazed that him on the-brother to-avenge she-desired having-got
ergo tempus quo ille sopitus fuerat, aggreditur eum cum
therefore a-time in-which he asleep had-been she-attacks him with
ancillis suis, et in plurimas sectiones dilaceravit. Exinde civilis
handmaids her-own and into very-many sections tore-apart thence civil
discordia multo tempore populum afflixit, et regnum quinque
discord for-much time the-people afflicted and the-kingdom to-five
regibus submissum est, qui sese mutuis cladibus infestabant.
kings submitted was who themselves with-mutual disasters harassed

Dunwallo Molmutius regno potitur; a quo leges Molmutinæ

XVII · DUNWALLO MOLMUTIUS AND HIS LAWS

Dunwallo Molmutius, son of the king of Cornwall, kills the king of Loegria and faces the kings of Kambria and Albany. Dressing six hundred youths in the arms of the dead, he gets among the enemy and kills both kings, then unites the island and makes himself a golden crown. His Molmutine laws give sanctuary to temples and cities and protect roads and plows, and he is buried at Trinovantum by the temple of Concord.

Succedente tandem tempore suscitavit probitas quendam
following at-last time raised-up prowess a-certain
juvenem qui Dunwallo Molmutius vocabatur: erat enim filius
youth who Dunwallo Molmutius was-called he-was for the-son
Clotenis regis Cornubiæ, pulchritudine et audacia omnes reges
of-Cloten king of-Cornwall in-beauty and in-boldness all kings
Britanniæ excellens. Qui ut regimen patriæ post patris
of-Britain excelling who when the-rule of-the-country after of-the-father
obitum suscepit, surrexit in Ymnerem regem Loegriæ, et
the-death he-undertook rose-up against Ymner king of-Loegria and
facto congressu eum interfecit. Deinde convenerunt Rudaucus
made an-engagement him he-killed then came-together Rudaucus
rex Kambriæ atque Staterius rex Albaniæ, confirmatoque
king of-Kambria and Staterius king of-Albany and-confirmed
inter se fœdere duxerunt exercitus suos in provincias
among themselves a-pact they-led armies their-own into the-provinces
Dunwallonis, ædificia et colonos depopulaturi. Quibus
of-Dunwallo the-buildings and the-farmers about-to-ravage whom
obviavit ipse Dunwallo cum triginta milibus virorum,
met he-himself Dunwallo with thirty thousand of-men
præliumque commisit: cumque multum diei, dum pugnarent,
and-battle joined and-when much of-the-day while they-fought

præterisset, nec ipsi victoria provenisset, sevocavit sexcentos
had-passed nor to-him victory had-come he-called-aside six-hundred
audacissimos juvenes, et cunctos arma defunctorum hostium
most-bold youths and all the-arms of-the-dead enemies
sumere præcepit et indui. Ipse etiam projectis illis.
to-take ordered and to-be-clothed he-himself also thrown-away those
quibus armatus erat, similiter fecit. Deinde duxit illos inter
with-which armed he-was likewise did then he-led them among
concurrentes hostium catervas incedendo quasi ex ipsis
the-running-together of-the-enemies bands by-advancing as-if of them
essent: nactus quoque locum quo Rudaucus et Staterius
they-were having-got also the-place where Rudaucus and Staterius
erant, commilitonibus indixit, ut in ipsos irruerent. Facto
were to-the-comrades he-ordered that upon them they-should-rush made
igitur impetu, perimuntur duo prædicti reges, et plures
therefore the-attack are-destroyed the-two aforesaid kings and many
alii cum ipsis. At Dunwallo Molmutius, timens ne a suis
others with them but Dunwallo Molmutius fearing lest by his-own
opprimeretur, revertitur cum sociis suis, et sese exarmavit.
he-might-be-crushed returns with comrades his-own and himself disarmed
Resumptis deinde armis quæ projecerat, socios hortatur
resumed then the-arms which he-had-thrown-away the-comrades he-urges
in hostes irruere: ipsosque acriter invasit. Nec mora, potitus
upon the-enemies to-rush and-them fiercely attacked nor delay gained
est victoria, fugatis ac dispersis hostibus. Denique per
he-has the-victory put-to-flight and scattered the-enemies finally through
patrias supradictorum peremptorum vagando subvertit urbes
the-countries of-the-above-said slain by-wandering he-overthrew cities
et oppida: populumque potestati suæ submisit. Et cum
and towns and-the-people to-power his-own submitted and when
totam insulam omnino subjugasset, fecit sibi diadema ex
the-whole island altogether he-had-subjugated he-made for-himself a-diadem of

auro: insulamque in pristinum statum reduxit. Hic leges
gold and-the-island into former state led-back this-one the-laws
quæ Molmutinæ dicebantur, inter Britones statuit, quæ usque
which Molmutine were-called among the-Britons established which all-the-way
ad hoc tempus inter Anglos celebrantur. Statuit siquidem
to this time among the-English are-celebrated he-established indeed
inter cetera quæ multo tempore post beatus Gildas scripsit:
among other-things which much time after blessed Gildas wrote
ut templa deorum et civitates talem dignitatem haberent,
that the-temples of-the-gods and the-cities such dignity should-have
ut quicumque fugitivus sive reus ad ea confugeret
that whatever fugitive or accused-man to them should-flee
cum venia ab inimico suo abiret. Statuit etiam ut
with pardon from enemy his-own should-go-away he-established also that
viæ quæ ad prædicta templa et ad civitates ducebant:
the-roads which to the-aforesaid temples and to cities led
nec non et aratra colonorum eadem lege confirmaretur. In
nor not also the-plows of-the-farmers by-the-same law should-be-confirmed in
diebus itaque ejus latronum mucrones cessabant: raptorum
the-days and-so his of-robbers the-swords ceased of-plunderers
sævitiæ obturabantur: nec erat usquam qui violentiam
the-savageries were-stopped nor was anywhere who violence
alicui ingereret. Denique ut inter talia quadraginta
on-anyone might-inflict finally when among such-things forty
annos post sumptum diadema explevisset, defunctus est,
years after taken the-diadem he-had-fulfilled died he-has
et in urbe Trinovanto prope templum Concordiæ sepultus,
and in the-city Trinovantum near the-temple of-Concord buried
quod ipse ad confirmationem legum construxerat.
which he-himself for the-confirmation of-the-laws had-built

BOOK III

Discordia inter fratres Brennium et Belinum

I · THE QUARREL OF BRENNIUS AND BELINUS

Dunwallo's sons Belinus and Brennius quarrel over the crown until their friends divide the kingdom. Belinus, the elder, takes the crown with Loegria, Kambria, and Cornwall, and Brennius rules Northumbria under him. After five years flatterers stir Brennius to break the pact, and he goes to Norway and marries the daughter of King Elsingius.

Exin duo filii eius, Belinus videlicet et Brennius, in regnum
thence the-two sons his Belinus namely and Brennius into the-kingdom
succedere volentes, maxima contriti sunt discordia. Contendebant
to-succeed wishing by-greatest worn-down were discord they-contended
enim uter eorum regni diademate insigniretur. Cum itaque
for which of-them of-the-kingdom with-the-diadem should-be-marked when and-so
plures decertationes inter se commiscuissent: interfuerunt
many contests among themselves they-had-mixed intervened
amici utrorumque qui ipsos in concordiam reduxerunt:
the-friends of-both who them into concord led-back
censentes regnum inter eos ea conditione dividendum esse:
judging the-kingdom between them on-that condition to-be-divided to-be
ut Belinus diadema insulæ cum Loegria atque Kambria,
that Belinus the-diadem of-the-island with Loegria and Kambria
nec non et Cornubia possideret: erat enim primogenitus:
nor not also Cornwall should-possess he-was for the-first-born
petebatque Trojana consuetudo ut dignitas hereditatis ei
and-required the-Trojan custom that the-dignity of-the-inheritance to-him
proveniret: Brennius vero, quoniam junior fuerat, fratri
should-come Brennius but since younger he-had-been to-the-brother
subderetur, et Northumbriam ab Humbro usque ad
should-be-subject and Northumbria from the-Humber all-the-way to

Cathenesiam obtineret. Confirmato igitur super his pactionibus
Caithness should-hold confirmed therefore upon these agreements
fœdere, tractaverunt patriam per quinquennium cum pace et
the-pact they-governed the-country for five-years with peace and
justitia. Verum quia discordia sese prosperis rebus semper
justice but because discord itself with-prosperous things always
miscere conatur: affuerunt quidam fabricatores mendacii, qui ad
to-mix tries were-present certain fabricators of-falsehood who to
Brennium accesserunt dicentes: Ut quid ignavia te tantum
Brennius approached saying to what-end sloth you so-much
occupavit, ut Belino subjectionem teneas: cum idem pater
has-seized that to-Belinus subjection you-hold since the-same father
et mater, eademque nobilitas te ei parificet? Adde quod in
and mother and-the-same nobility you to-him makes-equal add that in
pluribus debellationibus expertus es, qui totiens Cheulfo duci
many warrings tested you-have who so-often to-Cheulfus duke
Morinorum in provinciam nostram applicanti resistere potuisti:
of-the-Morini into province our landing to-resist you-could
ipsumque ex regno tuo fugare. Rumpe igitur fœdus quod
and-him from kingdom your to-put-to-flight break therefore the-pact which
tibi dedecori est, et duc filiam Elsingii Norwegensium
to-you for-a-disgrace is and marry the-daughter of-Elsingius of-the-Norwegians
regis, ut ipsius auxilio amissam dignitatem recipias.
king so-that his with-help the-lost dignity you-may-recover
Postquam igitur his et pluribus aliis animum juvenis
after therefore by-these and by-many other-things the-mind of-the-youth
corruperunt: acquievit ipse, adivitque Norwegiam, duxitque
they-corrupted assented he-himself and-went-to Norway and-married
filiam regis, ut a prædictis adulatoribus edoctus fuerat.
the-daughter of-the-king as by the-aforesaid flatterers taught he-had-been

Brennii cum Guichthlaco naumachia: Guichthlacus cum Brennii uxore in Northumbriam applicat

II · BRENNIUS' SEA FIGHT WITH GUICHTHLACUS

Belinus seizes Northumbria in his brother's absence, and Brennius sails back with a Norwegian army. Guichthlacus, king of the Danes, who loves Brennius' bride, pursues the fleet and captures her ship. A storm scatters both fleets, and Guichthlacus is driven with the girl to Northumbria, where he is taken to Belinus.

Interea cum id fratri nunciatum esset, indignatus est,
meanwhile when this to-the-brother announced had-been indignant he-was
quia sic sine licentia sua contra ipsum egisset. Petivit
because thus without leave his-own against him he-had-acted he-sought
itaque Northumbriam, cepitque Comprovincialium civitates,
and-so Northumbria and-took of-the-provincials the-cities
et eas custodibus suis munivit. Porro Brennius, audito
and them with-guards his-own fortified further Brennius heard
rumore qui facta fratris notificaverat, adduxit secum
the-rumor which the-deeds of-the-brother had-made-known brought with-himself
magnam copiam Norwegensium, paratoque navigio rediit
a-great host of-Norwegians and-prepared a-fleet returned
in Britanniam. Cumque æquora securius et prospero
into Britain and-when the-seas more-securely and with-favorable
vento secaret, obviavit ei Guichthlacus Dacorum rex qui
wind he-was-cutting met him Guichthlacus of-the-Danes king who
ipsum insecutus fuerat: æstuaverat namque amore puellæ
him pursued had he-had-burned for with-love of-the-girl
quam Brennius duxerat: unde ultra modum dolens, classem
whom Brennius had-married whence beyond measure grieving a-fleet
paraverat et exercitum, ipsumque citissimis velis sequebatur.
he-had-prepared and an-army and-him with-swiftest sails was-following

Navali igitur congressu facto, cepit forte navem in qua
naval therefore an-engagement made he-took by-chance the-ship in which
erat prædicta puella, et illatis uncis illam inter consocios
was the-aforesaid girl and brought-on hooks it among the-comrades
attraxit. Illis autem hinc et inde intra profundum
drew them moreover on-this-side and on-that within the-deep
congredientibus, irruunt ex improviso adversi venti, factoque
engaging rush-in from unforeseen hostile winds and-made
turbine naves dissipant: dissipatas vero in diversa littora
a-whirlwind the-ships scatter the-scattered indeed onto different shores
compellunt. Rex ergo Daciæ inimica vi ventorum
drive the-king therefore of-Dacia by-hostile force of-the-winds
compulsus, peracto quinque dierum cursu, cum timore
driven completed of-five days a-course with fear
applicuit cum puella in Northumbriam: nescius quam terram
landed with the-girl in Northumbria unknowing which land
inopinabilis eventus obtulisset. Cumque id a Pagensibus
the-unthinkable event had-offered and-when this by the-countrymen
compertum esset, ceperunt illos, duxeruntque ad Belinum qui
discovered had-been they-took them and-led to Belinus who
super maritima adventum fratris expectabat. Erant ibi
on the-seacoast the-arrival of-the-brother was-awaiting there-were there
cum nave Guichthlaci tres aliæ naves: quarum una fuerat
with the-ship of-Guichthlacus three other ships of-which one had-been
ex Brennii navigio. Postquam autem qui essent regi
from of-Brennius the-fleet after moreover who they-were to-the-king
indicaverunt, gaudens, admodum gavisus est id sibi
they-showed rejoicing very rejoiced he-has this to-himself
contigisse, dum sese in fratrem suum vindicare captaret.
to-have-happened while himself on brother his-own to-avenge he-was-seeking

Belinus Brennium pugna fugat: Brennius Galliam petit

III · BELINUS ROUTS BRENNIUS, WHO GOES TO GAUL

Brennius lands in Albany and demands his kingdom and his bride, threatening to lay the island waste. Belinus refuses, and they fight in the forest of Calaterium, where the wounded fall like crops before reapers. Fifteen thousand Norwegians are killed, and Brennius escapes with a single ship to Gaul.

Emensis deinde aliquot diebus, ecce Brennius resociatis
having-passed then some days behold Brennius regathered
navibus in Albaniam applicuit. Exin cum ei captio
ships in Albany landed thence when to-him the-capture
conjugis cæterorumque notificata fuisset: et quod frater
of-the-wife and-of-the-others made-known had-been and that the-brother
ei regnum Northumbriæ, dum aberat, subripuisset:
from-him the-kingdom of-Northumbria while he-was-absent had-snatched
misit nuncios suos ad eum, mandans ut regnum, et
he-sent messengers his-own to him commanding that the-kingdom and
sponsa redderentur. Sin autem, testatur se totam insulam
the-bride should-be-returned if-not moreover he-testifies himself the-whole island
a mari usque ad mare vastaturum: ipsum etiam fratrem
from sea all-the-way to sea about-to-lay-waste him also the-brother
interfecturum si copia congrediendi ipsi præstaretur.
about-to-kill if an-opportunity of-engaging to-him were-offered
Quod cum Belinus scivisset, negavit plane quod petebat:
which when Belinus had-known he-denied flatly what he-was-seeking
collectoque omni milite insulæ, venit in Albaniam contra
and-gathered every knight of-the-island came into Albany against
illum pugnaturus. At Brennius ut scivit repulsam sese
him about-to-fight but Brennius when he-knew a-refusal himself
passum fuisse, germanumque hoc modo contra se venire,
suffered to-have and-the-brother in-this manner against himself to-come

ivit obviam illi in nemore quod vocatur Calaterium, ut cum
went to-meet him in the-forest which is-called Calaterium so-that with
eo congrederetur. Ut igitur eundem nacti sunt campum,
him he-might-engage when therefore the-same reached they-have field
diviserunt uterque socios suos in turmas, cominusque
divided each comrades his-own into troops and-hand-to-hand
aggredientes præliari cœperunt. Multum diei in præliando
attacking to-fight began much of-the-day in fighting
consumserunt, quia in utraque parte probatissimi viri dexteras
they-spent because on each side most-proven men right-hands
commiscebant. Multum cruoris hinc et inde fuderunt,
mingled much of-gore on-this-side and on-that they-shed
quia tela ipsorum viribus vibrata, lætifera vulnera ingerebant.
because weapons their by-strength hurled deadly wounds heaped-on
Concidebant inter corruentes cohortes vulnerati, quemadmodum
fell among the-collapsing cohorts the-wounded just-as
segetes cum a falcatoribus aggrediuntur. Denique prævalentibus
crops when by the-reapers are-attacked finally prevailing
Britonibus, diffugiunt Norwegenses laceratis agminibus, ad
the-Britons flee the-Norwegians torn columns to
naves: quos fugientes insequitur Belinus, cædem sine pietate
the-ships whom fleeing pursues Belinus slaughter without pity
faciens. Ceciderunt in illo prælio quindecim millia hominum:
making fell in that battle fifteen thousand of-men
nec ex residuis mille superfuerunt, qui illæsi abscederent.
nor of the-remaining a-thousand survived who unhurt might-depart
At Brennius vix unam navem nactus, ut fortuna conduxerat,
but Brennius scarcely one ship having-got as fortune had-led
Gallicana littora petivit. Cæteri vero qui cum illo advenerant,
the-Gallic shores sought the-others but who with him had-come
quo casus ducebat, latebras exigebant.
whither chance led hiding-places sought-out

Rex Daciæ, cum Brennii uxore, ex carcere demittuntur

IV · THE KING OF DENMARK RELEASED

Belinus calls his nobles to York to decide the fate of the Danish king. Guichthlacus offers to submit himself and Denmark, to pay yearly tribute, and to give oaths and hostages if he may go free with his lady. The nobles agree, and he returns to Denmark with her.

Cum igitur Belino victoria cessisset, convocavit omnes
when therefore to-Belinus victory had-fallen he-called-together all
regni proceres intra Eboracum consilio ipsorum
of-the-kingdom the-nobles within York by-the-counsel their
tractaturus quid de rege Dacorum faceret. Mandaverat
about-to-handle what about the-king of-the-Danes he-should-do he-had-sent-word
namque ei ex carcere quod sese regnumque Daciæ
for to-him from prison that himself and-the-kingdom of-Dacia
ei submitteret, tributumque singulis annis donaret, si
to-him he-would-submit and-tribute in-each years would-give if
cum amica sua liber sineretur abire: mandavit etiam
with mistress his-own free he-were-allowed to-go-away he-sent-word also
quod pactum suum fœdere juramenti et obsidibus
that pact his-own with-the-bond of-oath and with-hostages
confirmaret. Convocatis ergo proceribus, cum id indicatum
he-would-confirm called-together therefore the-nobles when this shown
fuisset, assensum præbuerunt cuncti, ut Belinus petitioni
it-had-been assent offered all that Belinus to-the-petition
Guichthlaci cum prædicta conditione acquiesceret: acquievit
of-Guichthlacus with the-aforesaid condition should-assent assented
ergo ipse: et Guichthlacus ex carcere solutus cum
therefore he-himself and Guichthlacus from prison loosed with
amica sua in Daciam reversus est.
mistress his-own into Dacia returned has

Belinus, devictis adversariis, leges Molmutinas confirmat

V · BELINUS CONFIRMS THE MOLMUTINE LAWS

With no rival left, Belinus confirms his father's laws and the peace of cities and roads. To end disputes over the roads, he builds a road of stone and cement the length of the island from Cornwall to Caithness, another across it from Menevia to Hamo's port, and two more slantwise. Gildas put the laws into Latin and King Alfred into English.

Porro Belinus cum neminem sibi in regno Britanniæ
further Belinus when no-one to-him in the-kingdom of-Britain
resistere animadvertisset: tota insula a mari usque
to-resist he-had-noticed of-the-whole island from sea all-the-way
ad mare potitus: leges quas pater invenerat confirmavit.
to sea having-gained the-laws which the-father had-devised confirmed
Stabilem quoque justitiam per regnum fieri præcepit.
stable also justice through the-kingdom to-be-made he-ordered
Maxime autem indixit, ut civitates et viæ quæ ad civitates
most moreover he-ordained that the-cities and the-roads which to the-cities
ducebant, eandem pacem quam Dunvallo statuerat, haberent:
led the-same peace which Dunwallo had-established should-have
sed de viis orta est discordia, quia nesciebatur quibus
but about the-roads arisen has discord because it-was-not-known by-what
terminis definitæ essent. Rex ergo omne ambiguum legi
boundaries defined they-were the-king therefore every ambiguity from-law
suæ auferre volens, convocavit omnes operarios totius
his-own to-take-away wishing called-together all the-workmen of-the-whole
insulæ: jussitque viam ex cœmento et lapidibus fabricari:
island and-ordered a-road of cement and stones to-be-built
quæ insulæ longitudinem a Cornubico mari usque ad
which of-the-island the-length from the-Cornish sea all-the-way to

Cathenesium littus secaret: et ad civitates quæ intra eam
the-Caithness shore should-cut and to the-cities which within it
erant, recto limite duceret. Jussit etiam aliam fieri
were by-a-straight line should-lead he-ordered also another to-be-made
in latitudinem regni quæ a Menevia urbe, quæ super
across the-breadth of-the-kingdom which from Menevia the-city which on
Demeticum mare sita est, usque ad portum Hamonis
the-Demetian sea situated is all-the-way to the-port of-Hamo
extensa ad urbes intra positas, ducatum ostenderet. Alias
stretched to the-cities within placed guidance should-show others
quoque duas ab obliquo insulæ: quæ ad cæteras civitates
also two from slanting of-the-island which to the-other cities
ducatum præstarent. Deinde sancivit eas omni honore,
guidance should-offer then he-hallowed them with-all honor
omnique dignitate, jurisque sui esse præcepit, quod de illata
and-with-all dignity and-of-right his-own to-be he-ordered that for brought
super eas violentia vindicta sumeretur. Si quis autem scire
upon them violence vengeance should-be-taken if anyone moreover to-know
voluerit omnia quæ de eis statuerit, legat Molmutinas
will-have-wished all-things which about them he-established let-him-read the-Molmutine
leges, quas Gildas historicus de Britannico in Latinum, rex
laws which Gildas the-historian from British into Latin the-king
vero Aluredus de Latino in Anglicum sermonem transtulit.
indeed Alfred from Latin into the-English speech translated

Brennius, dux Allobrogum factus, in Britanniam cum militibus redit

VI · BRENNIUS BECOMES DUKE OF THE ALLOBROGES

Exiled in Gaul with twelve knights, Brennius finds help from no prince until Seginus, duke of the Allobroges, receives him. His prowess, beauty, and skill in hunting win him the duke's fatherly love and his only daughter in marriage. When the duke dies within the year, Brennius binds the nobles to him with the ducal treasure and an open door.

Belino autem cum pace et tranquillitate regnante, frater
Belinus moreover with peace and tranquility reigning the-brother
ejus Brennius in Gallicanum littus (ut prædictum est)
his Brennius onto the-Gallic shore as said-before it-has-been
appulsus, internis anxietatibus cruciatur. Ferebat enim graviter
driven by-inward anxieties is-tormented he-bore for heavily
sese expulsum a patria esse, nec copiam revertendi
himself driven from the-country to-be nor the-means of-returning
habere, ut amissa dignitate frueretur. Nescius ergo
to-have so-that of-the-lost dignity he-might-enjoy unknowing therefore
quid faceret principes Galliæ adivit, duodecim solummodo
what he-should-do the-princes of-Gaul he-went-to by-twelve only
militibus comitatus. Cumque infortunium suum singulis
knights accompanied and-when misfortune his-own to-each-one
ostenderet: nec auxilium ab ullo impetrare quivisset, venit
he-showed nor help from any-one to-obtain he-had-been-able he-came
tandem ad Seginum ducem Allobrogum, et ab eo honorifice
at-last to Seginus duke of-the-Allobroges and by him honorably
susceptus est. Morans autem apud ipsum, accessit in tantam
received he-was staying moreover with him he-came into so-great
familiaritatem ducis, ita ut non esset alter in curia
intimacy of-the-duke so that not there-was another in the-court

qui ei præferretur, in omnibus namque negociis, tam
who to-him might-be-preferred in all for business as-well
in pace, quam in bello probitatem suam monstrabat: adeo
in peace as in war prowess his-own he-showed so
ut dux illum amore paterno diligeret. Erat etiam pulcher
that the-duke him with-love paternal loved he-was also handsome
aspectu, procera et gracilia membra habens, venationem
in-appearance tall and slender limbs having in-hunting
atque aucupatum ut decebat edoctus. Cum ergo in tantam
and fowling as was-fitting taught when therefore into so-great
amicitiam ducis incidisset, statuit dux ut unicam quam
friendship of-the-duke he-had-fallen decided the-duke that the-only which
habebat filiam ipsi maritali lege copularet. Et si masculino
he-had daughter to-him by-marital law he-would-join and if of-the-male
sexu deinceps careret, concedebat ei regnum Allobrogum
sex hereafter he-lacked he-granted to-him the-kingdom of-the-Allobroges
post obitum suum cum filia possidendum. Si autem filius
after the-death his-own with the-daughter to-be-possessed if moreover a-son
ei superveniret, promittebat auxilium, ut in regem Britanniæ
to-him should-come-after he-promised help that into king of-Britain
promoveretur, et non solum id a duce, sed etiam ab omnibus
he-might-be-advanced and not only this by the-duke but also by all
duci subditis heroibus appetebatur: quia in tantam eorum
to-the-duke subject heroes was-desired because into so-great their
amicitiam pervenerat. Nec mora, maritatur puella Brennio,
friendship he-had-come nor delay is-married the-girl to-Brennius
principesque patriæ ei subduntur, soliumque regni
and-the-princes of-the-country to-him are-subjected and-the-throne of-the-kingdom
donatur. Nec annus quo hæc facta sunt integre emensus
is-given nor the-year in-which these-things done were wholly passed
est, cum suprema dies ducis adveniens, ipsum ex hac vita
has when the-last day of-the-duke arriving him from this life

eripuit. Tunc Brennius principes patriæ, quos prius amicitia
snatched then Brennius the-princes of-the-country whom before by-friendship
illexerat, obnoxios sibi facere non diffugit, largiendo
he-had-enticed bound to-himself to-make not shunned by-lavishing
eis thesaurum ducis, qui a tempore atavorum ipsius
on-them the-treasure of-the-duke which from the-time of-forefathers his
reservatus fuerat. Et quod Allobroges pro maximo habebant,
reserved had-been and what the-Allobroges for greatest held
profusus erat in dandis cibis, januam suam nulli prohibens.
lavish he-was in giving foods door his-own to-no-one forbidding

Pax per matrem conciliatur inter fratres, qui Galliam submittendi consilium capiunt

VII · THEIR MOTHER RECONCILES THE BROTHERS

Brennius sails from Normandy with an army against Belinus. As the lines close, their mother Conwenna walks between them, bares her breasts to Brennius, and pleads that his exile has made him a king. Moved, he lays down his helmet, the brothers embrace, and together they resolve to conquer Gaul.

Attractis ergo quibusque in dilectionem suam, deliberavit
drawn therefore all-ones into affection his-own he-deliberated
apud se, qualiter se in Belinum fratrem suum vindicaret.
with himself how himself on Belinus brother his-own he-might-avenge
quod cum populo sibi subdito indicasset, assensum fecerunt
which when to-the-people to-him subject he-had-shown assent made
cuncti, ut cum illo irent ad quodcunque regnum ipsos
all that with him they-would-go to whatever kingdom them
conducere affectasset. Nec mora, grandi collecto exercitu, fœdus
to-lead he-had-desired nor delay a-great gathered army a-pact
cum Gallis inivit, ut per provincias eorum Britanniam
with the-Gauls he-entered that through the-provinces of-them Britain

cum tranquillitate adire sineretur. Exin parato in littore
with tranquility to-approach he-might-be-allowed thence prepared on the-shore
Neustriensium navigio ingressus est mare: secundisque velis
of-the-Neustrians a-fleet entered he-has the-sea and-with-favorable sails
in insulam applicuit. Divulgato igitur adventu ipsius, Belinus
on the-island landed spread-abroad therefore the-arrival his Belinus
frater ascita totius regni juventute obviam perrexit,
the-brother summoned of-the-whole kingdom the-youth to-meet proceeded
prælium cum eo commissurus. Sed cum hinc et inde
battle with him about-to-join but when on-this-side and on-that
statutæ cohortes fere commisceri incepissent, acceleravit mater
arranged the-cohorts almost to-be-mingled had-begun hastened the-mother
amborum, quæ adhuc vivebat, per dispositas turmas incedens.
of-both who still lived through the-arranged troops advancing
Erat nomen illi Conwenna: æstuabatque filium videre, quem
was the-name to-her Conwenna and-she-burned the-son to-see whom
multo tempore non aspexerat. Ut igitur tremulis gradibus
for-much time not she-had-seen when therefore with-trembling steps
locum quo ipse stabat nacta fuit: brachia collo ejus injecit,
the-place where he-himself stood reached she-had her-arms on-neck his threw
desiderata oscula ingeminans. Nudatis quoque uberibus illum
longed-for kisses redoubling bared also the-breasts him
in hunc modum affata est, sermonem impediente singultu:
in this manner addressed she-has the-speech hindering a-sob
“Memento, fili, memento uberum istorum quæ suxisti:
remember O-son remember the-breasts these which you-sucked
matrisque tuæ uteri quo te opifex rerum in hominem
and-of-mother your of-the-womb in-which you the-maker of-things into a-man
ex non homine creavit: unde te in mundum produxit,
from not a-man created whence you into the-world he-brought-forth
angustiis mea viscera cruciantibus. Anxietatum igitur quas pro
with-pangs my vitals torturing of-the-anxieties therefore which for

te passa sum reminiscens, petitioni meæ acquiesce: fratrique
you suffered I-have remembering to-petition my assent and-to-brother
tuo veniam concede: atque inceptam iram compesce: nullam
your pardon grant and the-begun anger restrain none
enim adversus eum habere debes iram, qui tibi nullam
for against him to-have you-ought anger who to-you no
contumeliam intulerit. Nam quod causaris te videlicet a
insult has-brought for as-to-what you-complain you namely from
natione tua per eum expulsum fuisse, si eventum rei
nation your through him driven-out to-have-been if the-outcome of-the-matter
diligentius intueri institeris, nullatenus reperies quod
more-carefully to-view you-will-have-set by-no-means you-will-find what
injustitiam vocabis. Non enim fugavit te ut deterius tibi
injustice you-will-call not for he-put-to-flight you that worse to-you
contingeret: sed coëgit deteriora postponeret ut ad potiora
might-happen but he-forced worse-things you-should-set-aside that to better-things
sublimareris. Subditus namque illi partem regni
you-might-be-raised subject for to-him a-part of-the-kingdom
possidebas, quam ut amisisti, par illi effectus es,
you-possessed which when you-lost equal to-him made you-have-been
Allobrogum regnum adeptus. Quid igitur fecit, nisi quod
of-the-Allobroges the-kingdom having-obtained what therefore did-he except that
ex paupere regulo te in sublimem regem promovit? Adde
from a-poor princeling you into a-lofty king he-advanced add
quod dissidium inter vos ortum non per ipsum sed per te
that the-dissension between you arisen not through him but through you
cœptum fuit, qui auxilio regis Norwegiæ fretus, id ipsum
begun was who with-the-help of-the-king of-Norway relying this very-thing
exurgere æstuaveras." Super his ergo, quæ ipsa cum fletu
to-rise-up you-had-burned upon these therefore which she-herself with weeping
expresserat, motus, sedato animo obedivit: et ultro
had-expressed moved calmed mind he-obeyed and of-his-own-accord

deposita galea, cum illa ad fratrem perrexit. Belinus ergo
laid-down the-helmet with her to the-brother he-proceeded Belinus therefore
ut illum cum vultu pacis ad se venire conspexit,
when him with a-face of-peace to himself to-come he-saw
abjectis armis in amplexus ejusdem cum osculo cucurrit.
thrown-away the-arms into the-embraces of-the-same with a-kiss ran
Nec mora, facti sunt amici, et cohortibus exarmatis urbem
nor delay made they-were friends and the-cohorts disarmed the-city
Trinovantum adiverunt, ibi consilio capto quid facerent,
Trinovantum they-went-to there counsel taken what they-should-do
paraverunt exercitum communem in Galliarum partes ducere,
they-prepared an-army common into of-the-Gauls the-parts to-lead
cunctasque provincias suæ potestati submittere.
and-all provinces to-their-own power to-submit

Post Galliam subactam, Romam petunt

VIII · HAVING SUBDUED GAUL, THEY MARCH ON ROME

A year later the brothers cross to Gaul and defeat the Frankish princes in battle. Within a year they take the kings, overthrow the fortified cities, and subject the whole kingdom. They then march on Rome, ravaging Italy as they go.

Emenso deinde anno transfretaverunt in Gallias, patriamque
having-passed then a-year they-crossed into the-Gauls and-the-country
vastare cœperunt. Quod cum per nationes divulgatum
to-lay-waste began which when through the-nations spread-abroad
fuisset, convenerunt omnes reguli Francorum, obviamque
had-been came-together all the-princelings of-the-Franks and-to-meet
venientes contra eos dimicaverunt. At Belino et Brennio
coming against them fought but to-Belinus and to-Brennius

victoria proveniente; Franci vulneratis catervis diffugerunt.
victory coming the-Franks wounded bands fled
Mox Britones et Allobroges ut triumpho potiti sunt,
soon the-Britons and the-Allobroges when of-the-triumph gained have
fugientes Gallos insequi non cessaverunt, donec captis regibus
the-fleeing Gauls to-pursue not they-ceased until taken the-kings
ipsos ad deditionem coëgerunt. Munitis etiam urbibus
them to surrender they-forced fortified also the-cities
eversis, totum regnum intra unum annum submisserunt
overturned the-whole kingdom within one year they-subjected
Postremo, cum omnes provincias ad deditionem conpulissent,
finally when all provinces to surrender they-had-driven
petiere Romam cum tota multitudine sua, urbesque
they-sought Rome with the-whole multitude their-own and-the-cities
et colonos per Italiam depopulantur.
and the-farmers through Italy they-ravage

Romani fœdus vitiant: urbs Romana capitur

IX · THE ROMANS BREAK THE TREATY, AND ROME IS TAKEN

The consuls Gabius and Porsena buy peace with tribute and hostages, but when the brothers move against Germany, the Romans break the pact and help the Germans. Belinus ambushes the Roman army in a valley, and the brothers besiege Rome, hanging twenty-four hostages before the walls. The consuls attack with a relieving force, but the brothers prevail, kill Gabius, capture Porsena, and take the city.

Erant tunc Romæ duo consules, Gabius et Porsena,
there-were then at-Rome two consuls Gabius and Porsena
quorum regimini patria commissa fuerat: qui cum vidissent
whose to-rule the-country committed had-been who when they-had-seen
nullam gentem sævitiæ Belini atque Brennii resistere
no people to-the-savagery of-Belinus and of-Brennius to-resist

valere, assensu senatorum venerunt ad illos concordiam
to-be-able with-the-assent of-the-senators came to them concord
et amicitiam petentes. Obtulerunt etiam plurima donaria
and friendship seeking they-offered also very-many gifts
auri et argenti, singulisque annis tributum, ut sua
of-gold and of-silver and-in-single years tribute so-that their-own-things
cum pace possidere sinerentur. Sumptis itaque obsidibus,
with peace to-possess they-might-be-allowed taken and-so hostages
veniam donaverunt reges, cohortesque suas in Germaniam
pardon granted the-kings and-the-cohorts their-own into Germany
duxerunt, cumque populum infestare institissent, piguit
led and-when the-people to-harass they-had-set it-irked
Romanos prædicti fœderis: et revocata audacia, Germanis in
the-Romans of-the-aforesaid pact and recalled boldness to-the-Germans to
auxilium processerunt. Quod cum regibus compertum esset,
help they-advanced which when to-the-kings found-out had-been
ultra modum id graviter ferentes, consilium inierunt, quomodo
beyond measure it heavily bearing counsel they-entered how
utrumque populum oppugnarent. Tanta namque multitudo
both peoples they-might-assault so-great for a-multitude
Italorum supervenerat, ita, ut illis terrori essent. Consilio
of-Italians had-come-up so that to-them for-terror they-were counsel
ergo habito, remansit Belinus cum Britonibus in Germania
therefore had remained Belinus with the-Britons in Germany
prælia hostibus illaturus. Brennius vero cum exercitibus
battles on-the-enemies about-to-bring Brennius but with armies
suis Romam adivit, ut ruptum fœdus in Romanos
his-own Rome went-to so-that the-broken pact on the-Romans
vindicaret. Id autem Itali scientes, deseruerunt Germanos,
he-might-avenge this moreover the-Italians knowing deserted the-Germans
et Romam reverti captantes iter Brennii præcedere
and to-Rome to-return seeking the-march of-Brennius to-go-ahead-of

festinaverunt. Belinus itaque ut illud ipsi nunciatum fuerat,
hurried Belinus and-so when that to-him announced had-been
revocato exercitu, præterita nocte acceleravit, quandamque
recalled the-army in-the-past night hastened and-a-certain
vallem nactus, qua hostes præterituri erant, intra illam
valley having-got through-which the-enemies about-to-pass were within it
delituit, et adventum illorum expectavit. Sequenti die instante,
lay-hid and the-arrival of-them awaited the-following day pressing
venerunt Itali ad eundem locum, cœptum iter facientes:
came the-Italians to the-same place the-begun march making
et cum vallem armis hostium fulgere prospexissent,
and when the-valley with-arms of-enemies to-gleam they-had-seen-ahead
confestim stupefacti, arbitrati sunt Brennium, Senonesque
forthwith stunned thought they-have Brennius and-the-Senonian
Gallos adesse. Belinus ergo compertis hostibus, subito
Gauls to-be-present Belinus therefore discovered the-enemies with-sudden
impetu irruptionem fecit in illos, atque acriter invasit. Nec
attack an-inroad made upon them and fiercely attacked nor
mora, Romani ex improviso occupati, quia inermes et sine
delay the-Romans from unforeseen seized because unarmed and without
ordine incedebant, cum fuga campum deseruerunt: quos
order they-were-advancing with flight the-field deserted whom
Belinus sine pietate, sequens trucidare non cessavit, donec
Belinus without pity following to-slaughter not ceased until
superveniente nocte inceptam stragem perficere nequivit. Cum
coming-on night the-begun slaughter to-complete he-could-not with
victoria deinde Brennium petivit: qui jam tribus diebus
victory then Brennius he-sought who already for-three days
Romam obsidebat. Ut ergo communem exercitum fecerunt,
Rome was-besieging when therefore a-common army they-made
invadentes undique urbem, mœnia prosternere insistunt:
attacking from-all-sides the-city the-walls to-lay-low they-press-on

et ut majorem cladem ingererent, erexerunt furcas ante
and that a-greater disaster they-might-heap they-raised gallows before
portas civitatis: obsessisque mandaverunt, quod obsides quos
the-gates of-the-city and-to-the-besieged sent-word that the-hostages whom
dederant in patibulo suspenderent, nisi sese suæ ditioni
they-had-given on the-gibbet they-would-hang unless themselves to-their-own dominion
submitterent. Verum Romani in proposito suo perseverantes,
they-should-submit but the-Romans in purpose their-own persevering
despecta natorum et nepotum pietate, sese defendere
scorned of-the-children and of-the-grandsons the-love themselves to-defend
intendunt. Nam quandoque machinationes eorum contrariis
intend for sometimes the-contrivances of-them with-opposing
vel consimilibus machinationibus conterebant, quandoque vero
or similar contrivances they-crushed sometimes indeed
multimodis telis ipsos a mœnibus repellebant. Cumque id
with-manifold weapons them from the-walls they-repelled and-when this
conspexissent fratres, confestim proterva excandescentes ira,
had-seen the-brothers forthwith with-wanton blazing anger
viginti quatuor nobilissimos obsidum in conspectu parentum
twenty four most-noble of-the-hostages in the-sight of-the-parents
suspendi præceperunt. Romani itaque proteriores insistentes,
to-be-hanged ordered the-Romans and-so more-wanton pressing-on
fretique legatione Gabii et Porsenæ consulum, qui
and-relying on-the-embassy of-Gabius and of-Porsena the-consuls who
ipsis mandaverant quod in auxilium eorum sequenti die
to-them had-sent-word that to help their on-the-following day
venirent: urbem egredi statuerunt, et cum hostibus prælia
they-would-come the-city to-go-out decided and with the-enemies battles
committere. Dumque turmas suas sapienter distribuerunt:
to-join and-while the-troops their-own wisely they-distributed
ecce prædicti consules resociatis sociis qui dispersi fuerant:
behold the-aforesaid consuls regathered comrades who scattered had-been

prælіaturi advenerunt. Densis autem agminibus incedentes, ex
about-to-fight arrived in-dense moreover columns advancing from
improviso invaserunt Allobroges et Britones. Egressis quoque
unforeseen attacked the-Allobroges and the-Britons having-gone-out also
civibus consociatis, stragem non minimam primo fecerunt.
the-citizens joined slaughter not least at-first made
Porro fratres cum cladem commilitonum tam subito illatam
further the-brothers when the-disaster of-the-comrades so suddenly brought-on
inspexissent, admodum anxiati socios hortari cœperunt,
they-had-seen very troubled the-comrades to-exhort began
atque in turmas resociare: crebrasque irruptiones facientes,
and into troops to-regather and-frequent inroads making
hostes retrocedere coegerunt. Postremo peremptis in utraque
the-enemies to-fall-back forced finally destroyed on each
parte ad multa milia pugnantibus, victoria fratribus provenit.
side to many thousands fighting victory to-the-brothers came
Interfecto etiam Gabio, et capto Porsena, urbem ceperunt,
killed also Gabius and taken Porsena the-city they-took
et absconditas civium opes commilitonibus dederunt.
and the-hidden of-the-citizens wealth to-the-comrades they-gave

Brennius Italiam crudeliter opprimit: Belinus domum revertitur

X · BRENNIUS IN ITALY, BELINUS AT HOME

Brennius stays in Italy and rules with unheard-of tyranny, which Geoffrey leaves to the Roman histories. Belinus returns to Britain, builds Kaeresc on the Usk, later the City of the Legions, and a gate on the Thames now called Billingsgate. In his days the people are richer than ever, and his ashes are placed in a golden urn on top of his tower.

Habita ergo victoria remansit Brennius in Italia, populum
had therefore the-victory remained Brennius in Italy the-people
inaudita tyrannide afficiens, cujus cæteros actus et exitum,
with-unheard-of tyranny afflicting whose other acts and end
quia Romanæ historiæ declarant, nequaquam tractare curavi:
because the-Roman histories declare by-no-means to-treat I-have-cared
cum et nimiam prolixitatem huic operi ingessissem, et
since both excessive length on-this work I-would-have-heaped and
id quod alii tractaverunt peragrans a proposito meo
that which others have-treated going-through from purpose my
divertissem. Belinus vero in Britanniam reversus est: et
I-would-have-turned-aside Belinus but into Britain returned has and
cum tranquillitate reliquis vitæ suæ diebus patriam tractavit.
with tranquility for-the-rest of-life his-own days the-country handled
Renovavit etiam ædificatas urbes ubicumque collapsæ fuerant:
he-renewed also the-built cities wherever collapsed they-had
et multas novas ædificavit. Inter cæteras composuit unam super
and many new built among the-others he-built one upon
Oscam flumen prope Sabrinum mare, quæ multis temporibus
the-Usk river near the-Severn sea which for-many times
Kaeresc appellata est. Metropolis Demetiæ fuerat. Postquam
Kaeresc called was metropolis of-Demetia it-had-been after

autem Romani venerunt, præfato nomine deleto, vocata est
moreover the-Romans came the-aforesaid name destroyed called was
urbs Legionum: vocabulum trahens a Romanis legionibus
the-City of-the-Legions the-name drawing from the-Roman legions
quæ ibidem hiemare solebant. Fecit etiam in urbe
which in-the-same-place to-winter were-accustomed he-made also in the-city
Trinovanto januam miræ fabricæ super ripam Tamesis,
Trinovantum a-gate of-wonderful workmanship upon the-bank of-the-Thames
quam de nomine suo cives temporibus istis Belinesgata
which from the-name his-own the-citizens in-times these Billingsgate
vocant. Desuper vero ædificavit turrim miræ magnitudinis:
call above indeed he-built a-tower of-wonderful size
portumque subtus ad pedem applicantibus navibus idoneum.
and-a-port below at the-foot for-landing ships suitable
Leges patris ubique per regnum renovavit. constanti
the-laws of-the-father everywhere through the-kingdom he-renewed to-constant
justitiæ indulgens. In diebus igitur ejus tanta copia divitiarum
justice devoted in the-days therefore his so-great abundance of-riches
populum refecit, quantam nec retro ætas nec subsequens
the-people refreshed as-great-as neither the-former age nor the-following
consecuta habuisse perhibetur. Postremo cum suprema dies
attained to-have-had is-held finally when the-last day
ipsum ex hac vita rapuisset, combustum est ejus corpus, et
him from this life had-snatched burned was his body and
pulvis in aureo cado reconditus: quem in urbe Trinovanto
the-dust in a-golden urn stored which in the-city Trinovantum
in summitate prædictæ turris mira arte locaverunt.
on the-top of-the-aforesaid tower with-wonderful art they-placed

Gurgiunt Brabtruc Dacos rebellantes subigit

XI · GURGIUNT BRABTRUC SUBDUES THE DANES

Belinus' son Gurgiunt Brabtruc follows his father's peace and justice. When the Danish king refuses the tribute paid to his father, Gurgiunt sails to Denmark, kills the king in fierce battles, and returns the country to its former yoke.

Post hæc successit ei Gurgiunt Brabtruc filius ejusdem,
after these-things succeeded to-him Gurgiunt Brabtruc son of-the-same
vir modestus et prudens: qui per omnia paternos actus
a-man modest and prudent who in all-things the-paternal acts
imitans, pacem et justitiam amabat: et cum vicini adversus
imitating peace and justice loved and when the-neighbors against
eum rebellabant, audaciam genitoris revocans, dira prælia
him rebelled the-boldness of-the-father recalling dire battles
committebat, et hostes ad debitam subjectionem reducebat.
he-joined and the-enemies to due subjection led-back
Inter plura alia contigit quod rex Dacorum, qui diebus
among many others it-happened that the-king of-the-Danes who in-the-days
patris tributum eidem reddebat, huic reddere diffugeret,
of-the-father tribute to-the-same rendered to-this-one to-render shunned
et ei debitam subjectionem denegaret: quod ipse graviter
and to-him due subjection denied which he-himself heavily
ferens, duxit navigium in Daciam, afflictoque dirissimis prælliis
bearing led a-fleet into Dacia and-afflicted with-most-dire battles
populo, interfecit regem, patriamque pristino jugo supposuit.
the-people killed the-king and-the-country to-the-former yoke put-under

Hibernia Barclensibus incolenda datur

XII · IRELAND IS GIVEN TO THE BARCLENSES

Returning by the Orkneys, Gurgiunt meets thirty ships of men and women led by Partholoim, exiles from Spain who have wandered the seas for a year and a half. They ask for land, and he sends them to Ireland, then empty, where they settle and multiply. Gurgiunt is buried in the City of the Legions, which he adorned.

Ea tempestate cum post istam victoriam domum per
at-that time when after this victory home through
insulas Orcades rediret, invenit triginta naves viris
the-islands Orkneys he-was-returning he-found thirty ships with-men
et mulieribus plenas: et cum causam adventus eorum
and with-women full and when the-cause of-the-coming of-them
inquisivisset, accessit ad eum dux ipsorum Partholoim
he-had-inquired approached to him the-leader their Partholoim
nomine, et adorato eo veniam et pacem rogavit. Dicebat
by-name and worshiped him pardon and peace asked he-said
autem se ex partibus Hispaniarum expulsum fuisse, et
moreover himself from the-parts of-the-Spains driven-out to-have-been and
maria illa circuire ut locum mansionis haberet. Petebat
the-seas those to-sail-round that a-place of-dwelling he-might-have he-sought
etiam ab eo portiunculam Britanniæ ad inhabitandum, ne
also from him a-little-portion of-Britain for inhabiting lest
odiosum iter maris diutius pererraret: Annus enim cum
the-hateful journey of-the-sea longer he-might-wander a-year for with
dimidio jam elapsus fuerat, ex quo a patria sua pulsus
a-half already elapsed had from which from country his-own driven
per Oceanum cum sociis navigaverat. Ut igitur Gurgiunt
through the-Ocean with the-comrades he-had-sailed when therefore Gurgiunt
Brabtruc ipsos ex Hispania venisse et Barclenses esse
Brabtruc them from Spain to-have-come and Barclenses to-be

vocatos, petitionemque eorum edoctus fuit, misit homines
called and-the-petition of-them taught was he-sent men
cum eis ad insulam Hiberniæ quæ tunc vasta ab omni
with them to the-island of-Ireland which then empty of every
incola erat: eamque eis concessit. Deinde creverunt illic et
inhabitant was and-it to-them granted then they-grew there and
multiplicati sunt: insulamque usque in hodiernum diem
multiplied they-were and-the-island all-the-way into the-present day
tenuerunt. Gurgiunt vero Brabtruc cum dies vitæ suæ cum
they-have-held Gurgiunt but Brabtruc when the-days of-life his-own with
pace explevisset, sepultus fuit in urbe Legionum, quam post
peace he-had-fulfilled buried was in the-City of-the-Legions which after
obitum patris, ædificiis et muris decorare studuerat.
the-death of-the-father with-buildings and with-walls to-adorn he-had-been-eager

Guithelinus regnat: lex Martia instituitur

XIII · GUITHELINUS AND THE MARTIAN LAW

Guithelinus reigns kindly and modestly. His learned wife Marcia devises the law the Britons call Martian, which King Alfred translated as the Mercian law. When he dies, the kingdom falls to Marcia and their son Sisillius, who is only seven.

Post illum autem Guithelinus diadema regni suscepit, quod
after him moreover Guithelinus the-diadem of-the-kingdom took-up which
omni vitæ suæ tempore benigne et modeste tractavit. Erat
in-all of-life his-own time kindly and modestly he-handled there-was
ei nobilis mulier Marcia nomine, omnibus artibus erudita,
to-him a-noble woman Marcia by-name in-all arts learned
hæc inter multa et inaudita, quæ proprio ingenio repererat,
she among many and unheard-of-things which by-her-own wit she-had-found

invenit legem quam Britones Martianam appellaverunt. Hanc
devised a-law which the-Britons Martian called this
etiam rex Aluredus inter cæteras transtulit, et Saxonica lingua
also the-king Alfred among the-others translated and in-the-Saxon tongue
Pa marchitie lage vocavit. At ut Guithelinus obiit, remansit
the Mercian law called but when Guithelinus died remained
regni gubernaculum prædictæ reginæ et filio ipsius,
of-the-kingdom the-helm to-the-aforesaid queen and to-the-son her
qui Sisilius vocabatur. Erat tunc Sisilius septem annorum: nec
who Sisillius was-called was then Sisillius of-seven years nor
ætas ipsius expetebat, ut regnum moderationi ipsius cederet.
the-age his demanded that the-kingdom to-the-government his should-fall

Reges post Guithelinum

XIV · THE KINGS AFTER GUITHELINUS

Marcia rules the island until her death, and Sisillius, Kimarus, and Danius follow. Danius' son by a concubine, Morvidus, would have been famous for his prowess but for his cruelty. Handsome and generous, he has no equal in strength and kills anyone who angers him.

Qua de causa mater, quia consilio et sensu pollebat,
which for reason the-mother because in-counsel and in-sense was-strong
totius insulæ imperium obtinuit. Quæ cum ab hac luce
of-the-whole island the-command held who when from this light
migrasset, Sisillius sumto diademate regni gubernaculo
she-had-departed Sisillius taken the-diadem of-the-kingdom of-the-helm
potitus est. Post illum Kimarus ejus filius regimen obtinuit:
gained has after him Kimarus his son the-rule held
cui successit Danius ejusdem frater. Quo defuncto
to-whom succeeded Danius of-the-same the-brother who having-died

insignitus est Morvidus, quem ex Tangustela concubina
invested was Morvidus whom of Tangustela a-concubine
genuerat. Hic nimia probitate famosissimus esset,
he-had-begotten this-one for-excessive prowess most-famous would-have-been
nisi immoderatæ crudelitati indulsisset: nemini namque
unless to-immoderate cruelty he-had-indulged no-one for
parcebat iratus, quin eum interficeret, si telorum copiam
he-spared angry but-that him he-killed if of-weapons a-supply
reperisset. Erat namque pulcher aspectu, et in dandis
he-had-found he-was for handsome in-appearance and in giving
muneribus profusus: nec erat alter tantæ fortitudinis in
gifts lavish nor was another of-so-great strength in
regno, qui ejus congressum sustinere quivisset.
the-kingdom who his engagement to-sustain could-have

Morvidum fera devorat

XV · A BEAST DEVOURS MORVIDUS

A king of the Morini lands in Northumbria, and Morvidus defeats him, fighting harder than most of his army. He kills every captive himself and has the rest flayed alive and burned. When a monster from the Irish Sea begins devouring the coast dwellers, he fights it alone, spends his weapons in vain, and is swallowed like a little fish.

Temporibus ipsius applicuit quidam rex Moranorum cum
in-the-times his landed a-certain king of-the-Morini with
magna manu in Northumbriam: et patriam vastare cœpit.
a-great band into Northumbria and the-country to-lay-waste began
Cui Morvidus, collecta totius potestatis suæ juventute,
to-whom Morvidus gathered of-the-whole power his-own the-youth
obviam perrexit, et cum illo prœliatus est. Plus ipse solus
to-meet proceeded and with him fought he-has more he alone

in præliando proficiebat quam maxima pars exercitus sui
in fighting achieved than the-greatest part of-army his-own
principatus et ut victoria potitus est, non evasit ullus
of-the-principality and when of-the-victory gained he-has not escaped anyone
vivus quin ipsum interficeret. Jubebat enim unum post alium
alive but-that him he-killed he-ordered for one after another
ante se adduci, ut quemque perimendo crudelitatem suam
before himself to-be-led so-that each-one by-destroying cruelty his-own
satiaret: et cum fatigatus cessisset paulisper, præcipiebat
he-might-sate and when wearied he-had-yielded for-a-little he-ordered
ipsos vivos excoriari et excoriatos comburi. Inter hæc et
them alive to-be-flayed and the-flayed to-be-burned among these and
alia sævitiæ ejus gesta, contigit ei infortunium quoddam
other of-savagery his deeds happened to-him a-misfortune a-certain
quod ejus nequitiam delevit. Advenerat namque ex partibus
which his wickedness wiped-out had-come for from the-parts
Hibernici maris inauditæ feritatis bellua, quæ incolas
of-the-Irish sea of-unheard-of ferocity a-beast which the-inhabitants
maritimos sine intermissione devorabat. Cumque fama
of-the-coast without intermission devoured and-when the-report
aures ejus attigisset: accessit ipse ad illam, et solus
the-ears his had-reached approached he-himself to it and alone
cum sola congressus est. At cum omnia tela sua in
with it-alone engaged he-has but when all weapons his-own on
illam in vanum consumpsisset, acceleravit monstrum illud,
it in vain he-had-spent hastened monster that
et apertis faucibus ipsum velut pisciculum devoravit.
and opened jaws him like a-little-fish devoured

Gorbonius, rex justissimus, regnat

XVI · GORBONIANUS, THE MOST JUST OF KINGS

Morvidus' eldest son Gorbonianus is the most just of kings. He honors the gods, restores and builds temples, protects farmers from their lords, and enriches young warriors so that none needs to wrong another. The island overflows with riches, and he is buried at Trinovantum.

Genuerat ipse quinque filios, quorum primogenitus,
had-begotten he-himself five sons of-whom the-first-born
Gorbonianus nomine, solium regni suscepit. Nullus
Gorbonianus by-name the-throne of-the-kingdom took-up none
ea tempestate eo justior erat, aut amantior æqui,
at-that time than-him more-just was or more-loving of-the-just
nec qui populum majore diligentia tractaret. Mos ejus
nor who the-people with-greater diligence handled the-custom his
continuus erat debitum honorem diis primum impendere:
continual was due honor to-the-gods first to-pay
et rectam plebi justitiam. Per cunctas regni
and right to-the-commoners justice through all of-the-kingdom
Britanniæ civitates templa deorum renovabat, et plura
of-Britain the-cities the-temples of-the-gods he-renewed and many
nova ædificabat. Omnibus diebus ejus tanta divitiarum
new built in-all days his with-so-great of-riches
copia insula affluebat, quantam nullæ collaterales provinciæ
abundance the-island overflowed as-great-as no neighboring provinces
habebant. Quippe colonos ad agriculturam admonebat, ipsos
had indeed the-farmers to agriculture he-urged them
ab injuriis dominorum defendens. Bellatores quoque juvenes
from the-wrongs of-the-lords defending the-warrior also youths
auro et argento ditabat, ita ut nulli opus esset injuriam
with-gold and with-silver he-enriched so that for-none need was wrong

alteri facere. Inter hæc et plura innatæ bonitatis ejus
to-another to-do among these-things and many of-inborn goodness his
gesta, debita naturæ solvens, ab hac luce migravit: et in
deeds the-debts to-nature paying from this light departed and in
urbe Trinovanto sepultus est.
the-city Trinovantum buried he-was

Arthgallo solio depellitur: Elidurus, post quinque annos, regnum Arthgalloni reddit

XVII · ARTHGALLO DEPOSED AND RESTORED

Arthgallo deposes the nobles and robs the rich until they depose him and make his brother Elidurus king. After five years Elidurus finds the exiled Arthgallo in the Calaterian forest, hides him, and summons the princes one by one, threatening each with death unless he submits to Arthgallo. At York he sets his own crown on his brother's head and is called the Dutiful, and Arthgallo reigns ten years reformed.

Post illum Arthgallo frater ejus, regio diademate
after him Arthgallo brother his with-the-royal diadem
insignitur, qui in omnibus suis actibus germano diversus
is-marked who in all his-own acts from-the-brother different
extitit. Nobiles namque ubique laborabat deponere, et
was the-nobles for everywhere he-labored to-depose and
ignobiles exaltare, divitibus quibusque sua auferre,
the-ignoble to-exalt from-the-rich all their-own-things to-take-away
infinitos thesauros accumulans. Quod heroes regni
infinite treasures heaping which the-heroes of-the-kingdom
diutius ferre recusantes, insurrexerunt in illum, et a
longer to-bear refusing rose against him and from
solio regio deposuerunt. Exinde erexerunt Elidurum fratrem
the-throne royal deposed thence they-raised Elidurus brother

ejus, qui postea propter misericordiam quam in fratrem
his who afterward on-account-of the-mercy which towards the-brother
fecit, Pius vocatus fuit: nam cum regnum emenso
he-made the-Dutiful called was for when the-kingdom having-passed
quinquennio possedisset, forte in Calatherio nemore venans,
a-five-year-span he-had-possessed by-chance in the-Calaterian forest hunting
obviavit fratri suo qui depositus fuerat. Ipse vero
he-met brother his-own who deposed had-been he-himself but
peragratis quibuscumque provincialibus regnis auxilium
traveled-through all provincial kingdoms help
quæsiverat, ut amissum honorem recuperare quivisset,
had-sought so-that the-lost honor to-recover he-might-be-able
nec usquam invenerat: et cum supervenientem paupertatem
nor anywhere had-found and when the-coming-on poverty
diutius ferre non potuisset, reversus est in Britanniam,
longer to-bear not he-had-been-able returned he-has into Britain
decem solummodo militibus sociatus. Petens ergo illos quos
with-ten only knights accompanied seeking therefore those whom
dudum habuerat amicos, prædictum nemus præteribat: quum
formerly he-had-had as-friends the-aforesaid forest he-was-passing when
Elidurus ipsius frater ipsum non speratum aspexit. Quo viso,
Elidurus his brother him not hoped-for saw whom seen
cucurrit Elidurus, et amplexatus est illum, infinita oscula
ran Elidurus and embraced he-has him infinite kisses
ingeminans. Et ut diu miseriam fratris deflevit, duxit
redoubling and when long the-misery of-the-brother he-bewailed he-led
illum secum in civitatem Alclud, et in thalamo suo
him with-himself into the-city Alclud and in chamber his-own
occuluit. Post hæc finxit se infirmum ibi, nunciosque
hid after these-things he-pretended himself sick there and-messengers
suos per totum regnum direxit, qui principibus sibi
his-own through the-whole kingdom directed who to-the-princes to-him

subditis suggessissent, ut ad se visitandum venirent.
subject should-suggest that to himself for-visiting they-should-come
Cumque cuncti in urbem qua jacebat convenissent: præcepit
and-when all into the-city where he-lay had-come-together he-ordered
ut unusquisque thalamum suum singillatim et sine tumultu
that each-one chamber his-own one-by-one and without tumult
ingrederetur. Asserebat enim sermonem plurium capiti
should-enter he-asserted for the-talk of-many to-the-head
suo nociturum, si catervatim supervenissent, Credulus
his-own about-to-harm if in-crowds they-had-come-up credulous
ergo quisque jussioni ejus paruit, et unusquisque post
therefore each-one to-the-order his obeyed and each-one after
alterum domum ingressus est. Singulos itaque ingredientes,
another the-house entered has the-single-ones and-so entering
præcipiebat Elidurus ministris, qui ad hoc parati erant, capere,
ordered Elidurus the-servants who for this prepared were to-seize
ipsisque capita amputare, nisi se iterum Arthgalloni
and-from-them the-heads to-cut-off unless themselves again to-Arthgallo
fratri suo submisissent. Sic faciebat separatim de cunctis,
brother his-own they-had-submitted thus he-did separately about all
et omnes Arthgalloni mediante timore pacificavit. Confirmato
and all to-Arthgallo mediating fear he-pacified confirmed
denique fœdere, duxit Elidurus Arthgallonem Eboracum:
finally the-pact led Elidurus Arthgallo to-York
cepitque diadema de capite suo, et fratris capiti
and-took the-diadem from head his-own and of-the-brother on-the-head
imposuit. Unde sortitus est hoc nomen Pius: quia
put whence got he-has this name the-Dutiful because
prædictam pietatem in fratrem habuerat. Regnavit ergo
the-aforesaid dutifulness towards the-brother he-had-had reigned therefore
Arthgallo decem annis, et sese ab incepta nequitia correxit:
Arthgallo for-ten years and himself from the-begun wickedness corrected

vice etenim versa cœpit ignobiles deponere, et generosos
in-turn for reversed he-began the-ignoble to-depose and the-well-born
exaltare. Quod suum erat unicuique permittere, rectamque
to-exalt what his-own was to-each-one to-allow and-right
justitiam exercere. Denique superveniente languore defecit,
justice to-exercise finally coming-on sickness he-failed
et in urbe Kaerleir sepultus est.
and in the-city Kaerleir buried he-was

Elidurus secundum, et post Peredurum mortuum tertium regnat

XVIII · ELIDURUS REIGNS AGAIN

Elidurus is king again, but his brothers Vigenius and Peredurus defeat him, shut him in the tower at Trinovantum, and divide the kingdom. Vigenius dies after seven years, and Peredurus rules the whole kingdom well. When Peredurus dies suddenly, Elidurus is brought from prison and crowned a third time.

Erigitur Elidurus iterum in regem, et pristinæ dignitati
is-raised Elidurus again into king and to-former dignity
restituitur. Sed dum Gorbonianum primogenitum fratrem suum
is-restored but while Gorbonianus the-first-born brother his-own
in omni bonitate sequeretur: duo residui fratres ejus Vigenius
in all goodness he-followed the-two remaining brothers his Vigenius
et Peredurus collectis undique armatis cum illo prœliari
and Peredurus gathered from-everywhere armed-men with him to-fight
aggrediuntur. Potiti vero victoria, ceperunt illum, et intra
undertake having-gained indeed the-victory they-took him and within
turrim urbis Trinovantinæ incluserunt, imponentes custodes.
the-tower of-the-city Trinovantine shut putting-on guards
Post ea partiti sunt regnum in duo: cujus pars quæ ab
after that divided they-have the-kingdom into two of-which the-part which from

Humbro flumine occidentem versus vergit, in sortem cecidit
the-Humber river the-west towards slopes into the-lot fell
Vigenio. Altera vero cum tota Albania Pereduro. Emensis
to-Vigenius the-other indeed with the-whole Albany to-Peredurus having-passed
demum septem annis obiit Vigenius, et totum regnum
at-last seven years died Vigenius and the-whole kingdom
cessit Pereduro. Insignitus itaque sceptro, postmodum illud
fell to-Peredurus marked and-so with-the-scepter afterward it
benigne et modeste gubernavit, ita ut antecessores fratres
kindly and modestly he-governed so that the-preceding brothers
excellere diceretur, nec de Eliduro mentio fieret. Sed cum
to-excel he-was-said nor about Elidurus mention was-made but since
nemini mors parcere sciat: supervenit illa repentino cursu,
to-no-one death to-spare knows came-upon it with-sudden course
ipsumque vitæ subripuit. Educitur continuo Elidurus carcere,
and-him from-life snatched is-led-out at-once Elidurus from-prison
et tertio in solium regni sublimatur: qui cum
and for-the-third-time onto the-throne of-the-kingdom is-raised who when
omne tempus suum in bonitate et justitia explevisset, ab hac
all time his-own in goodness and justice he-had-fulfilled from this
luce migrans exemplum pietatis successoribus suis dereliquit.
light departing an-example of-dutifulness to-successors his-own left

Reges triginta tres post Elidurum

XIX · THIRTY-THREE KINGS AFTER ELIDURUS

Gorbonianus' son rules justly, and Arthgallo's son Marganus keeps the peace. His brother Enniaunus is deposed in his sixth year for tyranny, and a long line of kings follows. Among them Blegabred surpasses all singers and is called the god of minstrels, and Gligueillus is modest, prudent, and just.

Defuncto itaque Eliduro, suscepit Gorboniani filius regni
having-died and-so Elidurus took-up of-Gorbonianus the-son of-the-kingdom
diadema, et Avunculum in sensu et prudentia imitatus est.
the-diadem and the-uncle in sense and prudence imitated he-has
Postposita namque tyrannide justitiam atque misericordiam
set-aside for tyranny justice and mercy
in populum exercebat, nec unquam a tramite rectitudinis
towards the-people he-exercised nor ever from the-path of-rectitude
deviavit. Post illum regnavit Marganus Arthgallonis filius, qui
strayed after him reigned Marganus of-Arthgallo son who
etiam exemplo parentum serenatus gentem Britonum cum
also by-the-example of-the-parents made-serene the-people of-the-Britons with
tranquillitate tractavit. Huic successit Enniaunus frater,
tranquility handled to-this-one succeeded Enniaunus the-brother
qui longe ab illo distans in tractando populum, sexto
who far from him differing in handling the-people in-the-sixth
anno regni sui a regia sede depositus est. Postposita
year of-the-reign his-own from the-royal seat deposed he-was set-aside
namque justitia tyrannidem prælegerat, quæ ipsum a solio
for justice tyranny he-had-preferred which him from the-throne
regni deposuit. In loco ejus fuit positus cognatus ejus
of-the-kingdom deposed in place his was put kinsman his
Idvallo Vigenii filius, qui eventu Enniauni correctus, jus atque
Idvallo of-Vigenius son who by-the-fate of-Enniaunus corrected right and

rectitudinem colebat. Huic successit Runno Pereduri filius:
rectitude cultivated to-this-one succeeded Runno of-Peredurus son
cui Geruntius Eliduri filius. Post illum Catellus filius ejus.
to-whom Geruntius of-Elidurus son after him Catellus son his
Post Catellum, Coillus. Post Coillum, Porrex. Post Porrecem,
after Catellus Coillus after Coillus Porrex after Porrex
Cherin. Huic nati fuerunt tres filii, Fulgenius videlicet atque
Cherin to-this-one born were three sons Fulgenius namely and
Eldadus, necnon et Andragius: qui omnes alter post alterum
Eldadus nor-not also Andragius who all one after another
regnaverunt. Exin successit Urianus Andragii filius: cui
reigned thence succeeded Urianus of-Andragius son to-whom
Eliud: cui Cledancus: cui Cletonus: cui Gurgintius:
Eliud to-whom Cledancus to-whom Cletonus to-whom Gurgintius
cui Merianus: cui Bleduno, cui Cap: cui Oenus:
to-whom Merianus to-whom Bleduno to-whom Cap to-whom Oenus
cui Sisillius: cui Blegabred. Hic omnes cantores quos
to-whom Sisillius to-whom Blegabred this-one all singers whom
præcedens ætas habuerat, et in modulis, et in omnibus musicis
the-preceding age had-had both in melodies and in all musical
instrumentis excedebat: ita ut deus joculatorum diceretur. Post
instruments surpassed so that the-god of-the-minstrels he-was-called after
illum regnavit Arthmail frater suus. Post Arthmail, Eldol: cui
him reigned Arthmail brother his-own after Arthmail Eldol to-whom
successit Redion: cui Rederchius: cui Samuilpenissel:
succeeded Redion to-whom Rederchius to-whom Samuilpenissel
cui Pir: cui Capoir: deinde successit Gligueillus Capoiri
to-whom Pir to-whom Capoir then succeeded Gligueillus of-Capoir
filius, vir in omnibus actibus modestus et prudens, et
son a-man in all acts modest and prudent and
qui super omnes rectam justitiam inter populos exercebat.
who above all right justice among the-peoples exercised

Tres Heli filii, Lud, Nennius, Cassibellaunus

XX · LUD, NENNIUS, AND CASSIBELLAUNUS

Heli reigns forty years and has three sons. Lud rebuilds Trinovantum with walls and towers, and it is named Kaerlud, later London; he is buried by the gate called Ludgate. His sons are too young to rule, so their uncle Cassibellaunus is made king, though he gives Androgeus Trinovantum and Kent and Tenuantius Cornwall.

Post illum successit Heli filius ejus, regnumque quadraginta
after him succeeded Heli son his and-the-kingdom for-forty
annis tractavit. Hic tres generavit filios, Lud, Cassibellaunum,
years handled this-one three begot sons Lud Cassibellaunus
Nennium: quorum primogenitus, videlicet Lud, regnum
Nennius of-whom the-first-born namely Lud the-kingdom
post obitum patris suscepit. Exin gloriosus ædificator
after the-death of-the-father took-up thence a-glorious builder
urbium existens, renovavit muros urbis Trinovanti, et
of-cities being he-renewed the-walls of-the-city Trinovantum and
innumerabilibus turribus eam circumcinxit. Præcepit etiam
with-innumerable towers it girded-round he-ordered also
civibus, ut domus et ædificia sua in eadem construerent,
the-citizens that houses and buildings their-own in the-same they-should-construct
ita ut non esset in longe positis regnis civitas quæ
so that not there-was in far placed kingdoms a-city which
pulcriora palatia contineret. Fuit ipse bellicosus homo et
more-beautiful palaces might-contain was he-himself a-warlike man and
in dandis epulis profusus. Et cum plures civitates possideret,
in giving feasts lavish and though many cities he-possessed
hanc præ omnibus amabat: et in illa majori parte totius
this before all he-loved and in it for-the-greater part of-the-whole
anni commanebat: unde nominata fuit postmodum Kaerlud:
year he-dwelt whence named was afterward Kaerlud

et deinde per corruptionem nominis Kaerlondon. Succedente
and then through corruption of-the-name Kaerlondon following
vero tempore per commutationem linguarum, dicta fuit
indeed time through the-change of-tongues called was
Londoniæ: et postea Londres applicantibus alienigenis, qui
London and afterward Londres landing foreigners who
patriam sibi submittebant. Defuncto tandem illo, corpus
the-country to-themselves subjected having-died at-last him the-body
ejus reconditum fuit in prædicta civitate, juxta portam illam
his stored was in the-aforesaid city beside gate that
quæ adhuc de nomine ejus Parthlud Britannice, Saxonice
which still from the-name his Parthlud in-British in-Saxon
Ludesgata nuncupatur. Nati fuerunt ei duo filii, Androgeus
Ludgate is-called born were to-him two sons Androgeus
et Tenuantius: qui cum propter ætatem regnum tractare
and Tenuantius who when on-account-of age the-kingdom to-handle
nequivissent, Cassibellaunus eorum patruus loco illorum in
they-had-been-unable Cassibellaunus their uncle in-place of-them into
regem sublimatur. Mox ut diademate insignitus fuit, cœpit
king is-raised soon when with-the-diadem marked he-was he-began
ita largitate atque probitate vigere, ut fama illius per remota
so in-largess and in-prowess to-flourish that the-fame his through distant
regna divulgaretur. Unde contigit ut totius regni monarchia
kingdoms was-spread-abroad whence it-happened that of-the-whole kingdom the-monarchy
sibi, et non suis nepotibus cederet. Cassibellaunus tamen,
to-him and not to-his-own nephews fell Cassibellaunus yet
pietati indulgens, noluit juvenes regni esse expertes,
to-dutifulness devoted was-unwilling the-youths of-the-kingdom to-be without-a-share
sed ejus magnam partem eis distribuit. Urbem enim
but of-it a-great part to-them distributed the-city for
Trinovantum cum ducatu Cantiæ largitus est Androgeo:
Trinovantum with the-dukedom of-Kent bestowed he-has on-Androgeus

ducatum vero Cornubiæ Tenuantio. Ipse etiam diademate
the-dukedom indeed of-Cornwall on-Tenuantius he-himself also by-the-diadem
præclarus, illis et totius insulæ principibus imperabat.
distinguished over-them and of-the-whole island over-the-princes ruled

BOOK IV

Julius Cæsar in Britanniam venit

I · JULIUS CAESAR COMES TO BRITAIN

Having subdued Gaul, Julius Caesar looks across at Britain from the shore of the Ruteni. He declares that Romans and Britons share Trojan descent but that the Britons, living outside the world, know nothing of knighthood. He writes to King Cassibellaunus demanding tribute and subjection to the Senate.

Interea contigit (ut in Romanis reperitur historiis) Julium
meanwhile it-happened as in Roman is-found histories Julius
Cæsarem subjugata Gallia ad littus Rutenorum venisse.
Caesar subjugated Gaul to the-shore of-the-Ruteni to-have-come
Et cum illinc Britanniam insulam aspexisset: quæsivit a
and when from-there Britain the-island he-had-seen he-asked from
circumstantibus, quæ patria et quæ gens inhabitasset. Dum
the-bystanders what country and what people had-inhabited-it while
ad Oceanum intueretur, cumque nomen regni didicisset
to the-Ocean he-was-gazing and-when the-name of-the-kingdom he-had-learned
et populi, dixit: "Hercle ex eadem prosapia nos Romani
and of-the-people he-said by-Hercules from the-same lineage we Romans
et Britones orti sumus, quia ex Trojana gente processimus.
and Britons sprung are because from the-Trojan race we-have-proceeded
Nobis Æneas post destructionem Trojæ primus pater fuit:
to-us Aeneas after the-destruction of-Troy the-first father was

illis vero Brutus, quem Silvius Ascanii filii Æneæ filius
to-them indeed Brutus whom Silvius of-Ascanius son of-Aeneas son
progenuit. Sed, nisi fallor, valde degenerati sunt a
begot but unless I-am-deceived greatly degenerated they-have-been from
nobis, nec quid sit militia noverunt, cum intra Oceanum
us nor what is knighthood they-know since within the-Ocean
extra orbem commaneant. Leviter cogendi erunt tributum
outside the-world they-dwell easily to-be-forced they-will-be tribute
nobis dare, et continuum obsequium Romanæ dignitati
to-us to-give and continual obedience to-the-Roman dignity
præstare. Prius tamen mandandum est eis ut inaccessi
to-offer first yet to-be-commanded it-is to-them that untouched
a Populo Romano et intacti vectigal reddant, et
by the-People Roman and unharmed tax they-should-render and
ut cæteræ gentes, subjectionem Senatui faciant: ne
as the-other peoples subjection to-the-Senate they-should-make lest
nos ipsorum cognatorum sanguinem fundentes, antiquam
we of-the-very kinsmen the-blood shedding the-ancient
nobilitatem patris nostri Priami offendamus." Quod cum
nobility of-father our Priam we-may-offend which when
literis suis regi Cassibellauno mandavisset: indignatus
by-letters his-own to-the-king Cassibellaunus he-had-sent-word indignant
est Cassibellaunus: ipsique epistolam in hæc verba direxit.
was Cassibellaunus and-to-him a-letter in these words directed

Cassibellaunus ad Cæsarem epistolam mittit

II · CASSIBELLAUNUS' LETTER TO CAESAR

Cassibellaunus answers that Roman greed for gold and silver cannot leave in peace even a people beyond the Ocean. Since Britons and Romans share Aeneas' blood, Caesar should seek friendship, not servitude. The Britons know nothing of slavery and will fight for their liberty and their kingdom if he invades.

Cassibellaunus Britonum rex Caio Julio Cæsari. Miranda
Cassibellaunus of-the-Britons king to-Gaius Julius Caesar to-be-wondered-at
est, Cæsar, populi Romani cupiditas: qui quicquid est auri
is O-Caesar of-the-people Roman the-greed which whatever is of-gold
vel argenti sitiens, nequit nos intra pericula Oceani extra
or of-silver thirsting cannot us within the-dangers of-the-Ocean outside
orbem positos pati: quin census nostros appetere præsumat,
the-world placed to-suffer but-that wealth our to-seek it-presumes
quos hactenus quiete possedimus. Nec hoc quidem sufficit,
which hitherto quietly we-have-possessed nor this indeed suffices
nisi postposita libertate subjectionem ei faciamus, perpetuam
unless set-aside liberty subjection to-it we-make perpetual
servitutem subituri. Opprobrium itaque petisti, Cæsar,
servitude about-to-undergo a-disgrace and-so you-have-sought O-Caesar
cum communis nobilitatis vena Britonibus et Romanis ab
since of-common nobility the-vein to-the-Britons and to-the-Romans from
Ænea defluat, et ejusdem cognationis una et eadem catena
Aeneas flows-down and of-the-same kinship one and the-same chain
præfulgeat: qua firma amicitia conjungi deberent. Illa igitur
shines-forth by-which with-firm friendship to-be-joined they-ought that therefore
a nobis petenda esset, non servitus. Quia eam potius largiri
from us to-be-sought would-be not servitude because it rather to-bestow
didicimus quam servitutis jugum ferre. Libertatem namque
we-have-learned than of-servitude the-yoke to-bear liberty for

in tantum consuevimus habere, quod prorsus ignoramus quid
to so-far we-are-accustomed to-have that utterly we-are-ignorant what
sit servituti obedire: quam si ipsi dii conarentur nobis
is to-servitude to-obey which if themselves the-gods should-try from-us
eripere, elaboraremus utique omni nisu resistere, ut eam
to-snatch we-would-labor surely with-all effort to-resist so-that it
retineremus. Liqueat igitur dispositioni tuæ, Cæsar, nos
we-might-keep let-it-be-clear therefore to-disposition your O-Caesar us
pro illa et pro regno nostro pugnaturos, si, ut comminatus
for it and for kingdom our about-to-fight if as threatened
es, intra insulam Britanniæ supervenire inceperis.
you-have within the-island of-Britain to-come-upon you-will-have-begun

Cassibellaunus Cæsarem pugna vincit

III · CASSIBELLAUNUS DEFEATS CAESAR

Caesar lands at the mouth of the Thames, and Cassibellaunus and his nobles resolve to attack before he can take a town. In the battle Nennius, the king's brother, meets Caesar hand to hand, and Caesar's sword sticks in his shield. Nennius fights on with it and kills the tribune Labienus, and by evening the Romans withdraw to their ships and sail back to Gaul.

His itaque visis, Caius Julius Cæsar navigium suum parat,
these and-so seen Gaius Julius Caesar fleet his-own prepares
prosperosque ventos exspectat: ut quod Cassibellauno
and-favorable winds awaits so-that what to-Cassibellaunus
mandaverat, effectibus prosequeretur. Optato ergo vento
he-had-sent-word in-deeds he-might-follow-up the-desired therefore wind
instante, erexit vela sua, et in ostium Tamensis fluminis
pressing he-raised sails his-own and into the-mouth of-the-Thames river
cum exercitu suo applicuit. Jamque rates ad tellurem
with army his-own landed and-already the-rafts to land

appulerant: ecce Cassibellaunus cum tota sua fortitudine
had-driven behold Cassibellaunus with all his-own strength
ei occurrit, et ad Dorobellum oppidum veniens, quæsivit
him met and to Dorobellum the-town coming asked
ibi a proceribus suis consilium, qualiter hostes longius
there from nobles his-own counsel how the-enemies farther
arceret. Aderat cum eo Belinus princeps militiæ
he-might-keep-off was-present with him Belinus prince of-the-knighthood
ejus, cujus consilio totum regnum tractabat. Aderant etiam
his whose by-counsel the-whole kingdom he-handled were-present also
duo nepotes ejus, Androgeus videlicet dux Trinovanti, et
two nephews his Androgeus namely duke of-Trinovantum and
Tenuancius dux Cornubiæ. Tres quoque reges subditi sibi,
Tenuantius duke of-Cornwall three also kings subject to-him
Cridious rex Albaniæ, et Guerthaeth Venedociæ, atque Britael
Cridious king of-Albany and Guerthaeth of-Venedotia and Britael
Demetiæ: qui ut ceteros in affectum pugnandi induxissent,
of-Demetia who as the-others into the-desire of-fighting they-had-led
consilium dederunt ut recenter castra Cæsaris adirent:
counsel gave that freshly the-camp of-Caesar they-should-approach
et antequam civitatem aliquam sive oppidum cepisset,
and before a-city any or town he-had-taken
ipsum expellere insisterent: nam si sese intra munitiones
him to-drive-out they-should-press for if himself within the-fortifications
patriæ immisisset, dicebant eum difficilius expellendum,
of-the-country he-had-thrust they-said him harder to-be-driven-out
cum sciret quo se et commilitones suos reciperet.
since he-would-know where himself and comrades his-own he-might-withdraw
Assensum ergo præbentes cuncti, petierunt littora, in quibus
assent therefore offering all sought the-shores on which
Julius castra et tentoria sua erexerat: ibi dispositis in
Julius camp and tents his-own had-raised there arranged on

utraque parte catervis dextras cum hostibus conserunt: pila
each side the-bands right-hands with the-enemies they-join javelins
pilis et ictus ictibus objicientes. Nec mora, hinc et
to-javelins and blows to-blows opposing nor delay on-this-side and
inde corruerunt vulnerati telis intra vitalia receptis:
on-that fell the-wounded with-weapons within the-vitals received
madet tellus cruore morientium, ac si repentinus auster
is-wet the-earth with-the-gore of-the-dying as if a-sudden south-wind
absorptum mare revomuisset. Concurrentibus ergo adversis
the-swallowed sea had-vomited-back running-together therefore the-opposing
catervis, obtulit casus Nennium et Androgeum cum Cantuaritis
bands offered chance Nennius and Androgeus with the-men-of-Kent
et civibus urbis Trinovantinæ quibus præsidebant, agmini
and the-citizens of-the-city Trinovantine over-whom they-presided to-the-column
quo Imperator aderat. Ut ergo convenerunt, pene dissipata
in-which the-Emperor was-present when therefore they-came-together almost scattered
fuit imperatoria cohors, Britonibus densa acie invadentibus:
was the-imperial cohort the-Britons with-dense line attacking
et cum mixtim ictus ingeminarent, dedit casus aditum
and when mingled blows they-redoubled gave chance access
Nennio congressum cum Julio faciendi. Irruens ergo in
to-Nennius of-an-engagement with Julius of-making rushing therefore upon
illum Nennius ultra modum lætatur se posse vel solum
him Nennius beyond measure rejoices himself to-be-able even a-single
ictum tanto viro ingerere. Quem Cæsar ut impetum in
blow on-so-great a-man to-heap whom Caesar when an-attack upon
se facientem aspexit: prætenso clypeo excepit, et quantum
himself making he-saw held-out shield caught and as-much-as
vires permiserunt, cum nudato ense ipsum super cassidem
strength permitted with naked sword him upon the-helmet
percussit. Erecto igitur gladio voluit exequi primum
struck raised therefore the-sword he-wished to-follow-up the-first

ictum, ut letiferum vulnus imprimeret: quod cum Nennius
blow so-that a-deadly wound he-might-impress which when Nennius
calluisset, interposuit clypeum suum, in quo mucro Julii a
had-perceived he-interposed shield his-own in which the-blade of-Julius from
casside maximis labens viribus inhæsit: ita ut, cum irruentibus
the-helmet with-greatest gliding strength stuck so that when rushing-in
turmis diutius congredi nequirent, ipsum Imperator extrahere
troops longer to-engage they-could-not it the-Emperor to-draw-out
non potuerit. Nennius ergo gladium Cæsaris prædicto
not was-able Nennius therefore the-sword of-Caesar in-the-aforesaid
modo adeptus, abjecit suum quem tenebat, et abstracto
manner having-gained threw-away his-own which he-was-holding and drawn
altero in hostes irruere festinat. Quemcunque cum ipso
the-other upon the-enemies to-rush hurries whomever with it
percutiebat vel ei caput amputabat, vel eum sauciatum
he-struck either from-him the-head he-cut-off or him wounded
præteribat: ita ut nulla spes vivendi in eo maneret. Illi
he-passed so that no hope of-living in him remained him
tandem in hunc modum sævienti obviavit Labienus tribunus,
at-last in this manner raging met Labienus the-tribune
sed in primo congressu a Nennio peremptus est. Denique
but in the-first engagement by Nennius destroyed was finally
plurima parte diei emensa, irruentibus Britonibus densis
the-greatest part of-the-day having-passed rushing-on the-Britons in-dense
turmis, et audaces impetus facientibus, victoria Deo favente
troops and bold attacks making the-victory God favoring
provenit: et Cæsar sese intra castra et naves laceratis
came and Caesar himself within the-camp and the-ships torn
Romanis recepit. Denique nocte illa resociatis ceteris, naves
Romans withdrew finally on-night that regathered the-others ships
suas intravit, et Neptunum pro castris habere lætatur.
his-own he-entered and Neptune for camp to-have he-rejoices

Cumque ipsi dissuasissent socii prælia diutius ingerere:
and-when to-him had-dissuaded the-comrades battles longer to-wage
acquiescens eorum monitionibus, in Galliam reversus est.
assenting their to-admonitions into Gaul returned he-has

Nennius, a Cæsare ictus, moritur

IV · NENNIUS DIES OF CAESAR'S BLOW

Cassibellaunus rewards his men for the victory but grieves for his brother Nennius, whom Caesar has wounded beyond healing. Nennius dies within fifteen days and is buried at Trinovantum by the north gate. Caesar's sword, called Yellow Death because no one it wounded lived, is laid in his coffin.

Cassibellaunus ergo ob receptum triumphum lætus,
Cassibellaunus therefore on-account-of the-received triumph joyful
grates deo solvens, socios victoriæ suæ convocavit:
thanks to-the-god paying the-comrades of-victory his-own called-together
et unum quemque juxta meritum probitatis maximis
and every one according-to the-merit of-prowess with-greatest
muneribus donavit. Angebatur tamen ex alia parte dolore,
gifts presented he-was-tormented yet on the-other side with-grief
quia frater suus Nennius letaliter vulneratus in dubio vitæ
because brother his-own Nennius mortally wounded in doubt of-life
jacebat. Vulneraverat enim eum Julius in supradicto congressu
lay had-wounded for him Julius in the-above-said engagement
et plagam immedicabilem intulerat: unde intra quindecim
and a-blow incurable had-dealt whence within fifteen
dies post prælium irrepente morte ab hac luce migravit,
days after the-battle creeping-up death from this light departed
et in urbe Trinovanto juxta Aquilonarem portam sepultus
and in the-city Trinovantum beside the-northern gate buried

est. Exequias autem regias facientes, posuerunt cum eo
he-was the-funeral-rites moreover royal making they-put with him
gladium Cæsaris in sarcophago, quem intra clypeum suum
the-sword of-Caesar in the-coffin which within shield his-own
pugnans retinuerat. Erat nomen gladii, Crocea mors, quia
fighting he-had-kept was the-name of-the-sword Yellow Death because
nullus evadebat vivus qui eo vulnerabatur.
no-one escaped alive who by-it was-wounded

Cæsar sine gloria Galliam repetit

V · CAESAR RETURNS TO GAUL WITHOUT GLORY

Hearing of Caesar's flight, the Gauls plan to throw off his rule, believing the sea is full of British ships in pursuit. Unwilling to risk a doubtful war, Caesar opens his treasuries and wins the nobles with gifts and the commons with promises of liberty. Once a roaring lion, he now bleats like a lamb, until he recovers his power.

Terga igitur vertente Julio, et in Gallicanum littus appulso,
the-back therefore turning Julius and on the-Gallic shore landed
rebellionem moliuntur Galli, dominium Julii abjicientes.
a-rebellion attempt the-Gauls the-lordship of-Julius throwing-off
Arbitrabantur namque ipsum esse debilitatum, ut nullatenus
they-thought for him to-be weakened so-that by-no-means
ejus vires amplius timori essent. Fama etiam apud omnes
his strength any-more for-fear should-be the-rumor also among all
una et eadem erat totum mare jam navibus Cassibellauni
one and the-same was the-whole sea already with-the-ships of-Cassibellaunus
fervere, fugam ipsius Julii insecuturi. Unde audaciores Galli
to-boil the-flight of-Julius himself about-to-pursue whence bolder the-Gauls
insistentes cogitabant quomodo Cæsarem a finibus suis
pressing-on considered how Caesar from borders their-own

expellerent. Quod Julius subolens, noluit anceps bellum
they-might-drive-out which Julius scenting was-unwilling a-doubtful war
cum feroci populo committere: sed apertis thesauris quosque
with a-fierce people to-wage but opened the-treasuries all
nobiliores adire: ut singulos munificatos in concordiam
the-more-noble to-approach so-that the-single-ones enriched-with-gifts into concord
reduceret. Plebi libertatem pollicetur, exheredatis
he-might-lead-back to-the-commoners liberty he-promises to-the-disinherited
amissas possessiones, servis etiam libertatem, qui prius
the-lost possessions to-the-slaves also liberty who before
leonina feritate fulminans ipsis omnia abstulerat: nunc
with-lion's ferocity thundering from-them all-things had-taken-away now
mitis agnus humili balans voce, omnia posse reddere
a-gentle lamb with-humble bleating voice all-things to-be-able to-give-back
lætatur, nec ab his blandiciis quievit, donec pacificatis
rejoices nor from these flatteries rested until pacified
cunctis, amissam potestatem recuperavit. Nullus interim dies
all the-lost power he-recovered no meanwhile day
præteribat, quin fugam suam Britonumque victoriam recoleret.
passed but-that flight his-own and-of-the-Britons the-victory he-recalled

Cassibellaunus palos ferratos in fluvio contra Cæsaris naves figendos parat

VI · IRON STAKES IN THE THAMES

Two years later Caesar prepares to cross again for revenge. Cassibellaunus fortifies the cities, repairs the walls, and sets knights in every port. In the Thames channel by which Caesar must sail to Trinovantum he fixes stakes of iron and lead, thick as a thigh, under the water, and he gathers the island's youth on the coast.

Emenso itaque biennio, parat iterum Oceanum transfretare,
having-passed and-so two-years he-prepares again the-Ocean to-cross
et sese in Cassibellaunum vindicare. Quod cum Cassibellaunus
and himself on Cassibellaunus to-avenge which when Cassibellaunus
comperisset: urbes ubique munivit, diruta mœnia renovavit,
had-discovered the-cities everywhere he-fortified the-ruined walls he-renewed
armatos milites in singulis portubus statuit: præterea alveo
armed knights in single ports he-set besides in-the-channel
Tamensis fluminis, quo ad urbem Trinovantum Cæsar
of-the-Thames river by-which to the-city Trinovantum Caesar
navigaturus erat, palis ferreis atque plumbatis instar femoris
about-to-sail was with-stakes iron and leaded like a-thigh
grossis, subter amnem infixit, ut naves Julii superventuræ
thick under the-stream he-fixed so-that the-ships of-Julius about-to-come-up
illiderentur. Collecta etiam tota juventute insulæ, mansionem
might-be-dashed gathered also the-whole youth of-the-island a-station
juxta maritima fecit, adventum hostium expectans.
beside the-seacoast he-made the-arrival of-the-enemies awaiting

Cassibellaunus Cæsarem iterum fugat

VII · CASSIBELLAUNUS ROUTS CAESAR AGAIN

Caesar's fleet sails up the Thames and is pierced by the hidden stakes, and thousands drown. The survivors fight on shore, but the Britons, three times their number, defeat them. Caesar flees to the Morini and to a tower he has built at Odnea, fearing the Gauls will rise again.

Julius autem cum omnia quæ sibi necessaria erant paravisset,
Julius moreover when all-things which for-him necessary were he-had-prepared
cum innumerabili multitudine militum mare ingressus est,
with an-innumerable multitude of-knights the-sea entered has
optatam stragem populo qui eum devicerat inferre affectans.
the-desired slaughter on-the-people which him had-defeated to-inflict desiring
Quam proculdubio ingessisset, si illæsa classe tellure
which without-doubt he-would-have-heaped if with-unhurt fleet of-the-land
potiri potuisset: quod ad effectum ducere nequivit.
to-gain-possession he-had-been-able which to effect to-lead he-could-not
Nam dum per Tamensem fluvium prædictam civitatem
for while by the-Thames river the-aforesaid city
peteret, naves ejus præfatis palis infixæ subitum passæ
he-was-seeking the-ships his on-the-aforesaid stakes fixed sudden suffered
sunt periculum. Unde ad multa milia submergebantur
have danger whence to many thousands were-drowned
milites, dum ipsas naves perforatas ingrediens fluvius
the-knights while the-very the-ships pierced entering the-river
absorberet. Cumque id Cæsari compertum esset, velis
swallowed and-when this to-Caesar discovered had-been with-the-sails
maxima vi retortis, ad terram reverti festinavit. Ipsi
with-greatest force turned-back to land to-return he-hurried they-themselves
quoque qui in tanto periculo superfuerant, vix elapsi,
also who in so-great danger had-survived scarcely having-escaped

cum illo tellurem scandunt. Hoc igitur Cassibellaunus ex
with him the-land climb this therefore Cassibellaunus from
ripa qua aderat aspiciens, gaudet propter periculum
the-bank where he-was-present seeing rejoices on-account-of the-danger
submersorum: sed tristatur ob ceterorum salutem. Dato
of-the-drowned but is-saddened on-account-of of-the-rest the-safety given
vero commilitonibus suis signo, impetum in Romanos
indeed to-comrades his-own a-signal an-attack upon the-Romans
facit. At Romani quanquam periculum in fluvio perpessi
he-makes but the-Romans although danger in the-river suffered
fuissent, ut terra potiti sunt, viriliter Britonum irruptioni
had when of-the-land gained have manfully of-the-Britons to-the-inroad
restiterunt. Audaciam quoque pro muro habentes stragem
resisted boldness also for a-wall having slaughter
non minimam fecerunt: sed tamen majorem patiebantur quam
not least they-made but yet greater they-suffered than
inferebant. Periclitati namque in fluvio, pauciores incedebant:
they-inflicted imperiled for in the-river fewer they-advanced
Britones vero omni hora affluentia suorum augmentati,
the-Britons indeed every hour by-the-flowing-in of-their-own increased
triplo majorem numerum habebant. Unde debilitatis ceteris
a-threefold greater number had whence weakened the-others
potiti sunt triumpho. Cæsar ergo cum sese devictum
gained they-have the-triumph Caesar therefore when himself defeated
inspexisset, cum paucis ad naves diffugit, et tutamen maris
he-had-seen with a-few to the-ships fled and the-safety of-the-sea
ex voto nactus est: tempestivis etiam ventis instantibus,
according-to wish got has with-timely also winds pressing
erexit vela sua, et Morinorum littus petivit. Ingressus est
he-raised sails his-own and of-the-Morini the-shore sought entered he-has
deinde quandam turrim, quam in loco qui Odnea vocatur
then a-certain tower which in the-place which Odnea is-called

construxerat, antequam Britanniam hac vice adivisset:
he-had-built before Britain on-this occasion he-had-gone-to
timebat namque Gallorum fidem et instabilitatem, ne
he-feared for of-the-Gauls the-faith and instability lest
secundo in ipsum irruerent: sicut supra dictum est
a-second-time upon him they-should-rush as above said it-has-been
ipsos fecisse, quando primo Britonibus terga testatus est
them to-have-done when first to-the-Britons the-back attested he-has
ostendisse. Ob hanc causam turrim sibi in refugium
to-have-shown for this cause a-tower for-himself as a-refuge
ædificaverat, ita ut rebelli populo resistere valeret,
he-had-built so that to-the-rebellious people to-resist he-might-be-able
si in illum (ut prædictum est,) insurrexisset.
if against him as said-before it-has-been it-had-risen

Evelinus Hirelglam obtruncat, Androgeus Cæsarem petit

VIII · EVELINUS KILLS HIRELGLAS

At Trinovantum the Britons sacrifice thousands of beasts in thanksgiving and hold games. In a wrestling quarrel Evelinus, nephew of Androgeus, beheads the king's nephew Hirelglas. Androgeus refuses to give him up to the king's court, Cassibellaunus ravages his lands, and Androgeus writes to Caesar for help, claiming the death was an accident.

Cassibellaunus autem secundo triumpho adeptus, maximo
Cassibellaunus moreover the-second triumph having-obtained with-greatest
gaudio fluctuans, edictum fecit, ut omnes proceres Britanniæ
joy surging an-edict made that all the-nobles of-Britain
in urbem Trinovantum cum uxoribus suis convenirent,
into the-city Trinovantum with wives their-own should-come-together
debitasque solemnitates patriis diis celebrarent, qui
and-due solemnities to-the-ancestral gods should-celebrate who

victoriam sibi de tanto Imperatore concesserant. Cumque
victory to-them over so-great an-Emperor had-granted and-when
omnes postposita mora advenissent, diversa sacrificia facientes,
all set-aside delay had-come various sacrifices making
occisioni pecudum indulserunt. Litaverunt ibi quadraginta
to-the-slaughter of-cattle they-gave-themselves they-offered there forty
millia vaccarum, et centum milia ovium: diversorumque
thousand of-cows and a-hundred thousand of-sheep and-of-various
generum volatilia, quæ leviter sub numero non cadebant.
kinds birds which easily under number not fell
Præterea triginta milia sylvestrium ferarum cujuscunque
besides thirty thousand of-woodland wild-beasts of-every
generis collectarum. Mox cum diis suis honores
kind gathered soon when to-gods their-own the-honors
perfecissent, refecerunt se residuis epulis: ut in
they-had-completed they-refreshed themselves with-the-remaining feasts as in
sacrificiis fieri solebat. Exin quod diei et noctis
sacrifices to-be-done was-accustomed thence what of-the-day and of-the-night
restabat, diversos ludos componentes transegerunt. Ludentibus
remained various games arranging they-spent playing
ergo ipsis, contigit inclytos juvenes, quorum alter erat
therefore them it-happened renowned youths of-whom one was
nepos regis, alter vero Androgei ducis, pariter in
the-nephew of-the-king the-other but of-Androgeus of-the-duke together in
palæstra contendere, et ob dubiam victoriam
the-wrestling-ground to-contend and on-account-of the-doubtful victory
litigare. Erat nomen nepotis regis Hirelglas: alterius vero
to-quarrel was the-name of-the-nephew of-the-king Hirelglas of-the-other indeed
Evelinus. Qui ut mutua convitia ad invicem intulissent,
Evelinus who when mutual insults on each-other they-had-brought
arripuit Evelinus gladium, nepotique regis caput
snatched Evelinus a-sword and-from-the-nephew of-the-king the-head

amputavit: quo interfecto perturbata curia, et rumor
cut-off whom killed thrown-into-confusion the-court and the-rumor
ad Cassibellaunum volavit. Commotus igitur super casu
to Cassibellaunus flew moved therefore upon the-fate
amici sui Cassibellaunus Androgeo præcepit ut Evelinum
of-friend his-own Cassibellaunus to-Androgeus ordered that Evelinus
in tertiam horam coram præsentia sua adduceret. Adductus
at the-third hour before presence his-own he-should-bring brought
quoque præsto esset sententiam quam proceres dictarent
also at-hand he-should-be the-sentence which the-nobles should-dictate
subire, ne Hirelglas inultus permaneret, si injuste interfectus
to-undergo lest Hirelglas unavenged should-remain if unjustly killed
fuisset. Cumque animum regis suspectum haberet
he-had-been and-when the-mind of-the-king suspected he-held
Androgeus, respondit sese suam curiam habere, et in illa
Androgeus answered himself his-own court to-have and in it
definiri debere quicquid aliquis in homines suos clamaret.
to-be-settled ought whatever anyone against men his-own should-claim
Si ergo rectitudinem de Evelino decrevisset appetere: ipsum
if therefore justice about Evelinus he-had-decided to-seek him
in urbe Trinovanto ex veterum traditione recepisset.
in the-city Trinovantum by of-the-elders tradition he-should-have-received
Cassibellaunus itaque cum affectui suo satisfactionem
Cassibellaunus and-so when to-desire his-own satisfaction
nequivisset ingerere: comminatus est Androgeo, testans
he-had-been-unable to-bring threatened has to-Androgeus testifying
se ferro et flamma provinciam ejus populaturum, nisi
himself with-sword and flame the-province his about-to-ravage unless
petitioni suæ acquiesceret. Indignatus ergo Androgeus
to-petition his-own he-assented indignant therefore Androgeus
distulit petitioni ejus parere. Indignatus autem Cassibellaunus,
put-off to-the-petition his to-obey indignant moreover Cassibellaunus

acceleravit provincias ipsius vastare. At Androgeus quotidie
hastened the-provinces his to-lay-waste but Androgeus daily
per cognatos et notos regem adibat, petebatque ut
through kinsmen and acquaintances the-king approached and-asked that
desisteret a cœpta ira. Et cum furorem ejus nullatenus
he-should-desist from begun anger and when the-fury his by-no-means
mitigare quivisset, diversas meditationes inivit qualiter
to-soothe he-had-been-able various plans he-entered how
ipsi resistere valeret. Denique ab omni alia spe decidens,
him to-resist he-might-be-able finally from every other hope falling
auxilium Cæsaris petere decrevit, literasque suas ei in
the-help of-Caesar to-seek he-decided and-letters his-own to-him in
hanc direxit sententiam: "Caio Julio Cæsari Androgeus
this directed sense to-Gaius Julius Caesar Androgeus
dux Trinovanti, post optatam mortem, optandam salutem.
duke of-Trinovantum after desired death desirable health
Pœnitet me adversus te egisse dum prælia cum rege meo
it-repents me against you to-have-acted while battles with king my
committeres. Si enim me a talibus ausis abstinuissem,
you-were-joining if for I from such daring-deeds had-abstained
devicisses Cassibellaunum: cui post triumphum
you-would-have-defeated Cassibellaunus on-whom after triumph
suum tanta irrepsit superbia, ut me, per quem triumphavit,
his-own so-great crept pride that me through whom he-triumphed
a finibus suis exterminare insistat. Hæccine ergo merita
from borders his-own to-banish he-presses these-whether therefore merits
rependenda essent? Ego illum hereditavi, ipse me exheredare
to-be-repaid would-be I him made-heir he me to-disinherit
conatur. Ego illum in regnum secundo restitui, ipse me
tries I him into the-kingdom a-second-time restored he me
destituere affectat. Me etenim contra te pugnante, omnia
to-cast-down desires I for against you fighting all

ista largitus sum. Numina cælorum testor me non
those-things bestowed I-have the-deities of-the-heavens I-call-to-witness me not
promeruisse iram ipsius, nisi promereri dicar, quia diffugio
to-have-deserved the-anger his unless to-deserve I-am-said because I-shun
nepotem meum tradere, quem injusta nece damnare exoptat.
nephew my to-hand-over whom with-unjust death to-condemn he-longs
Quod ut manifestius discretioni tuæ liqueat, causam
which that more-plainly to-discernment your it-may-be-clear the-cause
rei adverte. Contigerat nos ob lætitiam triumphi
of-the-matter heed it-had-happened us on-account-of the-joy of-triumph
nostri solemnitates patriis diis celebrare: in quibus
our solemnities to-the-ancestral gods to-celebrate in which
cum quæ agenda essent peregissemus sacrificia, juventus
when which to-be-done were we-had-completed sacrifices youth
nostra ludos mutuos componebat. Inter ceteros inierunt duo
our games mutual arranged among the-others entered two
nepotes nostri palæstram, exemplo aliorum conducti.
nephews our the-wrestling-ground by-the-example of-others led
Cumque meus triumphasset, succensus est alter injusta ira,
and-when mine had-triumphed inflamed was the-other with-unjust anger
festinavitque eum percutere. At ille, vitato ictu, cepit eum
and-hurried him to-strike but he avoided the-blow took him
per pugnum quo gladium tenebat, volens eum eripere.
by the-fist with-which the-sword he-held wishing it to-snatch
Interea cecidit nepos regis super mucronem confossusque
meanwhile fell the-nephew of-the-king upon the-blade and-pierced
morti subjacuit. Illud itaque cum regi nunciatum esset,
to-death lay-subject that and-so when to-the-king announced had-been
præcepit mihi tradere puerum meum, ut pro homicidio
he-ordered me to-hand-over boy my so-that for homicide
supplicio plecteretur. Cui cum contradixissem, venit
with-punishment he-might-be-struck to-whom when I-had-contradicted he-came

cum omni multitudine sua in provincias meas, maximam
with all multitude his-own into provinces my greatest
inferens inquietudinem. Unde misericordiam tuam implorans,
bringing disturbance whence mercy your imploring
auxilium a te peto ut per te dignitati meæ restituar:
help from you I-ask that through you to-dignity my I-may-be-restored
et tu per me Britannia potiaris. De hoc autem
and you through me of-Britain may-gain-possession about this moreover
nihil in me hæsitaveris, quia omnis abest proditio. Ea
nothing in me you-should-hesitate because all is-absent treachery by-that
enim conditione moventur mortales, ut post inimicitias amici
for condition are-moved mortals that after enmities friends
fiant, et post fugam ad triumphum accedant."
they-become and after flight to triumph they-approach

Cassibellaunus circumsessus pacem implorat

IX · CASSIBELLAUNUS, BESIEGED, SUES FOR PEACE

Androgeus sends his son and thirty noble youths as hostages, and Caesar lands at Richborough. In a valley near Dorobernia Androgeus attacks Cassibellaunus from behind, and the king takes refuge on a rocky hill, where Caesar besieges him. On the second day, starving, Cassibellaunus asks Androgeus to reconcile him with Caesar, and Androgeus agrees, since the wrong is avenged.

His igitur inspectis, consilium habuit Julius Cæsar a
these therefore viewed counsel had Julius Caesar from
familiaribus suis, ne verbis solummodo ducis invitatus
intimates his-own lest by-the-words only of-the-duke invited
Britanniam adiret, nisi tales dirigerentur obsides,
Britain he-should-approach unless such were-directed hostages
quibus securius applicare quivisset. Nec mora, misit ei
with-whom more-securely to-land he-might-be-able nor delay sent to-him

Androgeus Scævam filium suum et triginta nobiles juvenes
Androgeus Scaeva son his-own and thirty noble youths
ex cognatione sua propinquos. Datis ergo obsidibus
from kindred his-own near-ones given therefore the-hostages
securus factus est Cæsar, revocatisque catervis cum instante
secure made was Caesar and-recalled the-bands with pressing
vento in Rutupi portum applicuit. Interea obsidere incipiebat
wind into of-Rutupi the-port landed meanwhile to-besiege was-beginning
Cassibellaunus urbem Trinovantum et villas provinciales
Cassibellaunus the-city Trinovantum and the-villas provincial
vastare. Sed cum Julii adventum comperisset, deseruit
to-lay-waste but when of-Julius the-arrival he-had-discovered he-deserted
obsidionem, et imperatori obviare festinavit. Ut ergo vallem
the-siege and the-emperor to-meet hurried when therefore a-valley
prope Doroberniam intravit, aspexit in eadem Romanorum
near Dorobernia he-entered he-saw in the-same of-the-Romans
exercitum castra et tentoria ponentem. Adduxerat enim eos
the-army camp and tents placing had-brought for them
Androgeus ibidem ut illic occultum impetum urbi
Androgeus in-the-same-place so-that there a-bidden attack on-the-city
ingererent. Nec mora, advertentes Romani Britones supervenire,
they-might-bring nor delay noticing the-Romans the-Britons to-come-up
armaverunt sese ocyus, militesque suos per catervas
armed themselves more-swiftly and-knights their-own through bands
statuerunt. Ex alia vero parte armis induuntur Britones,
set from the-other indeed side with-arms are-clothed the-Britons
et sese per turmas consociant. At Androgeus cum
and themselves through troops join but Androgeus with
quinque milibus armatorum in prope sito nemore delituit,
five thousand of-armed-men in nearby situated forest lay-hid
ut in auxilium Cæsari occurrens, furtivam et improvisam
so-that to help to-Caesar running a-stealthy and unforeseen

irruptionem Cassibellauno consociisque ejus faceret. Ut
inroad on-Cassibellaunus and-on-the-comrades his he-might-make when
itaque hinc et inde convenerunt, non distulerunt mortalia
and-so on-this-side and on-that they-came-together not they-delayed mortal
tela emittere, nec letiferos ictus ingeminare. Concurrunt
weapons to-send-out nor deadly blows to-redouble run-together
adversæ catervæ: et multum cruoris diffundunt. Concidunt
the-opposing bands and much of-gore they-pour-out fall
in utraque parte vulnerati, quemadmodum in autumno
on each side the-wounded just-as in autumn
arborum folia. Ipsis igitur irruentibus egreditur Androgeus
of-the-trees the-leaves them therefore rushing-on goes-out Androgeus
ex nemore: et aciem Cassibellauni, ex qua totum bellum
from the-forest and the-battle-line of-Cassibellaunus on which the-whole war
pendebat, a tergo invadit. Mox illa in una parte irruptione
hung from the-back attacks soon it in one part by-the-inroad
Romanorum paulo ante vastata: in alia vero a concivibus
of-the-Romans a-little before laid-waste in the-other indeed by fellow-citizens
suis miro modo oppressa, nequivit stationem facere.
its-own in-wonderful manner crushed could-not a-stand to-make
Unde dissipatis sociis, arrepta fuga campum deserunt.
whence scattered the-comrades seized flight the-field they-desert
Astabat prope quidam mons in cacumine saxosus densum
stood near a-certain mountain on the-top rocky dense
habens coriletum: ad illum confugit Cassibellaunus cum suis,
having a-hazel-thicket to it fled Cassibellaunus with his-own
postquam in debiliorem partem ceciderat. Summitatem quoque
after into the-weaker part he-had-fallen the-summit also
ejus nactus sese viriliter defendebat, et insequentes hostes
its having-got himself manfully he-defended and the-pursuing enemies
nece afficiebat. Insecuti namque fuerant ipsum Romani et
with-death he-afflicted pursued for had him the-Romans and

Androgei catervæ, fugientes turmas ejus lacerantes: montem
of-Androgeus the-bands the-fleeing troops his tearing the-mountain
quoque ascendentes crebros ictus faciebant, nec prævalebant.
also climbing frequent blows they-made nor they-prevailed
Saxa etenim montis ejusdem et cacuminis arduitas
the-rocks for of-mountain the-same and of-the-top the-steepness
Britonibus erat defensio: ita ut a summo occurrentes
to-the-Britons was a-defense so that from the-top running-against
hostibus stragem darent. Obsedit itaque Cæsar montem
to-the-enemies slaughter they-gave besieged and-so Caesar mountain
illum tota nocte quæ jam supervenerat, omnes exitus
that the-whole night which already had-come-on all exits
præcludens. Affectabat namque fame regem cogere, quem
closing he-desired for by-hunger the-king to-force whom
armis nequiverat. O admirabile tunc genus Britonum, qui
with-arms he-had-been-unable O wonderful then race of-the-Britons who
ipsum bis in fugam pepulerunt, qui totum orbem sibi
him twice into flight drove who the-whole world to-himself
submiserat. Cui totus mundus nequivit resistere, illi etiam
had-subjected to-whom the-whole world could-not to-resist him even
fugati resistunt, parati mortem pro patria et libertate
put-to-flight they-resist ready death for country and liberty
subire. Hinc ad laudem illorum cecinit Lucanus de Cæsare:
to-undergo hence to the-praise of-them sang Lucan about Caesar

Territa quæsitis ostendit terga Britannis.
terrified to-the-sought he-showed his-back to-the-Britons

Emenso jam die secundo, cum jam non haberet
having-passed already the-day second when already not he-had
Cassibellaunus quod comederet, timuit ne fame caperetur
Cassibellaunus what he-might-eat he-feared lest by-hunger he-be-taken

Cæsaris carcerem subiturus. Mandavit ergo Androgeo ut
of-Caesar the-prison about-to-undergo he-sent-word therefore to-Androgeus that
sese cum Julio pacificaret, ne gentis dignitas ex qua
himself with Julius he-should-reconcile lest of-the-people the-dignity from which
natus fuerat capto ipso deleretur. Mandavit etiam ei
born he-had-been taken he should-be-destroyed he-sent-word also to-him
se non promeruisse, ut ipsius mortem optaret: quamvis
himself not to-have-deserved that his death he-should-desire although
inquietudinem ipsi intulisset. Cumque hæc retulissent
disturbance on-him he-had-brought and-when these-things had-reported
nuncii, ait Androgeus: "Non est diligendus princeps, qui in
the-messengers says Androgeus not is to-be-loved a-prince who in
bello mitis est ut agnus: in pace ferus ut leo. Dii cœli
war gentle is as a-lamb in peace fierce as a-lion O-gods of-heaven
et terræ! orat me nunc dominus meus qui prius imperabat:
and of-earth begs me now lord my who before commanded
Pacificarine nunc, et Cæsari subjectionem facere desiderat,
to-be-reconciled-whether now and to-Caesar subjection to-make does-he-desire
cujus pacem prius desideraverat Cæsar? Proinde advertere
whose peace before had-desired Caesar accordingly to-notice
debuerat, illum, per quem tantum imperatorem ex regno
he-ought-to-have him through whom so-great an-emperor from kingdom
suo pepulit, posse ipsum iterum restituere. Non eram
his-own he-drove to-be-able him again to-restore not I-was
igitur inique tractandus, qui tunc illud obsequium, nunc
therefore unjustly to-be-treated who then that service now
istud inferre poteram. Insipientia obducitur, qui commilitones
this to-bring was-able with-folly is-covered who the-comrades
quibus triumphat, injuriis vel contumeliis infestat. Non
with-whom he-triumphs with-wrongs or with-insults harasses not
enim est ullius ducis victoria: sed illorum qui sanguinem
for is of-any leader the-victory but of-those who blood

suum pro eo pugnando diffundunt: tamen pacificabo illum
their-own for him by-fighting pour-out yet I-shall-reconcile him
si potero, quia injuria quam mihi intulit satis in illum
if I-shall-be-able because the-wrong which on-me he-brought enough on him
vindicata est, cum misericordiam meam imploret.
avenged has-been since mercy my he-implores

Androgeus Cæsari ut pacem cum Cassibellauno faciat persuadit

X · ANDROGEUS PERSUADES CAESAR TO MAKE PEACE

Androgeus kneels before Caesar and says he promised only to subdue Cassibellaunus, which is done. He threatens to aid his lord if Caesar seeks more. Caesar accepts a yearly tribute of three thousand pounds of silver, the two become friends, and after wintering in Britain Caesar returns to Gaul and then to Rome against Pompey.

Post hæc festinavit Androgeus ad Julium, amplexusque
after these-things hurried Androgeus to Julius and-having-embraced
ejus genua, eum in hunc allocutus est sermonem: Ecce satis
his knees him in this addressed he-has speech behold enough
vindicasti te in Cassibellaunum. Misericordiam in
you-have-avenged yourself on Cassibellaunus mercy towards
illum habe: quid amplius agendum est, nisi ut subjectionem
him have what more to-be-done is except that subjection
faciens, vectigal Romanæ dignitati reddat?" Cumque nihil
making tax to-the-Roman dignity he-should-render and-when nothing
respondisset Cæsar, ait iterum Androgeus: "Hoc solum pactus
had-answered Caesar says again Androgeus this alone pledged
sum tibi, Cæsar, ut solummodo submisso Cassibellauno
I-have to-you O-Caesar that only submitted Cassibellaunus
Britanniam tibi subdere laborarem. Ecce victus est
Britain to-you to-subject I-should-labor behold conquered has-been

Cassibellaunus, et tibi Britannia meo subdita auxilio. Quid
Cassibellaunus and to-you Britain by-my subjected help what
ultra tibi debeo? nolit creator omnium, ut dominum
further to-you do-I-owe may-not-wish the-creator of-all that lord
meum misericordiam meam orantem, rectumque de illata
my mercy my begging and-right for the-brought
injuria mihi facientem, patiar unquam carcere vel vinculis
wrong to-me making I-should-suffer ever by-prison or by-chains
vinciri. Non leve est interficere Cassibellaunum me vivente,
to-be-bound not light is to-kill Cassibellaunus me living
cui auxilium meum reddere non erubescam, nisi consilio meo
to-whom help my to-render not I-shall-blush unless to-counsel my
parueris." Timore ergo Androgei mitigatus Julius, capit a
you-will-have-obeyed with-fear therefore of-Androgeus softened Julius takes from
Cassibellauno concordiam, cum vectigali singulis annis reddendo.
Cassibellaunus concord with a-tax in-single years to-be-rendered
Erat autem vectigal quod spopondit, tria milia librarum
was moreover the-tax which he-promised three thousand of-pounds
argenti. Exin amici facti adinvicem Julius et Cassibellaunus,
of-silver thence friends made to-each-other Julius and Cassibellaunus
mutuaque donaria alter alteri dederunt. Deinde hyemavit
and-mutual gifts one to-the-other gave then wintered
Cæsar in Britannia: et redeunte vere in Galliam transfretavit.
Caesar in Britain and returning spring into Gaul crossed
Succedente postmodum tempore, collectis undique ex omni
following afterward time gathered from-everywhere of every
genere militibus, Romam contra Pompeium perrexit.
kind knights to-Rome against Pompey proceeded

Tenuantius rex factus est

XI · TENUANTIUS BECOMES KING

Seven years later Cassibellaunus dies and is buried at York. Tenuantius, duke of Cornwall, succeeds, since Androgeus has gone to Rome with Caesar. His son Kymbelinus, raised by Augustus, pays the tribute freely, and in his days the Lord Jesus Christ is born.

Cumque postmodum septem anni præteriissent, defunctus
and-when afterward seven years had-passed died
est Cassibellaunus, et in urbe Eboraco sepultus. Cui
has Cassibellaunus and in the-city York buried to-whom
successit Tenuantius dux Cornubiæ, frater Androgei. Nam
succeeded Tenuantius duke of-Cornwall brother of-Androgeus for
Androgeus Romam cum Cæsare profectus fuerat. Diademate
Androgeus to-Rome with Caesar set-out had with-the-diadem
igitur insignitus Tenuantius regnum cum diligentia obtinuit.
therefore marked Tenuantius the-kingdom with diligence held
Erat ipse bellicosus vir: et qui vigorem justitiæ colebat.
was he-himself a-warlike man and who the-vigor of-justice cultivated
Post illum promotus est ad culmen regale Kymbelinus filius
after him advanced was to the-peak royal Kymbelinus son
suus, miles strenuus: quem Augustus Cæsar nutriverat. Hic
his-own a-knight vigorous whom Augustus Caesar had-reared this-one
in tantam amicitiam Romanorum inciderat ut cum posset
into so-great friendship of-the-Romans had-fallen that though he-could
tributum eorum detinere, gratis impendebat. In diebus illis
the-tribute their withhold freely he-paid in days those
natus est dominus noster Jesus Christus, cujus precioso
born was Lord our Jesus Christ whose by-precious

sanguine redemptum est humanum genus: quod anteacto
blood redeemed was the-human race which in-former
tempore dæmonum catena obligabatur.
time of-the-demons by-the-chain was-bound

Claudius Imperator Britanniam adit

XII · THE EMPEROR CLAUDIUS COMES TO BRITAIN

Kymbelinus reigns ten years and leaves the kingdom to his elder son Guiderius, who refuses the Romans their tribute. The emperor Claudius comes with his commander Levis Hamo. He lands at Porchester and begins to wall up its gates to starve the citizens.

Kymbelinus ergo cum Britanniam decem annis gubernasset,
Kymbelinus therefore when Britain for-ten years he-had-governed
genuit duos filios: quorum primogenito nomen Guiderius,
begot two sons of-whom to-the-first-born name Guiderius
alteri Arviragus. Deinde expletis vitæ suæ diebus, cessit
to-the-other Arviragus then fulfilled of-life his-own the-days he-yielded
regni gubernaculum Guiderio. Cum ergo tributum quod
of-the-kingdom the-helm to-Guiderius when therefore the-tribute which
appetebant Romani, ipsis denegaret: supervenit Claudius qui
sought the-Romans to-them he-denied came-upon Claudius who
in imperium subrogatus fuerat, Aderat cum eo princeps
into the-empire substituted had-been was-present with him the-prince
militiæ ipsius, qui Britannico vocabulo dicebatur Levis
of-the-knighthood his who by-a-British word was-called Levis
hamo, cujus consilio prælia quæ gerenda erant tractabantur.
hamo whose by-counsel the-battles which to-be-waged were were-handled
Hic itaque ut in civitatem Porcestriam applicuit, cœpit
this-one and-so when at the-city Porchester he-landed began

portas ejus muro præcludere, exitumque civibus abnegare.
the-gates its with-a-wall to-close and-the-exit to-the-citizens to-deny
Cupiebat namque ipsos fame affectos, vel ad deditionem
he-desired for them by-hunger afflicted either to surrender
compellere, vel sine clementia interimere.
to-compel or without clemency to-destroy

Hamo Guiderium interficit

XIII · HAMO KILLS GUIDERIUS

Guiderius attacks fiercely and the Romans almost break, but Hamo, who had learned the Britons' tongue and ways growing up in Rome among the British hostages, puts on British arms, comes near the king, and kills him. Guiderius' brother Arviragus takes the king's arms and leads the Britons on as if he were Guiderius. The Romans flee, and Arviragus overtakes Hamo on the shore and kills him at the place called Southampton.

Divulgato ergo Claudii Cæsaris adventu, collegit Guiderius
spread-abroad therefore of-Claudius of-Caesar the-arrival gathered Guiderius
omnem armatum regni militem: et Romanum exercitum
every armed of-the-kingdom knight and the-Roman army
petivit. Conserto deinde prælio acerrime cœpit hostes
sought joined then battle most-fiercely he-began the-enemies
invadere: plus solus gladio suo quam major pars exercitus
to-attack more alone with-sword his-own than the-greater part of-the-army
sui perimens. Jam Claudius naves petebat: Jam Romani
his-own destroying already Claudius the-ships was-seeking already the-Romans
pene dissipabantur: cum versutus Hamo projectis illis armis
almost were-scattered when the-crafty Hamo thrown-away those arms
quibus indutus fuerat, arma Britannica cepit: et quasi
with-which clothed he-had-been the-arms British took and as-if

Britannus contra suos pugnabat. Deinde hortabatur Britones
a-Briton against his-own fought then he-exhorted the-Britons
ad insequendum: festinatum triumphum promittens. Didicerat
to pursuing a-hastened triumph promising he-had-learned
enim linguam eorum et mores: qui inter Britannos obsides
for the-tongue their and the-ways who among the-Britons hostages
Romæ nutritus fuerat: exin accessit paulatim ipse juxta
at-Rome reared had-been thence approached little-by-little he-himself beside
regem, adituque invento ipsum nihil tale timentem mucrone
the-king and-an-approach found him nothing such fearing with-the-blade
suffocavit: elapsus deinde inter hostium cuneos, sese cum
choked having-slipped then among of-the-enemies the-wedges himself with
nefanda victoria inter suos recepit. At Arviragus ejusdem
abominable victory among his-own withdrew but Arviragus of-the-same
frater ut ipsum peremptum inspexit, confestim deposuit arma
the-brother when him destroyed he-saw forthwith laid-down arms
sua, armisque regis indutus hinc et inde Britones
his-own and-with-the-arms of-the-king clothed on-this-side and on-that the-Britons
ad perstandum animabat: quasi ipse Guiderius fuisset, qui
to persevering encouraged as-if he-himself Guiderius had-been who
nescientes regis casum, monitu ejus resistebant, pugnabant,
not-knowing of-the-king the-fate by-the-warning his resisted fought
stragemque non minimam inferebant. Ad ultimum dilabuntur
and-slaughter not least inflicted at the-last scatter
Romani in duas partes, campum turpiter deserentes. Cæsar
the-Romans into two parts the-field shamefully deserting Caesar
namque in una parte tutamina navium petebat: Hamo autem
for in one part the-safety of-the-ships sought Hamo moreover
nemora: quia non habebat spatium naves adeundi. Arviragus
the-forests because not he-had space the-ships of-approaching Arviragus
ergo arbitrans Claudium cum eo diffugere, festinavit eum
therefore thinking Claudius with him to-flee hurried him

sequi, nec cessavit de loco in locum sequi donec illos occupavit
to-follow nor ceased from place into place to-follow until them he-overtook
super litus maris, quod nunc de nomine ejusdem Hamonis
upon the-shore of-the-sea which now from the-name of-the-same of-Hamo
Hamtonia nuncupatur. Erat ibi portus applicantibus navibus
Southampton is-called there-was there a-port for-landing ships
congruus: navesque mercatorum appulsæ quiescebant. Eas
fitting and-the-ships of-merchants landed lay-at-rest them
ergo cum ingredi affectasset Hamo, supervenit ex improviso
therefore when to-enter he-had-desired Hamo came-upon from unforeseen
Arviragus, ipsumque subito interfecit. Portus autem ille ab illo
Arviragus and-him suddenly killed the-port moreover that from that
tempore usque in hodiernum diem portus Hamonis appellatur.
time all-the-way into today's day the-port of-Hamo is-called

Arviragus, rex factus, Claudio imperatori se submittit

XIV · ARVIRAGUS, MADE KING, SUBMITS TO CLAUDIUS

Claudius takes Porchester and besieges Arviragus in Winchester. Fearing the Britons' boldness, he offers his daughter in marriage if Arviragus will hold Britain under Rome. The nobles advise that there is no disgrace in submitting to the masters of the world, and Arviragus agrees, then helps Claudius subdue the Orkneys.

Interea Claudius resociatis sociis oppugnabat prædictam
meanwhile Claudius regathered comrades assaulted the-aforesaid
civitatem, quæ tunc Kaerperis, nunc autem Portcestria vocatur.
city which then Kaerperis now moreover Porchester is-called
Nec mora, mœnia ejus diruit: civibusque subactis insecutus
nor delay the-walls its he-pulled-down and-the-citizens subdued pursued
est Arviragum jam in Wintoniam ingressum. Postmodum
he-has Arviragus already into Winchester having-entered afterward

obsedit civitatem, diversisque machinationibus illam opprimere
he-besieged the-city and-with-various contrivances it to-crush
nitebatur. Arviragus vero ut sese obsessum inspexit, consociavit
he-strove Arviragus but when himself besieged he-saw joined
catervas suas, et apertis portis ad præliandum egressus est.
bands his-own and opened the-gates for fighting gone-out has
Cumque irruptionem facere affectasset, direxit Claudius nuncios
and-when an-inroad to-make he-had-desired directed Claudius messengers
ad ipsum mandans ut concordiam inirent. Quippe timebat
to him commanding that concord they-should-enter indeed he-feared
regis audaciam, Britonumque fortitudinem, præferebatque
of-the-king the-boldness and-of-the-Britons the-strength and-he-preferred
ipsos sensu et sapientia subjugare quam dubium certamen
them by-sense and wisdom to-subjugate than a-doubtful contest
inire. Mandabat ergo ei concordiam, daturumque se
to-enter he-commanded therefore to-him concord and-about-to-give himself
promittebat filiam suam, si tantummodo regnum Britanniæ
he-promised daughter his-own if only the-kingdom of-Britain
sub Romana potestate recognosceret. Postpositis ergo
under Roman power he-would-acknowledge set-aside therefore
debellationibus, suaserunt majores natu Arvirago promissionibus
the-warrings urged the-greater by-birth to-Arviragus to-the-promises
Claudii acquiescere. Dicebant autem non esse ei dedecori
of-Claudius to-assent they-said moreover not to-be to-him for-a-disgrace
subditum esse Romanis, cum totius orbis imperio
subject to-be to-the-Romans since of-the-whole world of-the-empire
potirentur. His vero et pluribus aliis mitigatus, consiliis
they-possessed by-these indeed and by-many other softened to-the-counsels
eorum paruit: et subjectionem Cæsari fecit. Mox Claudius
of-them he-obeyed and subjection to-Caesar made soon Claudius

propter filiam suam Romam misit, et auxilio Arviragi
for daughter his-own to-Rome sent and with-the-help of-Arviragus
usus, Orcades et provinciales insulas potestati suæ submisit.
having-used the-Orkneys and the-provincial islands to-power his-own subjected

Arviragus Claudii filiam Genuissam matrimonio ducit: Claudius Romam redit

XV · ARVIRAGUS MARRIES GENUISSA

Claudius' daughter Genuissa arrives, so beautiful that Arviragus loves her above all things. To mark the marriage, Claudius builds Gloucester on the Severn, which some say is named after his son Gloius. Claudius returns to Rome, and Peter the Apostle founds the church of Antioch and sends Mark to Egypt.

Emensa deinde hyeme, redierunt legati cum filia, eamque
having-passed then the-winter returned the-envoys with the-daughter and-her
patri tradiderunt. Erat autem nomen puellæ Genuissa,
to-the-father handed-over was moreover the-name of-the-girl Genuissa
eratque tanta ejus pulchritudo, ut aspicientes in admirationem
and-was so-great her beauty that the-beholders into wonder
duceret. Et ut maritali lege copulata fuit, tanto fervore
she-led and when by-marital law joined she-was with-so-great fervor
amoris succendit regem ita ut ipsam solam cunctis rebus
of-love she-inflamed the-king so that her alone to-all things
præferret. Unde locum quo ei primum nupserat celebrem
he-preferred whence the-place where to-him first she-had-married famous
esse volens, suggessit Claudio ut ædificaret in illo civitatem,
to-be wishing he-suggested to-Claudius that he-should-build in it a-city
quæ memoriam tantarum nuptiarum in futura tempora
which the-memory of-so-great nuptials into future times
præberet. Paruit ergo Claudius, præcepitque fieri urbem
might-offer obeyed therefore Claudius and-ordered to-be-made a-city

quæ de nomine ejus Kaerglou, id est Gloucestria nuncupata
which from the-name his Kaerglou that is Gloucester called
usque in hodiernum diem, in confinio Demetiæ et Loegriæ
all-the-way into today's day on the-border of-Demetia and of-Loegria
super ripam Sabrinæ sita est. Quidam vero dicunt ipsam
upon the-bank of-the-Severn situated is some indeed say it
nomen traxisse a Gloio duce, quem Claudius in illa
the-name to-have-drawn from Gloius the-duke whom Claudius in it
generavit, cui post Arviragum gubernaculum Demetici
begot to-whom after Arviragus the-helm of-the-Demetian
ducatus cessit. Ædificata igitur urbe, ac pacificata insula,
dukedom fell built therefore the-city and pacified the-island
rediit Claudius Romam, regimenque provincialium insularum
returned Claudius to-Rome and-the-rule of-the-provincial islands
Arvirago permisit. Eodem tempore Petrus Apostolus
to-Arviragus he-entrusted at-the-same time Peter the-Apostle
Antiochenam ecclesiam fundavit: Romamque deinde veniens,
the-Antiochene church founded and-to-Rome then coming
tenuit ibidem episcopatum: misitque Marcum Evangelistam
held there the-bishopric and-sent Mark the-Evangelist
in Ægyptum prædicare Evangelium quod scripserat.
into Egypt to-preach the-Gospel which he-had-written

Arviragus bellum contra Romanos renovat: contra quem Vespasianus proficiscitur

XVI · ARVIRAGUS RENEWS THE WAR

Grown powerful, Arviragus spurns Roman rule, and Vespasian is sent against him. Barred from Richborough, Vespasian lands at Totnes and besieges Exeter, and after an indecisive battle Queen Genuissa makes peace between them. In old age Arviragus loves the Senate and rules justly, Juvenal names him in a poem, and he is buried at Gloucester.

At Arviragus, ut Claudius recessit, cœpit sensum et
but Arviragus when Claudius withdrew began sense and
probitatem habere: civitates et oppida reædificare: populumque
prowess to-have the-cities and towns to-rebuild and-the-people
regni tanta justitia coercere, ita ut longe positis
of-the-kingdom with-so-great justice to-restrain so that far to-placed
regibus timori esset. Hinc autem subsequente superbia,
kings for-fear he-was hence moreover following pride
despexit Romanam potestatem, neque senatui voluit diutius
he-despised the-Roman power nor to-the-senate he-wished longer
subjectionem tenere: sed sibimet omnia vendicavit. Quo audito,
subjection to-hold but to-himself all-things he-claimed which heard
missus est Vespasianus a Claudio, ut Arviragum vel
sent was Vespasian by Claudius so-that Arviragus either
pacificaret vel Romanæ subjectioni restitueret. Cum igitur
he-might-reconcile or to-Roman subjection might-restore when therefore
in Rutupi portum applicare incœpisset Vespasianus, obviavit
into of-Rutupi the-port to-land had-begun Vespasian met
ei Arviragus, prohibuitque ne portum ingrederetur. Tantam
him Arviragus and-forbade lest the-port he-should-enter so-great
namque multitudinem armatorum conduxerat, ut Romanis
for a-multitude of-armed-men he-had-brought that to-the-Romans

terrori esset, nec ob ejus irruptionem terram adire
for-terror he-was nor on-account-of his inroad the-land to-approach
auderent. Retraxit itaque se Vespasianus a portu illo,
they-dared drew-back and-so himself Vespasian from port that
retortisque velis in Totonesium littus applicuit. Nactus deinde
and-turned-back sails on the-Totnes shore landed having-got then
tellurem, Kaerpen-Huelgoit, quæ Exonia vocatur, obsessurus
the-land Kaerpen-Huelgoit which Exeter is-called about-to-besiege
eandem adivit. Cumque eam septem diebus obsedisset,
the-same he-went-to and-when it for-seven days he-had-besieged
supervenit Arviragus cum exercitu suo, prælumque commisit.
came-upon Arviragus with army his-own and-battle joined
Die illa valde laceratus fuit utrorumque exercitus, sed neuter
on-day that greatly torn was of-both the-army but neither
victoria potitus est. Mane autem facto, mediante Genuissa
of-the-victory gained has morning moreover made mediating Genuissa
regina concordes effecti sunt duces, et commilitones suos
the-queen in-concord made were the-leaders and comrades their-own
in Hiberniam ablegaverunt. Hyeme vere emensa Vespasianus
into Ireland they-sent-off the-winter truly having-passed Vespasian
Romam rediit, et Arviragus in Britannia remansit. Deinde
to-Rome returned and Arviragus in Britain remained then
in senectutem vergens, cœpit senatum diligere, regnumque
into old-age declining he-began the-senate to-love and-kingdom
suum cum pace et tranquillitate tractare, leges etiam veteris
his-own with peace and tranquility to-handle the-laws also of-old
traditionis confirmare, et novas invenire, maxima cuique
tradition to-confirm and new to-devise greatest to-every
probo donaria impertiens. Fama igitur ejus per totam
good-man gifts imparting the-fame therefore his through the-whole
Europam divulgata, diligebant eum Romani et timebant, ita
Europe spread-abroad loved him the-Romans and feared so

ut præ omnibus regibus sermo de eo Romæ fieret. Unde
that before all kings talk about him at-Rome was-made whence
Juvenalis cæcum quendam Neroni dixisse in libro suo
Juvenal blind a-certain-man to-Nero to-have-said in book his-own
commemorat, cum de capto rhumbo loqueretur, inquiens,
records when about the-caught turbot he-was-speaking saying

Regem aliquem capies aut de temone Britanno
a-king some you-will-capture or from the-pole British
Decidet Arviragus.
will-fall Arviragus

Nullus eo in bello ferocior fuit, nullus pace mitior, nullus
no-one than-him in war fiercer was no-one in-peace milder no-one
jocosior, nullus in dandis muneribus profusior. At ut dies
more-jesting no-one in giving gifts more-lavish but when the-days
vitæ suæ explevit, sepultus est Claudio-cestriæ, in quodam
of-life his-own he-fulfilled buried he-was at-Gloucester in a-certain
templo quod in honorem Claudii dedicaverat et construxerat.
temple which in honor of-Claudius he-had-dedicated and had-built

Rodric, dux Pictorum a Mario devincitur

XVII · MARIUS DEFEATS RODRIC, LEADER OF THE PICTS

Arviragus' son Marius, a wise king, defeats and kills Rodric, king of the Picts, who has landed from Scythia. He raises a stone in Westmorland to mark the victory and gives the defeated Picts Caithness to live in. Refused British wives, they take wives from Ireland, and Marius keeps the peace and pays the Romans their tribute.

Successit ei in regnum filius ejus Marius, vir miræ
succeeded to-him in the-kingdom son his Marius a-man of-wonderful
prudentiæ et sapientiæ. Regnante postmodum illo, quidam
prudence and wisdom reigning afterward him a-certain
rex Pictorum, nomine Rodric, de Scythia cum magna classe
king of-the-Picts by-name Rodric from Scythia with a-great fleet
veniens, applicuit in Aquilonarem partem Britanniæ, quæ
coming landed in the-northern part of-Britain which
Albania appellatur, cœpitque provinciam illam vastare. Collecto
Albany is-called and-began province that to-lay-waste gathered
igitur populo suo petivit eum Marius, illatisque præliis
therefore people his-own sought him Marius and-brought-on battles
ipsum interfecit, et victoria potitus est. Deinde erexit
him killed and of-the-victory gained has then he-raised
lapidem in signum triumphi sui, in provincia, quæ postea
a-stone as a-sign of-triumph his-own in the-province which afterward
de nomine ejus Westimaria dicta fuit: in quo inscriptus
from the-name his Westmorland called was on which inscribed
titulus memoriam ejus usque in hodiernum diem testatur.
the-title the-memory his all-the-way into today's day testifies
Peremptо vero Rodric, dedit devicto populo, qui cum eo
destroyed indeed Rodric he-gave to-the-defeated people which with him
venerat, partem Albaniæ ad inhabitandum, quæ Cathenesia
had-come a-part of-Albany for inhabiting which Caithness

vocatur. Erat autem deserta, nullo habitatore multis diebus
is-called it-was moreover deserted with-no inhabitant for-many days
inculta. Cumque uxores non habentes, filias et cognatas
untilled and-when wives not having the-daughters and kinswomen
Britonum ab illis peterent, dedignati sunt Britones hujusmodi
of-the-Britons from them they-asked disdained have the-Britons of-this-kind
populo natas suas maritare: at illi ut repulsam passi
to-a-people daughters their-own to-marry but they when refusal suffered
fuerunt, transfretaverunt in Hiberniam, duxeruntque ex patria
had crossed into Ireland and-led from country
illa mulieres, ex quibus coadunata sobole multitudinem suam
that women from whom with-gathered offspring the-multitude their-own
auxerunt. Sed hæc hactenus: cum non proposuerim tractare
they-increased but these-things thus-far since not I-have-proposed to-treat
historiam eorum, sive Scotorum, qui ex illis et Hibernensibus
the-history of-them or of-the-Scots who from them and the-Irish
originem duxerunt. At Marius, cum totam insulam in
origin drew but Marius when the-whole island in
summa pace composuisset, cœpit amorem cum Romano
highest peace he-had-settled began love with the-Roman
populo habere, tributa solvens, quæ ab ipso exigebantur:
people to-have tributes paying which from him were-exacted
exemplo etiam patris incitatus, justitiam, legem, et
by-the-example also of-the-father roused justice law and
pacem, et omnia honesta per regnum suum exercebat.
peace and all honorable-things through kingdom his-own he-exercised

Coillus regnum suscipit

XVIII · COILLUS TAKES THE KINGDOM

Marius' son Coillus, raised at Rome, is a friend of the Romans. Seeing the whole world subject to them, he pays the tribute and keeps the peace. No king shows the nobles greater reverence or more generous gifts.

Cum autem vitæ suæ cursum explevisset, filius ejus, nomine
when moreover of-life his-own the-course he-had-fulfilled son his by-name
Coillus, regni gubernaculum suscepit. Hic ab infantia
Coillus of-the-kingdom the-helm took-up this-one from infancy
Romæ nutritus fuerat, moresque Romanorum edoctus in
at-Rome reared had-been and-the-ways of-the-Romans taught into
maximam ipsorum amicitiam inciderat. Sed et ipse eis
greatest their friendship had-fallen but also he-himself to-them
tributum reddebat, adversari diffugiens: quippe videbat totum
tribute rendered to-oppose shunning indeed he-saw the-whole
orbem illis subditum, eorumque potestatem quosque pagos et
world to-them subject and-their power all districts and
quamque provinciam superare. Solvens ergo quod exigebatur,
every province to-overcome paying therefore what was-exacted
in pace quod possidebat obtinuit. Nullus in regibus majorem
in peace what he-possessed he-held no-one among kings greater
reverentiam nobilibus regni præstabat: quia ipsos aut in
reverence to-the-nobles of-the-kingdom offered because them either in
pace manere permittebat, aut assiduis donariis munerabat.
peace to-remain he-allowed or with-constant gifts he-presented

Lucius rex primus Christianus

XIX · LUCIUS, THE FIRST CHRISTIAN KING

Coillus' only son Lucius imitates his father's goodness so closely that all think him Coillus himself, and, wishing his end to surpass his beginning, writes to Pope Eleutherius asking for Christianity. The pope sends the teachers Faganus and Duvianus, who baptize the king, and the peoples follow. The twenty-eight flamens and three archflamens become bishops and archbishops, with metropolitan sees at London, York, and the City of the Legions.

Natus est autem Coillo filius unicus, cui nomen erat
born was moreover to-Coillus a-son only to-whom name was
Lucius: qui cum defuncto patre, regni diademate
Lucius who when having-died the-father of-the-kingdom with-the-diadem
insignitus fuisset, omnes actus bonitatis illius imitabatur,
marked had-been all the-acts of-goodness his imitated
ita ut ipse Coillus a cunctis censeretur. Exitum quoque
so that he-himself Coillus by all was-thought the-end also
suum præferre volens principio, epistolas suas Eleutherio
his-own to-surpass wishing to-the-beginning letters his-own to-Eleutherius
Papæ direxit, petens ut ab eo Christianismum reciperet.
the-Pope directed asking that from him Christianity he-might-receive
Serenaverant enim mentem ejus miracula, quæ tyrones
had-made-serene for the-mind his the-miracles which the-recruits
Christi per diversas nationes faciebant. Unde in amorem
of-Christ through various nations did whence into love
veræ fidei anhelans, piæ petitionis effectum consecutus
of-the-true faith panting of-the-pious petition the-effect obtained
est. Siquidem beatus pontifex comperta ejus devotione, duos
he-has indeed blessed the-pontiff discovered his devotion two
religiosissimos doctores, Faganum et Duvianum, ad illum
most-religious teachers Faganus and Duvianus to him

misit, qui verbi Dei incarnationem prædicantes, ipsum
sent who of-the-Word of-God the-incarnation preaching him
baptismate sacro abluerunt, et ad Christum converterunt.
with-baptism holy washed and to Christ converted
Nec mora, concurrentes undique nationum populi, regis
nor delay running-together from-everywhere of-the-nations the-peoples of-the-king
exemplum insequuntur, eodem lavacro mundati, cœlestique
the-example follow by-the-same washing cleansed and-to-the-heavenly
regno restituuntur. Beati ergo doctores cum per totam
kingdom are-restored the-blessed therefore teachers when through the-whole
fere insulam paganismum delevissent, templa quæ in
almost island paganism they-had-wiped-out the-temples which in
honore plurimorum deorum fundata fuerant, uni Deo
honor of-very-many gods founded had-been to-the-one God
ejusque sanctis dedicaverunt, diversisque ordinatorum cœtibus
and-his to-the-saints they-dedicated and-with-various of-ordained-men gatherings
repleverunt. Fuerunt tunc in Britannia octo et viginti Flamines,
filled there-were then in Britain eight and twenty Flamens
nec non et tres Archiflamines, quorum potestati ceteri
nor not also three Archflamens whose to-power the-other
judices morum atque phanatici submittebantur. Hos etiam
judges of-morals and temple-priests were-subjected these also
ex præcepto Apostolici idololatriæ eripuerunt: et ubi erant
by the-order of-the-Apostolic from-idolatry they-snatched and where there-were
Flamines, Episcopos, ubi erant Archiflamines, Archiepiscopos
Flamens Bishops where there-were Archflamens Archbishops
posuerunt. Sedes autem Archiflaminum in tribus nobilioribus
they-placed the-seats moreover of-the-Archflamens in three more-noble
civitatibus fuerant, Londoniis videlicet, atque Eboraci, et in
cities had-been at-London namely and at-York and in
urbe Legionum, quam super Oscam fluvium in Glamorgantia
the-City of-the-Legions which upon the-Usk river in Glamorgan

veteres muri et ædificia sitam fuisse testantur. His
the-old walls and buildings situated to-have-been testify in-these
ergo tribus evacuata superstitione, octo et viginti Episcopi
therefore three emptied the-superstition eight and twenty Bishops
subduntur, diversis quoque parochiis, subjacuit Metropolitano
are-subjected various also parishes lay-subject to-the-Metropolitan
Eboracensi, Deira et Albania, quas magnum flumen Humbri
of-York Deira and Albany which the-great river of-the-Humber
a Loegria secernit. Londoniensi vero Metropolitano submissa
from Loegria separates to-the-London indeed Metropolitan submitted
est Loegria et Cornubia. Has duas provincias sejungit Sabrina
was Loegria and Cornwall these two provinces separates the-Severn
a Cambria, id est, Guallia, quæ urbi Legionum subjacuit.
from Cambria that is Wales which to-the-City of-the-Legions lay-subject

Episcopi duo, qui in Britanniam venerant, Romam redeunt

XX · THE TWO BISHOPS RETURN TO ROME

The two teachers return to Rome, have their work confirmed by the pope, and come back with many companions. Their teaching quickly strengthens the Britons in the faith. Their names and deeds are in Gildas' book on the victory of Aurelius Ambrosius, which Geoffrey will not retell in a lower style.

Denique restauratis omnibus, redierunt Antistites Romam: et
finally restored all-things returned the-prelates to-Rome and
quæ fecerant a beatissimo Papa confirmari impetraverunt.
what they-had-done by the-most-blessed Pope to-be-confirmed obtained
Confirmatione vero facta, reversi sunt in Britanniam
the-confirmation indeed made returned they-have into Britain
compluribus aliis comitati: quorum doctrina gens Britonum
by-very-many others accompanied whose by-teaching the-people of-the-Britons

in fide Christi in brevi corroborata fuit. Eorum nomina et
in the-faith of-Christ in short-time strengthened was their names and
actus in libro reperiuntur, quem Gildas de victoria Aurelii
acts in the-book are-found which Gildas about the-victory of-Aurelius
Ambrosii inscripsit. Quod autem ipse tam lucido tractatu
Ambrosius inscribed what moreover he-himself so in-a-lucid treatise
paraverat, nullatenus opus fuit ut inferiori stylo renovaretur.
had-prepared by-no-means need was that in-a-lower style it-should-be-renewed

BOOK V

Lucius multas possessiones ecclesiis donat: sine natis moritur

I · LUCIUS ENDOWS THE CHURCHES

Rejoicing in the spread of the true faith, Lucius gives the churches the possessions and lands that belonged to the idols' temples, adds more fields and dwellings, and raises them with every liberty. He dies at Gloucester in the year 156 and is buried in the church of the first see. He leaves no heir, and the Britons fall into dissension while Roman power weakens.

Interea gloriosus ille rex Lucius, cum intra regnum suum
meanwhile glorious that king Lucius when within kingdom his-own
cultum veræ fidei magnificatum esse vidisset, maximo
the-worship of-the-true faith magnified to-be he-had-seen with-greatest
gaudio fluctuans, possessiones et territoria quæ prius templa
joy surging the-possessions and territories which before the-temples
idolorum possidebant, in meliorem usum vertens, ecclesiis
of-the-idols possessed into a-better use turning to-the-churches
fidelium permanere concessit. Et quia majorem honorem
of-the-faithful to-remain he-granted and because greater honor
ipsis impendere debuerat, augmentavit illas amplioribus agris
on-them to-bestow he-ought he-increased them with-ampler fields

et mansionibus, omnique libertate sublimavit. Inter hæc et
and dwellings and-with-every liberty raised among these and
ceteros propositi sui actus in urbe Claudiocestriæ ab hac vita
the-other of-purpose his-own acts in the-city of-Gloucester from this life
migravit, et in ecclesia primæ sedis honorifice sepultus est,
he-departed and in the-church of-the-first see honorably buried he-was
Anno ab incarnatione domini centesimo quinquagesimo sexto.
in-the-year from the-incarnation of-the-Lord hundredth fiftieth sixth
Caruit sobole quæ sibi succederet: unde defuncto illo dissidium
he-lacked offspring which to-him might-succeed whence having-died him dissension
inter Britones ortum fuit, et Romana potestas infirmata.
among the-Britons arisen has and the-Roman power weakened

Severus senator partem Britanniæ sibi submittit: cum Fulgenio pugnat

II · SEVERUS AND FULGENIUS

The Senate sends the senator Severus with two legions; he subdues part of Britain, drives the rest beyond Deira into Albany under Fulgenius, and builds a rampart from sea to sea between them. Fulgenius returns from Scythia with the Picts and besieges York, where Severus is killed and Fulgenius mortally wounded. The Romans make Geta king, the Britons his brother Bassianus, born of a British mother, and in the brothers' fight Geta is killed.

Cumque id Romæ nunciatum fuisset, legavit Senatus Severum
and-when this at-Rome announced had-been dispatched the-Senate Severus
senatorem, duasque legiones cum illo, ut patria Romanæ
the-senator and-two legions with him so-that the-country to-the-Roman
potestati restitueretur. Mox ut appulsus fuit, prælium
power might-be-restored soon when landed he-was battle
commisit cum Britonibus, partemque sibi submisit: partem
he-joined with the-Britons and-a-part to-himself subjected the-part

vero illam quam subjugare nequibat, diris debellationibus
indeed that which to-subjugate he-could-not with-dire warrings
infestare laboravit; ita ut eam trans Deiram in Albaniam
to-harass he-labored so that it beyond Deira into Albany
fugaret. At illa duce Fulgenio omni nisu resistebat,
he-put-to-flight but it as-leader Fulgenius with-all effort resisted
sæpiusque stragem maximam et concivibus et Romanis
and-more-often slaughter greatest both on-fellow-citizens and on-Romans
inferebat. Conducebat autem in auxilium sibi quoscunque
inflicted he-brought moreover to help to-himself whatever
insulanos populos inveniebat: et sic multotiens cum victoria
island peoples he-found and thus many-times with victory
redibat. Irruptionem ergo ejus graviter ferens imperator,
he-returned the-inroad therefore his heavily bearing the-emperor
jussit construi vallum inter Deiram et Albaniam, ut
ordered to-be-built a-rampart between Deira and Albany so-that
impetum ejus propius accedere prohiberet. Communicato
the-attack his nearer to-approach it-might-forbid shared
ergo sumptu fecerunt illud a mari usque ad mare:
therefore the-expense they-made it from sea all-the-way to sea
quod multo tempore post hostium accessus detinuit. At
which by-much time afterward of-the-enemies the-approach held-back but
Fulgenius cum diutius resistere nequivisset, transfretavit
Fulgenius when longer to-resist he-had-been-unable crossed
in Scythiam, ut Pictorum auxilio dignitati restitueretur.
into Scythia so-that of-the-Picts with-the-help to-dignity he-might-be-restored
Cumque ibi omnem juventutem patriæ collegisset, reversus
and-when there all the-youth of-the-country he-had-gathered returned
est cum maximo navigio in Britanniam, atque Eboracum
he-has with a-very-great fleet into Britain and York
obsedit. Quod cum per ceteras nationes divulgatum fuisset,
besieged which when through the-other nations spread-abroad had-been

maxima pars Britonum Severum deseruit, et ad Fulgenium
the-greatest part of-the-Britons Severus deserted and to Fulgenius
ivit. Nec ob id ab incœptis suis destitit Severus. Sed
went nor on-account-of this from undertakings his-own desisted Severus but
convocatis Romanis, ceterisque Britonibus qui ipsi adhæserunt,
called-together the-Romans and-the-other Britons who to-him clung
obsidionem petivit, et cum Fulgenio dimicavit. Sed cum
the-siege he-sought and with Fulgenius fought but when
pugnam acrius confecisset, interfectus est Severus cum multis
the-fight more-fiercely he-had-waged killed was Severus with many
suorum, et Fulgenius letaliter vulneratus est. Exin Eboraci
of-his-own and Fulgenius mortally wounded was thence at-York
sepultus est: quam urbem legiones ejus obtinuerunt. Reliquit
buried he-was which city legions his held left
ipse duos filios, Bassianum et Getam: quorum Geta Romana
he-himself two sons Bassianus and Geta of-whom Geta by-a-Roman
matre genitus erat, Bassianus vero Britannica. Defuncto igitur
mother born was Bassianus but by-a-British having-died therefore
patre sublimaverunt Romani Getam in regem: faventes illi,
the-father raised the-Romans Geta into king favoring him
quia ex utraque parte Romanus fuerat. Quod abnegantes
because from each side Roman he-had-been which denying
Britones Bassianum elegerunt: quia ex materno sanguine ipsis
the-Britons Bassianus chose because by maternal blood to-them
conjunctus fuerat. Proinde commiserunt fratres pugnam.
joined he-had-been accordingly joined the-brothers a-fight
Unde Geta interficitur, Bassianus vero regno potitur.
whence Geta is-killed Bassianus but of-the-kingdom gains-possession

Carausius solium Britanniæ usurpat

III · CARAUSIUS SEIZES THE THRONE OF BRITAIN

Carausius, a youth of the lowest birth, persuades the Senate to let him guard the British coast with a fleet. He ravages the shores and islands, gathers a host of men greedy for plunder, and asks the Britons to make him king. He bribes the Picts to turn on Bassianus in battle, kills him, takes the throne, and settles the Picts in Albany.

Eo tempore fuerat in Britannia juvenis quidam, nomine
at-that time there-had-been in Britain a-youth certain by-name
Caraüsius, ex infima gente creatus: qui cum probitatem
Carausius from the-lowest race begotten who when prowess
suam in multis debellationibus suis examinasset, profectus
his-own in many warrings his-own he-had-tested set-out
est Romam, petivitque licentiam a senatu ut maritima
he-has to-Rome and-sought leave from the-senate that the-seacoast
Britanniæ ab incursione barbarica navigiis tueretur: quod
of-Britain from incursion barbarian with-fleets he-might-guard but
si sibi concederetur, promittebat se tot et tanta
if to-him it-were-granted he-promised himself so-many and so-great-things
adepturum, quibus Rempublicam magis augmentaret, quam
about-to-gain by-which the-Republic more he-would-increase than
si ipsi regnum Britanniæ traderetur. Cumque senatum
if to-him the-kingdom of-Britain were-handed-over and-when the-senate
promissis suis illusisset, impetravit quod poposcerat, et
with-promises his-own he-had-deceived he-obtained what he-had-demanded and
cum sigillatis chartis in Britanniam rediit. Mox celere
with sealed charters into Britain returned soon swiftly
collectis navibus, ascivit magnam virtutem juventutis, et
gathered ships he-summoned a-great force of-youth and

mare ingressus est, et circuivit omnia littora regni,
the-sea entered he-has and went-round all the-shores of-the-kingdom
maximum tumultum per populum faciens. Interea in
greatest tumult through the-people making meanwhile upon
comprovinciales insulas appulsus, agros populando, et civitates
the-neighboring islands landed the-fields by-ravaging and the-cities
et urbes diruendo, incolis earum omnia sua
and towns by-pulling-down from-the-inhabitants of-them all their-own-things
eripiebat. Sic ergo ipso agente, confluebant ad illum
he-snatched thus therefore him acting flowed-together to him
quicunque in aliena anhelabant: ita ut in brevi tantum
whoever for others'-goods panted so that in short-time so-great
haberet exercitum, quanto nullus vicinus princeps resistere
he-had an-army to-which no neighboring prince to-resist
quivisset. Ob hoc itaque tumidum habens animum:
could on-account-of this and-so swollen having mind
dixit Britonibus, ut sese sibi facerent regem, et
he-said to-the-Britons that him for-themselves they-should-make king and
ipse interfectis atque exterminatis Romanis, totam insulam
he-himself killed and driven-out the-Romans the-whole island
a barbarica gente liberaret. Quod cum impetrasset, dimicavit
from the-barbarian race would-free which when he-had-obtained he-fought
confestim cum Bassiano, et eum interfecit, regnique
forthwith with Bassianus and him killed and-of-the-kingdom
gubernaculum suscepit. Prodiderant enim Bassianum Picti,
the-helm took-up had-betrayed for Bassianus the-Picts
quos dux Fulgenius matris suæ frater in Britanniam
whom duke Fulgenius of-mother his-own the-brother into Britain
conduxerat. Nam dum ei auxiliari debuissent, promissis et
had-brought for while him to-help they-ought-to-have by-the-promises and
donariis Carausii corrupti, in ipso prælio diverterunt se
gifts of-Carausius corrupted in the-very battle turned-aside themselves

a Bassiano, et in commilitones ejus irruerunt. Unde
from Bassianus and upon the-comrades his rushed whence
stupefacti ceteri, cum ignorarent qui socii essent, quis
stunned the-others since they-did-not-know who comrades were who
hostis, ocyus dilabuntur: et victoria cessit Carausio. Qui ut
enemy more-swiftly scatter and the-victory fell to-Carausius who when
triumphum habuit, dedit Pictis locum mansionis in Albania,
triumph he-had he-gave to-the-Picts a-place of-dwelling in Albany
ubi cum Britonibus mixti per sequens ævum manserunt.
where with the-Britons mingled through the-following age they-remained

Allectus trucidato Carausio, ipse ab Asclepiodoto trucidatur

IV · CARAUSIUS, ALLECTUS, AND ASCLEPIODOTUS

The Senate sends Allectus with three legions, and he kills Carausius and oppresses the Britons. They make Asclepiodotus, duke of Cornwall, king, and he defeats and kills Allectus at London. Allectus' colleague Livius Gallus holds the city until the Britons break the walls, and when Gallus surrenders, the Venedotians behead the Romans by a stream later called Nautgallim, or Gallemborne.

Cum igitur invasio Carausii Romæ nuntiata fuisset,
when therefore the-invasion of-Carausius at-Rome announced had-been
legatum senatus Allectum cum tribus legionibus misit ut
as-envoy the-senate Allectus with three legions sent so-that
tyrannum interficeret, regnumque Britanniæ Romanæ potestati
the-tyrant he-should-kill and-the-kingdom of-Britain to-Roman power
restitueret. Nec mora, post quam appulsus fuit. præliatus
should-restore nor delay after that landed he-was fought
est cum Carausio: ipsoque interfecto solium regni
he-has with Carausius and-him killed the-throne of-the-kingdom
suscepit. Deinde maximam intulit Britonibus cladem, quia
took-up then greatest he-brought on-the-Britons disaster because

relicta Republica, societati Carausii adhæserant. Britones
left the-Republic to-the-alliance of-Carausius they-had-clung the-Britons
vero id graviter tolerantes, erexerunt in regem Asclepiodotum
but this heavily bearing raised into king Asclepiodotus
ducem Cornubiæ: communique assensu facto, persecuti sunt
duke of-Cornwall and-common assent made pursued they-have
Allectum, et ad prœlium provocarunt. Erat ipse tunc
Allectus and to battle challenged was he-himself then
Londoniis, festumque patriis diis celebrabat. At dum
at-London and-a-festival to-the-ancestral gods was-celebrating but when
adventum Asclepiodoti comperisset, relicto sacrificio egressus
the-arrival of-Asclepiodotus he-had-discovered left the-sacrifice gone-out
est cum tota fortitudine sua contra ipsum, acerrimamque
he-has with all strength his-own against him and-a-most-fierce
pugnam ingessit. Prævaluit autem Asclepiodotus, dissipavitque
fight heaped-on prevailed moreover Asclepiodotus and-scattered
Allecti turmas, et in fugam coëgit. Et usque insequendo,
of-Allectus the-troops and into flight forced and continually by-pursuing
multa milia et regem Allectum interemit. Cumque ita ipsi
many thousands and the-king Allectus he-destroyed and-when thus to-him
cessisset victoria, Livius Gallus, Allecti collega, residuos
had-fallen victory Livius Gallus of-Allectus colleague the-remaining
Romanos convocavit in urbem clausisque januis turres et
Romans called-together into the-city and-shut the-gates the-towers and
ceteras munitiones munivit, cogitabatque sic Asclepiodoto
other fortifications he-fortified and-he-thought thus Asclepiodotus
resistere, vel imminentem necem vitare. Sed Asclepiodotus
to-resist or the-impending death to-avoid but Asclepiodotus
cum ita factum esse vidisset, obsedit ocyus civitatem,
when thus done to-be he-had-seen besieged more-swiftly the-city
mandavitque omnibus ducibus Britanniæ quod Allectum cum
and-sent-word to-all the-dukes of-Britain that Allectus with

multis militibus interfecerat, obsidebatque Gallum, et reliquias
many knights he-had-killed and-was-besieging Gallus and the-remnants
Romanorum intra Londonias: unde quosque supplici rogatu
of-the-Romans within London whence all with-suppliant entreaty
poscebat ut sibi in auxilium festinarent. Leviter enim
he-asked that to-him to help they-should-hurry easily for
exterminandum erat Romanorum genus ex Britannia, si
to-be-exterminated was of-the-Romans the-race from Britain if
communi virtute illos inclusos invaderent. Ad edictum itaque
with-common valor them shut-in they-should-attack at the-edict and-so
ipsius venerunt Demeti, Venedoti, Deiri, et Albani,
his came the-Demetians the-Venedotians the-Deirans and the-Albans
et quicumque ex genere Britonum erant. Cumque omnes
and whoever from the-race of-the-Britons were and-when all
ante conspectum ducis convenissent, jussit machinationes
before the-sight of-the-duke had-come-together he-ordered contrivances
innumeras fieri, et mœnia civitatis prosternere. Paruit
innumerable to-be-made and the-walls of-the-city to-lay-low obeyed
illico unusquisque fortis et audax, et urbem acerrime
on-the-spot each-one brave and bold and the-city most-fiercely
invadit. Nec mora, diruerunt muros atque introitum sibi
attacks nor delay they-pulled-down the-walls and an-entry for-themselves
fecerunt, stragemque Romanis dabant. At Romani cum
they-made and-slaughter to-the-Romans they-gave but the-Romans when
sese interfici sine intermissione vidissent, suaserunt Gallo
themselves to-be-killed without intermission they-had-seen urged Gallus
ut sese et ipsos deditioni traderet: et misericordiam
that himself and them to-surrender he-should-hand-over and the-mercy
Asclepiodoti rogaret, ut vivi abscedere sinerentur.
of-Asclepiodotus should-ask that alive to-depart they-might-be-allowed
Interfecti enim omnes fere præter unam solam legionem
killed for all almost except one single legion

fuerunt, quæ adhuc restabat. Assensum ergo præbens Gallus
were which still remained assent therefore offering Gallus
tradidit se atque suos Asclepiodoto: cumque ipse
handed-over himself and his-own to-Asclepiodotus and-when he-himself
misericordiam habere de illo tractaret, venerunt Venedoti,
mercy to-have about him was-considering came the-Venedotians
et facto agmine decollaverunt omnes una die; intra urbem
and made a-column beheaded all on-one day within the-city
super torrentem, qui postea de nomine ducis, Britannice
upon the-torrent which afterward from the-name of-the-duke in-British
Nautgallim, Saxonice vero Gallemborne nuncupatus fuit.
Nautgallim in-Saxon indeed Gallemborne called was

Asclepiodotus regnum adipiscitur, Dioclesianus Christianos persequitur

V · DIOCLETIAN'S PERSECUTION

Asclepiodotus is crowned and rules justly for ten years. In his days Diocletian's persecution, carried out by Maximianus Herculius, burns the scriptures, destroys the churches, and kills priests and faithful, almost wiping out Christianity in Britain. God kindles the martyrs as lamps, among them Alban of Verulam, who hides his confessor Amphibalus and gives himself up in his place, and Julius and Aaron of the City of the Legions.

Triumphatis itaque Romanis, cepit Asclepiodotus regni
triumphed-over and-so the-Romans took Asclepiodotus of-the-kingdom
diadema, et capiti suo, populo annuente, imposuit. Exin
the-diadem and on-head his-own the-people nodding placed thence
tractavit patriam recta justitia et pace decem annis:
he-handled the-country with-right justice and peace for-ten years
raptorumque sævitiam atque latronum mucrones coercuit.
and-of-plunderers the-savagery and of-robbers the-swords restrained

In diebus ipsius orta est Diocletiani Imperatoris persecutio,
in the-days his arisen has of-Diocletian the-Emperor the-persecution
qua fere deleta fuit Christianitas in tota insula, quæ
by-which almost wiped-out was Christianity in the-whole island which
a tempore regis Lucii integra et intemerata permanserat.
from the-time of-king Lucius whole and undefiled had-remained
Superaverat Maximianus Herculius princeps militiæ
had-come-over Maximianus Herculius prince of-the-knighthood
prædicti tyranni, cujus imperio omnes subversæ fuerunt
of-the-aforesaid tyrant whose by-command all overturned were
ecclesiæ, et cunctæ sacræ scripturæ quæ inveniri poterant,
the-churches and all sacred scriptures which to-be-found could
in mediis foris exustæ. Atque electi sacerdotes cum fidelibus
in the-middle forums burned and chosen priests with the-faithful
eis subditis trucidati: ita ut agmine denso certatim ad
to-them subject slaughtered so that in-a-column dense eagerly to
amœna cœlorum regna, quasi ad propriam sedem, festinarent.
the-pleasant of-the-heavens kingdoms as-if to their-own seat they-hurried
Magnificavit ergo misericordiam suam nobis Deus, qui gratuito
magnified therefore mercy his-own to-us God who by-free
munere persecutionis tempore, ne penitus crassa atræ
gift of-persecution in-the-time lest utterly by-the-thick of-black
noctis caligine populus Britonum offuscaretur, clarissimas
night darkness the-people of-the-Britons should-be-darkened the-brightest
lampades sanctorum martyrum accendit: quorum nunc
lamps of-the-holy martyrs kindled whose now
sepulturæ et passionum loca non minimum divinæ caritatis
burials and of-the-passions the-places not the-least of-divine charity
ardorem intuentium mentibus incuterent, si non lugubri
ardor of-the-beholders into-the-minds would-strike if not by-the-mournful
barbarorum divortio civibus adempta fuissent. Inter
of-the-barbarians separation from-the-citizens taken-away they-had-been among

ceteros utriusque sexus, summa magnanimitate in acie
the-others of-each sex with-highest magnanimity in the-battle-line
Christi perstantes, passus est Albanus Verolamius, Julius
of-Christ persevering suffered has Alban of-Verulam Julius
quoque et Aaron urbis Legionum cives: quorum Albanus
also and Aaron of-the-City of-the-Legions citizens of-whom Alban
caritatis gratia fervens, confessorem suum Amphibalum a
of-charity by-the-grace burning confessor his-own Amphibalus by
persecutoribus insectatum, et jam jamque comprehendendum
the-persecutors hunted and now and-now about-to-be-seized
primum in domo suo occuluit, et deinde se discrimini
first in house his-own hid and then himself to-the-peril
mortis obtulit, imitans in hoc Christum, animam suam pro
of-death offered imitating in this Christ soul his-own for
ovibus ponentem. Ceteri vero duo inaudita membrorum
the-sheep laying-down the-other but two with-unheard-of of-the-limbs
discerptione lacerati ad egregias portas Hierusalem absque
tearing-apart torn to the-excellent gates of-Jerusalem without
cunctamine cum martyrii trophæo convolaverunt.
hesitation with of-martyrdom the-trophy flew-together

Coel Asclepiodotum in prælio obtruncat, filiam suam Helenam Constantio donat

VI · COEL, HELENA, AND CONSTANTIUS

Coel, duke of Colchester, kills Asclepiodotus and takes the crown, and the Senate sends Constantius, conqueror of Spain. Coel submits on condition that he keep the kingdom; a month later he falls gravely ill and dies within eight days. Constantius takes the crown and marries Coel's daughter Helena, beautiful and learned, and their son Constantine succeeds him at York and rules with justice.

Interea insurrexit in regem Asclepiodotum Coel dux
meanwhile rose against the-king Asclepiodotus Coel duke
Kaercolvin, id est Colecestriæ, et prælio conserto eum peremit,
of-Kaercolvin that is of-Colchester and battle joined him destroyed
regnique diademate sese insignivit. Cumque id senatui
and-of-the-kingdom with-the-diadem himself marked and-when this to-the-senate
nunciatum fuisset, gavisi sunt propter regis mortem,
announced had-been rejoiced they-have on-account-of of-the-king the-death
qui per omnia Romanam potestatem turbaverat. Recolentes
who in all-things the-Roman power had-disturbed recalling
quoque damnum, quod de amisso regno habuerant, legaverunt
also the-loss which from the-lost kingdom they-had-had they-dispatched
Constantium senatorem, qui Hispaniam ipsis subdiderat,
Constantius the-senator who Spain to-them had-subjected
virum sapientem et audacem, et præ ceteris Rempublicam
a-man wise and bold and before the-others the-Republic
augere laboraverat. Porro Coel Britonum dux, cum ipsius
to-increase had-labored further Coel of-the-Britons duke when his
adventum comperisset, timuit ei prælia ingerere: quia
arrival he-had-discovered feared on-him battles to-heap because
fama ipsius afferebat, nullum regem posse illi resistere. Ut
the-fame his brought no king to-be-able him to-resist when

igitur intra insulam Constantius applicuit, direxit Coel legatos
therefore within the-island Constantius landed directed Coel envoys
suos ad illum, petivitque pacem et subjectionem promisit
his-own to him and-sought peace and subjection promised
eo pacto, ut regnum Britanniæ possideret, nihilque aliud
on-that condition that the-kingdom of-Britain he-should-possess and-nothing else
præter solitum tributum Romanæ dignitati solveret. Hoc
besides the-customary tribute to-the-Roman dignity should-pay this
igitur nunciato, acquievit ei Constantius, pacemque receptis
therefore announced assented to-him Constantius and-peace received
obsidibus confirmaverunt. Emenso deinde mense gravissima
hostages they-confirmed having-passed then a-month a-most-grave
infirmitas occupavit Coel, ipsumque intra octo dies morte
sickness seized Coel and-him within eight days with-death
affecit. Quo defuncto insignivit se Constantius regni
afflicted who having-died marked himself Constantius of-the-kingdom
diademate: duxitque filiam Coel, cui nomen erat
with-the-diadem and-married the-daughter of-Coel to-whom name was
Helena. Pulcritudo ejus provinciales puellas superabat, nec
Helena the-beauty her the-provincial girls surpassed nor
uspiam reperiebatur altera quæ in musicis instrumentis sive
anywhere was-found another who in musical instruments or
in liberalibus artibus doctior illa censeretur. Caruerat
in the-liberal arts more-learned than-she might-be-thought had-lacked
pater altera sobole quæ regni solio potiretur.
the-father other offspring which of-the-kingdom of-the-throne might-gain-possession
Unde eam ita docere laboraverat, ut regnum post patris
whence her so to-teach he-had-labored that the-kingdom after of-the-father
obitum facilius tractare quiret. Cum igitur illam in
the-death more-easily to-handle she-might-be-able when therefore her into
thori societatem accepisset Constantius, generavit ex ea
of-the-bed the-partnership he-had-received Constantius begot of her

filium, vocavitque eum Constantinum. Exin cum undecim
a-son and-called him Constantine thence when eleven
anni præteriissent, ipse apud Eboracum morti subjacuit,
years had-passed he-himself at York to-death lay-subject
regnumque filio donavit. Qui ut honoris solio potitus
and-the-kingdom to-the-son gave who when of-honor of-the-throne gained
est, cœpit infra paucos annos probitatem maximam habere,
has began within few years prowess greatest to-have
leoninam ferocitatem ostendere, justitiam inter populos
lion-like ferocity to-show justice among the-peoples
tenere. Latronum rapacitatem hebetabat, tyrannorum sævitiam
to-hold of-robbers the-rapacity he-blunted of-tyrants the-savagery
conculcabat, pacem ubique renovare studebat.
he-trampled peace everywhere to-renew he-was-eager

Romani auxilium a Constantino contra Maxentium implorant

VII · THE ROMANS APPEAL TO CONSTANTINE

The tyrant Maxentius robs the noblest citizens of Rome, and many flee to Constantine in Britain. They stir him against Maxentius and plead that he alone of their race can restore them. They urge him to seek Rome with an army and give them back their possessions, wives, and children.

Ea tempestate erat quidam tyrannus Romæ, Maxentius
at-that time was a-certain tyrant at-Rome Maxentius
nomine, qui quoque nobiles quosque probissimos cives
by-name who also the-nobles all the-most-upright citizens
exhæredare conabatur, pessimaque tyrannide Rempublicam
to-disinherit tried and-with-the-worst tyranny the-Republic
opprimebat. Incumbente igitur ipsius sævitia, diffugiebant
crushed pressing therefore his savagery fled

exterminati ad Constantinum in Britanniam, et ab ipso
banished to Constantine into Britain and by him
honorifice excipiebantur. Denique cum multi tales ad eum
honorably were-received finally when many such to him
confluxissent, incitaverunt eum in odium adversus prædictum
had-flowed-together they-roused him into hatred against the-aforesaid
tyrannum, et talia ei sæpissime objiciebant; "Quousque
tyrant and such-things to-him most-often they-put-forward how-long
calamitatem et exilium nostrum patieris, Constantine? Ut
the-calamity and exile our will-you-suffer O-Constantine to
quid moraris nos in natale solum restituere? Tu solus
what-end do-you-delay us into native soil to-restore you alone
es ex generatione nostra, qui quod amisimus nobis reddere
are of generation our who what we-have-lost to-us to-restore
vales, expulso Maxentio. Quis etenim princeps regi
are-able driven-out Maxentius what for prince to-the-king
Britanniæ conferri queat, sive in fortitudine robustorum
of-Britain to-be-compared could whether in strength of-sturdy
militum, sive in copia auri et argenti? Obsecramus te,
knights or in abundance of-gold and of-silver we-beseech you
redde nobis possessiones nostras, redde conjuges et liberos
restore to-us possessions our restore wives and children
nostros, Romam cum exercitu nobiscum petendo."
our Rome with an-army with-us by-seeking

Constantinus imperium totius mundi Romani adipiscitur

VIII · CONSTANTINE WINS THE EMPIRE

Constantine takes Rome and rules the world, raising Helena's three uncles to the Senate. Octavius, duke of the Wisseans, kills the proconsuls and takes Britain, and Trahern, Helena's uncle, is sent against him. After battles near Winchester and in Westmorland, Octavius flees to Norway, his followers ambush and kill Trahern, and Octavius returns and rules Britain until the days of Gratian and Valentinian.

His igitur et aliis incitatus Constantinus, adivit Romam,
by-these therefore and by-others roused Constantine went-to Rome
illamque sibi subjugavit, et postmodum totius mundi
and-it to-himself subjugated and afterward of-the-whole world
monarchiam obtinuit. Conduxerat secum Helenæ tres
the-monarchy held he-had-brought with-himself of-Helena three
avunculos, Leolinum videlicet et Trahern, necnon et Marium:
uncles Leolinus namely and Trahern nor-not also Marius
ipsosque in senatorium ordinem promovit. Interea Octavius
and-them into the-senatorial order advanced meanwhile Octavius
dux Wisseorum insurrexit in proconsules Romanæ dignitatis,
duke of-the-Wisseans rose against the-proconsuls of-the-Roman dignity
quibus insulæ regimen permissum fuerat, et solio
to-whom of-the-island the-rule entrusted had-been and of-the-throne
regni, ipsis interfectis, potitus est. Cumque id Constantino
of-the-kingdom them killed gained he-has and-when this to-Constantine
nunciatum fuisset, direxit Trahern avunculum Helenæ, cum
announced had-been he-directed Trahern uncle of-Helena with
tribus legionibus, ut insulam Romanæ dignitati restitueret.
three legions so-that the-island to-the-Roman dignity he-might-restore
Appulsus itaque Trahern in littus, juxta urbem quæ Britannice
landed and-so Trahern on the-shore beside the-city which in-British

Kaerperis nuncupatur, impetum fecit in ipsam, atque intra
Kaerperis is-called an-attack made upon it and within
duos dies cepit. Quo per universas nationes divulgato, rex
two days took which through all nations spread-abroad the-king
Octavius omnem armatam manum insulæ totius collegit,
Octavius every armed band of-the-island whole gathered
venitque ipsi obviam, haud longe a Guintonia, in campo
and-came to-him to-meet not far from Winchester in the-field
qui Britannice Maisuriam appellatur: cœpitque præliari, et
which in-British Maisuriam is-called and-began to-fight and
victoria potitus est. Trahern itaque naves laceratis militibus
of-the-victory gained he-has Trahern and-so the-ships torn knights
adivit, easque ingressus. Albaniam petivit æquoreo itinere, et
went-to and-them having-entered Albany sought by-sea route and
provincias vastare vacavit. Cumque id regi Octavio iterum
the-provinces to-lay-waste was-busy and-when this to-the-king Octavius again
nunciatum fuisset, resociatis turmis, secutus est eum, et in
announced had-been regathered troops followed he-has him and in
provincia quæ Westmarialanda vocata fuit, dimicavit: sed sine
the-province which Westmorland called was fought but without
victoria diffugit. At Trahern, ut sibi victoriam cedere
victory fled but Trahern when to-himself victory to-fall
prospexit: insecutus est Octavium, nec eum quietem habere
he-foresaw pursued has Octavius nor him rest to-have
permisit, donec illi urbes cum diademate eripuit. Octavius
allowed until from-him the-cities with the-diadem he-snatched Octavius
ergo propter amissum regnum anxius, navigio Norwegiam
therefore on-account-of the-lost kingdom anxious by-ship Norway
petivit, ut a rege Gomberto auxilium acquireret.
sought so-that from the-king Gombert help he-might-acquire
Interea familiaribus suis edictum fecerat, ut omni nisu
meanwhile to-intimates his-own an-edict he-had-made that with-all effort

elaborarent neci Trahern imminere. Comes ergo oppidi
they-should-labor to-the-death of-Trahern to-press the-count therefore of-a-town
municipii, qui ipsum præ ceteris diligebat, præceptis illius
municipal who him before the-others loved to-the-orders his
parere non distulit. Nam dum Trahern ex Londoniis
to-obey not delayed for while Trahern from London
quadam die recederet, delituit cum centum militibus in
on-a-certain day was-withdrawing he-lay-hid with a-hundred knights in
quadam convalle nemoris, qua ille transiturus erat, atque
a-certain valley of-a-forest through-which he about-to-pass was and
in ipsum prætereuntem impetum inopinum fecit, ac inter
upon him passing-by an-attack unexpected made and among
commilitones interfecit. Quod cum Octavio nunciatum esset,
the-comrades killed which when to-Octavius announced had-been
reversus est in Britanniam, et dissipatis Romanis solium
returned he-has into Britain and scattered the-Romans the-throne
regni recuperavit. Exin tantam probitatem tantamque
of-the-kingdom recovered thence so-great prowess and-so-great
auri et argenti copiam in brevi tempore nactus fuit, ita ut
of-gold and of-silver abundance in short time got he-has so that
neminem timeret. Regnum autem Britanniæ ab illo tempore
no-one he-feared the-kingdom moreover of-Britain from that time
usque in dies Gratiani et Valentiniani feliciter obtinuit.
all-the-way into the-days of-Gratian and of-Valentinian happily he-held

Maximianus in regnum adoptatur

IX · MAXIMIANUS IS CHOSEN FOR THE KINGDOM

The aged Octavius, who has only a daughter, asks his counselors whom to make his heir. Some name his nephew Conan Meriadoc, but Caradocus, duke of Cornwall, proposes Maximianus, a senator of British and Roman blood, to marry the daughter. Caradocus sends his son Mauricius to Rome, where Maximianus, at odds with the emperors, is urged to take Britain and then return to seize the empire.

Denique senio confectus, disponere populum volens,
finally with-old-age worn-out to-arrange the-people wishing
quæsivit a consiliariis suis, quem post ipsius fata in regem
he-asked from counselors his-own whom after his fate into king
de progenie sua erigere affectassent? Unicam tantum filiam
from offspring his-own to-raise they-would-desire an-only only daughter
habens, filio caruerat, cui regimen patriæ permitteret.
having of-a-son he-had-lacked to-whom the-rule of-the-country he-might-entrust
Fuerunt itaque qui laudabant ut filiam suam alicui nobilium
there-were and-so who commended that daughter his-own to-one of-the-nobles
Romanorum cum regno maritaret, ut pace fruerentur
of-the-Romans with the-kingdom he-should-marry so-that peace they-might-enjoy
firmiori. Alii vero censebant Conanum Meriadocum nepotem
firmer others but judged Conan Meriadoc nephew
ejus in solium regni initiandum: Filiam vero alicui
his in the-throne of-the-kingdom to-be-installed the-daughter indeed to-some
alterius regni principi cum auro et argento copulandam.
of-another kingdom prince with gold and silver to-be-joined
Dum hæc inter ipsos gererentur, accessit Caradocus
while these-things among them were-being-done approached Caradocus
Cornubiæ dux, consiliumque dedit, ut Maximianum senatorem
of-Cornwall duke and-counsel gave that Maximianus the-senator

invitarent, filiamque ei cum regno donarent, et sic
they-should-invite and-the-daughter to-him with the-kingdom they-should-give and thus
perpetua pace fruerentur. Erat autem ei pater Britannus:
perpetual peace they-would-enjoy was moreover to-him the-father a-Briton
quia Leoninus Constantini avunculus, de quo superius
because Leoninus of-Constantine the-uncle about whom above
mentionem feceram, ipsum genuerat. Matre vero et natione
mention I-had-made him had-begotten by-mother indeed and by-nation
Romanus, ex utroque sanguine regalem ferebat procreationem.
Roman from both blood a-royal he-bore begetting
Idcirco pacis stabilitatem promittebat, quia sciebat illum,
therefore of-peace the-stability he-promised because he-knew him
et ex Imperatorum genere, et ex origine Britonum jus
both from of-the-Emperors the-race and from the-origin of-the-Britons right
in Britanniam habere. Cum itaque tale consilium dedisset
to Britain to-have when and-so such counsel he-had-given
Cornubiensium dux: indignatus est Conanus regis nepos,
of-the-Cornish the-duke indignant was Conan of-the-king nephew
qui omni nisu in regnum anhelabat, totamque curiam propter
who with-all effort for the-kingdom panted and-the-whole court on-account-of
talia turbavit. At Caradocus cœptis suis desistere
such-things disturbed but Caradocus from-undertakings his-own to-desist
nolens, misit Mauricium filium suum Romam, ut ea
unwilling sent Mauricius son his-own to-Rome so-that these-things
Maximiano indicaret. Erat ipse Mauricius magnæ et pulcræ
to-Maximianus he-might-show was he-himself Mauricius of-great and handsome
staturæ, magnæque probitatis atque audaciæ: et qui ea quæ
stature and-of-great prowess and boldness and who those-things which
indicabat, armis, si contradictio fieret, et duello probabat. Qui
he-showed with-arms if contradiction were-made also by-duel proved who
ut Maximiani præsentiam adivit, ab illo ut decebat receptus
when of-Maximianus the-presence he-approached by him as was-fitting received

est, et supra commilitones honoratus. Erat tunc maxima
was and above the-comrades honored there-was then greatest
inquietudo inter ipsum Maximianum, et duos Imperatores
disturbance between himself Maximianus and the-two Emperors
Gratianum, fratremque suum Valentinianum, quia passus fuerat
Gratian and-brother his-own Valentinian because suffered he-had
repulsam de tertia parte imperii quam petebat. Ut ergo
refusal about the-third part of-the-empire which he-sought when therefore
vidit Mauricius Maximianum ab Imperatoribus oppressum,
saw Mauricius Maximianus by the-Emperors oppressed
eum in hæc verba affatur: "Ut quid Gratianum times,
him in these words he-addresses to what-end Gratian do-you-fear
Maximiane, cum tibi pateat via qua ei imperium
O-Maximianus since to-you lies-open a-way by-which from-him the-empire
eripere poteris? Veni mecum in Britanniam insulam: et
to-snatch you-will-be-able come with-me into Britain the-island and
regni diadema possidebis. Octavius enim rex et senio
of-the-kingdom the-diadem you-will-possess Octavius for the-king both by-old-age
et languore gravatus, nihil aliud desiderat, nisi ut aliquem
and by-sickness weighed-down nothing else desires except that someone
talem inveniat, cui regnum suum cum filia donet.
such he-may-find to-whom kingdom his-own with the-daughter he-may-give
Masculina namque prole caret, consiliumque a proceribus
of-male for offspring he-lacks and-counsel from nobles
suis quæsivit, cui unicam filiam suam cum regno
his-own he-has-sought to-whom only daughter his-own with the-kingdom
copularet. Et ut affatui ejus parerent heroes, decreverunt
he-should-join and that to-the-address his they-might-obey the-heroes decreed
ut tibi concederetur regnum et puella, et direxerunt me
that to-you should-be-granted the-kingdom and the-girl and directed me
ad te, ut id tibi notificarem. Si igitur mecum veniens
to you that this to-you I-might-make-known if therefore with-me coming

incœptum istud perfeceris, auri et argenti Britanniæ
beginning this you-will-have-completed of-gold and of-silver of-Britain
copia, multitudine etiam bellicosorum militum
with-the-abundance with-the-multitude also of-warlike knights
ibidem manentium, Romam valebis redire, expulsisque
there remaining to-Rome you-will-be-able to-return and-driven-out
Imperatoribus eam subjugare. Sic enim egit Constantinus
the-Emperors it to-subjugate thus for did Constantine
cognatus tuus, pluresque reges nostri qui imperium ascenderunt.
kinsman your and-many kings our who the-empire ascended

Maximianus Britanniam petit: pugnam cum Conano fraude devitat

X · MAXIMIANUS COMES TO BRITAIN

Maximianus subdues Frankish cities on his way and lands at Hamo's port, and Conan meets him with the youth of the island. Outnumbered, Maximianus follows Mauricius' advice and goes to meet Conan with twelve white-haired nobles bearing olive branches. They claim to bring the emperors' commands and come in peace; Caradocus and the other nobles dissuade war, and Conan, though he would rather fight, grants peace and leads Maximianus to the king in London.

Acquiescens igitur verbis ejus Maximianus, Britanniam
assenting therefore to-the-words his Maximianus Britain
petivit, petendo Francorum urbes subjugavit: subjugando
sought by-seeking of-the-Franks the-cities he-subjugated by-subjugating
aurum et argentum coacervabat: milites undique sibi
gold and silver he-heaped-up knights from-everywhere to-himself
associabat. Postmodum Oceanum mare ingressus, in portum
he-associated afterward the-Ocean sea having-entered into the-port
Hamonis secundis velis applicuit. Cumque id regi
of-Hamo with-favorable sails landed and-when this to-the-king

nunciatum esset, expavit stupore vehementi, existimans
announced it-had-been he-was-terrified with-stupor vehement thinking
hostilem exercitum supervenisse. Vocato igitur Conano nepote
a-hostile army to-have-come-upon called therefore Conan nephew
suo, jussit eum omnem armatum militem insulæ colligere
his-own he-ordered him every armed knight of-the-island to-gather
atque hostibus obviam procedere. Collegit itaque Conanus
and to-the-enemies to-meet to-advance gathered and-so Conan
omnem regni juventutem, venitque ad portum Hamonis,
all of-the-kingdom the-youth and-came to the-port of-Hamo
ubi tentoria sua Maximianus erexerat. Qui ut tantæ
where tents his-own Maximianus had-raised who when of-so-great
multitudinis adventum comperit, maximis angustiis cruciabatur,
a-multitude the-arrival he-discovered with-greatest anguish was-tormented
quia ignorabat quid faceret. Paucioribus namque catervis
because he-did-not-know what he-should-do by-fewer for bands
comitatus, dubitabat et virorum multitudinem et audaciam,
accompanied he-doubted both of-the-men the-multitude and the-boldness
quia de pace nullam spem habebat. Convocatis igitur
because about peace no hope he-had called-together therefore
majoribus natu et Mauricio, dicere præcepit, quid contra talem
the-greater by-birth and Mauricius to-say he-ordered what against such
adventum agendum foret? cui Mauricius: “Non est nobis
arrival to-be-done might-be to-whom Mauricius not is for-us
cum tot bellicosis militibus pugnandum, nec ea de causa
with so-many warlike knights to-be-fought nor this for reason
venimus, ut Britanniam prælio subjugaremus. Pax roganda
we-have-come that Britain by-battle we-should-subjugate peace to-be-asked
est et hospitandi licentia, donec animum regis sciamus.
is and of-lodging leave until the-mind of-the-king we-may-know
Dicamus nos missos esse ab Imperatoribus, eorumque mandata
let-us-say we sent to-be by the-Emperors and-their commands

Octavio deferre, et calidis verbis populum istum mulceamus.
to-Octavius to-bring and with-warm words people this let-us-soothe
Cumque id omnibus placuisset, assumpsit secum duodecim
and-when this to-all had-pleased he-took with-himself twelve
canos proceres sapientiores ceteris, et olivæ ramos in
white-haired nobles wiser than-the-others and of-olive branches in
dextris habentes: venitque Conano obviam. Videntes igitur
right-hands having and-came to-Conan to-meet seeing therefore
Britones viros reverendæ ætatis, et olivam in pacis signum
the-Britons men of-venerable age and the-olive as of-peace a-sign
gestantes, eis honorifice assurgunt et viam patefaciunt,
carrying to-them honorably they-rise and the-way they-open
ut ducem liberius adeant. Mox illi in præsentia Conani
so-that the-leader more-freely they-may-approach soon they in the-presence of-Conan
Meriadoci stantes, eum ex parte Imperatorum et senatus
Meriadoc standing him from the-side of-the-Emperors and of-the-senate
salutaverunt, dixeruntque Maximianum missum ad regem
greeted and-said Maximianus sent to the-king
Octavium, ut mandata Gratiani et Valentiniani eidem
Octavius so-that the-commands of-Gratian and of-Valentinian to-the-same
portaret." Ad hæc Conanus, "Ut quid ergo eum tanta
he-might-carry at these-things Conan to what-end therefore him so-great
sequitur multitudo? non hæc legatorum facies esse solet, imo
follows a-multitude not this of-envoys the-face to-be is-wont nay
supervenientium hostium, qui injuriam inferre meditantur."
of-coming-on enemies who wrong to-bring intend
Tunc Mauricius: "Non decebat tantum virum inglorium sine
then Mauricius not it-was-fitting so-great a-man inglorious without
commilitonibus incedere: præsertim cum propter Romanam
comrades to-go-about especially since on-account-of the-Roman
potentiam, et propter actus avorum suorum pluribus regibus
power and on-account-of the-acts of-ancestors his-own to-many kings

odiosus habeatur. Nam si raro comitatu incederet,
hateful he-is-held for if with-scant retinue he-were-going-about
fortassis ab inimicis Reipublicæ perimeretur. Pace venit,
perhaps by the-enemies of-the-Republic he-would-be-destroyed in-peace he-has-come
pacemque petit, quod ex actu ipsius credi decet.
and-peace he-seeks which from the-conduct his to-be-believed it-is-fitting
Ex quo namque applicuimus, sic nosmet ipsos habuimus,
from which for we-landed thus us ourselves we-have-held
ut nemini injuriam intulerimus. Expensam nostram ut gens
that on-no-one wrong we-have-brought the-expense our as a-people
pacis fecimus, quia necessaria ementes, nihil vi cuipiam
of-peace we-have-made because necessary-things buying nothing by-force from-anyone
subripuimus." Cumque hæsitasset Conanus, an pacem
we-have-snatched and-when had-hesitated Conan whether peace
an prælium committeret: accessit Caradocus dux Cornubiæ:
or battle he-should-join approached Caradocus duke of-Cornwall
accesserunt ceteri proceres, et dissuaserunt Conano post hanc
approached the-other nobles and dissuaded Conan after this
petitionem bellum ingerere. Qui licet dimicare maluisset,
petition war to-wage who although to-fight he-had-preferred
depositis armis concessit eis pacem. Duxitque Maximianum
laid-down arms granted to-them peace and-led Maximianus
Londonias ad regem, et rem ordine manifestavit.
to-London to the-king and the-matter in-order made-plain

Maximianus filiam regis cum solio accipit

XI · MAXIMIANUS WINS THE KING'S DAUGHTER

Caradocus urges Octavius to give his daughter and kingdom to Maximianus, who is kin to Constantine and grandson of Coel. Octavius agrees, and the furious Conan withdraws to Albany, raises an army, and crosses the Humber, ravaging the provinces on both sides of it. Maximianus beats him once, but after further battles won and lost on both sides, friends make peace between them.

Tunc Caradocus Cornubiæ dux assumpto secum Mauricio
then Caradocus of-Cornwall duke taken with-himself Mauricius
filio suo, jussit astantes semoveri: regemque in hæc
son his-own ordered the-bystanders to-be-removed and-the-king in these
verba adivit: "Ecce quod longo tempore desiderabant qui
words approached behold what for-long time desired those-who
fidelitati tuæ veriori affectu obedientiam servant, disponente
to-fidelity your with-truer affection obedience keep arranging
Deo, successibus tuis accessit. Præceperas namque proceribus
God to-successes your has-come you-had-ordered for nobles
tuis consilium dare, quid de filia tua, quid de regno
your counsel to-give what about daughter your what about kingdom
tuo tibi agendum foret: cum tua ætas in tantum his
your by-you to-be-done might-be since your age in so-far in-these
diebus repugnet, ut populum tuum diutius gubernes. Alii
days resists that people your longer you-should-govern some
itaque censebant diadema Conano nepoti tuo tradendum,
and-so thought the-diadem to-Conan nephew your to-be-handed-over
filiamque tuam alicubi digne maritandam: timentes civium
and-daughter your somewhere worthily to-be-married fearing of-the-citizens
exterminationem, si alterius linguæ princeps superveniret. Alii
the-extermination if of-another tongue a-prince should-come-upon others

concedebant regnum filiæ, et alicui nostræ loquelæ
granted the-kingdom to-the-daughter and to-some of-our speech
nobili, qui tibi post obitum succederet. Major autem pars
noble who to-you after death should-succeed the-greater moreover part
laudabat, ut ex genere imperatorum mandaretur aliquis, cui
commended that from the-race of-the-emperors should-be-sent someone to-whom
nata cum diademate donaretur. Promittebant enim firmam
the-daughter with the-diadem should-be-given they-promised for a-firm
et stabilem pacem inde proventuram, si Romana potestas
and stable peace thence about-to-come if the-Roman power
ipsos protegeret. Ecce ergo tibi dignatus est Deus istum
them should-protect behold therefore to-you deigned has God this
subvectare juvenem: et ex Romanorum genere, regalique
to-bring-up youth both from of-the-Romans the-race and-from-the-royal
prosapia Britonum creatum, cui filiam tuam meo consilio
lineage of-the-Britons created to-whom daughter your by-my counsel
maritare non differes. Quanquam autem illud abnegares,
to-marry not you-will-delay although moreover that you-should-deny
quid juris tibi contra illum in regnum Britanniæ fieret?
what of-right to-you against him to the-kingdom of-Britain would-be
Constantini etenim consanguineus est, et nepos Coel nostri
of-Constantine for kinsman he-is and grandson of-Coel our
regis, cujus filiam Helenam nequimus abnegare hereditario
king whose daughter Helena we-cannot to-deny by-hereditary
jure regnum istud possidere." Cumque hæc retulisset
right kingdom this to-possess and-when these-things had-reported
Caradocus, acquievit ei Octavius, communique consensu
Caradocus assented to-him Octavius and-by-common consent
ilico regnum Britanniæ cum filia sua illi donavit.
on-the-spot the-kingdom of-Britain with daughter his-own to-him gave
Quod videns Conanus Meriadocus, indignatus est ultra quam
which seeing Conan Meriadoc indignant was beyond what

exprimi posset: secessitque in Albaniam, et exercitum
to-be-expressed could and-withdrew into Albany and an-army
colligere vacavit, ut Maximianum inquietaret. Multitudine
to-gather was-busy so-that Maximianus he-might-harass a-multitude
ergo consociata, præterivit Humbrum flumen, quasque
therefore joined he-passed the-Humber river all
provincias ultra et citra depopulans. Quod cum Maximiano
provinces beyond and on-this-side ravaging which when to-Maximianus
nunciaretur: collecta tota fortitudine sua, festinavit obviam
was-announced gathered all strength his-own he-hurried to-meet
ire: et cum illo præliatus est, et cum victoria rediit. Nec
to-go and with him fought he-has and with victory returned nor
tamen deficiebat Conanus, sed resociatis catervis, destructioni
yet failed Conan but regathered bands on-the-destruction
provinciarum imminebat. Redibat ergo Maximianus, et
of-the-provinces he-pressed returned therefore Maximianus and
commissis præliis quandoque cum triumpho, quandoque
joined battles sometimes with triumph sometimes
superatus revertebatur. Denique cum alter alteri maximum
overcome he-came-back finally when one to-the-other greatest
damnum intulisset, concordiam annuentibus amicis fecerunt.
loss had-brought concord assenting friends they-made

Maximianus Armoricam invadit

XII · MAXIMIANUS INVADES ARMORICA

After five years, proud of his wealth, Maximianus gathers every armed knight of Britain to conquer Gaul. He defeats the Gauls of Armorica, killing their leader Inbaltus and fifteen thousand men. He promises Conan the kingdom of Armorica as another Britain, to be filled with Britons once the natives are driven out, and Conan swears loyalty.

Emenso deinde quinquennio, superbivit Maximianus propter
having-passed then a-five-year-span grew-proud Maximianus on-account-of
infinitam auri et argenti copiam quæ illi quotidie affluebat:
the-infinite of-gold and of-silver abundance which to-him daily flowed
paravitque navigium maximum, omnemque armatum militem
and-prepared a-fleet greatest and-every armed knight
Britanniæ collegit. Non sufficiebat ei regnum Britanniæ,
of-Britain gathered not sufficed for-him the-kingdom of-Britain
quin affectaret Gallias subjugare. Ut ergo transfretavit,
but-that he-desired the-Gauls to-subjugate when therefore he-crossed
adivit primitus Armoricum regnum, quod nunc Britannia
he-went-to first the-Armorican kingdom which now Brittany
dicitur, et populum Gallicum qui inerat, debellare incœpit. At
is-called and the-people Gallic which was-in-it to-subdue began but
Galli, duce Inbalto, obviam venientes, pugnam fecerunt contra
the-Gauls as-leader Inbaltus to-meet coming a-fight made against
illum: sed in majori parte periclitati fugam inierunt, ceciderat
him but in the-greater part imperiled flight entered had-fallen
namque dux Inbaltus, et quindecim milia armatorum,
for the-leader Inbaltus and fifteen thousand of-armed-men
qui ex omni regno convenerant. Ut ergo tantam cladem
who from all the-kingdom had-come-together when therefore so-great disaster

ingessit Maximianus, maximo fluctuavit gaudio, quia interitu
heaped Maximianus with-greatest surged joy because by-the-death
tot virorum sciebat patriam leviter deinde subdendam.
of-so-many men he-knew the-country easily thereafter to-be-subjected
Vocavit ergo Conanum ad se extra turmas, et paulisper
he-called therefore Conan to himself outside the-troops and for-a-little
subridens ait: "Ecce unum ex potioribus Galliæ regnis
smiling says behold one of the-more-powerful of-Gaul kingdoms
subjugavimus. Ecce spem ad cetera habere possumus.
we-have-subjugated behold hope for the-other-things to-have we-can
Festinemus urbes et oppida capere, antequam rumor hujus
let-us-hurry the-cities and towns to-take before the-rumor of-this
periculi in ulteriorem Galliam evolans, universos populos ad
danger into farther Gaul flying all peoples to
arma provocet. Nam si istud regnum habere poterimus, non
arms may-call for if this kingdom to-have we-shall-be-able not
hæsito quin totam Galliam potestati nostra subdemus. Ne
I-doubt but-that the-whole Gaul to-power our we-shall-subject not
pigeat te ergo, regnum Britanniæ insulæ mihi cessisse, licet
let-it-irk you therefore the-kingdom of-Britain the-island to-me to-have-yielded though
possidendi eam spem habuisses, quia quicquid in illa amisisti,
of-possessing it hope you-had-had because whatever in it you-lost
tibi in hac patria restaurabo, promovebo te etenim in regem
to-you in this country I-shall-restore I-shall-advance you for into king
hujus regni, et erit hæc altera Britannia, et eam ex genere
of-this kingdom and will-be this another Britain and it from race
nostro expulsis indigenis replebimus. Patria namque fertilis est
our driven-out the-natives we-shall-fill the-country for fertile is
segetibus: et flumina piscosa sunt, nemora perpulcra, et saltus
with-crops and the-rivers fish-filled are the-forests most-beautiful and the-glades
ubique amœni. Nec est uspiam, meo judicio, gratior tellus."
everywhere pleasant nor is anywhere in-my judgment a-more-pleasing land

Ad hæc inclinato capite grates egit Conanus, promisitque
at these-things bowed the-head thanks gave Conan and-promised
se fidelem in obsequio ejus mansurum donec viveret.
himself faithful in the-service his about-to-remain while he-should-live

Redonum urbs capitur

XIII · THE CITY OF RENNES IS TAKEN

The Britons take Rennes in a day, the citizens fleeing in terror, and they kill every male wherever they enter, sparing only women. Once the province is emptied, they garrison the cities and towns with British knights. Terror spreads through Gaul, and Maximianus enlarges his army with gifts to men eager for plunder.

Post hæc convocatis catervis iverunt Redonum, ipsamque
after these-things called-together the-bands they-went to-Rennes and-it
eodem die ceperunt. Audita namque Britonum sævitia,
on-the-same day took heard for of-the-Britons the-savagery
peremptorumque casu, diffugerant cives cum festinatione,
and-of-the-slain the-fate had-fled the-citizens with haste
mulieribus relictis atque infantibus. Exemplo ipsorum
the-women left and infants by-the-example of-them
fecerunt ceteri per urbes, et per cetera oppida, ita ut
did the-others through the-cities and through the-other towns so that
facilis aditus Britonibus pateret. Qui quocunque intrabant,
an-easy approach to-the-Britons lay-open who wherever they-entered
interficiebant quicquid erat masculini sexus, solis mulieribus
killed whatever was of-the-male sex only to-the-women
parcentes. Postremo cum universas provincias penitus ab
sparing finally when all provinces utterly of
omni incola delevissent, munierunt civitates et oppida
every inhabitant they-had-emptied they-fortified the-cities and towns

militibus Britanniæ et promontoria in diversis locis statuta.
with-knights of-Britain and strongholds in various places set-up
Sævitia igitur Maximiani per ceteras Galliarum provincias
the-savagery therefore of-Maximianus through the-other of-the-Gauls provinces
divulgata, timor nimius quosque duces, et quosque principes
spread-abroad fear excessive all dukes and all princes
invadebat: ita ut nullam aliam spem nisi in votis diis
invaded so that no other hope except in vows to-the-gods
solvendis haberent. Diffugiebant itaque ab omni pago ad
to-be-paid they-had they-fled and-so from every district to
civitates et oppida, et ad quæcunque loca quæ tutum
the-cities and towns and to whatever places which safe
præstabant refugium. Maximianus ergo sese timori esse
offered refuge Maximianus therefore himself for-fear to-be
comperiens, majorem resumit audaciam: exercitumque suum
finding greater he-resumes boldness and-army his-own
profusis donariis augere festinat. Quoscunque enim aliena
with-lavish gifts to-increase he-hurries whomever for others'-goods
captare callebat, sibi associabat, et nunc auro, nunc
to-seize he-knew to-himself he-associated and now with-gold now
argento, ceterisque muneribus illos ditare non cessabat.
with-silver and-other gifts them to-enrich not he-ceased

Maximianus, Gallia et Germania subactis, apud Treveros imperii sedem locat

XIV · MAXIMIANUS RULES FROM TRIER

Maximianus orders a hundred thousand commoners and thirty thousand knights from Britain to settle and guard Armorica, which becomes another Britain under Conan. He then conquers the rest of Gaul and Germany. Setting his throne at Trier, he kills one emperor and drives the other from Rome.

Exin tantam multitudinem collegit, quantam existimabat
thence so-great a-multitude he-gathered as-great-as he-thought
sibi sufficere posse ad omnem Galliam subjugandam.
for-himself to-suffice to-be-able for all Gaul to-be-subjugated
Distulit tamen sævitiam suam paulisper ulterius ingerere,
he-put-off yet savagery his-own for-a-little further to-heap
donec sedato regno quod ceperat, ipsum Britannico populo
until settled the-kingdom which he-had-taken it with-the-British people
replevisset. Fecit itaque edictum suum, ut centum milia
he-had-filled he-made and-so edict his-own that a-hundred thousand
e plebe in Britannia insula colligerentur qui ad eum
from the-commoners in Britain the-island should-be-gathered who to him
venirent. Præterea triginta milia militum, qui ipsos intra
should-come besides thirty thousand of-knights who them within
patriam qua mansuri erant, ab hostili irruptione tuerentur.
the-country where about-to-remain they-were from hostile inroad should-guard
Cumque omnia perpetrasset: distribuit eos per universas
and-when all-things he-had-accomplished he-distributed them through all
Armorici regni nationes: fecitque alteram Britanniam, et
of-the-Armorican kingdom the-nations and-made another Britain and
eam Conano Meriadoco donavit. Ipse vero cum ceteris
it to-Conan Meriadoc gave he-himself but with the-other

commilitonibus suis, ulteriorem adivit Galliam, gravissimisque
comrades his-own the-farther went-to Gaul and-with-most-grave
prælіis illatis eam subjugavit, nec non et totam Germaniam,
battles brought-on it subjugated nor not also the-whole Germany
in omni prælio victoria potitus. Thronum autem imperii
in every battle of-the-victory having-gained the-throne moreover of-empire
sui apud Treveros statuens, ita debacchatus est in
his-own at Trier setting so raged he-has against
duos Imperatores Gratianum et Valentinianum, quod uno
the-two Emperors Gratian and Valentinian that one
interempto, alterum ex Roma urbe fugavit.
destroyed the-other from Rome the-city he-put-to-flight

Aquitani rebellant: Conanus militibus suis conjuges e Britannia arcessit

XV · CONAN SENDS TO BRITAIN FOR WIVES

Conan defends Armorica against the Gauls and Aquitanians. Wanting heirs for his men without mixing with the Gauls, he sends to Dionotus, king of Cornwall, who rules Britain for Maximianus, asking for women to be their wives. Dionotus has a beautiful daughter, Ursula, whom Conan longs for above all things.

Interea inquietabant Conanum Armoricosque Britones,
meanwhile harassed Conan and-the-Armorican Britons
Galli atque Aquitani, crebrisque irruptionibus sæpissime
the-Gauls and the-Aquitanians and-with-frequent inroads most-often
infestabant. Quibus ipse resistens, et mutuam cladem
troubled whom he-himself resisting both mutual disaster
reddebat, et commissam sibi patriam viriliter defendebat.
returned and the-committed to-himself country manfully defended
Cum autem ei cessisset victoria, voluit commilitonibus
when moreover to-him had-fallen victory he-wished to-the-comrades

suis conjuges dare, ut ex eis nascerentur heredes
his-own wives to-give so-that from them should-be-born heirs
qui terram illam perpetuo possiderent. Et ut nullam
who land that perpetually might-possess and that no
commixtionem cum Gallis facerent, decrevit ut ex
mingling with the-Gauls they-might-make he-decreed that from
Britannia insula mulieres venirent, quæ ipsis maritarentur.
Britain the-island women should-come who to-them should-be-married
Direxit itaque nuncios in Britanniam insulam ad Dionotum
he-directed and-so messengers into Britain the-island to Dionotus
regem Cornubiæ, qui fratri suo Caradoco in regnum
king of-Cornwall who to-brother his-own Caradocus in the-kingdom
successerat, ut curam hujus rei susciperet. Erat ipse
had-succeeded that the-care of-this matter he-should-undertake was he-himself
nobilis et præpotens: et cui Maximianus insulæ
noble and very-powerful and to-whom Maximianus of-the-island
principatum commendaverat, dum ipse prædictis negotiis
the-principality had-entrusted while he-himself to-the-aforesaid business
intenderet. Habebat autem filiam miræ pulcritudinis,
attended he-had moreover a-daughter of-wonderful beauty
cui nomen Ursula, quam Conanus super omnia exoptaverat.
to-whom name Ursula whom Conan above all-things had-longed-for

Undecim millia virginum, e Britannia missæ, naufragium faciunt et omnes ad unam a Barbaris trucidantur

XVI · THE ELEVEN THOUSAND VIRGINS

Dionotus gathers eleven thousand noble daughters and sixty thousand women of humble birth at London, many of them unwilling. A storm scatters the fleet, many drown, and the rest land on barbarous islands, where Guanius and Melga, kings of the Huns and Picts, slaughter those who refuse them. The two then invade defenseless Britain, Gratian the Burgess drives them to Ireland, and Maximianus is killed at Rome.

Dionotus igitur viso Conani nuncio, volens mandatis ejus
Dionotus therefore seen of-Conan the-message wishing to-the-commands his
parere, collegit per diversas provincias nobilium filias,
to-obey gathered through various provinces of-the-nobles daughters
numero undecim milia: de ceteris ex infima gente creatis
in-number eleven thousand of the-others from the-lowest race created
sexaginta milia: et omnes intra urbem Londoniæ convenire
sixty thousand and all within the-city of-London to-come-together
præcepit, naves quoque ex diversis littoribus jussit adduci;
he-ordered ships also from various shores he-ordered to-be-brought
quibus ad prædictos conjuges transfretarent. Quod licet
in-which to the-aforesaid husbands they-should-cross which although
multis in tanto cœtu placuisset, tamen pluribus displicebat,
to-many in so-great a-gathering it-had-pleased yet to-more it-displeased
quæ majori affectu et parentes et patriam diligebant. Nec
who with-greater affection both parents and country loved nor
deerant forsitan aliquæ, quæ castitatem nuptiis præferentes,
were-lacking perhaps some who chastity to-nuptials preferring
maluissent in qualibet etiam natione vitam amittere, quam
would-have-preferred in any even nation life to-lose than
hoc modo divitias exigere. Quippe diversas diversa
in-this manner riches to-seek indeed different-women different-things

juvarent: si optatum suum ad effectum ducere quivissent.
would-please if desire their-own to effect to-lead they-had-been-able
Parato autem navigio, ingrediuntur mulieres naves, et per
prepared moreover the-fleet enter the-women the-ships and by
Tamensem fluvium maria petunt. Postremo cum vela
the-Thames river the-seas they-seek finally when the-sails
versus Armoricanos divertissent: contrarii venti in classem
towards the-Armoricans they-had-turned contrary winds against the-fleet
insurrexerunt, et in brevi totam societatem dissipant.
rose and in short-time the-whole company scatter
Periclitabantur ergo naves intra maria, in majori parte
were-imperiled therefore the-ships within the-seas in the-greater part
submersæ: quæ vero totum periculum evaserunt, appulsæ
drowned which indeed the-whole danger escaped landed
sunt in barbaras insulas, et ab ignota gente sive
were on barbarous islands and by an-unknown people either
trucidatæ sive mancipatæ. Inciderant siquidem in nefandum
slaughtered or enslaved they-had-fallen indeed into the-abominable
exercitum Guanii et Melgæ, qui jussu Gratiani nationes
army of-Guanius and of-Melga who by-the-order of-Gratian the-nations
maritimorum et Germaniæ dira clade opprimebant. Erat
of-the-coastlands and of-Germany with-dire disaster crushed was
autem Guanius rex Hunnorum, Melga vero Pictorum, quos
moreover Guanius king of-the-Huns Melga but of-the-Picts whom
asciverat sibi Gratianus, miseratque in Germaniam, ut
had-summoned to-himself Gratian and-had-sent into Germany so-that
eos qui Maximiano faverent, inquietarent. Per maritima
those who to-Maximianus favored they-might-harass along the-coasts
ergo sævientes, obviarunt prædictis puellis in partes illas
therefore raging they-met the-aforesaid girls on parts those
appulsis. Inspicientes igitur earum pulchritudinem, lascivire
landed beholding therefore their beauty to-wanton

cum eis voluerunt: sed cum abnegavissent puellæ, in
with them they-wished but when had-refused the-girls upon
eas Ambrones irruerunt, maximamque parte sine pietate
them the-Ambrones rushed and-the-greatest part without pity
trucidaverunt. Deinde nefandi Pictorum et Hunnorum
slaughtered then the-abominable of-the-Picts and of-the-Huns
duces Guanius et Melga, qui partibus Gratiani et Valentiniani
leaders Guanius and Melga who to-the-side of-Gratian and of-Valentinian
favebant, cum didicissent insulam Britanniæ ab omni armato
favored when they-had-learned the-island of-Britain of every armed
milite vacuatam, iter festinatum versus illam direxerunt:
knight emptied a-march hastened towards it they-directed
associatisque sibi collateralibus insulis, in Albaniam
and-joined to-themselves the-neighboring islands in Albany
applicuerunt. Agmine igitur facto invaserunt regnum
landed with-a-column therefore made they-invaded the-kingdom
quod rectore et defensore carebat, vulgus irrationabile
which a-ruler and defender lacked the-common-crowd senseless
cædentes. Abduxerat enim secum Maximianus (ut prædictum
slaughtering had-led-away for with-himself Maximianus as said-before
est) omnes bellicosos juvenes qui reperiri potuerant:
it-has-been all warlike youths who to-be-found could
inermesque colonos atque inconsultos reliquerat. Quos cum
and-unarmed farmers and unadvised he-had-left whom when
prædicti Guanius et Melga compererunt minime resistere
the-aforesaid Guanius and Melga discovered by-no-means to-resist
posse, stragem non minimam facientes, urbes et provincias,
to-be-able slaughter not least making the-cities and provinces
ut ovium caulas, vastare non cessabant. Cum ergo tanta
like of-sheep the-folds to-lay-waste not they-ceased when therefore so-great
calamitas Maximiano nunciata fuisset, misit Gratianum
calamity to-Maximianus announced had-been he-sent Gratian

Municipem cum duabus legionibus, ut auxilium subvectaret:
the-Burgess with two legions so-that help he-might-bring
qui ut in insulam venerunt, præliati sunt cum prædictis
who when into the-island they-came fought have with the-aforesaid
hostibus, et acerrima nece affectos ipsos in Hiberniam
enemies and with-most-fierce death afflicted them into Ireland
fugaverunt. Interea Maximianus Romæ interfectus est ab
they-put-to-flight meanwhile Maximianus at-Rome killed was by
amicis Gratiani, et Britones quos secum duxerat, interfecti
the-friends of-Gratian and the-Britons whom with-himself he-had-led killed
sunt et dissipati: qui evadere potuerunt, venerunt ad concives
were and scattered who to-escape could came to fellow-citizens
suos ad Armoricam, quæ jam altera Britannia vocabatur.
their-own to Armorica which already the-other Britain was-called

BOOK VI

Gratianus, rex factus, a plebe interficitur. Britanni auxilium a Romanis contra hostes petunt

I · GRATIAN KILLED; THE BRITONS APPEAL TO ROME

Gratian the Burgess makes himself king and rules so tyrannously that the commons kill him. Guanius and Melga return from Ireland with Scots, Norwegians, and Danes and ravage the kingdom. The Britons beg Rome for help, and a legion drives out the enemy and has the commons build a wall between Albany and Deira.

At Gratianus Municeps, cum de nece Maximiani audivisset,
but Gratian the-Burgess when about the-death of-Maximianus he-had-heard
cepit regni diadema et sese in regem promovit. Exin
took of-the-kingdom the-diadem and himself into king advanced thence
tantam tyrannidem in populum exercuit, ita ut catervis factis
so-great tyranny upon the-people he-exercised so that bands made

plebs in eum irruerent et interficerent. Quod cum per
the-commoners upon him should-rush and should-kill which when through
cetera regna divulgatum fuisset, reversi sunt prædicti hostes
the-other kingdoms spread-abroad had-been returned have the-aforesaid enemies
ex Hibernia: et secum Scotos, Norwegenses et Dacos
from Ireland and with-themselves the-Scots Norwegians and Danes
conducentes, regnum a mari usque ad mare ferro et
bringing the-kingdom from sea all-the-way to sea with-sword and
flamma affecerunt. Ob hanc infestationem et durissimam
flame afflicted on-account-of this harassment and most-hard
oppressionem legati Romam cum epistolis mittuntur, militarem
oppression envoys to-Rome with letters are-sent a-military
manum ad se vindicandos lacrimosis postulationibus
band for themselves to-be-avenged with-tearful demands
poscentes, et subjectionem sui in perpetuum voventes,
asking and the-subjection of-themselves for ever vowing
si hostis longius arceretur: quibus mox committitur legio
if the-enemy farther should-be-kept-off to-whom soon is-committed a-legion
præteriti mali immemor, quæ ratibus trans Oceanum in
of-past evil unmindful which by-rafts across the-Ocean into
patriam vecta, cominus cum hostibus congressa est. Magnam
the-country carried hand-to-hand with the-enemies engaged has a-great
denique ex his multitudinem sternens, omnes e finibus
finally of these multitude laying-low all from the-borders
pepulit, atque oppressam plebem a tam atroci dilaceratione
it-drove and the-oppressed commoners from so atrocious a-tearing
liberavit: ad quos jussit construere murum inter Albaniam
freed to whom it-ordered to-build a-wall between Albany
et Deiram, a mari usque ad mare, ut esset arcendis
and Deira from sea all-the-way to sea so-that it-might-be for-keeping-off
hostibus a turba instructus terrori, civibus vero tutamini.
the-enemies by the-crowd built for-terror to-the-citizens indeed for-safety

Erat autem Albania penitus frequentatione Barbarorum vastata,
was moreover Albany utterly by-the-frequenting of-the-barbarians laid-waste
et quicumque hostes superveniebant, opportunum intra ipsam
and whatever enemies came-upon a-convenient within it
habebant receptaculum. Collecto igitur publico et privato
had refuge gathered therefore public and private
sumptu, incumbunt indigenæ operi, et murum perficiunt.
expense press-on the-natives to-the-work and the-wall complete

Romanis abeuntibus, Guithelinus cives suos, ut ipsi se armis defendant, hortatur

II · GUETHELINUS URGES THE BRITONS TO ARMS

The Romans announce that they will no longer exhaust themselves for the Britons, who must defend their own liberty with arms. Guethelinus, archbishop of London, addresses the assembled warriors. He pities their weakness since Maximianus stripped the island of its knights, reminds them that knights and peasants are born of one another, and urges them to act as men and call on Christ.

Romani igitur patriæ denunciant, nequaquam se tam
the-Romans therefore to-the-country announce by-no-means themselves by-so
laboriosis expeditionibus posse frequentius vexari: et
laborious expeditions to-be-able more-often to-be-harassed and
ob imbelles et erraticos latrunculos Romana stigmata
on-account-of unwarlike and wandering petty-robbers the-Roman standards
tantum talemque exercitum terra ac mari fatigari: sed ut
so-great and-such an-army by-land and sea to-be-wearied but that
potius solitis consuescendo armis ac viriliter dimicando
rather to-accustomed by-growing-used arms and manfully by-fighting
terram, substantiam, conjuges, liberos, et quod iis majus
land substance wives children and what than-these greater

est, libertatem vitamque totis viribus defenderent. Ut ergo
is liberty and-life with-all strength they-should-defend that therefore
hanc admonitionem facerent, jusserunt convenire omnes
this admonition they-might-make they-ordered to-come-together all
bellicosos viros insulæ intra Londoniam: nam Romani
warlike men of-the-island within London for the-Romans
repedare moliebantur. Cum autem convenissent cuncti,
to-return were-preparing when moreover had-come-together all
commissus est sermo Guethelino Londoniensi Metropolitano,
committed was the-speech to-Guethelinus the-London Metropolitan
qui ipsos in hæc verba adivit: "Cum vos jussu
who them in these words approached when you by-the-order
astantium principum alloqui deberem, magis in fletum
of-the-standing-by princes to-address I-ought more into weeping
prorumpere cogor, quam in excelsum sermonem: miseret
to-burst-forth I-am-compelled than into a-lofty speech it-pities
enim me orphanitatis et debilitatis, quæ vobis accessit,
for me of-the-orphanhood and weakness which to-you has-come
postquam Maximianus regnum istud omni milite omnique
after Maximianus kingdom this of-every knight and-of-every
juventute spoliavit. Vos autem reliquiæ eratis: plebs
youth has-despoiled you moreover the-remnants were a-commoner-folk
usus belli ignara, quæ ceteris negotiis, ut in terris colendis,
of-the-use of-war ignorant which to-other businesses as to lands to-be-tilled
diversisque commercii machinationibus intendebat. Cum ergo
and-to-various of-commerce contrivances attended when therefore
supervenerunt ab alienis nationibus inimici, velut oves sine
came-upon from foreign nations enemies like sheep without
pastore errantes, vos ovilia vestra deserere coegerunt: donec
a-shepherd wandering you folds your to-desert they-forced until
Romana potestas vos possessionibus vestris restituit. Eritne
the-Roman power you to-possessions your restored will-be-whether

ergo spes vestra semper in alieno tutamine, et non
therefore hope your always in another's protection and not
instruitis manus vestras peltis, ensibus, hastis in latrones
do-you-equip hands your with-shields with-swords with-spears against robbers
nequaquam vobis fortiores, nisi segnitia et torpor adesset?
by-no-means than-you stronger unless sloth and torpor were-present
Jam tædet Romanos tam assidui itineris quo vexantur,
already it-wearies the-Romans of-so constant a-journey by-which they-are-harassed
ut pro vobis cum hostibus congrediantur. Prius omne tributum
that for you with the-enemies they-should-engage rather every tribute
quod solvitis amittere prælegerunt, quam hoc modo diutius
which you-pay to-lose they-have-preferred than in-this manner longer
terra et ponto fatigari. Quod si tempore militum vestrorum
by-land and by-sea to-be-wearied but if in-the-time of-knights your
fueratis vulgus, putatis idcirco a vobis humanitatem
you-had-been the-common-crowd do-you-think therefore from you humanity
diffugisse? Nonne homines transverso ordine nascuntur? Ita
to-have-fled are-not men in-crosswise order born so
ut ex rustico generetur miles, et ex milite rusticus? Miles
that from a-peasant is-begotten a-knight and from a-knight a-peasant a-knight
etiam de mangone venit, et mango de milite. Hac ergo
also from a-dealer comes and a-dealer from a-knight with-this therefore
consuetudine quamvis unus ab altero procedat, non existimo
custom although one from the-other proceeds not I-think
eos Esse, quod est hominis, amittere. Cum igitur sitis
them being what is of-a-man to-lose since therefore you-are
homines, habetote vos ut homines, et invocate Christum,
men hold yourselves as men and call-upon Christ
ut audaciam adhibeat, et libertatem vestram defendite."
that boldness he-may-supply and liberty your defend

Cumque finem dicendi fecisset, tanto murmure infremuit
and-when the-end of-speaking he-had-made with-so-great a-murmur roared
populus, ut ipsos subita audacia repletos diceres.
the-people that them with-sudden boldness filled you-would-have-said

Guanius et Melga Britannos iterum invadunt

III · GUANIUS AND MELGA INVADE AGAIN

The Romans leave patterns for arms and watchtowers on the coast, but it is easier to make a hawk from a kite than a trained man from a peasant. As soon as they go, Guanius and Melga return with Scots, Picts, Norwegians, and Danes, and the trembling peasants are dragged from the wall with hooks. The Britons write to Agitius, three times consul, that the barbarians drive them into the sea and the sea back to the barbarians, but no help comes.

Post hæc Romani fortia monita formidoloso populo
after these-things the-Romans strong warnings to-the-fearful people
tradunt: exemplaria instruendorum armorum relinquunt. In
hand-over patterns of-to-be-made of-arms they-leave on
littore quoque Oceani, in quo naves illorum habebantur
the-shore also of-the-Ocean in which ships their were-kept
ad meridianam plagam, quod exinde Barbari timebantur,
towards the-southern region because from-there the-barbarians were-feared
turres per intervalla ad prospectum maris collocari præcepit.
towers at intervals for a-view of-the-sea to-be-placed he-ordered
Sed facilius est accipitrem ex milvo fieri, quam ex
but easier it-is a-hawk from a-kite to-be-made than from
rustico, subito eruditum: et qui profundam doctrinam
a-peasant suddenly a-learned-man and who deep teaching
eis diffundit, idem facit ac si margaritam inter porcos
on-them pours-out the-same does as if a-pearl among swine

spargeret. Nam ut vale dicto Romani tanquam non
he-were-scattering for when farewell said the-Romans as-if not
unquam reversuri abscesserunt: emergunt iterum prædicti
ever about-to-return departed emerge again the-aforesaid
duces Guanius et Melga e navibus, quibus in Hiberniam
leaders Guanius and Melga from the-ships in-which into Ireland
vecti fuerant, cum ceteris turmis Scotorum, et Pictorum,
carried they-had-been with the-other troops of-the-Scots and of-the-Picts
et cum Norwegensibus, Dacis et ceteris quos conduxerant,
and with the-Norwegians the-Danes and the-others whom they-had-hired
et omnem Albaniam muro tenus capessunt. Cognita etiam
and all Albany the-wall as-far-as they-seize known also
Romanorum reversione et reditus denegatione, confidentiores
of-the-Romans the-return and of-return the-refusal more-confident
solito destructioni insulæ imminent. Ad hæc in
than-usual on-the-destruction of-the-island they-press to these-things on
edito murorum statuuntur rustici segnes, ad pugnam
the-height of-the-walls are-set peasants sluggish for fight
inhabiles, ad fugam trementibus præcordiis inepti: qui diebus
unfit for flight trembling hearts useless who for-days
et noctibus stupido sedili marcebant. Interea non cessant
and nights on-a-torpid seat languished meanwhile not cease
uncinata hostium tela, quibus miserrimum vulgus de
the-hooked of-the-enemies weapons by-which the-most-wretched common-crowd from
muris trahebatur, et solo allidebatur. Hoc scilicet
the-walls was-dragged and on-the-ground was-dashed this namely
eis proficiebat, immaturæ mortis supplicium, qui tali
to-them profited of-untimely death the-punishment who by-such
funere rapiebantur: quo fratrum, pignorumque suorum
death were-snatched by-which of-brothers and-of-pledges their-own
miserandas imminentesque pœnas cito exitu devitarent. O
the-pitiable and-impending punishments by-swift end they-might-avoid O

divinam ob præterita scelera ultionem, ob tot
divine on-account-of past crimes vengeance on-account-of of-so-many
bellicosorum militum per vesaniam Maximiani absentiam: qui
warlike knights through the-madness of-Maximianus the-absence who
si in tanta calamitate adessent, non supervenisset populus,
if in so-great calamity they-were-present not would-have-come-upon a-people
quem non in fugam propellerent: quod manifestum fuit dum
which not into flight they-would-drive which manifest was while
manebant. Nam et longe posita regna adjiciebant potestati
they-remained for also far placed kingdoms they-added to-power
suæ, et Britanniam cum tranquillitate possidebant. Sic est,
their-own and Britain with tranquility they-possessed thus it-is
cum regnum tutamini rusticorum relinquitur. Quid plura?
when a-kingdom to-the-protection of-peasants is-left what more
Relictis civitatibus, muroque excelso, iterum civibus fugæ,
left the-cities and-the-wall high again for-the-citizens flights
iterum dispersiones desperabiliores solito, iterum ab hoste
again scatterings more-hopeless than-usual again from the-enemy
insectationes, iterum crudeliores strages accelerant: et sicut agni
pursuits again more-cruel slaughters hasten and as lambs
a lupis, ita miseranda plebs ab inimicis discerpitur. Rursum
by wolves so the-pitiable commoners by the-enemies is-torn-apart again
igitur miseræ reliquiæ mittunt epistolas ad Agitium Romanæ
therefore the-wretched remnants send letters to Agitius of-the-Roman
potestatis virum, hoc modo loquentes: Agitio ter consuli,
power a-man in-this manner speaking to-Agitius three-times consul
Britonum gemitus. Et post pauca quærentes adjiciunt:
of-the-Britons the-groans and after a-few-things complaining they-add
“Nos mare ad Barbaros, Barbari ad mare repellunt. Interea
us the-sea to the-barbarians the-barbarians to the-sea drive-back meanwhile
oriuntur duo genera funerum: aut enim submergimur, aut
arise two kinds of-deaths either for we-are-drowned or

jugulamur." Nec pro eis quicquam adjutorii habentes, tristes
we-are-slaughtered nor for them anything of-help having sad
redeunt, atque concivibus repulsam suam denunciant.
they-return and to-the-fellow-citizens refusal their-own announce

Guethelinus auxilium ab Aldroeno petit

IV · GUETHELINUS ASKS ALDROENUS FOR HELP

Guethelinus crosses to Armorica and offers its king Aldroenus, fourth after Conan, the crown of a Britain that Maximianus stripped and Rome abandoned. Aldroenus refuses, preferring to rule a smaller land in freedom than a richer one under the Roman yoke, but gives his brother Constantine and two thousand knights. Guethelinus hails Constantine as king of deserted Britain, and the knights are chosen and handed over.

Inito itaque consilio, transfretavit Guethelinus Londoniensis
entered and-so counsel crossed Guethelinus of-London
Archiepiscopus in minorem Britanniam quæ tunc Armorica
Archbishop into lesser Britain which then Armorica
sive Letavia dicebatur: ut auxilium a confratribus suis
or Letavia was-called so-that help from brethren his-own
postularet. Regnabat tunc in illa Aldroënus, quartus a
he-might-ask reigned then in it Aldroenus fourth from
Conano, cui Maximianus regnum illud donaverat, sicut
Conan to-whom Maximianus kingdom that had-given as
jam prædictum est. Qui viso tantæ reverentiæ viro,
already said-before it-has-been who seen of-so-great reverence a-man
illum cum honore excepit, causamque adventus sui
him with honor received and-the-cause of-the-coming his-own
inquisivit. Cui Guethelinus: "Satis patet nobilitati tuæ,
inquired to-whom Guethelinus enough lies-open to-nobility your

et te in fletum movere potest miseria, quam nos Britones
and you to weeping to-move can the-misery which we Britons
tui passi sumus, ex quo Maximianus insulam nostram
your suffered have from when Maximianus island our
suis militibus spoliavit: istudque regnum quod possides
of-its-own knights despoiled and-this kingdom which you-possess
(et utinam cum diuturna pace possideas) ab ipsis inhabitari
and would-that with lasting peace you-may-possess by them to-be-inhabited
præcepit. Insurrexerunt etenim in nos, pauperculas nominis
ordered rose for against us the-poor of-name
nostri reliquias, omnes comprovinciales insulæ, et nostram
our remnants all the-neighboring islands and our
insulam omni copia divitiarum repletam evacuaverunt:
island with-every abundance of-riches filled they-emptied
ita ut universæ ejusdem nationes, totius cibi baculo,
so that all of-the-same the-nations of-the-whole food the-staff
excepto venatoriæ artis solatio, careat: nec fuit qui
excepted of-hunting art the-comfort lacks nor was-there who
obviaret, cum nullus potens, nullus bellicosus ex nostris
should-oppose since no powerful-man no warlike-man of ours
remanserit. Nam Romani in tædium nostri versi sunt, et
has-remained for the-Romans into weariness of-us turned have and
omnino auxilium suum abnegaverunt. Ab omni igitur alia
altogether help their-own denied from every therefore other
spe repulsi adivimus misericordiam tuam, te implorantes,
hope repelled we-have-come-to mercy your you imploring
ut præsidium adhibeas, et debitum tibi regnum a
that protection you-may-supply and the-due to-you kingdom from
Barbarorum irruptione protegas. Quis enim alius te invito,
of-the-barbarians the-inroad you-may-protect who for other you unwilling
diademate Constantini et Maximiani debeat coronari: cum
with-the-diadem of-Constantine and of-Maximianus ought to-be-crowned since

avi tui, atque proavi ipso insigniti fuerint?
the-grandfathers your and great-grandfathers with-it marked have-been
Para navigium tuum, et veni: ecce regnum Britanniæ in
prepare fleet your and come behold the-kingdom of-Britain into
manus tuas trado." Ad hæc Aldroënus: "Olim tempus
hands your I-hand-over at these-things Aldroenus once a-time
fuit, quo non negassem insulam Britanniæ accipere, si
was in-which not I-would-have-refused the-island of-Britain to-receive if
quis eam mihi largitus fuisset: non enim existimo alteram
anyone it to-me bestowed had not for I-think another
patriam fertiliorem fuisse, dum pace et tranquillitate
country more-fertile to-have-been while peace and tranquility
frueretur. At nunc quando infortunia accesserunt, vilior
it-enjoyed but now when misfortunes have-come cheaper
facta est, et mihi et ceteris principibus odiosa. Super
made it-has-been and to-me and to-the-other princes hateful above
omnia vero mala, potestas Romanorum in tantum nocuit,
all indeed evils power of-the-Romans in so-far has-harmed
ita ut nemo stabilem dignitatem intra illam habere queat,
so that no-one stable dignity within it to-have can
quin servitutis jugo oneratus libertatem amittat. Quis
but-that of-servitude by-the-yoke burdened liberty he-loses who
ergo non mallet minus alibi cum libertate possidere,
therefore not would-prefer less elsewhere with liberty to-possess
quam divitias ipsius sub jugo servitutis habere? Regnum
than the-riches of-it under the-yoke of-servitude to-have kingdom
istud quod nunc potestati meæ subditum est, cum honore,
this which now to-power my subject is with honor
et sine obsequio quod superiori impendam, possideo.
and without service which to-a-superior I-should-pay I-possess
Unum istud ceteris nationibus præferre prælegi, cum
one-thing this to-the-other nations to-prefer I-have-chosen since

ipsum cum libertate gubernem: attamen quoniam jus in
it with liberty I-govern but-yet since right over
insulam avi et atavi mei habuerunt, trado
the-island the-grandfathers and forefathers my had I-hand-over
tibi Constantinum fratrem meum, et duo milia militum,
to-you Constantine brother my and two thousand of-knights
ut si Deus permiserit, patriam a barbarica irruptione
so-that if God will-have-permitted the-country from barbarian inroad
liberet, et sese illius diademate insigniat. Habeo namque
he-may-free and himself its with-diadem may-mark I-have for
quemdam fratrem prædicto nomine vocatum, qui in militia
a-certain brother by-the-aforesaid name called who in knighthood
ceterisque probitatibus viget: illum tibi cum præfato numero
and-other prowess flourishes him to-you with the-aforesaid number
committere non diffugiam, si placet ut recipiatur. Nam de
to-commit not I-shall-shun if it-pleases that he-be-received for about
ampliori militum numero tacendum censeo, cum Gallorum
a-larger of-knights number to-be-kept-silent I-judge since of-the-Gauls
inquietudo quotidie immineat." Vix finem dicendi fecerat,
the-disturbance daily threatens scarcely an-end of-speaking he-had-made
cum grates egit ei Archiepiscopus, vocatoque Constantino
when thanks gave to-him the-Archbishop and-called Constantine
ei in hæc verba arrisit: "Christus vincit: Christus imperat:
on-him in these words smiled Christ conquers Christ commands
regnat Christus. Ecce rex Britanniæ desertæ. Adsit
reigns Christ behold the-king of-Britain deserted may-he-be-present
modo Christus: ecce defensio nostra: ecce spes nostra, et
only Christ behold defense our behold hope our and
gaudium." Quid plura? Paratis in littore navibus, eliguntur ex
joy what more prepared on the-shore the-ships are-chosen from
diversis regni partibus milites, et Guethelino traduntur.
various of-the-kingdom parts knights and to-Guethelinus are-handed-over

Constantinus, rex Britanniæ factus, a Picto quodam fraude interficitur

V · CONSTANTINE, KING OF BRITAIN

Constantine lands at Totnes, defeats the enemy with the remaining youth of the island, and is crowned at Silchester. He marries a noble Roman wife and has three sons, Constans, whom he gives to the monastery of Amphibalus at Winchester, Aurelius Ambrosius, and Uther Pendragon. After ten years a Pict in his service lures him into a thicket and stabs him.

Cumque omnia parata fuissent, ingressi sunt mare: atque
and-when all-things prepared had-been entered they-have the-sea and
in Totonesium portum applicuerunt. Nec mora collegerunt
in the-Totnes port landed nor delay they-gathered
reliquam juventutem insulæ, et cum hostibus congressi,
the-remaining youth of-the-island and with the-enemies having-engaged
victoriam per meritum beati viri adepti sunt. Exin
the-victory through the-merit of-the-blessed man obtained they-have thence
confluxerunt undique Britones prius dispersi, et facta
flowed-together from-everywhere the-Britons before scattered and made
intra Silcestriam concione, erexerunt Constantinum in regem,
within Silchester an-assembly raised Constantine into king
regnique diadema capiti ejus imposuerunt. Dederunt
and-of-the-kingdom the-diadem on-head his placed they-gave
etiam ei conjugem, ex nobili Romanorum genere ortam,
also to-him a-wife from a-noble of-the-Romans race sprung
quam Guethelinus Archiepiscopus educaverat: cumque illam
whom Guethelinus the-Archbishop had-brought-up and-when her
cognovisset, genuit ex illa tres filios: quorum nomina
he-had-known he-begot of her three sons whose names
fuerunt, Constans, Aurelius Ambrosius, et Utherpendragon.
were Constans Aurelius Ambrosius and Uther-Pendragon

Constantem vero primogenitum tradidit in ecclesiam
Constans but the-first-born he-handed-over into the-church
Amphibali intra Guintoniam, ut monachalem ordinem
of-Amphibalus within Winchester that the-monastic order
susciperet. Ceteros autem duos, Aurelium videlicet et
he-might-take-up the-other moreover two Aurelius namely and
Uther, Guethelino nutriendos commisit. Postremo cum decem
Uther to-Guethelinus to-be-reared he-committed finally when ten
anni præterissent, venit quidam Pictus, qui in obsequio ejus
years had-passed came a-certain Pict who in the-service his
fuerat, et quasi secretum colloquium habiturus, in virgulto
had-been and as-if a-secret conversation about-to-have in a-thicket
quodam semotis cunctis eum cultro interfecit.
certain removed all-people him with-a-knife killed

Constans gubernationem regni suscipit

VI · CONSTANS TAKES THE KINGDOM

The nobles quarrel over the succession, and Vortigern, consul of the Gewissae, who longs for the crown, goes to the monk Constans. He promises to make him king in exchange for power, and Constans swears to grant whatever he wishes. Vortigern takes him from the cloister to London and, with no archbishop to anoint him, sets the crown on his head himself.

Defuncto igitur Constantino, fuit inter proceres dissensio,
having-died therefore Constantine there-was among the-nobles dissension
quis in regnum sublimaretur: alii itaque acclamabant
who into the-kingdom should-be-raised some and-so acclaimed
Aurelium Ambrosium, alii Utherpendragonem, alii ceteros
Aurelius Ambrosius others Uther-Pendragon others the-others
ex generatione propinquos. Denique cum nunc sic, nunc
from the-generation near-ones finally when now thus now

aliter contendissent, accessit Vortegirnus consul Gewisseorum
otherwise they-had-contended approached Vortigern consul of-the-Gewissae
qui omni nisu in regnum anhelabat, et adivit Constantem
who with-all effort for the-kingdom panted and went-to Constans
monachum, ipsumque in hæc verba allocutus est: Ecce pater
the-monk and-him in these words addressed he-has behold father
tuus defunctus est, et fratres tui propter ætatem sublimari
your died has and brothers your on-account-of age to-be-raised
nequeunt: nec alium video in progenie tua quem populus
cannot nor another I-see in offspring your whom the-people
in regem promoveat. Si igitur consilio meo acquiescere
into king might-advance if therefore to-counsel my to-assent
volueris, et meam possessionem augmentare, convertam
you-will-wish and my possession to-increase I-shall-turn
populum in affectum sublimandi te in regnum, et ex
the-people into a-desire of-raising you into the-kingdom and from
tali habitu, licet ordo repugnet, te abstraham. Quod cum
such habit although the-order resist you I-shall-draw which when
audisset Constans, maximo fluctuavit gaudio; et quicquid
had-heard Constans with-greatest surged joy and whatever
callebat ipsum velle, ei jurejurando promittebat. Cepit
he-knew him to-wish to-him by-oath he-promised he-took
itaque eum Vortegirnus, duxitque regiis ornamentis indutum
and-so him Vortigern and-led in-royal ornaments clothed
Londonias, atque vix annuente populo in regem erexit.
to-London and scarcely nodding the-people into king raised
Tunc defunctus fuerat Guethelinus Archiepiscopus, nec fuit
then died had-been Guethelinus the-Archbishop nor was-there
alius qui ipsum inungere præsumpsisset, quia ex monacho
another who him to-anoint would-have-presumed because from a-monk

transferebatur. Nec tamen idcirco postposuit diadema, quod
he-was-being-transferred nor yet therefore set-aside the-diadem which
ipse Vortegirnus episcopi capiti ejus imposuit.
he-himself Vortigern of-the-bishop on-head his placed

Vortegirnus deliberat, quomodo Constantem solio privare possit

VII · VORTIGERN PLOTS TO DEPOSE CONSTANS

Constans, who learned nothing of ruling in the cloister, leaves the kingdom to Vortigern, who plots to take his place. Vortigern seizes the treasure and the cities and has a hundred Picts brought into the king's household, flattering and feeding them until they hail him as worthy of the crown. He then tells them he is too poor to stay in Britain, and in their drink they resolve to kill the monk.

Sublimatus igitur Constans, totam justitiam regni
raised therefore Constans the-whole justice of-the-kingdom
Vortegirno commisit: et semetipsum in consilium ejusdem
to-Vortigern committed and himself into the-counsel of-the-same
tradidit, ita ut nihil absque ipsius præcepto faceret. Quippe
handed-over so that nothing without his order he-did indeed
debilitas sensus ipsius id faciebat. Nam intra claustrum
the-weakness of-sense his this caused for within the-cloister
aliud quam regnum tractare didicerat. Quod cum calluisset
other than the-kingdom to-handle he-had-learned which when had-perceived
Vortegirnus, cœpit apud se deliberare, qualiter in regem
Vortigern began with himself to-deliberate how into king
sublimari posset. Nam id prius super omnia concupierat.
to-be-raised he-might-be-able for this before above all-things he-had-coveted
Videbat etenim congruum tempus instare, quo desiderium
he-saw for a-fitting time to-press in-which desire

suum leviter ad effectum duci poterat. Totum namque
his-own easily to effect to-be-led could the-whole for
regnum dispositioni ejus commissum fuerat, nec Constans,
kingdom to-the-disposition his committed had-been nor Constans
qui rex dicebatur, nisi pro umbra principis astabat. Nullius
who king was-called except as a-shadow of-a-prince stood-by of-no
enim asperitatis, nullius justitiæ fuerat: nec a populo suo,
for harshness of-no justice had-be-been nor by people his-own
nec a vicinis gentibus timebatur. Duo autem pueri fratres
nor by the-neighboring nations he-was-feared the-two moreover boys brothers
ejusdem, Utherpendragon videlicet, atque Aurelius Ambrosius,
of-the-same Uther-Pendragon namely and Aurelius Ambrosius
in cunis adhuc jacentes, adhuc inhabiles erant, ut in
in cradles still lying still unfit were that into
regnum promoverentur. Præterea infortunium illud acciderat,
the-kingdom they-should-be-advanced besides misfortune that had-befallen
quod proceres regni, qui majores natu erant, defuncti
that the-nobles of-the-kingdom who greater by-birth were died
fuerant, solusque Vortegirnus astutus et sapiens, magnique
had and-alone Vortigern shrewd and wise and-of-great
consilii videbatur: ceteri autem pene omnes pueri erant ac
counsel seemed the-others moreover almost all boys were and
juvenes, peremptisque in anteactis præliis eorundem patribus
youths and-destroyed in former battles of-the-same fathers
et avunculis, honores utcunque possidebant. Hæc omnia
and uncles the-honors somehow they-possessed these-things all
igitur comperiens Vortegirnus, meditabatur quo ingenio
therefore finding Vortigern considered by-what device
facilius et callidius Constantem monachum deponeret, ut
more-easily and more-craftily Constans the-monk he-might-depose so-that
in locum ipsius erumperet. Quod tandiu differre prælegit,
into the-place his he-might-burst which so-long to-put-off he-preferred

donec prius diversas nationes melius potestati suæ et
until first various nations better to-power his-own and
familiaritati submisisset. Cœpit ergo petere thesauros regis
familiarity he-had-subjected he-began therefore to-seek the-treasures of-the-king
ab ipso in custodiam, ejusque civitates cum munitionibus,
from him into custody and-his cities with fortifications
dicens, quod rumor asserebat collaterales insulanos supervenire
saying that rumor asserted the-neighboring islanders to-come-upon
affectasse. Quod cum impetrasset, posuit ubique familiares
to-have-desired which when he-had-obtained he-placed everywhere intimates
suos qui easdem urbes in fidelitate sua servarent. Deinde
his-own who the-same cities in fidelity his-own should-keep then
præmeditatam traditionem machinans, Constantem adivit,
the-premeditated treachery contriving Constans he-went-to
dixitque illi oportere numerum familiæ suæ augmentare,
and-said to-him to-behoove the-number of-household his-own to-increase
ut securius superventuris hostibus resisteret. Cui
so-that more-securely about-to-come-upon enemies he-might-resist to-whom
Constans: "Nonne omnia dispositioni tuæ commisi? Fac
Constans not all-things to-disposition your I-have-committed do
igitur quæcunque volueris: ita tamen, ut in fidelitate mea
therefore whatever you-will-wish so yet that in fidelity my
permaneant. Ad hæc Vortegirnus: Dictum est mihi,
they-may-remain at these-things Vortigern said it-has-been to-me
Pictos velle conducere Dacos et Norwegenses super nos, ut
the-Picts to-wish to-bring the-Danes and the-Norwegians upon us so-that
maximam inquietudinem inferant: quamobrem laudarem,
greatest disturbance they-may-bring wherefore I-would-commend
et consilium saluberrimum esse censeo ut quosdam ex
and counsel most-wholesome to-be I-judge that some of
Pictis in curia tua retineas, qui mediatores inter te et
the-Picts in court your you-should-keep who mediators between you and

ceteros existant. Nam si verum est quod rebellare inceperint,
the-others may-be for if true it-is that to-rebel they-have-begun
explorabunt tibi consociorum suorum machinationes et
they-will-search-out for-you of-comrades their-own the-contrivances and
versutias, quas levius vitare poteris. Ecce occulta occulti
tricks which more-easily to-avoid you-will-be-able behold the-hidden of-a-hidden
inimici proditio. Non enim id laudabat, ut salus inde
enemy treachery not for this he-commended that safety thence
proveniret Constanti: sed quia sciebat Pictos gentem esse
should-come to-Constans but because he-knew the-Picts a-people to-be
instabilem, et ad omne scelus paratam. Inebriati ergo, sive in
unstable and for every crime ready made-drunk therefore or into
iram inducti, commoveri possent facile adversus regem, ita ut
anger led to-be-moved they-could easily against the-king so that
absque cunctamine ipsum interficerent. Unde si id contigisset:
without hesitation him they-would-kill whence if this had-happened
haberet aditum sese promovendi in regem, ut sæpius
he-would-have an-approach himself of-advancing into king as more-often
affectaverat. Directis itaque in Scotiam nunciis, invitavit
he-had-desired directed and-so into Scotland messengers he-invited
centum Pictos milites: ipsosque intra familiam regis recepit.
a-hundred Pictish knights and-them within the-household of-the-king received
Receptos autem honorabat super omnes, diversisque donariis
the-received moreover he-honored above all and-with-various gifts
ditabat: cibis etiam et potibus ultra modum satiabat, ita ut
he-enriched with-foods also and with-drinks beyond measure he-sated so that
pro rege illum haberent. Adorantes ergo illum per plateas
for king him they-held worshiping therefore him through the-streets
psallebant, dicentes: Dignus est Vortegirnus imperio, dignus
they-sang saying worthy is Vortigern of-empire worthy
est sceptro Britanniæ: Constans vero indignus. Ad hæc
is of-the-scepter of-Britain Constans but unworthy at these-things

Vortegirnus magis ac magis eis donare nitebatur, ut magis
Vortigern more and more on-them to-bestow strove that more
placeret. At cum amorem eorum omnino adeptus fuisset,
he-might-please but when the-love of-them altogether obtained he-had
illos inebriavit, dixitque se ex Britannia velle recedere,
them he-made-drunk and-said himself from Britain to-wish to-withdraw
ut ampliores possessiones perquireret. Dicebat autem
so-that ampler possessions he-might-seek he-said moreover
illis id tantillum quod habebat non posse sufficere, ut
to-them that so-little which he-had not to-be-able to-suffice that
quinquaginta militibus stipendia donaret. Deinde quasi tristis,
to-fifty knights pay he-might-give then as-if sad
secessit ad hospitium suum, ipsos vero in aula potantes
he-withdrew to lodging his-own them indeed in the-hall drinking
deseruit. Quo viso, ultra quam credi potest contristati sunt
he-deserted which seen beyond what to-be-believed can saddened were
Picti, arbitrantes verum esse quod dixerat: murmurantesque
the-Picts thinking true to-be what he-had-said and-murmuring
ad invicem dicebant, “Ut quid monachum istum vivere
to each-other they-said to what-end monk this to-live
permittimus? ut quid non interficimus eum, ut Vortegirnus
do-we-permit to what-end not do-we-kill him so-that Vortigern
regni solio potiatur? Quis etenim alius ei in
of-the-kingdom throne may-gain-possession who for other to-him in
regnum succederet? dignus namque est imperio et honore,
the-kingdom would-succeed worthy for he-is of-empire and of-honor
dignus etiam omni dignitate, qui nos ditare non cessat.
worthy also of-every dignity who us to-enrich not ceases

Constans vi obtruncatur

VIII · CONSTANS IS MURDERED

The Picts burst into Constans' chamber, kill him, and bring his head to Vortigern, who weeps in public and rejoices in secret. He has the murderers beheaded, though some think the plot his own. The guardians of Aurelius Ambrosius and Uther Pendragon flee with the boys to King Budicius in lesser Britain.

Post hæc irrumpentes thalamum, impetum fecerunt
after these-things bursting-into the-chamber an-attack they-made
in Constantem, peremptoque illo, caput coram Vortegirno
upon Constans and-destroyed him the-head before Vortigern
tulerunt. Quod cum aspexisset Vortegirnus, quasi contristatus
they-carried which when had-seen Vortigern as-if saddened
in fletum erupit: nec unquam prius majori gaudio
into weeping burst nor ever before with-greater joy
fluctuaverat. Vocatis tamen civibus Londoniæ (nam id intra
he-had-surged called yet the-citizens of-London for this within
eam contigerat) jussit cunctos proditores alligari, alligatosque
it had-happened he-ordered all the-traitors to-be-bound and-the-bound
decollari, quia tantum scelus facere præsumpserant. Fuerunt
to-be-beheaded because so-great a-crime to-do they-had-presumed there-were
autem qui existimabant proditionem illam per Vortegirnum
moreover who thought treachery that through Vortigern
fuisse machinatam: Pictos vero nullatenus nisi assensu
to-have-been contrived the-Picts indeed by-no-means except with-the-assent
illius incœpisse. Fuerunt etiam qui nihil hæsitantes,
his to-have-begun there-were also who nothing hesitating
ipsum a tali crimine purgabant. Re tandem in dubio
him of such crime cleared the-matter at-last in doubt
relicta, nutritores duorum fratrum, Aurelii Ambrosii, atque
left the-fosterers of-the-two brothers of-Aurelius Ambrosius and

Utherpendragon, diffugerunt cum eis in minorem Britanniam,
Uther-Pendragon fled with them into lesser Britain
timentes ne a Vortegirno perimerentur. Ibidem excepit
fearing lest by Vortigern they-might-be-destroyed there received
illos Budecius rex, et honore quo decebat educavit.
them Budicius the-king and with-honor with-which it-was-fitting brought-up

Vortegirnus sibi imperium sumit

IX · VORTIGERN TAKES THE CROWN

Vortigern crowns himself. When his treachery becomes known, the peoples of the islands whom the Picts brought into Albany rise against him, and the Picts strive to avenge their comrades. He also fears Aurelius Ambrosius and Uther Pendragon, who are said to be grown and building a fleet to return.

At Vortegirnus cum neminem sibi parem in regno
but Vortigern when no-one to-himself equal in the-kingdom
conspexisset, capiti suo diadema regni imposuit, et
he-had-seen on-head his-own the-diadem of-the-kingdom placed and
coprincipes suos supergressus est. Proditione ejus tandem
the-fellow-princes his-own surpassed has the-treachery his at-last
divulgata, insurrexerunt in eum comprovincialium insularum
spread-abroad rose against him of-the-neighboring islands
populi, quos Picti in Albaniam conduxerant. Indignati
the-peoples whom the-Picts into Albany had-brought indignant
namque Picti, commilitones suos, qui propter Constantem
for the-Picts the-comrades their-own who on-account-of Constans
interfecti fuerant, in ipsum vindicare nitebantur. Anxiabatur
killed had-been on him to-avenge strove was-troubled
igitur Vortegirnus quotidie, damnumque exercitus sui in
therefore Vortigern daily and-the-loss of-army his-own in

præliando patiebatur. Anxiabatur etiam ex alia parte timore
fighting suffered he-was-troubled also from the-other side by-fear
Aurelii Ambrosii, fratrisque sui Utherpendragon: qui, ut
of-Aurelius Ambrosius and-of-brother his-own Uther-Pendragon who as
prædictum est, in minorem Britanniam propter ipsum
said-before it-has-been into lesser Britain on-account-of him
diffugerant. Quotidianus etenim rumor aures ejus impleverat,
had-fled daily for rumor the-ears his had-filled
ipsos jam adultos esse, maximumque navigium construxisse,
them already grown to-be and-a-very-great fleet to-have-built
atque reditum suum in debitum regnum velle moliri.
and return their-own into the-due kingdom to-wish to-attempt

Hengist et Horsus in Britanniam perveniunt

X · HENGIST AND HORSA COME TO BRITAIN

Three long ships of armed Saxons land in Kent under the brothers Hengist and Horsa, exiled by their custom of sending out surplus youth by lot. They worship Woden, after whom Wednesday is named, and the goddess Frea of Friday. Vortigern deplores their faith but welcomes their arms, and they rout the Picts beyond the Humber.

Interea applicuerunt tres celoces, quas longas naves dicimus,
meanwhile landed three keels which long ships we-call
in partes Cantiæ, plenæ armatis militibus, quibus duo
in the-parts of-Kent full with-armed knights to-which two
fratres Horsus et Hengistus ducatum præstabant. Erat tunc
brothers Horsa and Hengist leadership offered was then
Vortegirnus Doroberniæ, quæ nunc Cantuaria dicitur, ut
Vortigern at-Dorobernia which now Canterbury is-called as
consuetudo eum conduxerat, civitatem illam sæpissime visitare.
custom him had-led city that most-often to-visit

Cui cum retulissent nuncii, ignotos viros magnæque staturæ
to-whom when had-reported messengers unknown men and-of-great stature
homines in magnis navibus applicuisse, dedit pacem: et ipsos
persons in great ships to-have-landed he-gave peace and them
ad se conduci præcepit. Mox ut conducti fuerunt, vertit
to himself to-be-brought ordered soon when brought they-were he-turned
oculos suos in duos Germanos. Nam ipsi præ ceteris et
eyes his-own upon the-two brothers for they before the-others both
nobilitate et decore præeminebant. Cumque ceteros etiam
in-nobility and in-comeliness stood-out and-when the-others also
aspectu peragrasset, quæsivit quæ patria produxerat illos, et
with-a-look he-had-gone-over he-asked which country had-brought-forth them and
quæ causa eos in regnum suum direxerat. Cui Hengistus
what cause them into kingdom his-own had-directed to-whom Hengist
pro aliis respondere incepit: nam ipsum et maturior
for the-others to-answer began for him both riper
ætas et sapientia præponebat. "Rex ceterorum nobilissime,
age and wisdom set-before O-king of-the-others most-noble
Saxonica tellus nos edidit, una ex Germaniæ regionibus.
the-Saxon land us brought-forth one of of-Germany regions
Causa hæc adventus nostri est, ut tibi sive alteri principi
the-cause this of-the-coming our is that to-you or to-another prince
obsequium nostrum offeramus. Fueramus etenim expulsi a
service our we-may-offer we-had-been for driven from
patria nostra, nec ob aliud, nisi quia regni consuetudo
country our nor for other-thing except because of-the-kingdom the-custom
expetebat. Consuetudo namque in patria nostra est, ut cum
demanded the-custom for in country our is that when
hominum abundantia in eadem supervenerit, conveniant ex
of-men an-abundance in the-same will-have-come-upon come-together from
diversis provinciis principes, et totius regni juvenes coram
various provinces the-princes and of-the-whole kingdom the-youths before

se venire præcipiunt: deinde projecta sorte potiores atque
themselves to-come they-order then thrown the-lot the-abler and
fortiores eligunt, qui extera regna petituri, victum sibi
stronger they-choose who foreign kingdoms about-to-seek food for-themselves
perquirant, et patria ex qua orti sunt a superflua
may-seek-out and the-country from which sprung they-have from the-superfluous
multitudine liberetur. Superfluente igitur noviter in regno
multitude may-be-freed overflowing therefore newly in kingdom
nostro hominum copia, convenerunt principes, sortemque
our of-men the-host came-together the-princes and-the-lot
projicientes elegerunt juventutem istam quam in præsentia
throwing chose youth this which in the-presence
tua cernis: præceperuntque ut consuetudini ab antiquo
your you-see and-ordered that to-the-custom from of-old
statutæ parerent. Nos quoque duos Germanos, quorum ego
established they-should-obey us also two brothers of-whom I
Hengistus, iste Horsus nuncupatur, eis duces præfecerunt.
Hengist this-one Horsa is-called to-them as-leaders they-set
Nam ex ducum progenie progeniti fueramus. Obedientes
for from of-dukes offspring begotten we-had-been obeying
ergo decretis ab ævo sancitis, ingressi sumus maria,
therefore to-the-decrees from an-age hallowed entered we-have the-seas
regnumque tuum duce Mercurio petivimus." Ad nomen itaque
and-kingdom your as-guide Mercury we-have-sought at the-name and-so
Mercurii erecto vultu rex, inquirit cujusmodi religionem
of-Mercury with-raised face the-king asks of-what-kind religion
haberent. Cui Hengistus: "Deos patrios, Saturnum, Jovem,
they-had to-whom Hengist the-gods of-the-fathers Saturn Jupiter
atque ceteros qui mundum gubernant, colimus: maxime autem
and the-others who the-world govern we-worship most moreover
Mercurium, quem Woden lingua nostra appellamus. Huic
Mercury whom Woden in-tongue our we-call to-this-one

veteres nostri dicaverunt quartam septimanæ feriam, quæ
elders our dedicated the-fourth of-the-week day which
usque in hodiernum diem nomen Wodensdai de nomine
all-the-way into today's day the-name Wednesday from the-name
ipsius sortita est. Post illum colimus deam inter ceteras
his got has after him we-worship a-goddess among the-others
potentissimam, nomine Fream, cui etiam dedicaverunt
most-powerful by-name Frea to-whom also they-dedicated
sextam feriam, quam de nomine ejus Fridai vocamus."
the-sixth day which from the-name her Friday we-call
Ad hæc Vortegirnus: "De credulitate vestra, quæ potius
at these-things Vortigern about credulity your which rather
incredulitas dici potest, vehementer doleo. De adventu
incredulity to-be-called can vehemently I-grieve about the-coming
autem vestro gaudeo, quia in congruo tempore vos necessitati
moreover your I-rejoice because in a-fitting time you to-need
meæ, sive Deus, sive alius obtulit. Opprimunt etenim me
my either God or another has-offered press for me
inimici mei undique, et si laborem præliorum meorum
enemies my from-everywhere and if the-labor of-battles my
mecum communicaveritis, retinebo vos honorifice intra
with-me you-will-have-shared I-shall-keep you honorably within
regnum meum, et diversis muneribus et agris ditabo."
kingdom my and with-various gifts and fields I-shall-enrich
Paruerunt ilico Barbari, et fœdere confirmato in curia
obeyed on-the-spot the-barbarians and the-pact confirmed in the-court
ipsius remanserunt. Nec mora, emergentes ex Albania Picti,
his remained nor delay emerging from Albany the-Picts
exercitum valde grandem fecerunt, cœperuntque Aquilonares
an-army very great made and-began the-northern
partes insulæ devastare. Cumque id Vortegirno nunciatum
parts of-the-island to-lay-waste and-when this to-Vortigern announced

fuisset, milites suos collegit: atque trans Humbrum eis
had-been knights his-own he-gathered and beyond the-Humber to-them
obviam perrexit. Deinde ut cominus convenerunt hinc
to-meet proceeded then when hand-to-hand they-came-together on-this-side
et illinc et cives et hostes, acerrimam pugnam commiserunt:
and on-that both citizens and enemies a-most-fierce fight joined
nec multum oportuit cives pugnare: nam Saxones qui
nor much was-it-needed the-citizens to-fight for the-Saxons who
aderant, tam viriliter præliabantur, ita ut hostes, qui prius
were-present so manfully fought so that the-enemies who before
vincere solebant, sine mora in fugam propellerentur.
to-conquer were-accustomed without delay into flight were-driven

Hengist plures e Germania arcessit: territorium in Britannia adipiscitur

XI · HENGIST WINS LAND

Vortigern gives Hengist land in Lindsey, and Hengist urges him to bring more men from Germany. Refused a city because he is a pagan foreigner, Hengist asks only for as much land as a thong can encircle. He cuts a bull's hide into a single thong, rings a rocky place, and builds the castle called Kaercorrei, or Thanceaster.

Vortegirnus ergo per illos victoria potitus, donaria sua
Vortigern therefore through them of-the-victory having-gained gifts his-own
eis ampliavit, atque eorum duci Hengisto agros plurimos
to-them enlarged and their to-leader Hengist fields very-many
dedit in Londesia regione, quibus sese et commilitones suos
gave in the-Lindsey region by-which himself and comrades his-own
sustentaret. Hengistus ergo cum esset vir doctus atque
he-might-sustain Hengist therefore since he-was a-man learned and
astutus, comperta amicitia quam adversus se rex gerebat,
shrewd discovered the-friendship which towards him the-king bore

eum hoc sermone adivit: “Domine, undique inquietant
him with-this speech approached O-lord from-everywhere harass
te inimici tui, et pauci sunt ex concivibus tuis qui te
you enemies your and few are of fellow-citizens your who you
diligunt: omnes minantur tibi, dicuntque se conducturos
love all threaten you and-say themselves about-to-bring
Aurelium Ambrosium ex Armorico tractu, ut te deposito,
Aurelius Ambrosius from the-Armorican tract so-that you deposed
ipsum in regem promoveant. Si placet tibi, mittamus in
him into king they-may-advance if it-pleases you let-us-send into
patriam nostram: et ex ea milites invitemus, ut numerus
country our and from it knights let-us-invite so-that number
noster ad certandum augeatur. Sed unum a discretione
our for contending may-be-increased but one-thing from the-discretion
clementiæ tuæ implorarem, nisi repulsam pati timerem.” Ad
of-clemency your I-would-implore unless refusal to-suffer I-feared at
hæc Vortegirnus: “Mitte ergo legatos tuos ad Germaniam,
these-things Vortigern send therefore envoys your to Germany
et invita quos volueris, et pete a me quod desideras, et
and invite whom you-will-wish and ask from me what you-desire and
nullam repulsam patieris.” Cui inclinato capite gratias egit
no refusal you-will-suffer to-whom bowed head thanks gave
Hengistus, et ait: “Ditasti me largis mansionibus et
Hengist and says you-have-enriched me with-large dwellings and
agris, nec tamen eo honore quo ducem decuerat, cum
fields nor yet with-that honor with-which a-duke had-befitted since
duces me progenuerint. Quippe inter cetera danda esset
dukes me have-begotten indeed among other-things to-be-given would-be
mihi civitas sive oppidum, ut dignior inter proceres tui
to-me a-city or a-town so-that more-worthy among the-nobles of-your
regni censerer. Dignitas namque consulis, sive principis
kingdom I-might-be-thought the-dignity for of-a-consul or of-a-prince

adhibenda esset, ex utrorumque genere edito." Cui
to-be-applied would-be from of-both the-race to-one-born to-whom
Vortegirnus: "Prohibitus sum hujusmodi donaria vobis largiri,
Vortigern forbidden I-am such gifts on-you to-bestow
quia alienigenæ estis et pagani, nec adhuc vestros mores et
because foreigners you-are and pagans nor yet your ways and
consuetudines agnosco, ut vos concivibus meis parificem:
customs I-know that you to-fellow-citizens my I-might-make-equal
nec, si vos ut proprios cives existimassem, inciperem donare,
nor if you as my-own citizens I-had-thought I-would-begin to-give
quod proceres regni mei dissuaderent." Cui Hengistus:
what the-nobles of-kingdom my would-dissuade to-whom Hengist
"Concede," inquit, "mihi servo tuo, quantum una corrigia
grant he-says to-me servant your as-much-as one thong
possit ambiri intra terram quam dedisti, ut ibidem
can to-be-gone-round within the-land which you-have-given so-that there
promontorium ædificem, quo me, si opus fuerit, recipiam.
a-stronghold I-may-build in-which me if need will-have-been I-may-receive
Fidelis etenim tibi sum, et fui et ero: et in fidelitate
faithful for to-you I-am and I-have-been and I-shall-be and in fidelity
tua quæ agere desidero, faciam. Motus igitur rex ipsius
your what to-do I-desire I-shall-do moved therefore the-king his
verbis, ejusdem petitioni acquievit: præcepitque legatos suos
by-words of-the-same to-the-petition assented and-ordered envoys his-own
in Germaniam mittere: ut milites ex ea invitati festinatum
into Germany to-send so-that knights from it invited hastened
auxilium darent. Nec mora, missa in Germaniam legatione,
help should-give nor delay sent into Germany the-embassy
cepit Hengistus corium tauri, atque ipsum in unam corrigiam
took Hengist the-hide of-a-bull and it into one thong
redegit. Exin saxosum locum quem maxima cautela elegerat,
reduced thence a-rocky place which with-greatest caution he-had-chosen

circuivit cum corrigia, et intra spatium metatum castellum
he-went-round with the-thong and within the-space measured-out a-castle
ædificare cœpit. Quod ut ædificatum fuit, traxit nomen ex
to-build began which when built it-was it-drew its-name from
corrigia, quia cum ea fuerat metatum. Dictum namque fuit
the-thong because with it it-had-been measured-out called for it-was
postmodum Britannice Kaercorrei: Saxonice vero Thancastre.
afterward in-British Kaercorrei in-Saxon indeed Thanceaster
Quod Latino sermone castrum corrigiæ appellamus.
which in-the-Latin speech the-castle of-the-thong we-call

Vortegirnus Rowenam, Hengisti filiam matrimonio ducit

XII · VORTIGERN MARRIES ROWENA

Eighteen ships arrive from Germany with Hengist's beautiful daughter Rowena. At a feast she offers Vortigern a golden cup with "Lord King, be hale"; he answers "Drink hale," and the custom endures in Britain. Drunk, and with Satan in his heart, Vortigern asks for the pagan girl, and Hengist gives her in exchange for Kent, which turns the nobles and Vortigern's sons against him.

Interea vero reversi sunt nuncii ex Germania,
meanwhile indeed returned have the-messengers from Germany
conduxeruntque decem et octo naves electis militibus
and-brought ten and eight ships with-chosen knights
plenas. Conduxerunt etiam Hengisti filiam nomine
full they-brought also of-Hengist the-daughter by-name
Rowenam: cujus pulchritudo nulli secunda videbatur.
Rowena whose beauty to-none second seemed
Postquam autem venerunt, invitavit Hengistus Vortegirnum
after moreover they-came invited Hengist Vortigern
regem in domum suam, ut et novum ædificium et
the-king into house his-own so-that both the-new building and

milites novos qui applicuerant videret. Venit ilico rex
the-knights new who had-landed he-might-see came on-the-spot the-king
privatim, et tam subitum opus laudavit, et milites invitatos
privately and so sudden a-work praised and the-knights invited
retinuit. Ut vero regiis epulis refectus fuit, egressa est
kept when indeed with-royal feasts refreshed he-was come-out has
puella de thalamo, aureum scyphum vino plenum ferens:
the-girl from the-chamber a-golden cup with-wine full carrying
accedens deinde propius, regi flexis genibus dixit: "Laford
approaching then nearer to-the-king bent knees she-said Lord
King wacht heil!" At ille, visa facie puellæ, admiratus est
King be hale but he seen the-face of-the-girl wondered has
tantum ejus decorem, et incaluit. Deinde interpretem suum
so-much her comeliness and grew-hot then interpreter his-own
interrogavit quid puella dixerat, et quid ei respondere
he-asked what the-girl had-said and what to-her to-answer
debeat. Cui interpres dixit: "Vocavit te dominum regem,
he-ought to-whom the-interpreter said she-has-called you lord king
et vocabulo salutationis honoravit. Quod autem respondere
and with-a-word of-greeting honored what moreover to-answer
debes, est, Drinc heil!" Respondens deinde Vortegirnus.
you-ought is drink hale answering then Vortigern
Drinc heil! jussit puellam potare: cepitque de manu
drink hale he-ordered the-girl to-drink and-took from the-hand
ipsius scyphum, et osculatus est eam, et potavit: ab illo
her the-cup and kissed he-has her and drank from that
die usque in hodiernum diem, mansit consuetudo illa in
day all-the-way into today's day remained custom that in
Britannia, quod in conviviis qui potat, ad alium dicit: Wacht
Britain that at banquets who drinks to another says be
heil! qui vero post ipsum recipit potum, respondet: Drinc heil!
hale who indeed after him receives the-drink answers drink hale

Vortegirnus autem diverso genere potus inebriatus, intrante
Vortigern moreover with-various kind of-drink made-drunk entering
Satana in cor ejus, puellam amavit, eamque a patre ejus
Satan into heart his the-girl loved and-her from father her
postulavit. Intraverat inquam Satanas in cor ejus: quia cum
asked had-entered I-say Satan into heart his because though
Christianus esset, cum Pagana coire desiderabat. Hengistus
a-Christian he-was with a-Pagan to-lie he-desired Hengist
ilico, ut erat prudens, animi regis levitate comperta:
on-the-spot as he-was prudent of-mind of-the-king the-levity discovered
fratrem suum Horsum, ceterosque majores natu qui secum
brother his-own Horsa and-the-other greater by-birth who with-him
aderant, consuluit quid de regis petitione faceret. Sed
were-present consulted what about of-the-king the-petition he-should-do but
omnibus unum consilium fuit, ut puella regi daretur:
for-all one counsel was that the-girl to-the-king should-be-given
et ut pro ea ab illo provinciam Cantiæ peterent. Nec mora:
and that for her from him the-province of-Kent they-should-ask nor delay
data fuit puella Vortegirno, et provincia Cantiæ Hengisto,
given was the-girl to-Vortigern and the-province of-Kent to-Hengist
nesciente Gorangano Comite, qui in eadem regnabat. Nupsit
not-knowing Gorangonus the-Count who in the-same reigned married
itaque rex in eadem nocte Paganæ: quæ ei ultra
and-so the-king on the-same night the-Pagan-woman who to-him beyond
modum placuit. Unde in inimicitiam procerum et filiorum
measure pleased whence into enmity of-the-nobles and of-sons
suorum citissime incidit. Generaverat namque filios primitus,
his-own most-swiftly he-fell he-had-begotten for sons first
quibus erant nomina, Vortimer, Katigernus et Pascentius.
to-whom were names Vortimer Katigern and Pascentius

Episcopi Germanus et Lupus Britannos visunt: Vortimer Saxones prælio fundit

XIII · GERMANUS, LUPUS, AND VORTIMER

The bishops Germanus and Lupus restore the faith corrupted by the pagans and the Pelagian heresy. Hengist brings in his son Octa, Ebissa, and Cerdich with three hundred ships, until the Britons fear the pagans and depose Vortigern for his son Vortimer. Vortimer defeats the Saxons in four battles, Horsa and Katigern killing each other, and the Saxons sail home from Thanet, leaving their women and children.

In tempore illo venit Sanctus Germanus Altisiodorensis
in time that came Saint Germanus of-Auxerre
episcopus, et Lupus Trecensis episcopus, ut verbum Dei
bishop and Lupus of-Troyes bishop so-that the-word of-God
Britonibus prædicarent. Corrupta namque fuerat Christianitas
to-the-Britons they-might-preach corrupted for had-been Christianity
eorum, tum propter Paganos quos rex in societatem
their both on-account-of the-Pagans whom the-king into fellowship
eorum posuerat, tum propter Pelagianam hæresim, cujus
their had-placed and on-account-of the-Pelagian heresy whose
venenum ipsos multis diebus affecerat. Beatorum igitur
poison them for-many days had-afflicted of-the-blessed therefore
virorum prædicatione, restituta est inter eos veræ fidei
men by-the-preaching restored was among them of-the-true faith
religio, quia multis miraculis quotidie præclarebant: multa
the-religion because by-many miracles daily they-shone-forth many
per eos miracula ostendebat Deus, quæ Gildas in tractatu
through them miracles showed God which Gildas in treatise
suo luculento sermone paravit. Data autem puella regi,
his-own in-lucid speech set-forth given moreover the-girl to-the-king
ut prædictum est, dixit Hengistus ad eum: "Ego sum
as said-before it-has-been said Hengist to him I am

pater tuus, et consiliator tibi esse debeo: noli præterire
father your and counselor to-you to-be I-ought do-not pass-over
consilium meum: quia omnes inimicos tuos virtute gentis
counsel my because all enemies your by-the-valor of-people
meæ superabis. Invitemus adhuc filium meum Octam cum
my you-will-overcome let-us-invite further son my Octa with
fratre suo Ebissa: Bellatores enim viri sunt. Da eis
brother his-own Ebissa warriors for men they-are give to-them
regiones, quæ sunt in Aquilonaribus partibus Britanniæ juxta
the-regions which are in the-northern parts of-Britain beside
murum, inter Deiram et Scotiam. Detinebunt namque
the-wall between Deira and Scotland they-will-hold-back for
ibidem Barbarorum impetum: ita quod in pace citra
there of-the-barbarians the-attack so that in peace on-this-side-of
Humbrum remanebis." Paruit Vortegirnus, præcepitque eis
the-Humber you-will-remain obeyed Vortigern and-ordered them
invitare quoscunque scirent in auxilium sibi valere. Missis
to-invite whomever they-knew in help to-him to-avail sent
illico legatis: venerunt Octa et Ebissa et Cerdich cum
on-the-spot envoys came Octa and Ebissa and Cerdich with
trecentis navibus armata manu repletis, quos omnes benigne
three-hundred ships with-armed band filled whom all kindly
suscepit Vortegirnus: maximisque muneribus donavit. Vincebat
received Vortigern and-with-greatest gifts presented he-conquered
namque inimicos suos per eos, et in omni prælio
for enemies his-own through them and in every battle
victor existebat. Hengistus etiam paulatim naves invitabat,
victor he-was Hengist also little-by-little ships invited
et quotidie numerum suum augebat. Quod cum vidissent
and daily number his-own increased which when had-seen
Britones, proditionem eorum timentes, regi dixerunt, ut
the-Britons treachery their fearing to-the-king they-said that

ipsos e finibus regni sui expelleret. Non enim
them from the-borders of-kingdom his-own he-should-drive-out not for
debebant Pagani Christianis communicare, nec intromitti,
ought the-Pagans with-Christians to-share nor to-be-let-in
quia Christiana lex prohibebat. Insuper tanta multitudo
because the-Christian law forbade moreover so-great a-multitude
advenerat, ita ut civibus terrori essent. Jam nesciebatur
had-come so that to-the-citizens for-terror they-were already it-was-not-known
quis Paganus esset, quis Christianus: quia Pagani filias
who Pagan was who Christian because the-Pagans the-daughters
et consanguineas eorum sibi associaverant. Talia
and kinswomen their to-themselves had-joined such-things
objicientes, dissuadebant regi illos retinere, ne in proditione
putting-forward they-dissuaded to-the-king them to-keep lest in treachery
aliqua cives supergrederentur. At Vortegirnus diffugiebat
some the-citizens they-might-overcome but Vortigern shunned
consilio eorum acquiescere: quia super omnes gentes propter
to-counsel their to-assent because above all peoples on-account-of
conjugem suam ipsos diligebat. Quod cum vidissent Britones,
wife his-own them he-loved which when had-seen the-Britons
deseruerunt ilico Vortegirnum, et unanimiter Vortimerium
they-deserted on-the-spot Vortigern and with-one-mind Vortimer
filium ejus in regem erexerunt: qui eis acquiescens, per
son his into king raised who to-them assenting in
omnia incepit expellere Barbaros, atque oppugnare, et diris
all-things began to-drive-out the-barbarians and to-assault and with-dire
irruptionibus afficere. Quatuor bella gessit cum eis: et in
inroads to-afflict four wars he-waged with them and in
omnibus superavit. Primum super fluvium Derwent. Secundum
all overcame the-first upon the-river Derwent the-second
super vadum Episford: ubi convenerunt Horsus et Catigernus
upon the-ford Episford where came-together Horsa and Katigern

alter filius Vortegirni. Congressuque facto ceciderunt ambo,
the-other son of-Vortigern and-an-engagement made fell both
alter alterum letaliter aggressi. Tertium bellum super littus
one the-other mortally having-attacked the-third war upon the-shore
maris: quo naves muliebriter ingressi, diffugerunt hostes:
of-the-sea where the-ships in-womanly-fashion having-entered fled the-enemies
et insulam Thanet pro refugio adiverunt. At Vortimerius
and the-island Thanet for refuge went-to but Vortimer
illos ibidem obsedit, et navali prælio quotidie infestabat.
them there besieged and with-naval battle daily harassed
Cumque Britonum impetum diutius tolerare nequirent,
and-when of-the-Britons the-attack longer to-bear they-could-not
miserunt Vortegirnum regem, qui in omnibus bellis cum
they-sent Vortigern the-king who in all wars with
ipsis aderat, ad filium suum Vortimerium, petentes licentiam
them was-present to son his-own Vortimer asking leave
abscedendi, petendique Germaniam cum salute. Cumque inde
of-departing and-of-seeking Germany with safety and-when thence
colloquium haberent, interim ingressi sunt Celoces suas,
a-parley they-were-having meanwhile entered they-have keels their-own
relictisque mulieribus et filiis, in Germaniam redierunt.
and-left the-women and children into Germany returned

Vortimerius morbo moritur

XIV · VORTIMER DIES OF SICKNESS

Vortimer restores the Britons' possessions and renews the churches, but the devil moves his stepmother Rowena to have him poisoned. Dying, he gives his treasure to his knights and urges them to defend the country. He asks for a bronze pyramid at the Saxons' landing place with his body buried on top of it to frighten them away, but the Britons bury him at Trinovantum.

Victoria deinde potitus Vortimerius, cœpit reddere
of-the-victory then having-gained Vortimer began to-return
possessiones ereptas civibus, ipsosque diligere ac honorare,
the-possessions snatched to-the-citizens and-them to-love and to-honor
et ecclesias jubente sancto Germano renovare. Sed bonitati
and the-churches ordering holy Germanus to-renew but to-the-goodness
ejus invidit ilico diabolus: qui in corde Rowenæ novercæ
his envied on-the-spot the-devil who into the-heart of-Rowena stepmother
suæ ingressus, eam incitavit, ut neci ipsius immineret:
his-own having-entered her roused that on-the-death his she-should-press
quæ ascitis universis veneficiis, dedit illi per quendam
who summoned all poisons gave to-him through a-certain
familiarem suum venenum potare, quem innumerabilibus
intimate her-own poison to-drink whom with-innumerable
donariis corruperat. Quod cum hausisset inclytus bellator ille,
gifts she-had-corrupted which when had-drunk renowned warrior that
subita infirmitate gravatus est: ita ut nullam spem vivendi
with-sudden sickness weighed-down he-was so that no hope of-living
haberet. Nec mora, jussit omnes milites suos venire ad se,
he-had nor delay he-ordered all knights his-own to-come to himself
et indicata morte quæ superveniebat, distribuit eis aurum
and shown the-death which was-coming-on he-distributed to-them the-gold

atque argentum suum, et quicquid atavi congesserant:
and silver his-own and whatever the-forefathers had-heaped-up
flentes quoque et ejulantes consolabatur, docens viam
the-weeping also and wailing he-consoled teaching the-way
universæ carnis esse quam iturus erat. Audaces autem et
of-all flesh to-be which about-to-go he-was the-bold moreover and
bellicosos juvenes, qui ei in debellationibus suis adstare
warlike youths who to-him in warrings his-own to-stand-by
solebant, hortabatur, ut pro patria pugnantes, eam ab
were-accustomed he-urged that for the-country fighting it from
hostili irruptione tueri niterentur. Audacia autem maxima
hostile inroad to-guard they-should-strive boldness moreover greatest
docente, jussit sibi pyramidem fieri æream, locarique
teaching he-ordered for-himself a-pyramid to-be-made of-bronze and-to-be-placed
in portu quo Saxones applicare solebant. Corpus vero suum
in the-port where the-Saxons to-land were-accustomed body indeed his-own
postquam defunctum foret, sepeliri jussit desuper, ut
after dead it-should-be to-be-buried he-ordered on-top so-that
viso busto Barbari retortis velis in Germaniam redirent.
seen the-tomb the-barbarians turned-back sails into Germany should-return
Dicebat enim, neminem illorum audere propius accedere,
he-said for no-one of-them to-dare nearer to-approach
si etiam bustum ipsius aspicerent. O maximam viri
if even the-tomb his they-saw O greatest of-the-man
audaciam, qui eis quibus vivus terrori fuerat, post obitum
boldness who for-them to-whom alive for-terror he-had-been after death
etiam ut timeretur optabat. Sed illo defuncto, aliud egerunt
even that he-be-feared wished but him having-died otherwise did
Britones, quia in urbe Trinovanti corpus ejus sepelierunt.
the-Britons because in the-city of-Trinovantum the-body his they-buried

Hengistus, qui fuerat fugatus, in Britanniam redit: principes regni fraude perimit, Vortegirnum captum in custodia servat

XV · THE TREACHERY OF THE LONG KNIVES

Restored to the throne, Vortigern recalls Hengist at Rowena's urging, but Hengist comes with three hundred thousand men. Told the Britons mean to fight, he asks for a day and place to settle terms, and Vortigern summons both peoples near the monastery of Ambrius on the Kalends of May. Hengist's men hide long knives in their boots; at his signal he seizes Vortigern by the cloak, and they slaughter about 460 unarmed barons and consuls, whom Eldadus later buries near Salisbury.

Post obitum vero filii, restitutus est Vortegirnus in regnum,
after the-death indeed of-the-son restored was Vortigern into the-kingdom
qui precibus conjugis suæ commotus, misit nuncios suos
who by-the-prayers of-wife his-own moved sent messengers his-own
ad Hengistum in Germaniam, mandavitque ipsi ut iterum in
to Hengist into Germany and-commanded him that again into
Britanniam rediret: attamen privatim et cum paucis: quia
Britain he-should-return yet privately and with few because
timebat ne si aliter supervenisset, discordia inter Barbaros
he-feared lest if otherwise he-had-come-upon discord between the-barbarians
et cives oriretur. Hengistus ergo, audito obitu Vortimerii,
and the-citizens might-arise Hengist therefore heard the-death of-Vortimer
trecenta millia armatorum sibi associavit: paratoque navigio
three-hundred thousand of-armed-men to-himself joined and-prepared a-fleet
in Britanniam reversus est. Sed cum tantæ multitudinis
into Britain returned he-has but when of-so-great a-multitude
adventus Vortegirno et regni principibus nunciatus esset,
the-arrival to-Vortigern and of-the-kingdom to-the-princes announced had-been
valde indignati sunt: initoque consilio constituerunt cum
greatly indignant they-were and-entered counsel they-decided with

eis præliari, atque ipsos ex littoribus expellere. Quod cum
them to-fight and them from the-shores to-drive-out which when
filia sua Hengisto per internuncios indicasset, confestim
daughter his-own to-Hengist through go-betweens had-shown forthwith
cogitavit quid potius contra id agendum esset. Diversis
he-considered what rather against this to-be-done should-be various
igitur machinationibus peragratis, unum ex omnibus elegit,
therefore contrivances gone-through one of all he-chose
ut gentem regni sub specie pacis adoriretur prodere.
that the-people of-the-kingdom under the-guise of-peace he-might-attempt to-betray
Misit itaque legatos suos ad regem: jussitque nunciare,
he-sent and-so envoys his-own to the-king and-ordered to-announce
quod non conduxerat tantam multitudinem virorum, ut
that not he-had-brought so-great a-multitude of-men so-that
vel secum in regno remanerent, vel violentiam aliquam
either with-him in the-kingdom they-should-remain or violence some
cum eis patriæ ingereret. Erat namque causa cur eam
with them on-the-country he-might-inflict there-was for a-cause why it
conduxisset: quia existimabat Vortimerium adhuc vivere: qui
he-had-brought because he-thought Vortimer still to-live who
per eos affectabat resistere, si illum expugnare incepisset.
through them he-desired to-resist if him to-storm he-had-begun
Quoniam autem non hæsitabat ipsum defunctum esse,
since moreover not he-doubted him dead to-be
committebat sese et populum suum dispositioni Vortegirni:
he-committed himself and the-people his-own to-the-disposition of-Vortigern
ut quot optaret ex tanto numero in regno suo
so-that as-many-as he-should-wish from so-great a-number in kingdom his-own
retinuisset: et quos refutandos censeret, concedebat ut
he-might-keep and those-whom to-be-refused he-should-judge he-granted that
in Germaniam sine dilatione redirent. Etsi id Vortegirno
into Germany without delay they-should-return and-if this to-Vortigern

placuisset: tunc petebat ipse, ut diem et locum nominaret
pleased then he-asked he-himself that a-day and place should-name
Vortegirnus, quo pariter convenirent, et omnia ex
Vortigern where together they-might-come-together and all-things according-to
voluntate sua disponerent? Talia namque ut regi
will his-own might-arrange such-things for when to-the-king
nunciata fuerunt, ei vehementer placuerunt: quia invitus
announced were to-him vehemently pleased because unwilling
sineret Hengistum abire. Postremo jussit et cives
he-would-allow Hengist to-go-away finally he-ordered both the-citizens
et Saxones Maiis kalendis, quæ jam instare incipiebant,
and the-Saxons on-the-May Kalends which already to-press were-beginning
juxta Ambrii cœnobium convenire, ut ibidem prædicta
beside of-Ambrius the-monastery to-come-together so-that there the-aforesaid-things
statuerentur. Quod cum in utraque parte statutum esset:
might-be-settled which when on each side settled had-been
Hengistus nova proditione usus, commilitonibus suis
Hengist new treachery having-used to-comrades his-own
præcepit, ut unusquisque longum cultrum intra caligas
ordered that each-one a-long knife within the-boots
absconditum haberent. Et cum colloquium securius tractarent
hidden should-have and when the-parley more-securely were-handling
Britones: ipse eis hoc daret signum, Nemet oure saxas:
the-Britons he-himself to-them this would-give signal take your knives
unde quisque paratus astantem Britonem audacter occuparet,
whence each-one ready the-standing-by Briton boldly should-seize
atque abstractis cultris ocyus ipsum jugularet. Nec mora,
and drawn knives more-swiftly him should-slaughter nor delay
statuta die instante convenerunt omnes intra nominatam
the-appointed day pressing came-together all within the-named
urbem, et de pace habenda colloquium inceperunt. Ut
city and about peace to-be-had a-parley began when

igitur horam proditioni suæ idoneam inspexisset Hengistus,
therefore the-hour for-treachery his-own suitable he-had-seen Hengist
vociferatus est, Nemet oure saxas: et ilico Vortegirnum
cried-out has take your knives and on-the-spot Vortigern
accepit, et per pallium detinuit. Audito ocyus signo,
he-took and by the-cloak held heard more-swiftly the-signal
abstraxerunt Saxones cultros suos, et astantes principes
drew the-Saxons knives their-own and the-standing-by princes
invaserunt, ipsosque nihil tale præmeditantes jugulaverunt
attacked and-them nothing such foreseeing slaughtered
circiter quadringentos sexaginta, inter barones et consules,
about four-hundred sixty among barons and consuls
(quorum corpora beatus Eldadus postmodum sepelivit, atque
whose bodies blessed Eldadus afterward buried and
Christiano more humavit, haud longe a Kaercaradane,
in-Christian manner interred not far from Kaercaradane
quæ nunc Salesberia dicitur, in cemeterio quod est juxta
which now Salisbury is-called in the-cemetery which is beside
cœnobium Ambrii abbatis, qui olim fundator ipsius extiterat).
the-monastery of-Ambrius the-abbot who once the-founder of-it had-been
Omnes enim sine armis advenerant, nec aliud nisi de
all for without arms had-come nor other-thing except about
pace tractanda existimabant. Unde ceteri qui propter
peace to-be-handled they-thought whence the-others who on-account-of
proditionem accesserant, levius ipsos inermes interficere
the-treachery had-come more-easily them unarmed to-kill
potuerunt. Non impune tamen hæc egerunt Pagani: qui
could not unpunished yet these-things did the-Pagans who
multi eorum perempti fuerunt: dum neci ceterorum
many of-them destroyed were while to-the-death of-the-others

imminerent. Eripiebant enim Britones ex tellure lapides et
they-pressed snatched for the-Britons from the-ground stones and
fustes, atque sese defendere volentes, proditores illidebant.
clubs and themselves to-defend wishing the-traitors they-struck

Hengistus pro vita Vortegirni civitates et munitiones regni paciscitur

XVI · VORTIGERN RANSOMED

Eldol, consul of Gloucester, seizes a stake, kills seventy men, and escapes to his city. The Saxons spare Vortigern in exchange for his cities and strongholds, then take London, York, Lincoln, and Winchester and ravage the land like wolves among unguarded sheep. Vortigern flees to Cambria.

Aderat ibi consul Claudiocestriæ nomine Eldol, qui visa
was-present there the-consul of-Gloucester by-name Eldol who seen
proditione, sustulit palum quem forte invenerat, et
the-treachery took-up a-stake which by-chance he-had-found and
defensioni vacavit. Quemcunque attingebat, confringens
to-defense devoted-himself whomever he-reached breaking
ei membrum quod percutiebat, dirigebat confestim ad
for-him the-limb which he-struck he-directed forthwith to
tartara: alii caput, alii brachia, alii scapulas,
Tartarus for-one the-head for-another the-arms for-another the-shoulders
compluribus etiam crura elidens, terrorem non minimum
for-very-many also the-legs dashing terror not least
inferebat: nec prius ex loco illo abscessit quam septuaginta
he-brought nor before from place that departed than seventy
viros consumpto palo interfecisset. Sed tantæ multitudini
men consumed the-stake he-had-killed but to-so-great a-multitude
cum resistere nequiret, divertit sese ab illis, atque civitatem
since to-resist he-could-not he-turned himself from them and city

suam petivit. Multi hinc et inde ceciderunt: sed victoriam
his-own sought many on-this-side and on-that fell but the-victory
habuerunt Saxones. Britones namque nihil tale præmeditati,
had the-Saxons the-Britons for nothing such having-foreseen
inermes advenerant: unde minus resistere potuerunt. Ut
unarmed had-come whence less to-resist they-could when
ergo nefandum inceptum peregerunt Saxones, noluerunt
therefore the-abominable undertaking had-completed the-Saxons were-unwilling
Vortegirnum interficere, sed mortem comminantes eum
Vortigern to-kill but death threatening him
ligaverunt, petieruntque civitates ejus atque munitiones pro vita.
they-bound and-sought the-cities his and fortifications for life
Quibus illico quicquid affectaverant, concessit, ut vivus
to-whom on-the-spot whatever they-had-desired he-granted so-that alive
abscedere sineretur. Cumque id jurejurando confirmatum
to-depart he-might-be-allowed and-when this by-oath confirmed
fuisset, solverunt eum a vinculis, atque urbem Londoniæ
had-been they-loosed him from the-chains and the-city of-London
primitus adeuntes ceperunt. Ceperunt deinde Eboracum et
first going-to they-took they-took then York and
Lindocolinum, necnon et Guintoniam, quascunque provincias
Lincoln nor-not also Winchester all provinces
devastantes. Invadebant undique cives, quemadmodum
laying-waste they-attacked from-everywhere the-citizens just-as
lupi oves, quas pastores deseruerunt. Cum ergo tantam
wolves sheep which the-shepherds have-deserted when therefore so-great
cladem inspexisset Vortegirnus, secessit in partes Cambriæ:
disaster had-seen Vortigern withdrew into the-parts of-Cambria
inscius quid contra nefandam gentem ageret.
unknowing what against the-abominable people he-should-do

Vortegirnus, magorum monitu juvenem quærit, cui nullus fuisset pater

XVII · THE YOUTH WITH NO FATHER

Vortigern's Magi tell him to build a strong tower, but on Mount Erir the earth swallows each day's work. The Magi say the mortar must be sprinkled with the blood of a youth without a father. At Kaermodin the envoys hear the boy Dabutius taunt Merlin that he has no father, and the bystanders tell them that Merlin's mother is a daughter of the king of Demetia, living among the nuns of Saint Peter's.

Vocatis denique Magis suis, consuluit illos, jussitque dicere
called finally the-Magi his-own he-consulted them and-ordered to-say
quid faceret. Qui direxerunt ut ædificaret sibi turrim
what he-should-do who directed that he-should-build for-himself a-tower
fortissimam, quæ sibi tutamen foret, cum ceteras amisisset
most-strong which for-him a-safety might-be since the-other he-had-lost
munitiones. Peragratis ergo quibuscunque locis, ut eam
fortifications traveled-through therefore all places so-that it
in congruo loco statueret, venit tandem ad Erir montem:
in a-fitting place he-might-set he-came at-last to Erir mountain
ubi coadunatis ex diversis patriis cæmentariis turrim jussit
where gathered from various countries masons a-tower he-ordered
construere. Convenientes itaque lapidarii, eam fundare
to-build coming-together and-so the-stonecutters it to-found
cœperunt: sed quicquid una die operabantur, absorbebat
began but whatever on-one day they-worked swallowed
tellus in altera, ita ut nescirent quorsum opus suum
the-earth on the-next so that they-did-not-know whither work their-own
evanesceret. Cumque id Vortegirno nunciatum fuisset, iterum
vanished and-when this to-Vortigern announced had-been again
magos suos consuluit, ut causam rei indicarent. Qui
magi his-own he-consulted that the-cause of-the-matter they-might-show who

dixerunt, ut juvenem quæreret sine patre, quæsitumque
said that a-youth he-should-seek without father and-the-sought
interficeret: ut sanguine ipsius cæmentum et lapides
should-kill so-that with-the-blood his the-mortar and stones
aspergerentur. Id enim prodesse asserebant, ut turris
might-be-sprinkled this for to-profit they-asserted that of-the-tower
fundamentum constaret. Nec mora, mittuntur legati per
the-foundation might-stand nor delay are-sent envoys through
universas provincias, ut talem invenirent hominem. At cum
all provinces that such they-might-find a-man but when
in urbem, quæ postea Kaermodin vocata fuit, venissent:
into the-city which afterward Kaermodin called was they-had-come
conspexerunt juvenes ante portam ludentes, et ad ludum
they-saw youths before the-gate playing and to the-game
accesserunt. Fatigati autem itinere, sederunt in circo
approached wearied moreover by-the-journey they-sat in the-circle
exploraturi quod quærebant. Denique cum multum diei
about-to-search-out what they-were-seeking finally when much of-the-day
præterisset, subita lis orta est inter duos juvenes, quorum
had-passed a-sudden quarrel arisen has between two youths whose
erant nomina Merlinus atque Dabutius. Certantibus ergo ipsis,
were names Merlin and Dabutius quarreling therefore them
dixit Dabutius ad Merlinum: “Quid mecum contendis fatue?
said Dabutius to Merlin why with-me do-you-contend O-fool
nunquam nobis eadem erat nobilitas. Ego enim ex regum
never to-us the-same was nobility I for from of-kings
origine editus sum, ex utraque parte meæ generationis: de
the-origin born am from each side of-my generation about
te autem nescitur quis sis, cum patrem non habeas.” Ad
you moreover it-is-not-known who you-are since a-father not you-have at
verbum istud vultus suos erexerunt legati, atque intuentes
word that faces their-own raised the-envoys and gazing

in Merlinum, interrogaverunt circumstantes quis esset? Quibus
at Merlin asked the-bystanders who he-was to-whom
illi dixerunt, quod nesciebatur quis pater eum progenuerat:
they said that it-was-not-known who father him had-begotten
mater vero fuerat filia regis Demetiæ, quæ in
the-mother but had-been the-daughter of-the-king of-Demetia who in
ecclesia sancti Petri in eadem urbe inter monachas degebat.
the-church of-saint Peter in the-same city among the-nuns lived

Vortegirnus a matre Merlini quærit, quomodo eum sine viro concepisset

XVIII · MERLIN'S MOTHER

Merlin and his mother are brought to Vortigern. She swears she has known no man, but a figure like a handsome youth embraced and spoke to her, vanished, and at last lay with her and left her with child. Maugantius explains from Apuleius that incubus demons, part men and part angels, dwell between the moon and earth and can beget children on women.

Festinantes itaque nuncii, venerunt ad præfectum urbis,
hurrying and-so the-messengers came to the-prefect of-the-city
præceperuntque ei ex parte regis, ut Merlinus cum matre
and-ordered him from the-side of-the-king that Merlin with mother
sua ad regem mitteretur. Præfectus ilico cum causam
his-own to the-king should-be-sent the-prefect on-the-spot when the-cause
legationis eorum cognovisset, Merlinum et matrem ejus ad
of-the-embassy their he-had-learned Merlin and mother his to
Vortegirnum misit, ut de eis libitum suum perficeret.
Vortigern sent so-that about them pleasure his-own he-might-perform
Et cum in ipsius præsentiam adducti fuissent: excepit rex
and when into his presence led they-had-been received the-king

diligenter matrem, quia eam nobilibus sciebat natalibus ortam:
carefully the-mother because her from-noble he-knew birth sprung
deinde inquirere cœpit ab illa, ex quo viro conceperat. Cui
then to-inquire he-began from her from what man she-had-conceived to-whom
illa dixit: "Vivit anima mea et anima tua, domine mi rex: quia
she said lives soul my and soul your O-lord my king that
neminem agnovi qui illum in me generaverit. Unum autem
no-one I-have-known who him in me has-begotten one-thing moreover
scio, quod cum essem inter socias meas in thalamis nostris,
I-know that when I-was among companions my in chambers our
apparebat mihi quidam in specie pulcherrimi juvenis, et
appeared to-me a-certain-one in the-form of-a-most-handsome youth and
sæpissime, amplectens me strictis brachiis, deosculabatur: et
most-often embracing me tight arms kissed and
cum aliquantulum mecum moram fecisset, subito evanescebat,
when for-a-little-while with-me a-stay he-had-made suddenly he-vanished
ita ut nihil ex eo viderem: multotiens quoque me
so that nothing of him I-saw many-times also me
alloquebatur dum secreto sederem, nec usquam comparebat:
he-addressed while in-secret I-sat nor anywhere appeared
cumque diu me in hunc modum frequentasset, coivit mecum
and-when long me in this manner he-had-frequented he-lay with-me
in specie hominis sæpius, atque gravidam dereliquit. Sciat
in the-form of-a-man more-often and pregnant left may-know
prudentia tua, domine mi, quod aliter virum non cognovi
prudence your O-lord my that otherwise a-man not I-have-known
qui juvenem istum generavit." Admirans itaque rex, jussit
who youth this begot wondering and-so the-king ordered
Maugantium ad se vocari, ut sibi manifestaret, si
Maugantius to himself to-be-called so-that to-him he-might-make-plain whether
id quod mulier dixerat fieri potuisset." Adductus autem
that which the-woman had-said to-be-done could led moreover

Maugantius, auditis omnibus ex ordine, dixit ad Vortegirnum:
Maugantius heard all-things in order said to Vortigern
"In libris philosophorum nostrorum, et in plurimis historiis
in the-books of-philosophers our and in very-many histories
reperi, multos homines hujusmodi procreationem habuisse.
I-have-found many men of-this-kind procreation to-have-had
Nam ut Apuleius de deo Socratis perhibet, inter lunam et
for as Apuleius about the-god of-Socrates records between the-moon and
terram habitant spiritus, quos incubos dæmones appellamus:
the-earth dwell spirits whom incubus demons we-call
hi partim hominum, partim vero Angelorum naturam
these partly of-men partly indeed of-Angels the-nature
habent: et cum volunt, assumunt sibi humanas figuras,
have and when they-wish they-take to-themselves human shapes
et cum mulieribus coeunt. Forsitan unus ex eis huic
and with women lie perhaps one of them to-this
mulieri apparuit, et juvenem istum in ipsa generavit."
woman appeared and youth this in her begot

Merlinus regem de turri edificanda monet

XIX · MERLIN ADVISES THE KING ON THE TOWER

Merlin challenges the Magi to say what lies under the foundation, and when they are silent, he tells the king to dig. A pool is found beneath the tower, and Merlin says that two hollow stones lie at its bottom, with two dragons sleeping in them. Vortigern has the pool drained, and all marvel at Merlin's wisdom.

Cumque omnia auscultasset Merlinus, accessit ad regem, et
and-when all-things had-listened-to Merlin approached to the-king and
ait: "Ut quid ego et mater mea in præsentiam tuam
says to what-end I and mother my into the-presence your

adducti sumus?" Cui Vortegirnus: "Magi mei mihi consilium
led have-been to-whom Vortigern the-Magi my to-me counsel
dederunt, ut hominem sine patre perquirerem: ut opus
gave that a-man without father I-should-seek so-that work
meum ipsius sanguine irrigatum staret." Tunc ait Merlinus:
my his with-blood watered might-stand then says Merlin
"Jube tuos Magos venire coram me, et convincam illos
order your Magi to-come before me and I-shall-convict them
mendacium adinvenisse. Admirans autem rex super verbis
a-lie to-have-devised wondering moreover the-king at the-words
illius, continuo jussit Magos venire, et coram Merlino sedere."
his at-once ordered the-Magi to-come and before Merlin to-sit
Quibus ait Merlinus: "Nescitis quid fundamentum incœptæ
to-whom says Merlin you-do-not-know what the-foundation of-the-begun
turris impediat. Laudastis ut sanguis meus diffunderetur
tower binders you-commended that blood my should-be-poured-out
in cæmentum, quasi illico opus constaret. Sed dicite
into the-mortar as-if on-the-spot the-work would-stand but tell
mihi, quid sub fundamento latet? Nam aliquid sub ipso est,
me what under the-foundation lies-hid for something under it is
quod ipsum stare non permittit." Expavescentes autem Magi,
which it to-stand not permits terrified moreover the-Magi
conticuerunt. Tunc ait Merlinus, qui et Ambrosius dicebatur:
fell-silent then says Merlin who also Ambrosius was-called
"Domine mi rex, voca operarios tuos, et jube fodere terram,
O-lord my king call workmen your and order to-dig the-earth
et invenies stagnum sub ea quod turrim stare non
and you-will-find a-pool under it which the-tower to-stand not
permittit." Quod cum factum fuisset, repertum est ilico
permits which when done had-been found was on-the-spot
stagnum sub terra, quod eam instabilem fecerat. Accessit
a-pool under the-earth which it unstable had-made approached

iterum Ambrosius Merlinus ad Magos, et ait: "Dicite mihi
again Ambrosius Merlin to the-Magi and says tell me
mendaces adulatores, quid sub stagno est?" Nec unum verbum
O-lying flatterers what under the-pool is nor one word
respondentes obmutuerunt. Et iterum dixit regi: "Præcipe,
answering they-became-dumb and again he-said to-the-king order
rex, hauriri stagnum per rivulos, et in fundo videbis
O-king to-be-drained the-pool through rivulets and at the-bottom you-will-see
duos concavos lapides, et in illis duos dracones dormientes."
two hollow stones and in them two dragons sleeping
Credidit rex verbis ejus: quia verum dixerat de stagno, et
believed the-king the-words his because truth he-had-said about the-pool and
illud hauriri jussit. Et cum ita invenisset, Merlinum super
it to-be-drained ordered and when so he-had-found Merlin above
omnia admirabatur. Admirabantur etiam cuncti qui astabant
all-things he-wondered-at wondered also all who stood-by
tantam in eo sapientiam, existimantes numen esse in illo.
so-great in him wisdom thinking a-deity to-be in him

BOOK VII

Præfatio auctoris

I · THE AUTHOR'S PREFACE

Before Geoffrey has reached this point in the history, rumor about Merlin spreads, and his contemporaries press him to publish the prophecies. Alexander, bishop of Lincoln, a man of the highest piety and generosity, presses him most. To satisfy him, Geoffrey translates the prophecies and sends them with a letter.

Nondum autem ad hunc locum historiæ perveneram, cum
not-yet moreover to this place of-the-history I-had-come when
de Merlino divulgato rumore, compellebant me undique
about Merlin spread-abroad the-rumor compelled me from-everywhere
contemporanei mei, ipsius prophetias edere: maxime autem
the-contemporaries my of-him the-prophecies to-publish most moreover
Alexander Linconiensis Episcopus, vir summæ religionis
Alexander of-Lincoln Bishop a-man of-highest religion
et prudentiæ. Non erat alter in clero sive in
and prudence not there-was another among the-clergy or among
populo cui tot milites vel nobiles famularentur: quos
the-people to-whom so-many knights or nobles might-serve whom
mansueta pietas ipsius, et benigna largitas in obsequium
the-gentle dutifulness his and kind largess into service
ejus alliciebat: cui cum satisfacere præelegissem, prophetias
his enticed to-whom when to-satisfy I-had-preferred the-prophecies
transtuli, et eidem cum hujusmodi literis direxi.
I-translated and to-the-same with such letters directed

Ad Alexandrum

II · TO ALEXANDER

Geoffrey tells Alexander that love for him compels him to translate Merlin's prophecies from British into Latin before finishing the history he had begun. He marvels that the bishop entrusts the task to so poor a style when so many more learned men serve him. He asks Alexander, who would sing better than all the philosophers of Britain if not called to other business, to correct whatever he has set down amiss.

Cogit me, Alexander Linconiensis præsul, nobilitatis tuæ
compels me O-Alexander of-Lincoln prelate of-nobility your
dilectio Prophetias Merlini de Britannico in Latinum
the-love the-Prophecies of-Merlin from British into Latin
transferre, antequam historiam perarassem, quam de
to-translate before the-history I-had-finished-writing which about
gestis regum Britannorum inceperam: proposueram enim
the-deeds of-the-kings of-the-Britons I-had-begun I-had-proposed for
illam prius perficere et istud opus subsequenter explicare:
it first to-complete and this work afterward to-unfold
ne dum uterque labor ingrueret, sensus meus ad singula
lest while both labor should-press the-sense my to the-single-things
minus sufficeret. Attamen quoniam securus eram veniæ,
less might-suffice yet since secure I-was of-the-pardon
quam discretio subtilis ingenii tui donaret: agrestem calamum
which the-discretion of-subtle wit your would-grant rustic pen
meum libellis apposui, et plebeio modulamine ignotum
my to-the-little-books I-applied and with-plebeian melody unknown
tibi interpretatus sum sermonem. Admiror autem admodum,
to-you interpreted I-have the-speech I-wonder moreover greatly
quod id pauperi stylo dignatus es committere, cum tot
that this to-a-poor style deigned you-have to-commit since so-many

doctiores et tot ditiores virga potestatis tuæ coerceat: qui
more-learned and so-many richer the-rod of-power your restrains who
sublimioris carminis delectamento aures Minervæ tuæ mulcerent.
of-loftier song with-the-delight the-ears of-Minerva your might-soothe
Et ut omnes philosophos totius Britanniæ insulæ præteream,
and that all the-philosophers of-the-whole of-Britain island I-may-pass-over
tu solus es, quod non erubesco fateri, qui præ ceteris audaci
you alone are which not I-blush to-confess who before the-others with-bold
lyra caneres: nisi te culmen honoris ad alia negocia vocaret.
lyre would-sing unless you the-height of-honor to other businesses called
Quoniam ergo placuit ut Galfridus Monumetensis fistulam
since therefore it-has-pleased that Geoffrey of-Monmouth pipe
suam in hoc vaticinio sonaret, modulationibus ejus favere non
his-own in this prophecy should-sound to-the-measures his to-favor not
diffugias: et si quid inordinate sive vitiose protulerit,
may-you-shun and if anything disorderly or faultily he-will-have-uttered
ferula camœnarum tuarum in rectum convertas concentum.
with-the-rod of-the-Muses your into right may-you-turn harmony

Merlini prophetia

III · THE PROPHECY OF MERLIN

From the drained pool a white and a red dragon emerge and fight, and Merlin, weeping, prophesies. The red dragon is the people of Britain, the white the Saxons whom Vortigern invited, and the Britons will be oppressed until the Boar of Cornwall brings succor and tramples the foreigners' necks. A long sequence of beasts, kings, and portents follows: the white dragon's rise and fall, the Lion of Justice, the primacy of sees transferred, and famine, plague, and wonders of rivers and springs.

Sedente itaque Vortegirno Britonum rege super ripam
sitting and-so Vortigern of-the-Britons king upon the-bank
exhausti stagni, egressi sunt duo dracones, quorum unus
of-the-drained pool gone-out have two dragons of-whom one
erat albus, et alter rubeus. Cumque alter alteri
was white and the-other red and-when one to-the-other
appropinquasset, diram commiserunt pugnam, et ignem
had-drawn-near dire they-joined fight and fire
anhelitu suo procreabat. Prævalebat autem albus draco,
with-breath its-own it-produced prevailed moreover the-white dragon
rubeumque usque ad extremitatem lacus fugabat. At
and-the-red all-the-way to the-end of-the-lake drove but
ille cum se expulsum doluisset, impetum fecit in album,
it when itself driven-out it-had-grieved an-attack made upon the-white
ipsumque retro ire coëgit. Ipsis ergo in hunc modum
and-it back to-go forced them therefore in this manner
pugnantibus, præcepit rex Ambrosio Merlino dicere, quid
fighting ordered the-king to-Ambrosius Merlin to-say what
draconum prælium portendebat. Mox ille in fletum erumpens,
of-the-dragons the-battle portended soon he into weeping bursting
spiritum hausit prophetiæ, et ait: Væ rubeo draconi, nam
the-spirit drank of-prophecy and says woe to-the-red dragon for

ejus exterminatio festinat: cavernas ejus occupavit albus
its extermination hastens the-caverns its has-seized the-white
draco, qui Saxones quos invitasti significat. Rubeus vero
dragon which the-Saxons whom you-invited signifies the-red but
gentem designat Britanniæ, quæ ab albo opprimetur.
the-people designates of-Britain which by the-white will-be-oppressed
Montes itaque ejus ut valles æquabuntur, et flumina
the-mountains and-so its as the-valleys will-be-made-level and the-rivers
vallium sanguine manabunt. Cultus religionis delebitur,
of-the-valleys with-blood will-flow the-worship of-religion will-be-wiped-out
et ecclesiarum ruina patebit. Prævalebit tandem oppressa,
and of-the-churches the-ruin will-lie-open will-prevail at-last the-oppressed
et sævitiæ exterorum resistet. Aper etenim Cornubiæ
and to-the-savagery of-foreigners will-resist the-boar for of-Cornwall
succursum præstabit, et colla eorum sub pedibus suis
succor will-offer and the-necks of-them under feet its-own
conculcabit. Insulæ Oceani potestati ipsius subdentur, et
will-trample the-islands of-the-Ocean to-the-power his will-be-subjected and
Gallicanos saltus possidebit. Timebit Romulea domus ipsius
the-Gallic glades he-will-possess will-fear the-Romulean house his
sævitiam: et exitus ejus dubius erit. In ore populorum
savagery and the-end his doubtful will-be in the-mouth of-the-peoples
celebrabitur: et actus ejus cibus erit narrantibus. Sex
he-will-be-celebrated and the-deeds his food will-be to-the-tellers six
posteri ejus sequentur sceptrum: sed post ipsos exsurget
descendants his will-follow the-scepter but after them will-rise-up
Germanicus vermis. Sublimabit illum æquoreus lupus: quem
a-German worm will-raise him a-sea wolf whom
Africana nemora comitabuntur. Delebitur iterum religio,
the-African forests will-accompany will-be-wiped-out again religion
et transmutatio primarum sedium erit. Dignitas Londoniæ
and a-transmutation of-the-first sees will-be the-dignity of-London

adorabit Doroberniam: et pastor Eboracensis septimus in
will-adore Dorobernia and the-shepherd of-York seventh in
Armorico regno frequentabitur. Menevia pallio urbis
the-Armorican kingdom will-be-frequented Menevia with-the-pallium of-the-City
Legionum induetur: et prædicator Hiberniæ propter
of-the-Legions will-be-clothed and the-preacher of-Ireland on-account-of
infantem in utero crescentem obmutescet. Pluet sanguineus
an-infant in the-womb growing will-become-dumb will-rain a-bloody
imber: et dira fames mortales afficiet. His supervenientibus
shower and dire hunger mortals will-afflict these coming-upon
dolebit rubeus: sed emenso labore vigebit. Tunc
will-grieve the-red but having-passed the-labor it-will-flourish then
infortunium albi festinabit, et edificia hortulorum
the-misfortune of-the-white will-hasten and the-buildings of-the-little-gardens
ejus diruentur. Septem sceptrigeri perimentur, et unus
its will-be-pulled-down seven scepter-bearers will-be-destroyed and one
eorum sanctificabitur. Ventres matrum truncabuntur, et
of-them will-be-made-a-saint the-wombs of-mothers will-be-cut and
infantes abortivi erunt. Erit ingens supplicium hominum:
the-infants untimely will-be there-will-be a-huge punishment of-men
ut indigenæ restituantur. Qui faciet hæc, æneum virum
that the-natives may-be-restored who will-do these-things a-bronze man
induet, et per multa tempora super æneum equum
will-put-on and through many times upon a-bronze horse
Londoniæ portas servabit. Exin in proprios mores revertetur
of-London the-gates will-guard thence into its-own ways will-return
rubeus draco: et in se ipsum sævire laborabit. Superveniet
the-red dragon and on it itself to-rage will-labor will-come-upon
itaque ultio tonantis: quia omnes ager colonos
and-so the-vengeance of-the-Thunderer because all field the-farmers
decipiet. Arripiet mortalitas populum: cunctasque nationes
will-deceive will-seize mortality the-people and-all nations

evacuabit. Residui natale solum deserent, et exteras
will-empty the-remaining the-native soil will-desert and foreign
culturas seminabunt. Rex benedictus parabit navigium, et
tillages will-sow a-king blessed will-prepare a-fleet and
in aula inter beatos duodecimus annumerabitur. Erit
in the-hall among the-blessed the-twelfth will-be-counted there-will-be
miseranda regni desolatio, et areæ messium in
a-pitiable of-the-kingdom desolation and the-floors of-the-harvests into
fructuosos saltus redibunt. Exurget iterum albus draco, et
fruitful glades will-return will-rise-up again the-white dragon and
filiam Germaniæ invitabit. Replebuntur iterum hortuli
the-daughter of-Germany will-invite will-be-filled again little-gardens
nostri alieno semine, et in extremitate stagni languebit
our with-foreign seed and at the-end of-the-pool will-languish
rubeus. Exin coronabitur Germanicus vermis, et æneus
the-red thence will-be-crowned the-German worm and the-bronze
princeps humabitur. Terminus illi positus est, quem
prince will-be-buried a-limit for-him placed has-been which
transvolare nequibit. Centum namque et quinquaginta
to-fly-over it-will-be-unable a-hundred for and fifty
annis in inquietudine et subjectione manebit: trecentis
for-years in disturbance and subjection it-will-remain for-three-hundred
vero insidebit. Tunc exsurget in illum aquilo, et
indeed it-will-settle-upon then will-rise-up against it the-north-wind and
flores quos zephyrus procreavit eripiet. Erit deauratio
the-flowers which the-west-wind produced will-snatch there-will-be gilding
in templis, nec acumen gladiorum cessabit. Vix obtinebit
in the-temples nor the-edge of-swords will-cease scarcely will-hold
cavernas suas Germanicus draco: quia ultio proditionis
the-caverns its-own the-German dragon because the-vengeance of-treachery
ejus superveniet. Vigebit tandem paulisper: sed decimatio
its will-come-upon it-will-flourish at-last for-a-little but the-decimation

Neustriæ nocebit. Populus namque in ligno et ferreis
of-Neustria will-harm a-people for in wood and in-iron
tunicis superveniet, qui vindictam de nequitia ipsius
tunics will-come-upon which vengeance for the-wickedness its
sumet. Restaurabit pristinis incolis mansiones: et ruina
will-take it-will-restore to-the-former inhabitants the-dwellings and the-ruin
alienigenarum patebit. Germen albi draconis ex hortulis
of-the-foreigners will-lie-open the-seed of-the-white dragon from little-gardens
nostris abradetur, et reliquiæ generationis ejus decimabuntur.
our will-be-scraped and the-remnants of-generation its will-be-decimated
Jugum servitutis ferent: matremque suam ligonibus et
the-yoke of-servitude they-will-bear and-mother their-own with-mattocks and
aratris vulnerabunt. Succedent duo dracones, quorum alter
with-plows they-will-wound will-succeed two dragons of-whom one
invidiæ spiculo suffocabitur: alter vero sub umbra nominis
of-envy by-the-dart will-be-choked the-other but under the-shadow of-a-name
redibit. Succedet leo justitiæ, ad cujus rugitum Gallicanæ
will-return will-succeed a-lion of-justice at whose roar the-Gallic
turres et insulani dracones tremebunt. In diebus illis aurum
towers and the-island dragons will-tremble in days those gold
ex lilio et urtica extorquebitur, et argentum ex ungulis
from the-lily and the-nettle will-be-wrung and silver from the-hoofs
mugientium manabit. Calamistrati varia vellera vestient, et
of-the-lowing-ones will-flow the-curled varied fleeces will-wear and
exterior habitus interiora signabit. Pedes latrantium
the-outer garb the-inner-things will-mark the-feet of-the-barking-ones
truncabuntur. Pacem habebunt feræ: et humanitas
will-be-cut peace will-have the-wild-beasts and humanity
supplicium delebit. Findetur forma commercii: dimidium
the-punishment will-wipe-out will-be-split the-form of-commerce the-half
rotundum erit. Peribit miluorum rapacitas, et luporum
round will-be will-perish of-kites the-rapacity and of-wolves

dentes hebetabuntur. Catuli leonis in æquoreos pisces
the-teeth will-be-blunted the-whelps of-the-lion into sea fishes
transformabuntur: et aquila ejus super montem Aravium
will-be-transformed and the-eagle its upon the-mount Aravius
nidificabit. Venedocia rubebit materno sanguine, et domus
will-nest Venedotia will-redden with-maternal blood and the-house
Corinei sex fratres interficiet. Nocturnis lacrymis madebit
of-Corineus six brothers will-kill with-nightly tears will-be-wet
insula: unde omnes ad omnia provocabuntur. Væ tibi Neustria,
the-island whence all to all-things will-be-provoked woe to-you O-Neustria
quia cerebrum leonis in te effundetur: dilaceratisque
because the-brain of-the-lion upon you will-be-poured-out and-torn
membris a patrio solo eliminabitur. Nitentur posteri
the-limbs from the-native soil it-will-be-banished will-strive the-descendants
transvolare superna: sed favor novorum sublimabitur. Nocebit
to-fly-over the-heights but the-favor of-the-new will-be-raised will-harm
possidenti ex impiis pietas, donec sese genitore
the-possessor from the-impious dutifulness until himself with-the-father
induerit. Apri igitur dentibus accinctus, cacumina
he-will-have-clothed of-the-boar therefore with-the-teeth girded the-peaks
montium et umbram galeati transcendet. Indignabitur
of-the-mountains and the-shadow of-the-helmeted-one he-will-cross will-be-indignant
Albania, et convocatis collateralibus sanguinem effundere
Albany and called-together the-neighbors blood to-pour-out
vacabit. Dabitur maxillis ejus frenum quod in Armorico
will-be-busy will-be-given to-the-jaws its a-bridle which in the-Armorican
sinu fabricabitur. Deaurabit illud aquila rupti fœderis, et
bay will-be-made will-gild it the-eagle of-the-broken pact and
tertia nidificatione gaudebit. Evigilabunt rugientes catuli,
in-the-third nesting will-rejoice will-awake the-roaring whelps
et postpositis nemoribus intra mœnia civitatum venabuntur.
and set-aside the-forests within the-walls of-cities will-hunt

Stragem non minimam ex obstantibus facient, et linguas
slaughter not least of the-opposing-ones they-will-make and the-tongues
taurorum abscindent. Colla rugientium onerabunt catenis,
of-the-bulls will-cut-off the-necks of-the-roaring-ones they-will-load with-chains
et avita tempora renovabunt. Exin de primo in quartum:
and ancestral times will-renew thence from the-first into the-fourth
de quarto in tertium: de tertio in secundum rotabitur
from the-fourth into the-third from the-third into the-second will-be-rolled
pollex in oleo. Sextus Hiberniæ mœnia subvertet, et nemora
the-thumb in oil the-sixth of-Ireland the-walls will-overturn and the-forests
in planitiem mutabit: diversas portiones in unum reducet,
into a-plain will-change the-various portions into one will-lead-back
et capite leonis coronabitur. Principium ipsius vago
and with-the-head of-a-lion will-be-crowned the-beginning his to-a-wandering
affectui subjacebit: sed finis ipsius ad supernos convolabit.
desire will-lie-subject but the-end his to the-heavenly-ones will-fly
Renovabit namque beatorum sedes per patrias, et pastores
he-will-renew for of-the-blessed the-seats through the-countries and shepherds
in congruis locis locabit. Duas urbes duobus palliis induet:
in fitting places will-place two cities with-two palls he-will-clothe
et virginea munera virginibus donabit. Promerebitur inde
and virginal gifts on-virgins will-bestow he-will-merit thence
favorem tonantis, et inter beatos collocabitur. Egredietur
the-favor of-the-Thunderer and among the-blessed will-be-placed will-go-forth
ex eo lynx penetrans omnia, quæ ruinæ propriæ gentis
from him a-lynx piercing all-things which on-the-ruin of-its-own people
imminebit: per illam enim utramque insulam amittet
will-press through it for both island will-lose
Neustria: et pristina dignitate spoliabitur. Deinde revertentur
Neustria and of-former dignity will-be-despoiled then will-return
cives in insulam: nam dissidium alienigenarum orietur.
the-citizens into the-island for dissension of-the-foreigners will-arise

Niveus quoque senex in niveo sedens equo, fluvium Peironis
a-snowy also old-man on a-snowy sitting horse the-river of-Periron
divertet, et cum candida virga molendinum super ipsum
will-turn-aside and with a-white rod a-mill upon it
metabitur. Cadwalladrus vocabit Conanum, et Albaniam in
will-measure-out Cadwallader will-call Conan and Albany into
societatem accipiet. Tunc erit strages alienigenarum: tunc
alliance will-receive then there-will-be slaughter of-the-foreigners then
flumina sanguine manabunt. Tunc erumpent Armorici fontes,
the-rivers with-blood will-flow then will-burst-forth the-Armorican springs
et Bruti diademate coronabuntur. Replebitur Cambria lætitia:
and of-Brutus with-the-diadem will-be-crowned will-be-filled Cambria with-joy
et robora Cornubiæ virescent. Nomine Bruti vocabitur
and the-oaks of-Cornwall will-grow-green by-the-name of-Brutus will-be-called
insula, et nuncupatio extraneorum peribit. Ex Conano
the-island and the-naming of-the-strangers will-perish from Conan
procedet aper bellicosus, qui intra Gallicana nemora acumen
will-proceed a-boar warlike who within the-Gallic forests the-edge
dentium suorum exercebit. Truncabit namque quæque majora
of-teeth its-own will-exercise he-will-lop for all greater
robora, minoribus vero tutelam præstabit. Timebunt illum
oaks to-the-smaller indeed protection will-offer will-fear him
Arabes et Africani: nam impetum cursus sui in ulteriorem
the-Arabs and the-Africans for the-impetus of-course its-own into farther
Hispaniam protendet. Succedet hircus Venerei castri aurea
Spain it-will-stretch will-succeed the-goat of-the-Venereal camp golden
habens cornua, et argenteam barbam: qui ex naribus suis
having horns and a-silver beard who from nostrils its-own
tantam efflabit nebulam qua tota superficies insulæ
so-great will-breathe-out a-mist by-which the-whole surface of-the-island
obumbrabitur. Pax erit in tempore illius: et ubertate
will-be-shadowed peace will-be in the-time his and by-the-richness

glebæ multiplicabuntur segetes. Mulieres incessu serpentes
of-the-soil will-be-multiplied the-crops women in-gait serpents
fient, et omnes earum gressus superbia replebuntur.
will-become and all their steps with-pride will-be-filled
Renovabuntur castra Veneris: nec cessabunt sagittæ Cupidinis
will-be-renewed the-camps of-Venus nor will-cease the-arrows of-Cupid
vulnerare. Fons omnis vertetur in sanguinem: et duo
to-wound the-spring every will-be-turned into blood and two
reges duellum propter leænam de vado baculi committent.
kings a-duel on-account-of a-lioness at the-ford of-the-staff will-join
Omnis humus luxuriabit: et humanitas fornicari non desinet.
every soil will-run-riot and humanity to-fornicate not will-cease
Omnia hæc tria secula videbunt: donec sepulti reges
all these-things three ages will-see until the-buried kings
in urbe Londoniarum propalabuntur. Redibit iterum fames:
in the-city of-London will-be-brought-to-light will-return again hunger
redibit mortalitas: et desolationem urbium dolebunt cives.
will-return mortality and the-desolation of-the-cities will-lament the-citizens
Superveniet aper commercii, qui dispersos greges ad amissa
will-come-upon the-boar of-commerce who the-scattered flocks to the-lost
pascua revocabit. Pectus ejus cibus erit egentibus, et lingua
pastures will-recall the-breast his food will-be for-the-needy and the-tongue
ejus sedabit sitientes. Ex ore ipsius procedent flumina
his will-allay the-thirsting from the-mouth his will-proceed rivers
quæ arentes hominum fauces rigabunt. Exin super turrim
which the-dry of-men throats will-water thence upon the-tower
Londoniarum procreabitur arbor, quæ tribus solummodo
of-London will-be-produced a-tree which with-three only
ramis contenta, superficiem totius insulæ latitudine
branches content the-surface of-the-whole island with-the-breadth
foliorum obumbrabit. Huic adversarius Boreas superveniet,
of-the-leaves will-shadow to-this an-adversary the-north-wind will-come-upon

atque iniquo flatu suo tertium illi ramum eripiet: duo
and with-unjust blast its-own the-third from-it branch will-snatch the-two
vero residui locum extirpati occupabunt, donec alter alterum
but remaining the-place of-the-uprooted will-seize until one the-other
foliorum multitudine annihilabit: deinde vero locum
with-the-multitude of-leaves will-annihilate then indeed the-place
duorum obtinebit ipse, et volucres exterarum regionum
of-the-two will-hold it-itself and the-birds of-foreign regions
sustentabit. Patriis volatilibus nocivus habebitur: nam timore
will-sustain to-native birds harmful it-will-be-held for by-fear
umbræ ejus liberos volatus amittent. Succedet asinus
of-the-shadow its free flights they-will-lose will-succeed the-ass
nequitiæ in fabricatores auri velox: sed in luporum
of-wickedness against the-fashioners of-gold swift but against of-wolves
rapacitatem piger. In diebus illis ardebunt quercus per
the-rapacity sluggish in days those will-burn the-oaks through
nemora, et in ramis tiliarum nascentur glandes. Sabrinum
the-forests and on the-branches of-the-limes will-be-born acorns the-Severn
mare per septem ostia discurret, et fluvius Oscæ per
sea through seven mouths will-run-out and the-river of-the-Usk for
septem menses fervebit. Pisces illius calore morientur: et
seven months will-boil the-fishes of-it from-the-heat will-die and
ex eis procreabuntur serpentes: frigebunt Badonis balnea: et
from them will-be-produced serpents will-grow-cold of-Bath the-baths and
salubres aquæ eorum mortem generabunt. Londonia necem
the-healthful waters of-them death will-beget London the-death
viginti milium lugebit: et Tamensis fluvius in sanguinem
of-twenty thousand will-mourn and the-Thames river into blood
mutabitur. Cucullati ad nuptias provocabuntur, et clamor
will-be-changed the-hooded-ones to marriages will-be-called and the-cry
eorum in montibus Alpium audietur.
of-them on the-mountains of-the-Alps will-be-heard

Merlini prophetiæ continuatio

IV · THE PROPHECY OF MERLIN CONTINUED

Three springs will rise at Winchester, bringing long life, hunger, and sudden death, until a girl dries them with her breath. A heron, a fox, a wolf, and a bear, dragons, giants, and lions follow in a long train of kings and wars across the island. At the end the stars leave their courses, the signs of the Zodiac quarrel, the seas rise, and the winds clash with a sound among the stars.

Tres fontes in urbe Guintonia erumpent, quorum rivuli
three springs in the-city Winchester will-burst-forth whose rivulets
insulam in tres portiones secabunt. Qui bibet de
the-island into three portions will-cut who will-drink from
uno, diuturniori vita fruetur: nec supervenienti languore
one with-longer life will-enjoy nor by-coming-on sickness
gravabitur. Qui bibet de altero, indeficienti fame peribit:
will-be-weighed-down who will-drink from the-other with-unfailing hunger will-perish
et in facie ipsius pallor et horror sedebit. Qui bibet
and on the-face his pallor and horror will-sit who will-drink
de tertio, subita morte periclitabitur, nec corpus ipsius
from the-third by-sudden death will-be-imperiled nor the-body his
subire poterit sepulcrum. Tantam ingluviem vitare volentes,
to-undergo will-be-able the-tomb so-great gluttony to-avoid wishing
diversis tegumentis eam occultare nitentur. Quæcumque
with-various coverings it to-hide they-will-strive whatever
moles superposita fuerit, formam alterius corporis recipiet.
mass placed-on-top will-have-been the-form of-another body will-receive
Terra namque in lapides: lapides in lignum, lignum
earth for into stones stones into wood wood
in cineres, cinis in aquam, si superjecta fuerint,
into ashes ash into water if thrown-on they-will-have-been

vertentur. Ad hæc ex urbe Canuti nemoris eliminabitur
will-be-turned at these-things from the-city of-Canute of-the-forest will-be-banished
puella, ut medelæ curam adhibeat. Quæ ut omnes
a-girl so-that of-healing the-care she-may-apply who when all
artes inierit, solo anhelitu suo fontes nocivos
arts she-will-have-entered with-sole breath her-own the-springs harmful
siccabit. Exin ut sese salubri liquore refecerit,
will-dry thence when herself with-healthful liquor she-will-have-refreshed
gestabit in dextera sua nemus Caledonis: in sinistra vero
she-will-carry in right-hand her-own the-forest of-Caledon in the-left indeed
murorum Londoniæ propugnacula. Quacunque incedet,
of-the-walls of-London the-bulwarks wherever she-will-advance
passus sulphureos faciet, qui duplici flamma fumabunt:
steps sulfurous she-will-make which with-a-double flame will-smoke
fumus ille excitabit Rutenos, et cibum submarinis
smoke that will-rouse the-Ruteni and food for-the-undersea-creatures
conficiet. Lacrymis miserandis manabit ipsa, et clamore
will-make with-tears pitiable will-flow she-herself and with-a-cry
horrido replebit insulam. Interficiet eam cervus decem
horrid will-fill the-island will-kill her a-stag of-ten
ramorum: quorum quatuor aurea diademata gestabunt: sex
branches of-which four golden diadems will-carry the-six
vero residui in cornua bubalorum vertentur, quæ nefando
indeed remaining into horns of-buffaloes will-be-turned which with-abominable
sonitu tres insulas Britanniæ commovebunt. Excitabitur
sound the-three islands of-Britain will-move will-be-roused
Daneium nemus, et in humanam vocem erumpens clamabit:
the-Danish forest and into human voice bursting will-cry
“Accede, Cambria, et junge lateri tuo Cornubiam, et dic
approach O-Cambria and join to-side your Cornwall and say
Guintoniæ, absorbebit tellus te. Transfer sedem pastoris
to-Winchester will-swallow the-earth you transfer the-seat of-the-shepherd

quo naves applicant, et cetera membra caput sequantur.
where the-ships land and the-other limbs the-head let-them-follow
Festinat namque dies, qua cives ob scelera perjurii
hastens for the-day in-which the-citizens on-account-of the-crimes of-perjury
peribunt. Candor lanarum nocuit, atque tincturæ ipsarum
will-perish the-whiteness of-wools has-harmed and of-dyeing their
diversitas. Væ perjuræ genti, quia urbs inclyta propter
the-variety woe to-the-perjured people because the-city renowned on-account-of
eam ruet. Gaudebunt naves augmentatione tanta, et unum
it will-fall will-rejoice the-ships with-increase so-great and one
ex duobus fiet. Reædificabit eam Ericius, oneratus
from two will-be-made will-rebuild it a-hedgehog loaded
pomis: ad quorum odorem diversorum nemorum convolabunt
with-apples to whose scent of-various forests will-fly-together
volucres. Adjiciet palatium ingens, et sexcentis turribus
the-birds he-will-add a-palace huge and with-six-hundred towers
vallabit illud. Invidebit ergo Londonia, et muros suos
will-wall it will-envy therefore London and walls its-own
tripliciter augebit. Circuibit eam undique Tamensis fluvius,
threefold will-increase will-go-round it on-all-sides the-Thames river
et rumor operis transcendet Alpes. Occultabit intra illam
and the-rumor of-the-work will-cross the-Alps will-hide within it
Ericius poma sua, et subterraneas vias machinabitur. In
the-hedgehog the-apples his-own and underground ways will-contrive in
tempore illo loquentur lapides, et mare quo ad Galliam
time that will-speak stones and the-sea by-which to Gaul
navigatur intra breve spatium contrahetur. In utraque ripa
it-is-sailed within a-short space will-be-drawn-together on each bank
audietur homo ab homine, et solum insulæ dilatabitur.
will-be-heard man by man and the-soil of-the-island will-be-widened
Revelabuntur occulta submarinorum, et Gallia præ
will-be-revealed the-hidden-things of-the-under-sea-creatures and Gaul for

timore tremet. Post hæc ex Calaterio nemore procedet
fear will-tremble after these-things from the-Calaterian forest will-proceed
ardea, quæ insulam per biennium circumvolabit. Nocturno
a-heron which the-island for two-years will-fly-round with-nightly
clamore convocabit volatilia, et omne genus volucrum
cry it-will-call-together the-birds and every kind of-fowls
associabit sibi. In culturas mortalium irruent, et omnia
will-associate to-itself upon the-tillages of-mortals they-will-rush and all
grana messium devorabunt. Sequetur fames populum, atque
the-grains of-the-harvests will-devour will-follow hunger the-people and
dira mortalitas famem. At cum calamitas tanta cessaverit,
dire mortality the-hunger but when calamity so-great will-have-ceased
adibit detestabilis ales vallem Galabes, atque ipsam
will-approach the-detestable bird the-valley Galabes and it
in excelsum montem levabit. In cacumine quoque ipsius,
into a-lofty mountain will-raise on the-top also of-it
plantabit quercum, atque intra ramos nidificabit. Tria
it-will-plant an-oak and within the-branches will-nest three
ova procreabuntur in nido: ex quibus vulpes, lupus, et
eggs will-be-produced in the-nest from which a-fox a-wolf and
ursus egredientur. Devorabit vulpes matrem et asininum
a-bear will-go-out will-devour the-fox the-mother and an-ass's
caput gestabit. Monstro igitur assumpto, terrebit fratres
head will-carry the-monster therefore assumed it-will-terrify brothers
suos, ipsosque in Neustriam fugabit. At ipsi excitabunt
its-own and-them into Neustria will-put-to-flight but they will-rouse
aprum dentosum in illa, et navigio revecti cum vulpe
a-boar toothed in it and by-ship carried-back with the-fox
congredientur. Quæ cum certamen inierit, finget se
will-engage which when the-contest it-will-have-entered will-feign itself
defunctam, et aprum in pietatem movebit. Mox adibit
dead and the-boar to pity will-move soon will-approach

ipse cadaver, et dum superstabit, anhelabit in oculos
it-itself the-corpse and while it-will-stand-over it-will-breathe into the-eyes
ejus et faciem. At ipsa non oblita præteriti doli,
its and face but it not having-forgotten of-the-past trick
mordebit sinistrum pedem ipsius, totumque ex corpore
will-bite the-left foot its and-the-whole from the-body
evellet. Saltu quoque facto, eripiet ei dextram
will-tear-out with-a-leap also made it-will-snatch from-him the-right
aurem et caudam, et intra cavernas montium delitebit.
ear and tail and within the-caverns of-the-mountains will-lie-hid
Aper ergo illusus, requiret lupum et ursum, ut ei
the-boar therefore mocked will-ask the-wolf and the-bear that to-him
amissa membra restituant. Qui ut causam inierint,
the-lost limbs they-may-restore who when the-cause they-will-have-entered
promittent ei duos pedes vulpis, et aures et caudam,
will-promise to-him two feet of-the-fox and ears and tail
et ex ipsis porcina membra component. Acquiescet ipse,
and from them swinish limbs they-will-compose will-assent it-itself
promissamque restaurationem expectabit. Interim descendet
and-the-promised restoration will-await meanwhile will-descend
vulpes de montibus, et sese in lupum mutabit, et
the-fox from the-mountains and itself into a-wolf will-change and
quasi colloquium habitura cum apro, adibit illum, et
as-if a-parley about-to-have with the-boar will-approach it and
callide ipsum totum devorabit. Exin transvertet sese in
craftily it whole will-devour thence it-will-turn itself into
aprum, et quasi sine membris expectabit germanos: sed
a-boar and as-if without limbs will-await the-brothers but
et ipsos, postquam advenerint, subito dente interficiet,
also them after they-will-have-come with-sudden tooth will-kill
atque capite leonis coronabitur. In diebus ejus nascetur
and with-the-head of-a-lion will-be-crowned in the-days its will-be-born

serpens, qui neci mortalium imminebit. Longitudine
a-serpent which on-the-death of-mortals will-press with-length
sua circuibit Londoniam, et quosque prætereuntes
its-own it-will-go-round London and all passing-by
devorabit. Bos montanus caput lupi assumet, dentesque
will-devour the-ox mountain the-head of-a-wolf will-assume and-teeth
suos in Fabrica Sabrinæ dealbabit. Associabit sibi greges
its-own in the-Forge of-the-Severn will-whiten will-associate to-itself the-flocks
Albanorum et Cambriæ qui Tamensem fluvium potando
of-the-Albans and of-Cambria which the-Thames river by-drinking
siccabunt. Vocabit asinus hircum prolixæ barbæ, et formam
will-dry will-call the-ass the-goat of-long beard and the-form
ipsius mutuabit. Indignabitur igitur montanus, vocatoque
its will-borrow will-be-indignant therefore the-mountain-one and-called
lupo, cornutus taurus in ipsos fiet. Ut autem sævitiæ
the-wolf a-horned bull against them will-become when moreover to-savagery
indulserit, devorabit carnes eorum et ossa, sed in
it-will-have-indulged it-will-devour the-flesh their and bones but on
cacumine Uriani cremabitur: favillæ rogi mutabuntur in
the-top of-Urian will-be-burned the-ashes of-the-pyre will-be-changed into
cygnos, qui in sicco quasi in flumine natabunt. Devorabunt
swans which on dry-land as-if in a-river will-swim they-will-devour
pisces in piscibus: et homines in hominibus deglutient.
fishes in fishes and men in men they-will-swallow
Superveniente vero senectute, efficientur submarini lupi,
coming-on indeed old-age they-will-be-made under-sea wolves
atque submarinas insidias machinabuntur. Submergent navalia,
and under-sea ambushes will-contrive they-will-sink the-ships
et argentum non minimum congregabunt. Fluctuabit iterum
and silver not least will-gather will-surge again
Tamensis: convocatisque fluminibus ultra metas alvei
the-Thames and-called-together the-rivers beyond the-bounds of-the-channel

procedet: urbes vicinas occultabit: oppositosque montes
will-proceed the-cities neighboring it-will-hide and-the-opposing mountains
subvertet. Adhibebit sibi fontem Galaes dolo et nequitia
will-overturn it-will-apply to-itself the-spring of-Galabes with-guile and wickedness
repletus. Orientur ex eo seditiones provocantes Venedotos
filled will-arise from it seditions provoking the-Venedotians
ad prælia. Convenient nemorum robora, et cum saxis
to battles will-come-together of-the-forests the-oaks and with the-rocks
Gewisseorum congredientur. Aderit corvus cum miluis, et
of-the-Gewissae will-engage will-be-present a-raven with the-kites and
corpora peremptorum devorabit. Super muros Claudiocestriæ
the-bodies of-the-slain will-devour upon the-walls of-Gloucester
nidificabit bubo, et in nido ejus procreabitur asinus.
will-nest an-owl and in the-nest its will-be-produced an-ass
Educabit illum serpens Malverniæ, et in plures dolos
will-bring-up it the-serpent of-Malvern and into many tricks
commovebit. Sumpto diademate transcendet excelsa, et
will-move taken the-diadem it-will-climb the-heights and
horrido racanatu populum patriæ terrebit. In diebus ejus
with-horrid braying the-people of-the-country will-terrify in the-days its
titubabunt montes Panchaii, et provinciæ nemoribus suis
will-totter the-mountains of-Panchaea and the-provinces of-forests their-own
spoliabuntur. Superveniet namque vermis ignei anhelitus:
will-be-despoiled will-come-upon for a-worm of-fiery breath
qui emisso vapore comburet arbores. Egredientur ex eo
which sent-forth vapor will-burn the-trees will-go-out from it
septem leones capitibus hircorum turpati. Fœtore narium
seven lions with-the-heads of-goats disfigured with-the-stench of-nostrils
mulieres corrumpent: et proprias communes facient. Nesciet
the-women they-will-corrupt and their-own common will-make will-not-know
pater proprium filium: quia more pecudum lascivient.
the-father his-own son because in-the-manner of-cattle they-will-wanton

Superveniet vero gigas nequitiæ, qui oculorum acumine
will-come-upon indeed a-giant of-wickedness who with-the-keenness of-eyes
terrebit universos. Exsurget in eum draco Wigorniæ,
will-terrify all will-rise-up against him the-dragon of-Worcester
et eum exterminare conabitur: facto autem congressu,
and him to-exterminate will-try made moreover the-engagement
superabitur draco, et nequitia victoris opprimetur.
will-be-overcome the-dragon and by-the-wickedness of-the-victor will-be-crushed
Ascendet namque draconem, et exuta veste insidebit
he-will-mount for the-dragon and stripped the-garment will-sit-on-it
nudus. Feret illum ad sublimia draco: erectaque cauda
naked will-carry him to the-heights the-dragon and-raised tail
verberabit nudatum. Resumpto iterum vigore gigas, fauces
will-lash the-stripped-one resumed again strength the-giant the-jaws
illius gladio confringet. Implicabitur tandem sub cauda ejus
of-it with-sword will-break will-be-entangled at-last under the-tail its
draco, et venenatus interibit. Succedet post illum Totonesius
the-dragon and poisoned will-perish will-succeed after him the-Totnes
aper, et dira tyrannide opprimet populum, Eliminabit
boar and with-dire tyranny will-oppress the-people will-banish
Claudiocestria leonem, qui diversis præliis inquietabit
Gloucester a-lion which with-various battles will-harass
sævientem. Conculcabit eum sub pedibus suis, apertisque
the-raging-one will-trample him under feet its-own and-with-opened
faucibus terrebit. Cum regno tandem litigabit leo, et
jaws will-terrify with the-kingdom at-last will-quarrel the-lion and
terga nobilium transcendet. Superveniet taurus litigio,
the-backs of-the-nobles will-climb will-come-upon a-bull to-the-quarrel
et leonem dextro pede percutiet. Expellet eum per
and the-lion with-the-right foot will-strike will-drive-out him through
regni diversoria: sed cornua sua in muros Oxoniæ
of-the-kingdom the-lodgings but horns its-own on the-walls of-Oxford

confringet. Vindicabit leonem vulpes Kaerdubali, et totum
will-break will-avenge the-lion the-fox of-Kaerdubalum and the-whole
suis dentibus consumet. Circumcinget illam Lindocolinus
with-its-own teeth will-consume will-gird-round it the-Lincoln
coluber, præsentiamque suam draconibus multis horribili sibilo
snake and-presence its-own to-the-dragons many with-horrible hiss
testabitur. Congredientur deinde dracones ut alter alterum
will-attest will-engage then the-dragons so-that one the-other
dilaniet? Opprimet alatus carentem alis et ungues in
may-tear-apart will-crush the-winged-one the-one-lacking wings and the-claws into
genas venenatas configet. Ad certamen convenient alii: et
the-cheeks poisoned will-fix to the-contest will-come-together others and
alius alium interficiet. Succedet quintus interfectus, residuos
one another will-kill will-succeed the-fifth killed the-remaining
diversis machinationibus confringet. Transcendet dorsum
with-various contrivances will-break he-will-climb the-back
unius cum gladio, et caput a corpore separabit, Exuta
of-one with the-sword and the-head from the-body will-separate stripped
veste ascendet alium, et dexteram caudæ lævamque
the-garment he-will-mount another and the-right-hand on-the-tail and-the-left
injiciet. Superabit eum nudus, cum nihil indutus proficeret.
will-throw he-will-overcome him naked when nothing clothed he-could-achieve
Ceteros tormentabit a dorso, et in rotunditatem regni
the-others he-will-torment from the-back and into the-roundness of-the-kingdom
compellet. Superveniet leo rugiens, immani feritate
will-drive will-come-upon a-lion roaring with-monstrous ferocity
timendus. Ter quinque portiones in unum reducet:
to-be-feared three-times five portions into one he-will-lead-back
et solus possidebit populum. Splendebit gigas colore niveo,
and alone will-possess the-people will-shine the-giant with-color snowy
et ad candidum populum germinabit. Deliciæ principes
and for a-white people will-sprout delights the-princes

enervabunt: et subiti in beluas mutabuntur. Orietur in
will-enervate and suddenly into beasts they-will-be-changed will-arise among
illis leo humano cruore turgidus. Supponetur ei in
them a-lion with-human gore swollen will-be-put-under to-him in
segete falcifer: qui dum laborabit metere, opprimetur ab
the-crop a-sickle-bearer who while he-will-labor to-reap will-be-crushed by
illo. Sedabit illos Eboracensis auriga: expulsoque domino in
him will-calm them the-York charioteer and-driven-out the-lord into
currum quem ducit ascendet. Abstracto gladio minabitur
the-chariot which he-drives will-mount drawn the-sword he-will-threaten
Orienti: et rotarum suarum vestigia replebit sanguine. Fiet
to-the-East and of-the-wheels his-own the-tracks will-fill with-blood will-become
deinde piscis in æquore, qui sibilo serpentis revocatus,
then a-fish in the-sea which by-the-hiss of-a-serpent recalled
coibit cum illo. Nascentur inde tres tauri fulgurantes,
will-mate with it will-be-born thence three bulls flashing
qui consumptis pascuis convertentur in arbores. Gestabit
which consumed the-pastures will-be-turned into trees will-carry
primus flagellum vipereum, et a post genito dorsum
the-first a-whip viperous and from the-after born back
suum divertet. Nitetur ipse flagellum eripere: sed ab
his-own will-turn will-strive he-himself the-whip to-snatch but by
ultimo corripietur. Avertent mutuo a sese facies, donec
the-last will-be-seized they-will-turn mutually from themselves the-faces until
venenatum scyphum projecerint: succedet ei Colonus
the-poisoned cup they-will-have-thrown-away will-succeed to-him the-Farmer
Albaniæ, cui a dorso imminebit serpens. Vacabit ipse
of-Albany on-whom from the-back will-press a-serpent will-be-busy he-himself
tellurem subvertere, ut patriæ segetibus candeant.
the-earth to-overturn so-that the-countries with-crops may-shine-white
Laborabit serpens venenum diffundere: ne herbæ in messes
will-labor the-serpent poison to-pour-out lest the-grasses into harvests

proveniant. Letali clade deficiet populus: et mœnia urbium
may-come with-deadly disaster will-fail the-people and the-walls of-the-cities
desolabuntur. Dabitur in remedium urbs Claudii, quæ
will-be-desolated will-be-given as remedy the-city of-Claudius which
alumnam flagellantis interponet. Stateram namque medicinæ
the-nursling of-the-scourger will-interpose the-balance for of-medicine
gestabit: et in brevi renovabitur insula. Deinde duo
she-will-carry and in short-time will-be-renewed the-island then two
subsequentur sceptrum, quibus cornutus draco ministrabit.
will-follow the-scepter to-whom a-horned dragon will-minister
Adveniet alter in ferro: et volantem equitabit serpentem.
will-come the-one in iron and a-flying will-ride serpent
Nudato corpore insidebit dorso: et dexteram caudæ injiciet.
stripped body he-will-sit-on the-back and the-right-hand on-the-tail will-throw
Clamore ipsius excitabuntur maria: et timorem secundo
by-the-cry his will-be-roused the-seas and fear into-the-second
injiciet. Secundus itaque sociabitur leoni: sed exorta
will-throw the-second and-so will-be-allied to-the-lion but having-arisen
lite congressum facient. Mutuis cladibus succumbent
a-quarrel an-engagement they-will-make by-mutual disasters they-will-succumb
mutuo, sed feritas beluæ prævalebit. Superveniet quidam
mutually but the-ferocity of-the-beast will-prevail will-come-upon a-certain-one
in tympano et cithara, et demulcebit leonis sævitiam.
with a-drum and a-harp and will-soothe of-the-lion the-savagery
Pacificabuntur ergo nationes regni, et leonem ad
will-be-pacified therefore the-nations of-the-kingdom and the-lion to
stateram provocabunt. Locata sede ad pensas vacabit: sed
the-balance will-call placed the-seat to the-weights he-will-attend but
palmas in Albaniam extendet. Tristabuntur ergo Aquilonares
the-palms into Albany he-will-stretch will-be-saddened therefore the-northern
provinciæ, et ostia templorum reserabunt. Signifer lupus
provinces and the-doors of-the-temples will-unbar the-standard-bearer wolf

conducet turmas, et Cornubiam cauda sua circumcinget:
will-lead the-troops and Cornwall with-tail its-own will-gird-round
resistet ei miles in curru, qui populum illum in aprum
will-resist him a-knight in a-chariot who people that into a-boar
mutabit. Vastabit ergo aper provincias: sed in profundo
will-change will-lay-waste therefore the-boar the-provinces but in the-deep
Sabrinæ occultabit caput. Amplexabitur homo leonem in auro:
of-the-Severn will-hide the-head will-embrace a-man a-lion in gold
et fulgor auri oculos intuentium excæcabit. Candebit
and the-flash of-the-gold the-eyes of-the-beholders will-blind will-shine-white
argentum in circuitu, et diversa torcularia vexabit. Imposito
silver in the-circuit and various winepresses will-trouble placed-on
vino inebriabuntur mortales: et postposito cœlo in terram
the-wine will-be-made-drunk mortals and set-aside heaven to the-earth
respicient. Ab eis vultus avertent sidera, et solitum
they-will-look from them faces will-turn-away the-stars and the-accustomed
cursum confundent. Arebunt segetes his indignantibus,
course will-confound will-dry the-crops these being-indignant
et humor convexi negabitur. Radices et rami vices
and the-moisture of-the-vault will-be-denied the-roots and the-branches places
mutabunt: novitasque rei erit in miraculum. Splendor
will-change and-the-novelty of-the-thing will-be for a-wonder the-splendor
Solis electro Mercurii languebit: et erit horror
of-the-Sun by-the-amber of-Mercury will-languish and there-will-be horror
inspicientibus. Mutabit clypeum Stilbon Arcadiæ: vocabit
to-the-beholders will-change the-shield Stilbon of-Arcadia will-call
Venerem galea Martis. Galea Martis umbram conficiet:
Venus the-helmet of-Mars the-helmet of-Mars a-shadow will-make
et transibit terminos furor Mercurii. Nudabit ensem Orion
and will-cross the-limits the-fury of-Mercury will-bare the-sword Orion
ferreus. Vexabit nubes Phœbus æquoreus. Exibit Jupiter
iron will-trouble the-clouds Phoebus of-the-sea will-leave Jupiter

licitas semitas: et Venus deseret statutas lineas. Saturni
the-lawful paths and Venus will-desert the-appointed lines of-Saturn
sideris livor pluendo corruet, et falce recurva mortales
of-the-star the-malice by-raining will-fall and with-sickle curved mortals
perimet. Bis senus numerus domorum siderum, deflebit
will-destroy twice six the-number of-the-houses of-the-stars will-bewail
hospites ita transcurrere. Omittent Gemini complexus solitos,
the-guests so to-run-across will-omit the-Twins the-embraces accustomed
et urnam in fontes provocabunt. Pensa libræ oblique
and the-urn into the-springs will-call the-weights of-the-scale obliquely
pendebunt, donec aries recurva cornua sua supponat. Cauda
will-hang until the-ram curved horns its-own puts-under the-tail
Scorpionis procreabit fulgura, et Cancer cum Sole litigabit.
of-the-Scorpion will-produce lightnings and the-Crab with the-Sun will-quarrel
Ascendet Virgo dorsum Sagittarii, et flores virgineos
will-climb the-Virgin the-back of-the-Archer and flowers virginal
offuscabit. Currus Lunæ turbabit Zodiacum: et in fletum
will-darken the-chariot of-the-Moon will-disturb the-Zodiac and into weeping
prorumpent Pleiades. Officia jam nulla redibunt: sed clausa
will-burst the-Pleiades the-duties now none will-return but shut
janua in crepidinibus Ariadne delitebit. In ictu radii
the-door in the-crevices Ariadne will-lie-hid in the-stroke of-the-ray
exsurgent æquora, et pulvis veterum renovabitur. Confligent
will-rise-up the-seas and the-dust of-the-ancients will-be-renewed will-clash
venti diro sufflamine, et sonitum inter sidera conficient.
the-winds with-dire blast and a-sound among the-stars will-make

Vortegirnus interrogat Merlinum de morte sua

I · VORTIGERN ASKS MERLIN ABOUT HIS DEATH

Vortigern praises the prophecies and asks Merlin how his life will end. Merlin warns him to flee the sons of Constantine, who are already sailing from Armorica to avenge their father and will burn him in a tower. Aurelius will be crowned, restore the churches, and die of poison, and Uther will succeed him and die the same way; the next day Aurelius lands at Totnes with ten thousand knights.

Cum igitur hæc et alia multa prophetasset Merlinus,
when therefore these-things and others many had-prophesied Merlin
ambiguitate verborum suorum adstantes in admirationem
by-the-ambiguity of-words his-own the-bystanders into wonder
commovit. Vortegirnus vero præ ceteris admirans, et sensum
he-moved Vortigern but before the-others wondering both the-sense
juvenis, et vaticinia collaudabat. Neminem enim præsens
of-the-youth and the-prophecies praised no-one for the-present
ætas produxerat, qui ora sua in hunc modum coram ipso
age had-produced who lips his-own in this manner before him
solvisset. Scire igitur volens exitum vitæ suæ, rogavit juvenem
had-loosed to-know therefore wishing the-end of-life his-own he-asked the-youth
sibi indicare quod sciebat. Ad hæc Merlinus: "Ignem
to-him to-show what he-knew at these-things Merlin the-fire
filiorum Constantini diffuge: si diffugere valueris. Jam
of-the-sons of-Constantine flee if to-flee you-will-be-able already
naves parant: jam Armoricanum littus deserunt: jam vela
ships they-prepare already the-Armorican shore they-desert already sails
per æquora pandunt: petent Britanniam insulam: invadent
across the-seas they-spread they-will-seek Britain the-island they-will-invade
Saxonicam gentem: subjugabunt populum nefandum: sed prius
the-Saxon people they-will-subjugate the-people abominable but first

te intra turrim inclusum comburent. Malo tuo patrem eorum
you within a-tower shut-in they-will-burn to-evil your father their
prodidisti: et Saxones in insulam invitasti. Invitasti eos
you-betrayed and the-Saxons into the-island you-invited you-invited them
tibi in præsidium: sed supervenerunt in tuum supplicium.
for-you as protection but they-have-come-upon to your punishment
Imminent tibi duo funera: nec est promptum, utrum prius
threaten you two deaths nor is it-plain which first
vitabis. Hinc enim regnum tuum devastabunt Saxones, et
you-will-avoid on-this-side for kingdom your will-lay-waste the-Saxons and
leto tuo incumbent: hinc autem applicabunt duo fratres,
on-death your will-press on-that-side moreover will-land two brothers
Aurelius et Utherpendragon, qui mortem patris sui in
Aurelius and Uther-Pendragon who the-death of-father their-own on
te vindicare nitentur. Quære tibi diffugium si poteris:
you to-avenge will-strive seek for-yourself a-refuge if you-will-be-able
cras Totonesium littus tenebunt. Rubebunt sanguine
tomorrow the-Totnes shore they-will-hold will-redden with-the-blood
Saxonum facies: et interfecto Hengisto Aurelius Ambrosius
of-the-Saxons the-faces and killed Hengist Aurelius Ambrosius
coronabitur. Pacificabit nationes: restaurabit ecclesias: sed
will-be-crowned he-will-pacify the-nations he-will-restore the-churches but
veneno deficiet. Succedet ei germanus suus Utherpendragon:
by-poison he-will-fail will-succeed to-him brother his-own Uther-Pendragon
cujus dies anticipabuntur veneno. Aderunt tantæ proditioni
whose days will-be-anticipated by-poison will-be-present at-so-great treachery
posteri tui, quos aper Cornubiæ devorabit. Nec mora,
descendants your whom the-boar of-Cornwall will-devour nor delay
cum crastina dies illuxit, applicuit Aurelius Ambrosius cum
when the-next day dawned landed Aurelius Ambrosius with
germano suo, decem milibus militum comitatus.
brother his-own by-ten thousand of-knights accompanied

Aurelius Ambrosius, rex Britanniæ factus, Vortegirnum obsessum igne perimit

II · AURELIUS AMBROSIUS BURNS VORTIGERN

The scattered Britons gather, and the clergy anoint Aurelius king. Before facing the Saxons, he marches on Vortigern in the town of Genoreu on the Wye. He reminds Eldol of Gloucester of Vortigern's betrayals of Constantine, of Constans, and of the whole people, and when the walls resist, fire burns the tower and Vortigern with it.

Rumore itaque adventus ipsius divulgato: convenerunt
the-rumor and-so of-the-arrival his spread-abroad came-together
undique Britones, qui in tanta clade dispersi fuerant:
from-everywhere the-Britons who in so-great disaster scattered had-been
et societate concivium suorum roborati, hilariores solito
and by-the-fellowship of-fellow-citizens their-own strengthened more-cheerful than-usual
efficiuntur. Convocato autem clero, inunxerunt Aurelium in
are-made called-together moreover the-clergy they-anointed Aurelius into
regem: et sese ei more suo submiserunt. Cumque
king and themselves to-him in-manner their-own submitted and-when
impetum in Saxones fieri cohortarentur, dissuasit rex.
an-attack upon the-Saxons to-be-made they-urged dissuaded the-king
Nam prius Vortegirnum persequi affectaverat. Adeo enim
for first Vortigern to-pursue he-had-desired so-much for
propter proditionem patri illatam doluerat, quod nil
on-account-of the-treachery on-the-father brought he-had-grieved that nothing
agere videretur, nisi eum prius vindicaret. Affectum itaque suum
to-do he-seemed unless him first he-avenged the-desire and-so his-own
exequi desiderans, convertit exercitum suum in Cambriam,
to-carry-out desiring he-turned army his-own into Cambria
oppidumque Genoreu petivit. Diffugerat enim eo Vortegirnus,
and-the-town Genoreu sought had-fled for there Vortigern

ut tutum refugium haberet. Erat autem oppidum illud in
so-that a-safe refuge he-might-have was moreover town that in
natione Hergin super fluvium Ganiæ, in monte qui Cloarius
the-region Hergin upon the-river of-the-Wye on the-mountain which Cloarius
nuncupatur. Ut igitur ad illud pervenit Ambrosius, proditionis
is-called when therefore to it he-came Ambrosius of-the-treachery
patri ac fratri illatæ reminiscens, Eldol ducem Claudiocestriæ
on-father and brother brought remembering Eldol duke of-Gloucester
affatur: "Respice dux nobilis hujus urbis mœnia, an
addresses look O-duke noble of-this city the-walls whether
poterunt Vortegirnum protegere, quin gladii mei mucronem
they-will-be-able Vortigern to-protect but-that of-sword my the-blade
ipse intra viscera ipsius recondam? Promeruit enim necem:
I-myself within the-bowels his may-hide he-has-deserved for death
nec tibi ignotum esse existimo ipsum eam promeruisse. O
nor to-you unknown to-be I-think him it to-have-deserved O
hominem omnium sceleratissimum: O ineffabilibus tormentis
man of-all most-wicked O with-unspeakable torments
perdendum! Primo prodidit patrem meum Constantinum, qui
to-be-destroyed first he-betrayed father my Constantine who
ipsum et patriam a Pictorum irruptione liberaverat. Deinde
him and the-country from of-the-Picts the-inroad had-freed then
Constantem fratrem meum, quem ut perderet in regem
Constans brother my whom that he-might-destroy into king
promovit. Deinde cum ipsemet versutia sua insignitus
he-advanced then when he-himself by-cunning his-own marked
fuisset, intromisit concivibus Paganos, ut eos qui
he-had-been he-let-in to-the-fellow-citizens Pagans so-that those who
fidelitati meæ adhærebant, exterminaret: sed permittente deo
to-fidelity my clung he-might-exterminate but permitting God
in laqueum, quem fidelibus suis paraverat, incautus cecidit.
into the-snare which for-the-faithful his-own he-had-prepared unwary he-fell

Nam ut nequitiam ipsius compererunt Saxones, ejecerunt
for when the-wickedness his discovered the-Saxons they-threw
illum e regno, quod neminem pigere debeat. Illud vero
him from the-kingdom which no-one to-irk ought that indeed
dolendum esse censeo, quod nefandus populus quem nefandus
lamentable to-be I-judge that the-abominable people which abominable
ille invitavit, nobiles cives exterminavit: fertilem patriam
that-man invited the-noble citizens has-exterminated the-fertile country
devastavit: sacras ecclesias destruxit: et Christianitatem fere
has-laid-waste the-holy churches has-destroyed and Christianity almost
a mari usque ad mare delevit. Nunc ergo cives
from sea all-the-way to sea has-wiped-out now therefore O-citizens
viriliter agite: et vindicate vos prius in istum, per quem
manfully act and avenge yourselves first on this-man through whom
hæc omnia mala accesserunt. Deinde vertamus arma in
these all evils have-come then let-us-turn arms against
hostes imminentes, et patriam ab eorum ingluvie liberemus.
the-enemies threatening and the-country from their gluttony let-us-free
Nec mora, diversis machinationibus incumbunt: mœnia
nor delay with-various contrivances they-press-on the-walls
diruere nituntur. Postremo, cum cetera defecissent,
to-pull-down they-strive finally when the-other-things had-failed
ignem adhibuerunt: qui cum alimentum reperisset, non
fire they-applied which when nourishment it-had-found not
acquievit adjunctus, donec turrim et Vortegirnum exarsit.
rested joined until the-tower and Vortigern it-burned-up

Aurelii Ambrosii laudes

III · THE PRAISES OF AURELIUS AMBROSIUS

Hengist and the Saxons fear Aurelius, a warrior no Gaul dared face, generous, devout, modest, and truthful, brave on foot and braver on horse. They withdraw beyond the Humber and fortify the cities there, near Scotland, the refuge of every invader. Aurelius marches north, grieving at the ruined churches, which he vows to restore.

Quod cum Hengisto Saxonibusque ejus relatum esset, invasit
which when to-Hengist and-to-Saxons his reported had-been invaded
eum timor: quia probitatem Aurelii timebat. Tanta namque
him fear because the-prowess of-Aurelius he-feared so-great for
virtus et audacia viro inerat: quod cum Galliarum
valor and boldness in-the-man was-present that when of-the-Gauls
partes frequentaret, non erat alter qui cum illo congredi
the-parts he-frequented not there-was another who with him to-engage
auderet. Nam si congressum fecisset, vel hostem ab equo
dared for if an-engagement he-had-made either the-enemy from the-horse
prosternebat: vel hastam in frusta confringebat. Præterea largus
he-laid-low or the-spear into bits broke besides generous
erat in dandis: sedulus in divinis obsequiis: modestus in
he-was in giving diligent in divine services modest in
cunctis: et super omnia mendacium vitans. Fortis pedes: fortior
all-things and above all-things a-lie avoiding brave on-foot braver
equo: et ad regendum exercitum doctus. Tales probitates ejus
on-horse and for ruling an-army learned such prowesses his
dum adhuc in Armoricana Britannia moraretur, fama assiduis
while still in Armorican Britain he-stayed fame with-constant
volatibus in insulam detulerat. Timuerunt ergo eum Saxones,
flights into the-island had-carried feared therefore him the-Saxons

et sese trans Humbrum receperunt. In partibus illis
and themselves beyond the-Humber withdrew in parts those
munierunt civitates et oppida: nam patria illa semper refugio
they-fortified the-cities and towns for country that always for-refuge
eis patuerat. Vicinitas etenim Scotiæ adhibebat tutelam:
to-them had-lain-open the-neighborhood for of-Scotland applied protection
quæ in omne damnum civibus imminere consueverat.
which upon every loss for-the-citizens to-press had-been-accustomed
Natio namque ad inhabitandum horribilis, evacuata civibus,
the-region for for inhabiting horrible emptied of-citizens
tutum receptaculum alienigenis præstiterat. Siquidem Pictis,
a-safe refuge to-foreigners had-offered indeed to-the-Picts
Scotis, Dacis, Norwegensibus, ceterisque qui ad vastandam
to-the-Scots to-the-Danes to-the-Norwegians and-to-the-others who for laying-waste
insulam applicuerant, situ locorum admittente patuerat.
the-island had-landed the-situation of-the-places admitting it-had-lain-open
Securi ergo affinitatis patriæ, versus illam diffugerant:
secure therefore of-the-nearness of-the-country towards it they-had-fled
ut si opus fuisset, sese intra eam, quasi in propria
so-that if need had-been themselves within it as-if into their-own
castra recepissent. Cumque id Aurelio indicatum
camp they-might-have-withdrawn and-when this to-Aurelius shown
fuisset, audacior effectus, spem victoriæ recepit. Ocyus
had-been bolder made hope of-victory he-received more-swiftly
ergo convocatis civibus, exercitum suum augmentavit, atque
therefore called-together the-citizens army his-own he-increased and
versus Aquilonares partes iter arripuit. Et cum nationes
towards the-northern parts the-march took and when the-regions
præteriret, inspiciens illas desolatas, condolebat: maxime autem
he-passed seeing them desolated he-grieved most moreover

propter ecclesias usque ad solum destructas: quibus
on-account-of the-churches all-the-way to the-ground destroyed to-which
restaurationem promittebat, si triumpho potiretur.
restoration he-promised if of-the-triumph he-should-gain-possession

Hengistus contra Ambrosium proficiscitur

IV · HENGIST MARCHES AGAINST AMBROSIUS

Hengist tells his two hundred thousand men that Aurelius has barely ten thousand Armoricans and that the island Britons are nothing. He lies in wait for him in the field of Maisbeli. Aurelius sees the trap, sets three thousand Armoricans on horseback and the rest with the islanders, and posts the Demetians and Venedotians on the hills and in the woods.

At Hengistus cum adventum ipsius comperisset, revocata
but Hengist when the-arrival his he-had-discovered recalled
audacia commilitones suos elegit, atque unumquemque
boldness comrades his-own he-chose and each-one
inanimans, hortabatur eos unanimiter et viriliter eis resistere:
encouraging he-urged them with-one-mind and manfully them to-resist
nec congressum Aurelii exhorrere. Dicebat autem ipsum
nor the-engagement of-Aurelius to-dread he-said moreover him
paucos ex Armoricanis Britonibus habere, cum numerus eorum
few of the-Armorican Britons to-have since the-number of-them
ultra decem milia non procederet. Insulanos vero Britones pro
beyond ten thousand not went the-island indeed Britons for
nihilo reputabat, cum toties eos in præliis devicisset. Proinde
nothing he-reckoned since so-often them in battles he-had-defeated accordingly
promittebat suis victoriam, et ob ampliorem numerum
he-promised his-own victory and on-account-of the-larger number
securitatem. Aderant enim circiter ducenta milia armatorum.
security were-present for about two-hundred thousand of-armed-men

Et cum omnes hoc modo inanimasset, ivit obviam Aurelio
and when all in-this manner he-had-encouraged he-went to-meet Aurelius
in campum qui dicebatur Maisbeli, per quem ipse Aurelius
into the-field which was-called Maisbeli through which he-himself Aurelius
transiturus erat: affectabat namque et subitum et furtivum
about-to-pass was he-desired for both a-sudden and stealthy
impetum facere, Britonesque non præmeditatos occupare.
attack to-make and-the-Britons not having-foreseen to-seize
Quod tamen non latuit Aurelium, nec idcirco distulit campum
which yet not escaped Aurelius nor therefore he-delayed the-field
adire: sed festinantius ingressus est. Ut ergo hostes
to-approach but more-hastily entered he-has when therefore the-enemies
prospexit, disposuit turmas suas: tria milia ex Armoricanis
he-saw-ahead he-arranged troops his-own three thousand of the-Armoricans
jussit equis adesse, ceteros cum insulanis mixtim in
he-ordered on-horses to-be-present the-others with the-islanders mingled into
aciem constituit. Demetios in collibus, Venedotos in prope
the-battle-line he-set the-Demetians on the-hills the-Venedotians on near
sitis collibus nemoribusque locavit. Erat autem causa, ut si
situated hills and-forests he-placed was moreover the-cause that if
Saxones ad ea diffugerent, adessent qui obviarent.
the-Saxons to them should-flee there-might-be-present those-who would-oppose

Pugna inter Hengistum et Ambrosium committitur

V · THE BATTLE OF HENGIST AND AMBROSIUS

Eldol of Gloucester asks only for a chance to meet Hengist, who betrayed 460 unarmed barons at the parley. Aurelius urges his men to trust in the Son of God, and the armies clash. Hengist flees to Kaerconan, now Conisbrough, and makes a stand, and the Saxons are prevailing until the Armorican horse arrive.

Interea accessit Eldol dux Claudiocestriæ ad regem, et ait:
meanwhile approached Eldol duke of-Gloucester to the-king and says
"Sola dies pro omnibus diebus vitæ meæ mihi sufficeret,
a-single day for all days of-life my for-me would-suffice
si congredi cum Hengisto mihi Deus concederet. Nempe
if to-engage with Hengist to-me God should-grant surely
succumberet alter nostrum, dum gladiis insisteremus.
would-succumb one of-us while with-swords we-pressed
Reminiscor namque diei qua convenimus quasi pacem
I-remember for of-the-day on-which we-came-together as-if peace
habituri: cumque de concordia ageretur, prodidit omnes
about-to-have and-when about concord it-was-being-treated he-betrayed all
qui aderant, et cum cultris interfecit, præter me solum, qui
who were-present and with knives killed except me alone who
reperto palo evasi. Succubuerunt eadem die quadringenti
found a-stake escaped succumbed on-the-same day four-hundred
sexaginta barones ac consules, qui omnes inermes advenerant.
sixty barons and consuls who all unarmed had-come
In tanto periculo subvectavit mihi deus palum, quo defensus
in so-great danger brought-up to-me God a-stake by-which defended
evasi." Talia referebat Eldol. Sed Aurelius hortabatur
I-escaped such-things reported Eldol but Aurelius urged
socios totam spem suam in filium Dei ponere: hostes
the-comrades all hope their-own in the-son of-God to-place the-enemies

suos deinde audacter invadere, et pro patria unanimiter
their-own then boldly to-attack and for the-country with-one-mind
pugnare. At Hengistus e contrario turmas suas componebat:
to-fight but Hengist on the-contrary troops his-own arranged
componendo præliari docebat: docendo singulas perambulabat,
by-arranging to-fight he-taught by-teaching the-single-ones he-walked-through
ut omnibus unam audaciam pugnandi ingereret. Dispositis
so-that on-all one boldness of-fighting he-might-heap arranged
tandem in utraque parte cuneis, congrediuntur acies: mutuos
at-last on each side the-wedges engage the-lines mutual
ictus ingeminant: cruorem non minimum diffundunt. Hinc
blows redouble gore not least they-pour-out on-this-side
Britones: hinc Saxones vulnerati moriuntur. Hortatur
Britons on-that-side Saxons wounded die exhorts
Aurelius Christianos, monet Hengistus Paganos: et dum
Aurelius the-Christians admonishes Hengist the-Pagans and while
talem decertationem facerent, nitebatur semper Eldol habere
such contest they-made strove always Eldol to-have
aditum congrediendi cum Hengisto, sed non habuit.
an-approach of-engaging with Hengist but not he-had
Nam Hengistus ut vidit suos succumbere, Britones vero
for Hengist when he-saw his-own to-succumb the-Britons indeed
nutu Dei prævalere: confestim diffugit, petivitque oppidum
by-the-nod of-God to-prevail forthwith fled and-sought the-town
Kaerconan, quod nunc Cunungeburg appellatur. Insequitur eum
Kaerconan which now Conisbrough is-called pursues him
Aurelius: et quoscunque in itinere reperiebat, vel occidebat,
Aurelius and whomever on the-march he-found either he-killed
vel in servitutem compellebat. Cum ergo vidisset Hengistus,
or into servitude drove when therefore had-seen Hengist
quod insequeretur se Aurelius, noluit oppidum introire:
that pursued him Aurelius he-was-unwilling the-town to-enter

sed convocato in turmas populo, iterum præliari disposuit.
but called-together into troops the-people again to-fight he-resolved
Quippe sciebat, quod oppidum nequaquam Aurelio resisteret:
indeed he-knew that the-town by-no-means Aurelius would-resist
et quod omne tutamen suum in gladio et hasta consisteret.
and that all protection his-own in sword and spear consisted
Denique cum supervenisset Aurelius, composuit et ipse
finally when had-come-up Aurelius arranged also he-himself
socios suos in turmas, et acerrimam pugnam ingessit.
comrades his-own into troops and a-most-fierce fight heaped
Porro Saxones unanimiter resistunt, et invicem letaliter
further the-Saxons with-one-mind resist and in-turn mortally
vulnerantur. Diffunditur sanguis utrobique: clamor morientium
are-wounded is-poured-out blood on-both-sides the-cry of-the-dying
vivos in iram ducebat. Postremo, Saxones prævaluissent,
the-living into anger led finally the-Saxons would-have-prevailed
nisi equestris turma Armoricanorum Britonum supervenisset.
unless the-mounted troop of-the-Armorican Britons had-come-up
Constituerat namque eam Aurelius, sicut in primo prælio
had-set for it Aurelius as in the-first battle
fecerat. Superveniente ergo illa, cesserunt ei Saxones, et
he-had-done coming-up therefore it gave-way to-it the-Saxons and
aliquantulum dilacerati, vix iterum sese consociaverunt.
somewhat torn scarcely again themselves joined
Acriores deinde Britones incumbunt: et hostes unanimiter
more-fierce then the-Britons press-on and the-enemies with-one-mind
infestant. Non cessabat Aurelius socios monere, obviantes
harass not ceased Aurelius the-comrades to-admonish the-opposing
vulnerare, fugientes insequi, atque suos hoc modo consolari.
to-wound the-fleeing to-pursue and his-own in-this manner to-console
Similiter Eldol, nunc hac nunc illac discurrens infestis
likewise Eldol now here now there running-about with-hostile

vulneribus adversarios suos afficiebat: quicquid autem ageret,
wounds adversaries his-own afflicted whatever moreover he-did
æstuabat semper habere copiam congrediendi cum Hengisto.
he-burned always to-have the-chance of-engaging with Hengist

Britanni Saxones prosternunt; Hengistus ab Eldol vivus capitur

VI · ELDOL TAKES HENGIST ALIVE

Eldol and Hengist meet at last, and sparks fly from their swords like lightning. When Gorlois of Cornwall comes up, Eldol seizes Hengist by the nose-guard of his helmet and drags him among the Britons, crying that God has granted his wish. The Saxons scatter, Octa to York and Eosa to Alclud.

Cum itaque diversas irruptiones diversæ turmæ facerent,
when and-so various inroads various troops made
convenerunt forte pariter, et mutuos ictus ingeminare
they-came-together by-chance together and mutual blows to-redouble
cœperunt. O viros præ ceteris pugnaces, qui dum mutuos
began O men before the-others pugnacious who while mutual
enses alter in alterum immitterent, prosiliebant ex ictibus
swords one upon the-other they-sent leapt-forth from the-blows
ignes, ac si tonitrua coruscationesque procrearent. Diu
fires as if thunders and-lightnings they-produced long
dubium fuit, utri præstantior vigor inerat. Quandoque
doubtful it-was in-which-of-two more-excellent strength was-present sometimes
enim prævalebat Eldol, et cedebat Hengistus: quandoque
for prevailed Eldol and yielded Hengist sometimes
cedebat Eldol, et prævalebat Hengistus. Dum in hunc
yielded Eldol and prevailed Hengist while in this
modum decertarent: supervenit Gorlois dux Cornubiæ cum
manner they-contended came-up Gorlois duke of-Cornwall with

phalange cui præerat, turmas diversorum infestans. Quem
the-phalanx over-which he-presided the-troops of-various-ones harassing whom
cum aspexisset Eldol, securior effectus, cepit Hengistum per
when had-seen Eldol more-secure made took Hengist by
nasale cassidis, atque totis viribus utens, ipsum intra
the-nose-guard of-the-helmet and with-all strength using him among
cives extraxit. Maximo igitur gaudio fluctuans, excelsa voce
the-citizens dragged with-greatest therefore joy surging with-lofty voice
dicebat: "Desiderium meum implevit Deus, prosternite viri
he-said desire my has-fulfilled God lay-low O-men
obstantes Ambrones, prosternite. Vobis est in manu victoria:
the-opposing Ambrones lay-low to-you is in hand the-victory
vicistis enim devicto Hengisto. Inter hæc, Britones non
you-have-conquered for defeated Hengist among these-things the-Britons not
cessant Paganos oppugnare, sæpius ac sæpius invadere: et cum
cease the-Pagans to-assault more-often and more-often to-attack and when
retrocedebant, iterum revocata audacia resistere. Nec in hunc
they-fell-back again recalled boldness to-resist nor in this
modum quieverunt, donec potiti sunt victoria. Diffugerunt
manner they-rested until gained they-have the-victory fled
itaque Saxones, quo impetus quemque ducebat. Alii urbes, alii
and-so the-Saxons where the-impulse each-one led some cities others
montana nemorosa, alii naves petebant. At Octa, filius Hengisti,
mountains wooded others ships sought but Octa son of-Hengist
cum majori multitudine Eboracum adivit. Eosa vero cognatus
with the-greater multitude York went-to Eosa but kinsman
ejus urbem Alclud: et se cum innumeris armatis munivit.
his the-city Alclud and himself with innumerable armed-men fortified

Eldol Hengisti caput gladio amputat

VII · ELDOL BEHEADS HENGIST

Aurelius takes Conisbrough and rests there three days, tending the wounded. Eldadus, bishop of Gloucester, cites Samuel's hewing of Agag and calls Hengist a second Agag. Eldol beheads him outside the city, and Aurelius has him buried under a mound in the pagan fashion.

Ut itaque triumphavit Aurelius, cepit urbem Conani, quam
when and-so triumphed Aurelius he-took the-city of-Conan which
supra memoraveram: et ibidem tribus diebus moratus est.
above I-had-mentioned and there for-three days stayed he-has
Interea jussit peremptos sepeliri, vulneratos curari,
meanwhile he-ordered the-slain to-be-buried the-wounded to-be-cared-for
fatigatos requiescere, et eosdem diversis levaminibus reficere.
the-wearied to-rest and the-same with-various reliefs to-refresh
Post hæc convocatis ducibus, decernere præcepit, quid
after these-things called-together the-leaders to-decide he-ordered what
de Hengisto ageretur. Aderat Eldadus Claudiocestrensis
about Hengist should-be-done was-present Eldadus of-Gloucester
Episcopus, frater Eldol, vir summæ prudentiæ et religionis.
Bishop brother of-Eldol a-man of-highest prudence and religion
Hic cum Hengistum coram rege stantem aspexit, jussit
this-one when Hengist before the-king standing he-saw ordered
ceteros tacere, et in hunc modum locutus est: "Et si omnes
the-others to-be-silent and in this manner spoken he-has even if all
istum liberare conarentur, ego ipsum in frusta conciderem:
him to-free should-try I him into bits would-cut-up
insequerer namque Prophetam Samuelem, qui cum Agag regem
I-would-follow for the-Prophet Samuel who when Agag king
Amalech in potestate tenuisset, concidit illum in frusta, dicens:
of-Amalek in power he-had-held cut-up him into bits saying

sicut fecisti matres sine liberis, sic faciam hodie matrem
as you-have-made mothers without children so I-shall-make today mother
tuam sine liberis inter mulieres: sic ergo facite de Hengisto,
your without children among women so therefore do about Hengist
qui alter Agag existit." Accepit ergo Eldol gladium, et duxit
who a-second Agag is took therefore Eldol a-sword and led
eum extra urbem, et amputato capite ad tartara direxit. At
him outside the-city and cut-off the-head to Tartarus directed but
Aurelius, ut erat in cunctis rebus modestus, jussit eum sepeliri,
Aurelius as he-was in all things modest ordered him to-be-buried
et cumulum terræ super corpus ejus, Pagano more, apponi.
and a-heap of-earth upon body his in-Pagan fashion to-be-placed

Octa, Hengisti filius, in Eboraco obsessus, Aurelio sese dedit

VIII · OCTA SURRENDERS AT YORK

Besieged in York, Octa comes out with a chain in his hand and sand on his head and confesses that his gods are conquered. Eldadus recalls the mercy Israel showed the Gibeonites and argues that Christians should not be worse than Jews. Aurelius grants Octa and Eosa land near Scotland under a treaty.

Deinde duxit Aurelius exercitum suum ad Eboracum,
then led Aurelius army his-own to York
ut Octam filium Hengisti expugnaret. Cumque civitatem
so-that Octa son of-Hengist he-might-storm and-when the-city
obsideret: dubitavit Octa resistere, et urbem contra tantam
he-was-besieging hesitated Octa to-resist and the-city against so-great
multitudinem defendere. Communicato itaque consilio, egressus
a-multitude to-defend shared and-so counsel gone-out
est cum nobilioribus qui secum aderant, gestans catenam
he-has with the-more-noble who with-him were-present carrying a-chain

in manu, et arenam in capite: et sese regi in hæc
in hand and sand on head and himself to-the-king in these
verba præsentavit: "Victi sunt Dei mei, Deumque tuum
words presented conquered have-been gods my and-God your
regnare non hæsito, qui tot nobiles ad te hoc modo
to-reign not I-doubt who so-many nobles to you in-this manner
venire compellit. Accipe ergo nos, et catenam istam:
to-come compels receive therefore us and chain this
et nisi misericordiam habueris, habe nos ligatos, et ad
and unless mercy you-will-have have us bound and for
quodlibet supplicium voluntarie paratos." Motus ergo Aurelius
any punishment voluntarily ready moved therefore Aurelius
pietate, jussit adjudicari quid in illos agendum foret.
by-pity ordered to-be-adjudged what upon them to-be-done might-be
Cum autem diversi diversa proferrent, surrexit Eldadus
when moreover different-ones different-things put-forward rose Eldadus
Episcopus, et sententiam hoc sermone disseruit: "Gibeonitæ
the-Bishop and the-sentence in-this speech set-forth the-Gibeonites
voluntarie venerunt ad filios Israel, petentes misericordiam,
voluntarily came to the-sons of-Israel seeking mercy
et impetraverunt. Erimus ergo Christiani pejores Judæis,
and obtained-it shall-we-be therefore Christians worse than-the-Jews
abnegantes misericordiam? misericordiam petunt, misericordiam
denying mercy mercy they-seek mercy
habeant. Ampla est insula Britanniæ, et in pluribus
let-them-have ample is the-island of-Britain and in many
locis deserta. Fœderatos ergo illos sinamus saltem deserta
places deserted bound-by-treaty therefore them let-us-allow at-least the-deserts
inhabitare, et nobis in sempiternum serviant. Acquievit
to-inhabit and to-us for ever let-them-serve assented
itaque rex Eldadi sententiæ, et misericordiam de eis
and-so the-king of-Eldadus to-the-sentence and mercy about them

habuit: exemplo etiam Octæ motus, venit Eosa ceterique
had by-the-example also of-Octa moved came Eosa and-the-others
qui diffugerant, et misericordiam impetraverunt. Dedit ergo
who had-fled and mercy obtained he-gave therefore
eis regionem juxta Scotiam, et fœdus cum eis confirmavit."
to-them a-region beside Scotland and a-pact with them confirmed

Aurelius, profligatis hostibus, res regni renovat

IX · AURELIUS RESTORES THE KINGDOM

Aurelius orders the churches the Saxons destroyed to be rebuilt, beginning with York. He restores London, renews the laws, and returns lost estates to their heirs, then restores Winchester. At the monastery of Ambrius near Salisbury, where the betrayed nobles lie, he weeps and resolves to make the place a lasting memorial.

Triumphatis itaque hostibus, convocavit rex consules et
triumphed-over and-so the-enemies called-together the-king the-consuls and
principes regni intra Eboracum, præcepitque eis restaurare
princes of-the-kingdom within York and-ordered them to-restore
Ecclesias, quas gens Saxonum destruxerat. Ipse vero
the-Churches which the-people of-the-Saxons had-destroyed he-himself but
Metropolitanam sedem illius urbis, atque ceteros Episcopatus
the-Metropolitan see of-that city and the-other Bishoprics
provinciæ reædificari incœpit. Emensis deinde quindecim
of-the-province to-be-rebuilt began having-passed then fifteen
diebus, cum operarios diversos in diversis locis statuisset,
days when workmen various in various places he-had-set
adiit urbem Londoniæ, cui hostilis irruptio non pepercerat.
he-went-to the-city of-London to-which the-hostile inroad not had-spared
Condolens igitur illius excidium, revocat undique cives
grieving-with therefore its destruction he-recalls from-everywhere the-citizens

residuos, et eam restituere aggreditur. Ibidem disposuit
remaining and it to-restore undertakes there he-arranged
regnum suum, legesque sopitas renovat, amissas avorum
kingdom his-own and-the-laws lulled-asleep he-renews the-lost of-the-forefathers
possessiones nepotibus distribuit. Quæ autem in tanta
possessions to-the-descendants he-distributes those-which moreover in so-great
calamitate heredes amiserant: largitæ sunt commilitonibus ejus.
calamity heirs had-lost bestowed were on-the-comrades his
Tota intentio ipsius versabatur circa regni restitutionem,
the-whole intent his turned around of-the-kingdom the-restoration
Ecclesiarum reformationem, pacis ac legis renovationem,
of-the-Churches the-reform of-peace and of-law the-renewal
justitiæ compositionem. Exin petivit Guintoniam, ut eam
of-justice the-settlement thence he-sought Winchester so-that it
sicut ceteras restitueret. Cumque in restauratione ejus quæ
as the-others he-might-restore and-when in the-restoration its what-things
ponenda erant posuisset: monitu Eldadi Episcopi, ivit ad
to-be-placed were he-had-placed by-the-warning of-Eldadus the-Bishop he-went to
monasterium prope Kaercaradoc, quæ nunc Salesberia dicitur,
the-monastery near Kaercaradoc which now Salisbury is-called
ubi consules et principes jacebant, quos nefandus Hengistus
where the-consuls and princes lay whom the-abominable Hengist
prodiderat. Erat ibi Cœnobium trecentorum fratrum in
had-betrayed there-was there a-Monastery of-three-hundred brothers on
monte Ambrii, qui, ut fertur, fundator ejus olim extiterat.
the-mountain of-Ambrius who as it-is-said the-founder of-it once had-been
Ut ergo locum quo defuncti jacebant circumspexit, et
when therefore the-place where the-dead lay he-looked-round and
pietate motus in lacrymas solutus est, postremo in diversas
by-pity moved into tears loosened he-was finally into various
meditationes inductus, deliberavit apud se qualiter locum
meditations led he-deliberated with himself how the-place

faceret memorabilem. Dignum namque memoria censebat
he-might-make memorable worthy for of-memory he-judged
cespitem, qui tot nobiles pro patria defunctos protegebat.
the-turf which so-many nobles for the-country dead protected

De chorea gigantea

X · THE GIANTS' DANCE

The craftsmen cannot devise a fitting monument, and Archbishop Tremounus advises sending for Merlin, who is found at the spring of Galabes. Merlin refuses to prophesy idly but advises bringing the Giants' Dance from Mount Killaraus in Ireland. Its great stones, set in a ring, will stand forever.

Convocatis itaque undique artificibus lignorum et lapidum,
called-together and-so from-everywhere craftsmen of-timber and of-stones
præcepit ingeniis uti, novamque structuram adinvenire, quæ
he-ordered wits to-use and-a-new structure to-devise which
in memoriam tantorum virorum in ævum constaret. Cumque
in memory of-so-great men for ever might-stand and-when
omnes ingeniis suis diffidentes, repulsam intulissent: accessit
all wits their-own distrusting refusal had-brought approached
Tremounus urbis Legionum Archiepiscopus ad regem, et ait:
Tremounus of-the-City of-the-Legions Archbishop to the-king and says
"Si uspiam est qui præceptum tuum aggredi valuerit, Merlinus
if anywhere is who order your to-undertake may-be-able Merlin
vates Vortegirni aggredietur. Quippe non existimo alterum in
the-prophet of-Vortigern will-undertake-it indeed not I-think another in
regno tuo esse, cui clarius sit ingenium, sive in futuris
kingdom your to-be to-whom clearer may-be the-wit whether in future-things
dicendis, sive in operationibus machinandis. Jube eum venire,
to-be-said or in works to-be-contrived order him to-come

atque ingenio suo uti, ut opus quod affectas constet." Cum
and wit his-own to-use so-that the-work which you-desire may-stand when
itaque de eo multa interrogasset Aurelius, misit diversos
and-so about him many-things had-asked Aurelius he-sent various
nuncios, per diversas nationes patriæ, ut inventum illum
messengers through various regions of-the-country so-that found him
adducerent: qui peragratis provinciis invenerunt eum in natione
they-might-bring who traveled-through the-provinces found him in the-region
Gewisseorum, ad fontem Galabes, quem solitus fuerat
of-the-Gewissae at the-spring of-Galabes which accustomed he-had-been
frequentare. Indicato autem quid vellent, duxerunt illum ad
to-frequent shown moreover what they-wished they-led him to
regem. Excepit eum rex cum gaudio, jussitque futura dicere,
the-king received him the-king with joy and-ordered future-things to-tell
cupiens miranda audire. Cui Merlinus: "Non sunt revelanda
desiring wonderful-things to-hear to-whom Merlin not are to-be-revealed
hujusmodi mysteria, nisi cum summa necessitas incubuerit.
such mysteries except when highest necessity will-have-pressed
Nam si ea in derisionem sive vanitatem proferrem, taceret
for if them in mockery or vanity I-were-to-put-forth would-be-silent
spiritus qui me docet, et, cum opus superveniret, recederet."
the-spirit which me teaches and when need came-upon would-withdraw
Denique cum omnibus repulsam intulisset, noluit rex
finally when to-all refusal he-had-brought was-unwilling the-king
eum infestare de futuris, sed de operatione præmeditata
him to-trouble about future-things but about the-work premeditated
allocutus est. Cui Merlinus: "Si perpetuo opere sepulturam
addressed he-has to-whom Merlin if with-perpetual work the-burial
virorum decorare volueris, mitte pro chorea gigantum, quæ
of-the-men to-adorn you-will-wish send for the-dance of-the-giants which
est in Killarao monte Hiberniæ. Est etenim ibi structura
is on the-Killaraus mountain of-Ireland there-is for there a-structure

lapidum, quam nemo hujus ætatis construeret, nisi ingenium
of-stones which no-one of-this age could-build unless wit
artem subvectaret. Grandes sunt lapides, nec est aliquis
art were-to-bear-up great are the-stones nor is there-anyone
cujus virtuti cedant: qui si eo modo quo ibi positi
whose to-strength they-may-yield which if in-that manner in-which there placed
sunt, circa plateam locabuntur, stabunt in æternum.
they-are around a-space they-will-be-placed they-will-stand for ever

Utherpendragon ad Hiberniam navigat

XI · UTHER PENDRAGON SAILS TO IRELAND

Aurelius laughs at fetching stones from so far, as if Britain had none. Merlin explains that the giants brought the stones from Africa for their healing power, since water poured over them cured the sick and wounded. Uther is sent with fifteen thousand men and Merlin to bring them.

Ad ea verba Merlini solutus est Aurelius in risum, dicens:
at those words of-Merlin loosened was Aurelius into laughter saying
"Qualiter id fieri posset, ut tanti lapides ex tam
how this to-be-done could that so-great stones from so
longinquo regno adveherentur, ac si Britannia lapidibus
distant a-kingdom should-be-carried as if Britain of-stones
careret, qui ad operationem sufficerent." Ad hæc Merlinus:
lacked which for the-work would-suffice at these-things Merlin
"Ne moveas rex vanum risum: quia hæc absque vanitate
do-not move O-king vain laughter because these-things without vanity
profero. Mystici sunt lapides, et ad diversa medicamenta
I-put-forth mystical are the-stones and for various medicines
salubres. Gigantes olim asportaverunt eos ex ultimis finibus
healthful the-giants once carried them from the-farthest borders

Africæ, et posuerunt in Hibernia, dum eum inhabitarent.
of-Africa and placed in Ireland while it they-inhabited
Erat autem causa, ut balnea intra illos conficerent, cum
was moreover the-cause that baths within them they-might-make when
infirmitate gravarentur. Lavabant namque lapides, et intra
by-sickness they-were-weighed-down they-washed for the-stones and into
balnea diffundebant: unde ægroti curabantur. Miscebant etiam
the-baths poured whence the-sick were-cured they-mixed also
cum herbarum confectionibus, unde vulnerati sanabantur. Non
with of-herbs preparations whence the-wounded were-healed not
est lapis ibi, qui medicamento careat." Cum hoc audissent
is a-stone there which of-medicine lacks when this had-heard
Britones, censuerunt pro lapidibus mittere, populumque
the-Britons they-judged for the-stones to-send and-the-people
Hiberniæ prælio infestare, si eos detinerent. Postremo
of-Ireland with-battle to-harass if them they-should-withhold finally
eligitur Utherpendragon frater regis, et quindecim milia
is-chosen Uther-Pendragon brother of-the-king and fifteen thousand
armatorum, ut huic negocio parerent. Eligitur et ipse
of-armed-men so-that to-this business they-might-attend is-chosen also he-himself
Merlinus, ut ipsius ingenio et consilio agenda
Merlin so-that his by-wit and counsel the-things-to-be-done
tractarentur. Paratis deinde navibus, mare ingrediuntur,
might-be-handled prepared then the-ships the-sea they-enter
prosperisque ventis Hiberniam adeunt.
and-with-favorable winds Ireland they-reach

Gillomanius, rex Hiberniæ profligatur, Britanni choream giganteam secum reportant

XII · THE GIANTS' DANCE BROUGHT TO BRITAIN

The Irish king Gillomanius mocks the Britons and swears they will not take a single stone, but Uther routs him. At Killaraus the Britons fail to move the stones with cables and ladders, until Merlin laughs and takes them down with his own devices. At a Pentecost crown-wearing on Mount Ambrius, Aurelius makes Samson archbishop of York and Dubricius of the City of the Legions, and Merlin raises the stones around the graves.

Ea tempestate regnabat in Hibernia Gillomanius, juvenis
at-that time reigned in Ireland Gillomanius a-youth
miræ probitatis. Hic cum audisset, quod in Hiberniam
of-wonderful prowess this-one when he-had-heard that in Ireland
applicuissent Britones, collegit exercitum grandem, et eis
had-landed the-Britons gathered an-army great and to-them
obviam perrexit. Cumque didicisset causam adventus eorum,
to-meet proceeded and-when he-had-learned the-cause of-the-coming of-them
astantibus arrisit, et ait: "Non miror, si ignava gens
at-the-bystanders he-smiled and says not I-wonder if the-cowardly people
Saxonum, insulam Britonum devastare potuit, cum Britones
of-the-Saxons the-island of-the-Britons to-lay-waste could since the-Britons
bruti sint et stulti. Quis etenim hujusmodi stultitiam audivit?
brutish are and foolish who for such folly has-heard
Nunquid meliora sunt saxa Hiberniæ quam Britanniæ:
surely-not better are the-rocks of-Ireland than of-Britain
ut regnum nostrum pro ipsis ad præliandum provocetur?
that kingdom our for them to fighting should-be-provoked
Armate vos viri, et defendite patriam vestram, quia
arm yourselves O-men and defend country your because
dum mihi vita inerit, non auferent nobis etiam
while in-me life will-be-present not they-will-take-away from-us even

minimum lapidem choreæ." Uther igitur, ut vidit ipsos ad
the-least stone of-the-dance Uther therefore when he-saw them for
præliandum paratos, festinato agmine in eos irruit. Nec
fighting ready hastened column upon them rushed nor
mora, prævaluerunt Britones: Hiberniensibusque laceratis ac
delay prevailed the-Britons and-the-Irish torn and
interfectis, Gillomanium in fugam pepulerunt. Potiti autem
killed Gillomanius into flight they-drove having-gained moreover
victoria, petierunt Killaraum montem, lapidumque structuram
of-the-victory they-sought the-Killaraus mountain and-of-the-stones the-structure
adepti, gavisi sunt, et admirati. Circumstantibus itaque
having-reached rejoiced they-have and wondered standing-around and-so
cunctis, accessit Merlinus, et ait: "Utimini viribus vestris,
all approached Merlin and says use strengths your
juvenes: ut in deponendo lapides istos, sciatis utrum
O-youths so-that in taking-down stones these you-may-know whether
ingenium virtuti, an virtus ingenio cedat." Ad imperium igitur
wit to-strength or strength to-wit yields at the-command therefore
ejus indulserunt unanimiter multimodis machinationibus,
his they-devoted-themselves with-one-mind to-manifold contrivances
et aggressi sunt choream deponere. Alii funes, alii restes,
and undertaken they-have the-dance to-take-down some cables others ropes
alii scalas paraverunt, ut quod affectabant, perficerent:
others ladders prepared so-that what they-desired they-might-complete
nec ullatenus perficere valuerunt. Deficientibus cunctis, solutus
nor in-any-way to-complete they-were-able failing all loosened
est Merlinus in risum, et suas machinationes confecit.
was Merlin into laughter and his-own contrivances made
Denique cum omnia quæ necessaria erant apposuisset: levius
finally when all-things which necessary were he-had-applied more-easily
quam credi potest lapides deposuit: depositos autem,
than to-be-believed can the-stones he-took-down the-taken-down moreover

fecit deferri ad naves, et introponi: et sic cum gaudio
he-caused to-be-carried to the-ships and to-be-put-in and thus with joy
in Britanniam reverti cœperunt. Et prosperantibus ventis
into Britain to-return they-began and prospering winds
applicant, sepulturasque virorum cum lapidibus apparant.
they-land and-the-burials of-the-men with the-stones they-prepare
Quod cum indicatum fuisset Aurelio, diversos nuncios
which when shown had-been to-Aurelius various messengers
per diversas partes Britanniæ direxit: jussitque clerum ac
through various parts of-Britain he-directed and-ordered the-clergy and
populum submonere, submonitos vero, in montem Ambrii
people to-summon the-summoned indeed on the-mountain of-Ambrius
convenire, ut cum gaudio et honore prædictam sepulturam
to-come-together so-that with joy and honor the-aforesaid burial
repararent. Ad edictum ergo illius venerunt Pontifices ac
they-might-restore at the-edict therefore his came the-Pontiffs and
Abbates, et ex unoquoque ordine qui ei subditi fuerant:
the-Abbots and from every order which to-him subject had-been
et cum omnes convenissent, instante die quæ prædicta
and when all had-come-together pressing the-day which foretold
fuerat, imposuit Aurelius diadema capiti suo, festumque
had-been put Aurelius the-diadem on-head his-own and-the-feast
Pentecostes regaliter celebravit: tribusque sequentibus diebus
of-Pentecost royally celebrated and-for-three following days
continue celebrationi vacavit. Interea honores qui possessoribus
continuously to-the-celebration attended meanwhile honors which owners
carebant, domesticis suis largitur, ut eis obsequii sui
lacked to-the-household his-own he-bestows so-that for-them of-service their-own
laborem remuneraret. Evacuatæ erant duæ Metropolitanæ
the-labor he-might-repay emptied were the-two Metropolitan
sedes, Eboraci videlicet et urbis Legionum, a pastoribus
sees of-York namely and of-the-City of-the-Legions of shepherds

suis: quibus communi populorum consilio consulere
their-own for-which with-the-common of-the-peoples counsel to-provide
volens, concessit Eboracum Samsoni illustri viro, summaque
wishing he-granted York to-Samson a-renowned man and-for-highest
religione famoso: urbem vero Legionum Dubricio, quem
religion famous the-City indeed of-the-Legions to-Dubricius whom
divina providentia in eodem loco profuturum elegerat. Cumque
divine providence in the-same place about-to-profit had-chosen and-when
hæc et cetera in regno suo statuisset: præcepit
these-things and other-things in kingdom his-own he-had-set-up he-ordered
Merlino lapides circa sepulturam erigere, quos ex Hibernia
Merlin the-stones around the-burial to-raise which from Ireland
asportaverat. At ille præceptis ejus obediens, eodem modo
he-had-carried but he to-the-orders his obeying in-the-same manner
quo in Killarao monte Hiberniæ positi fuerant, erexit illos
in-which on the-Killaraus mountain of-Ireland placed they-had-been raised them
circa sepulturam: et ingenium virtuti prævalere comprobavit.
around the-burial and wit over-strength to-prevail proved

Pascentius Saxones iterum in Britanniam introducit

XIII · PASCENTIUS BRINGS BACK THE SAXONS

Vortigern's son Pascentius, exiled in Germany, wins its youth with promises of gold and silver to avenge his father. He lands in the north and lays it waste. Aurelius meets him in battle and by God's will defeats him.

Eodem tempore Pascentius Vortegirni filius, qui in Germaniam
at-the-same time Pascentius of-Vortigern son who into Germany
diffugerat, commovebat omnem armatum militem illius regni
had-fled stirred every armed knight of-that kingdom

in Aurelium Ambrosium, patremque suum vindicare volebat.
against Aurelius Ambrosius and-father his-own to-avenge wished
Promittebat autem infinitam copiam auri et argenti: si auxilio
he-promised moreover an-infinite abundance of-gold and of-silver if with-the-help
eorum Britanniam sibi subdidisset. Denique cum promissis
of-them Britain to-himself he-had-subjected finally when with-promises
suis universam juventutem corrupisset, paravit maximum
his-own all the-youth he-had-corrupted he-prepared a-very-great
navigium, applicuitque Aquilonaribus insulæ partibus, ac
fleet and-landed on-the-northern of-the-island parts and
eas vastare incœpit. Cumque illud regi nunciatum
them to-lay-waste began and-when that to-the-king announced
fuisset, collegit exercitum suum, obviamque eis perrexit atque
had-been he-gathered army his-own and-to-meet them proceeded and
sævientes hostes ad prælium provocavit. Qui ultro
the-raging enemies to battle challenged who of-their-own-accord
ad bellum venientes, commiserunt cum civibus pugnam: sed
to war coming joined with the-citizens a-fight but
volente Deo devicti fuerunt, et in fugam compulsi.
willing God defeated were and into flight driven

Pascentius secundum cum Gillomanio revertitur. Mors Aurelii Ambrosii

XIV · THE DEATH OF AURELIUS AMBROSIUS

Pascentius joins Gillomanius in Ireland, and they land at Menevia while Aurelius lies sick at Winchester. Pascentius promises the Saxon Eopa a thousand pounds of silver to kill the king, and Eopa, disguised as a monk and physician, gives Aurelius a poisoned potion, from which he dies in his sleep. A star appears with a fiery ball like a dragon, casting one ray toward Gaul and one toward the Irish Sea.

Pascentius ergo in fugam propulsus, non ausus est in
Pascentius therefore into flight driven not dared has into
Germaniam redire: sed retortis velis adivit Gillomanium in
Germany to-return but turned-back sails went-to Gillomanius in
Hiberniam, et ab illo receptus est. Et cum infortunium
Ireland and by him received he-was and when misfortune
suum notificasset, miseratus Gillomanius, pactus est ei
his-own he-had-made-known pitying Gillomanius pledged has to-him
auxilium: conquerens de injuria quam Uther Aurelii frater
help complaining about the-wrong which Uther of-Aurelius brother
sibi intulerat, dum gigantum choream perquireret. Confirmato
on-him had-brought while of-the-giants the-dance he-sought confirmed
tandem inter ipsos fœdere, paraverunt sibi naves, et
at-last between them the-pact they-prepared for-themselves ships and
ingressi sunt eas, et in Meneviam urbem applicuerunt.
entered they-have them and at Menevia the-city landed
Quo divulgato, Utherpendragon excitata armatorum copia in
which spread-abroad Uther-Pendragon roused of-armed-men a-host into
Cambriam ivit, ut cum eis pugnaret. Frater etenim ejus
Cambria went so-that with them he-might-fight the-brother for his
Aurelius in Guintonia urbe morbo gravatus jacebat, nec
Aurelius in Winchester the-city with-sickness weighed-down lay nor

poterat ipse adire. Cumque id Pascentio et Gillomanio,
could he-himself to-go and-when this to-Pascentius and to-Gillomanius
Saxonibusque qui aderant compertum fuisset, gavisi sunt
and-to-the-Saxons who were-present discovered had-been rejoiced they-have
valde: quia existimabant propter infirmitatem ejus, regnum
greatly because they-thought on-account-of the-sickness his the-kingdom
Britanniæ leviter subdendum. Et dum murmuratio inde per
of-Britain easily to-be-subjected and while murmuring thence through
populos fieret: accessit unus ex Saxonibus, nomine Eopa, ad
the-peoples was-made approached one of the-Saxons by-name Eopa to
Pascentium, et ait: "Quibus donariis ditabis hominem, qui
Pascentius and says with-what gifts will-you-enrich the-man who
Aurelium Ambrosium tibi interficiet?" Cui Pascentius: "O
Aurelius Ambrosius for-you will-kill to-whom Pascentius O
si quempiam reperirem, cui hoc in animo staret, darem
if anyone I-found in-whom this in mind stood I-would-give
illi mille argenti libras, familiaritatemque meam dum
to-him a-thousand of-silver pounds and-intimacy my while
viverem: et si fortuna permiserit ut regni diademate
I-lived and if fortune will-have-permitted that of-the-kingdom with-the-diadem
potiar, faciam illum centurionem, idque juramento
I-may-gain-possession I-shall-make him a-centurion and-this by-oath
confirmabo." Ad hæc Eopa: "Didici linguam Britannicam,
I-shall-confirm at these-things Eopa I-have-learned the-tongue British
moresque hominum scio: in medica arte peritus. Si igitur
and-the-ways of-the-men I-know in the-medical art skilled if therefore
ea quæ promittis, executus mihi fueris: fingam
those-things which you-promise carried-out to-me you-will-have I-shall-pretend
me Christianum esse, et Britannum: et quasi medicus
myself a-Christian to-be and a-Briton and as-if a-physician
præsentiam regis nactus, ei potionem qua obibit
the-presence of-the-king having-got for-him a-potion by-which he-will-die

conficiam. Et ut citius aditum reperiam, me monachum
I-shall-make and that more-swiftly access I-may-find me a-monk
religiosissimum, et omni dogmate eruditum fingam. Cumque
most-religious and in-every doctrine learned I-shall-feign and-when
hoc promisisset, pepigit Pascentius fœdus cum illo, et ea
this he-had-promised pledged Pascentius a-pact with him and those-things
quæ spoponderat, juramento confirmavit. Rasit igitur Eopa
which he-had-promised by-oath confirmed shaved therefore Eopa
barbam suam, capiteque tonso, monachalem cepit habitum:
beard his-own and-with-head tonsured the-monastic took habit
et vasis medicamentorum suorum oneratus, iter
and with-vessels of-medicines his-own loaded the-march
Guintoniam versus arripuit. Urbem postremo ingressus, obtulit
Winchester towards took the-city finally having-entered he-offered
obsequium suum clientibus regis et gratiam in oculis
service his-own to-the-retainers of-the-king and favor in the-eyes
eorum invenit. Nihil enim desiderabilius expectabant quam
of-them found nothing for more-desirable they-awaited than
medicum. Exceptus itaque, et in præsentiam regis ductus,
a-physician received and-so and into the-presence of-the-king led
promisit se redditurum ei sanitatem, si potionibus suis
promised himself about-to-restore to-him health if with-potions his-own
foveretur. Nec mora, potionem conficere jussus, submiscuit
he-were-cherished nor delay a-potion to-make ordered he-mixed-in
venenum, regique porrexit. Quod cum cœpisset Aurelius et
poison and-to-the-king held-out which when had-taken Aurelius and
hausisset, jussus est confestim a nefando Ambrone sub
had-drunk ordered he-was forthwith by the-abominable Ambron under
coopertorio suo delitere, atque obdormire: ut magis potio
coverlet his-own to-lie-hid and to-fall-asleep so-that more the-potion
detestanda operaretur. Paruit illico rex monitis proditoris
detestable might-work obeyed on-the-spot the-king the-warnings of-the-traitor

illius, et quasi sanitatem recepturus obdormivit. Nec mora,
that and as-if health about-to-receive fell-asleep nor delay
illabente veneno per poros corporis et venas, consecuta
gliding-in poison through the-pores of-the-body and the-veins followed
est mors soporem, quæ nemini parcere consuevit. Interea
has death the-sleep which to-no-one to-spare is-accustomed meanwhile
nefandus proditor ille, inter unum et alium elapsus, in
abominable traitor that between one and another having-slipped in
curia nusquam comparuit. Hæc dum Guintoniæ agerentur,
the-court nowhere appeared these-things while at-Winchester were-being-done
apparuit stella miræ magnitudinis et claritatis, uno radio
appeared a-star of-wonderful size and brightness with-one ray
contenta: ad radium vero, erat globus igneus in similitudinem
content at the-ray indeed was a-ball fiery into the-likeness
draconis extensus, et ex ore illius procedebant duo
of-a-dragon stretched and from the-mouth its proceeded two
radii, quorum unus longitudinem suam ultra Gallicanum
rays of-which one length its-own beyond the-Gallic
clima videbatur extendere: alter vero versus Hibernicum
region seemed to-stretch the-other but towards the-Irish
mare vergens, in septem minores radios terminabatur.
sea turning into seven lesser rays was-ended

Quomodo cometa Utheris regnum præsignificavit

XV · HOW THE COMET FORETOLD UTHER'S REIGN

The star terrifies all who see it, and Uther, marching into Cambria, asks Merlin its meaning. Weeping, Merlin announces that Aurelius is dead. Uther will win and be king of all Britain; the ray toward Gaul signifies a son of great power, and the other a daughter whose sons and grandsons will hold Britain.

Apparente vero præfato sidere, perculsi sunt omnes metu et
appearing indeed the-aforesaid star struck were all with-fear and
admiratione qui illud inspiciebant. Uther etiam frater regis,
wonder who it beheld Uther also the-brother of-the-king
hostilem exercitum in Cambriam ducens, non minimo terrore
a-hostile army into Cambria leading not by-the-least terror
perculsus, quosque sapientes adibat, ut quid portenderet
struck all the-wise approached so-that what portended
stella notificarent. Inter ceteros jussit vocare Merlinum:
the-star they-might-make-known among the-others he-ordered to-call Merlin
nam et ipse in exercitum venerat, ut consilio ipsius
for also he-himself into the-army had-come so-that by-the-counsel his
res præliorum tractarentur. Qui ut in præsentiam regis
the-affairs of-battles might-be-handled who when into the-presence of-the-king
ductus astitisset, jussus est significationem sideris enucleare.
led he-had-stood ordered he-was the-meaning of-the-star to-unfold
Mox ille in fletum erumpens, revocato spiritu exclamavit,
soon he into weeping bursting recalled the-spirit cried-out
et dixit: "O damnum irrecuperabile! O orbatum populum
and said O loss irrecoverable O bereaved people
Britanniæ! O nobilissimi regis migrationem! Defunctus est
of-Britain O of-the-most-noble king the-departure died has
inclytus Britonum rex Aurelius Ambrosius: cujus obitu
the-renowned of-the-Britons king Aurelius Ambrosius whose by-death

omnes obibimus, nisi Deus auxilium subvectet. Festina
all we-shall-perish unless God help bring hurry
ergo, dux nobilissime Uther, festina, et conflictum cum
therefore O-leader most-noble Uther hurry and the-conflict with
hostibus ne differas: victoria tibi in manu erit: et rex
the-enemies do-not put-off the-victory for-you in hand will-be and king
eris totius Britanniæ. Te enim sidus istud significat,
you-will-be of-the-whole Britain you for star this signifies
et igneus draco sub sidere. Radius autem qui versus
and the-fiery dragon under the-star the-ray moreover which towards
Gallicanam plagam porrigitur, portendit tibi filium futurum
the-Gallic region is-stretched portends to-you a-son about-to-be
potentissimum, cujus potestas omnia regna habebit quæ
most-powerful whose power all kingdoms will-have which
protegit. Alter vero radius filiam significat, cujus filii et
it-protects the-other but ray a-daughter signifies whose sons and
nepotes regnum Britanniæ successive habebunt."
grandsons the-kingdom of-Britain successively will-have

Pascentius et Gillomanius in prælio occisi

XVI · PASCENTIUS AND GILLOMANIUS KILLED

Uther, still doubting Merlin, attacks the enemy near Menevia and wins, killing Gillomanius and Pascentius and cutting down the fleeing barbarians. Returning to Winchester, he finds that Aurelius has been buried. The bishops and clergy have laid him with royal rites within the Giants' Dance, as he ordered while he lived.

At Uther in dubio existens an verum protulisset Merlinus,
but Uther in doubt being whether truth had-uttered Merlin
in hostes tamen ut cœperat, progreditur. Advenerat
against the-enemies yet as he-had-begun advances had-come

namque prope Meneviam, ita ut iter medietatis diei restaret.
for near Menevia so that a-march of-half a-day remained
Cumque adventus ejus Gillomanio et Pascentio, Saxonibusque
and-when the-arrival his to-Gillomanius and to-Pascentius and-to-the-Saxons
qui aderant, relatus fuisset: egressi sunt ei obviam ut cum
who were-present reported had-been gone-out they-have him to-meet so-that with
ipso congrederentur. Porro ut sese adinvicem conspexerunt,
him they-might-engage further when themselves each-other they-saw
agmina sua in utraque parte statuerunt, cominusque
columns their-own on each side they-set and-hand-to-hand
accedentes pugnaverunt: pugnantes autem interficiuntur milites
approaching they-fought fighting moreover are-killed knights
hinc et inde, ut in tali eventu fieri solet. Denique cum
on-this-side and on-that as in such event to-happen is-wont finally when
multum diei præterisset, prævaluit Uther: interfectisque
much of-the-day had-passed prevailed Uther and-killed
Gillomanio et Pascentio, triumpho potitus est. Fugientes
Gillomanius and Pascentius of-the-triumph gained he-has fleeing
itaque Barbari, festinaverunt ad naves suas: sed fugiendo
and-so the-barbarians hurried to ships their-own but in-fleeing
a persequentibus civibus trucidabantur. Cessit prorsus victoria
by the-pursuing citizens were-slaughtered fell utterly the-victory
duci, favente Christo, qui post tantum laborem, quam
to-the-leader favoring Christ who after so-great labor as
citius potuit, regressus est Guintoniam. Advenerant
more-swiftly he-could returned he-has to-Winchester had-come
namque nuncii, qui regis casum indicaverant, ipsumque
for messengers who of-the-king the-fate had-shown and-him
jam ab Episcopis patriæ sepultum esse prope Cœnobium
already by the-Bishops of-the-country buried to-be near the-Monastery
Ambrii, intra choream gigantum, quam vivens fieri
of-Ambrius within the-dance of-the-giants which living to-be-made

præceperat. Audito etenim ipsius obitu, convenerant in
he-had-ordered heard for his death had-come-together into
urbem Guintoniam Pontifices et Abbates, atque totus clerus
the-city Winchester the-Pontiffs and Abbots and the-whole clergy
ejusdem provinciæ, et ut tantum regem decebat funus
of-the-same province and as so-great a-king befitted the-funeral
ipsius procuraverunt. Et quia vivens adhuc præceperat, ut in
his they-attended-to and because living still he-had-ordered that in
cœmeterio quod ipse paraverat sepeliretur, tulerunt corpus
the-cemetery which he-himself had-prepared he-should-be-buried they-carried the-body
ejus eodem atque cum regalibus exequiis humaverunt.
his to-the-same-place and with royal funeral-rites interred

Utherpendragon fit rex Britanniæ

XVII · UTHER PENDRAGON BECOMES KING OF BRITAIN

Uther is crowned with the assent of all. Remembering Merlin's reading of the star, he has two golden dragons made, offering one in the cathedral of Winchester and keeping the other to carry into battle. From then on he is called Pendragon, the dragon's head.

At Uther frater ejus, convocato regni clero et populo,
but Uther brother his called-together of-the-kingdom the-clergy and people
cepit diadema insulæ: annuentibusque cunctis sublimatus
took the-diadem of-the-island and-with-assenting all raised
est in regem. Reminiscens autem expositionis, quam
he-was into king remembering moreover the-exposition which
Merlinus de supradicto sidere fecerat: jussit fabricari duos
Merlin about the-above-said star had-made he-ordered to-be-made two
dracones ex auro, ad draconis similitudinem, quem ad radium
dragons of gold to of-the-dragon the-likeness which at the-ray

stellæ inspexerat. Qui ut mira arte fabricati fuerunt:
of-the-star he-had-seen which when with-wonderful art made they-had-been
obtulit unum in ecclesia primæ sedis Guintoniæ: alterum
he-offered one in the-church of-the-first see of-Winchester the-other
vero sibi ad ferendum in prælia retinuit. Ab illo ergo
indeed for-himself for carrying into battles kept from that therefore
die vocatus fuit Utherpendragon: quod Britannica lingua
day called was Uther-Pendragon which in-the-British tongue
caput draconis appellamus. Idcirco hanc appellationem recepit:
the-head of-the-dragon we-call therefore this name he-received
quia Merlinus eum in regem per draconem prophetaverat.
because Merlin him into king through the-dragon had-prophesied

Octa et Eosa in prælio capiuntur

XVIII · OCTA AND EOSA ARE CAPTURED IN BATTLE

Released from their treaty by Aurelius' death, Octa and Eosa raise the Saxons and ravage the north as far as York. Uther is driven back to Mount Damen, but on Gorlois' advice the Britons descend at night and attack the Saxon camp. The Saxons are taken by surprise and slaughtered, and Octa and Eosa are captured.

Interea Octa Hengisti filius atque Eosa cognatus ejus, cum
meanwhile Octa of-Hengist son and Eosa kinsman his since
soluti essent a fœdere quod Aurelio Ambrosio pepigerant,
loosed they-were from the-pact which with-Aurelius Ambrosius they-had-pledged
moliti sunt inferre inquietudinem regi, atque nationes
attempted have to-bring disturbance on-the-king and the-nations
ejus dilacerare. Associabant namque sibi Saxones quos
his to-tear-apart they-joined for to-themselves the-Saxons whom
Pascentius conduxerat: nunciosque suos propter ceteros in
Pascentius had-brought and-messengers their-own for the-others into

Germaniam dirigebant. Maxima itaque multitudine stipatus,
Germany directed with-greatest and-so multitude surrounded
Aquilonares provincias invasit: nec sævitiæ suæ indulgere
the-northern provinces he-invaded nor to-savagery his-own to-indulge
quievit, donec urbes et promontoria ab Albania usque ad
rested until the-cities and strongholds from Albany all-the-way to
Eboracum destruxit. Postremo cum urbem obsidere incepisset:
York he-destroyed finally when the-city to-besiege he-had-begun
supervenit Utherpendragon, cum tota regni fortitudine:
came-up Uther-Pendragon with the-whole of-the-kingdom strength
et cum illo præliatus est. Restiterunt viriliter Saxones, et
and with him fought he-has resisted manfully the-Saxons and
irruptiones Britonum tolerantes, ipsos in fugam pepulerunt.
the-inroads of-the-Britons enduring them into flight drove
Victoria autem potiti, insecuti sunt eos cadentes usque
of-the-victory moreover having-gained pursued they-have them falling all-the-way
ad montem Damen, dum sol diem stare permittebat. Erat
to the-mount Damen while the-sun the-day to-stand permitted was
autem mons ille arduus, in cacumine coryletum habens,
moreover mountain that steep on the-top a-hazel-thicket having
in medio vero saxa prærupta, latebris ferarum habilia.
in the-middle indeed rocks sheer for-lairs of-wild-beasts fit
Occupaverunt eum Britones totaque nocte intra saxa et
seized it the-Britons and-the-whole night within the-rocks and
coryleta commanserunt. At cum Arctos temonem vertere
hazel-thickets stayed but when the-Bear its-pole to-turn
cœpit: præcepit Uther consules suos, atque principes ad
began ordered Uther consuls his-own and princes to
se vocari, ut consilio eorum tractaret, qualiter in
himself to-be-called so-that with-the-counsel their he-might-treat how upon
hostes irruptionem facerent. Convenerunt ocyus cuncti
the-enemies an-inroad they-might-make came-together more-swiftly all

in præsentia regis: jussitque dicere quid consiliarentur: et
in the-presence of-the-king and-he-ordered to-say what they-would-advise and
Gorloi duci Cornubiæ primum sententiam suam proferre
to-Gorlois the-duke of-Cornwall first opinion his-own to-put-forth
præceperunt. Erat enim magni consilii et ætatis maturæ.
they-ordered he-was for of-great counsel and of-age ripe
'Non opus est' (inquit) ambagibus vanis aut sermonibus, dum
not need is he-says of-ambiguities vain or of-speeches while
adhuc noctem restare conspicimus. Utendum nobis est audacia
still the-night to-remain we-see to-be-used by-us is boldness
et fortitudine, si vita et libertate frui diutius volueritis.
and strength if life and liberty to-enjoy longer you-will-wish
Magna est Paganorum multitudo et pugnandi avida: nos vero
great is of-the-Pagans the-multitude and for-fighting eager we indeed
rariores existimus. Si autem diem supervenire expectaverimus:
fewer are if moreover the-day to-come we-shall-have-awaited
non censeo nobis utile, ut cum eis congrediamur. Eia ergo,
not I-judge for-us useful that with them we-should-engage come therefore
dum tenebræ durant, densatis turmis descendamus, ipsosque
while the-darkness lasts thickened troops let-us-descend and-them
intra castra sua subito impetu invadamus. Nam dum nihil
within camp their-own with-sudden attack let-us-invade for while nothing
hæsitaverint, nec nos venturos hoc modo existimaverint:
they-will-have-hesitated nor us about-to-come in-this manner will-have-thought
si unanimiter irruentes usi fuerimus audacia, triumpho
if with-one-mind rushing used we-shall-have boldness of-the-triumph
sine dubio potiemur. Placuit regi omnibusque illius
without doubt we-shall-gain-possession pleased the-king and-all his
sententia: monitisque ejus paruerunt. Statuti namque per
opinion and-to-the-warnings his they-obeyed set for through
turmas et armati, castra hostium petunt, et unanimi
troops and armed the-camp of-the-enemies they-seek and with-one-minded

affectu in ipsos irruere proponunt. At dum prope incederent,
desire upon them to-rush they-propose but while near they-advanced
compererunt vigiles eorum adventum, qui soporatos socios
discovered the-watchmen their arrival who the-sleeping comrades
sonitu lituorum evigilaverunt. Turbati itaque hostes, et
with-the-sound of-trumpets awoke troubled and-so the-enemies and
stupefacti, partim armare sese festinant, partim formidine
stunned partly to-arm themselves hurry partly by-fear
præoccupati, quo impetus ducebat, discurrebant. At Britones,
seized-beforehand where the-impulse led ran-about but the-Britons
densatis incedentes turmis, ocyus adeunt castra, et invadunt:
thickened advancing troops more-swiftly approach the-camp and attack
repertoque aditu, nudatis ensibus in hostes concurrunt. Qui
and-found an-entry bared swords upon the-enemies they-run who
ita ex improviso occupati, non viriliter reddiderunt prælium:
so from unforeseen seized not manfully returned battle
cum ceteri audaciam cum præmeditatione recepissent. Porro
since the-others boldness with forethought had-received further
Britones acriter irruere intendunt, trucidare conantur: et
the-Britons fiercely to-rush intend to-slaughter try and
Paganos ad milia interficiunt: Denique capti sunt Octa et
the-Pagans to thousands they-kill finally taken were Octa and
Eosa, et Saxones penitus dissipati.
Eosa and the-Saxons utterly scattered

Uther amore Igernæ captivatus, per artes Merlini magicas, ejus potitur

XIX · UTHER AND IGERNA

At an Easter feast in London, Uther falls in love with Igerna, wife of Gorlois of Cornwall, who leaves the court in anger. Uther ravages Cornwall, and Gorlois puts Igerna in Tintagel and shuts himself in Dimilioc. By Merlin's drugs Uther takes Gorlois' shape, enters Tintagel, lies with Igerna that night, and Arthur is conceived.

Post illam vero victoriam, petivit urbem Alclud, provinciæque
after that indeed victory he-sought the-city Alclud and-for-the-province
illi disposuit: pacemque ubique renovavit: circuivit etiam
that he-arranged and-peace everywhere renewed he-went-round also
omnes Scotorum nationes, rebellemque populum a feritate
all of-the-Scots the-nations and-the-rebellious people from ferocity
sua deposuit: tantam namque justitiam exercebat per
its-own put-down so-great for justice he-exercised through
patrias, quantam alter prædecessorum suorum non fecerat.
the-countries as-great-as another of-predecessors his-own not had-done
Tremebant ergo in diebus ejus quicunque perverse agebant,
trembled therefore in the-days his whoever perversely acted
cum sine misericordia plecterentur. Denique pacificatis
since without mercy they-were-struck finally pacified
Aquilonaribus provinciis, ivit Londoniam: jussitque ibidem
the-northern provinces he-went to-London and-ordered there
Octam atque Eosam in carcere servari. Festo etiam paschali
Octa and Eosa in prison to-be-kept the-feast also of-Easter
superveniente; præcepit proceribus regni in eandem
coming-on he-ordered the-nobles of-the-kingdom into the-same
urbem convenire, ut sumpto diademate tantum diem cum
city to-come-together so-that taken the-diadem so-great a-day with

honore celebraret. Paruerunt ergo cuncti, et diversi ex
honor he-might-celebrate obeyed therefore all and various from
diversis civitatibus venientes, instante festivitate convenerunt.
various cities coming pressing the-festival came-together
Celebravit itaque solennitatem rex ut proposuerat: et gaudio
celebrated and-so the-solemnity the-king as he-had-proposed and to-joy
cum proceribus suis indulsit. Lætitiam agebant cuncti: quia
with nobles his-own gave-himself gladness made all because
ipsos læto animo rex receperat. Advenerant namque
them with-glad mind the-king had-received had-come for
tot nobiles cum conjugibus et filiabus suis, læto
so-many nobles with wives and daughters their-own of-the-glad
convivio digni. Aderat inter ceteros Gorlois dux Cornubiæ,
banquet worthy was-present among the-others Gorlois duke of-Cornwall
cum Igerna conjuge sua, cujus pulcritudo mulieres omnes
with Igerna wife his-own whose beauty the-women all
totius Britanniæ superabat. Cumque inter alias inspexisset
of-the-whole of-Britain surpassed and-when among others had-seen
eam rex, subito amore illius incaluit: ita ut postpositis
her the-king suddenly with-love of-her grew-hot so that set-aside
ceteris, totam intentionem suam circa eam verteret. Hæc sola
the-others the-whole intent his-own towards her he-turned she alone
erat cui fercula incessanter dirigebat: cui aurea pocula
was to-whom dishes unceasingly he-directed to-whom golden cups
familiaribus internunciis mittebat: arridebat ei multotiens,
by-intimate go-betweens he-sent he-smiled at-her many-times
jocosa verba interserebat. Quod cum comperisset maritus
jesting words he-inserted which when had-discovered husband
ejus, confestim iratus est, et ex curia sine licentia
her forthwith angry was and from the-court without leave
recessit. Non affuit qui eum revocare quivisset, cum
withdrew not there-was-present who him to-recall could since

id solum amittere timeret, quod super omnia diligebat.
that alone to-lose he-feared which above all-things he-loved
Iratus itaque Uther, præcepit ei redire in curiam suam,
angry and-so Uther ordered him to-return to court his-own
ut de illata injuria rectitudinem ab eo sumeret:
so-that for the-inflicted wrong satisfaction from him he-might-take
cui cum parere diffugisset Gorlois, admodum iratus est
to-whom when to-obey had-shunned Gorlois greatly angry was
rex, juravitque jurejurando, se vastaturum regionem
the-king and-swore by-oath himself about-to-lay-waste the-region
ipsius, nisi ad satisfactionem festinaret. Nec mora, prædicta
his unless to satisfaction he-hurried nor delay the-aforesaid
ira inter eos manente, collegit exercitum magnum rex,
anger between them remaining he-gathered an-army great the-king
petivitque provinciam Cornubiæ, atque ignem in urbes
and-sought the-province of-Cornwall and fire upon the-cities
et oppida accumulavit. At Gorlois non ausus est congredi
and towns heaped but Gorlois not dared has to-engage
cum eo, quia ejus minor erat armatorum copia. Unde
with him because his smaller was of-armed-men the-host whence
prælegit munire oppida sua, donec auxilium suum ab
he-preferred to-fortify towns his-own until help his-own from
Hibernia impetrasset: et cum magis pro uxore sua quam
Ireland he-had-obtained and since more for wife his-own than
pro se ipso anxiaretur: posuit eam in oppido Tintagol
for him himself he-was-troubled he-placed her in the-town Tintagel
in littore maris, quod pro tutiori refugio habebat. Ipse
on the-shore of-the-sea which for a-safer refuge he-held he-himself
vero ingressus est castellum Dimilioc, ne si infortunium
but entered has the-castle Dimilioc lest if misfortune
supervenisset, ambo simul periclitarentur. Cumque id regi
had-come-upon both together might-be-imperiled and-when this to-the-king

nunciatum fuisset, ivit ad oppidum in quo erat Gorlois, et
announced had-been he-went to the-town in which was Gorlois and
illud obsedit, omnemque aditum ipsius præclusit. Emensa
it besieged and-every approach its closed having-passed
tandem hebdomada, reminiscens amoris Igernæ, dixit cuidam
at-last a-week remembering the-love of-Igerna he-said to-a-certain
familiari suo, nomine Ulfin de Ricaradoch: 'Uror amore
intimate his-own by-name Ulfin of Ricaradoch I-burn with-love
Igernæ, nec gaudium habere, nec periculum corporis mei
of-Igerna nor joy to-have nor the-danger of-body my
evadere me existimo, nisi ea potitus fuero. Tu ergo
to-escape me I-think unless of-her gained I-shall-have you therefore
adhibe consilium quo voluntatem meam expleam, aut aliter
apply counsel by-which will my I-may-fulfill or otherwise
internis anxietatibus interibo.' Ad hæc Ulfin: 'Et quis
with-inward anxieties I-shall-perish at these-things Ulfin and who
tibi consiliari valuerit: cum nulla vis accedere queat, qua
to-you to-counsel may-be-able since no force to-approach can by-which
eam intra oppidum Tintagol adeamus? Etenim situm est
her within the-town Tintagel we-may-approach for situated it-is
in mari, et undique circumclusum ab ipso, nec est alter
in the-sea and on-all-sides enclosed by it nor is-there another
introitus, nisi quem angusta rupes præbeat: ipsum tres armati
entry except what a-narrow cliff offers it three armed
milites prohibere queunt, licet cum toto regno Britanniæ
knights to-forbid can though with the-whole kingdom of-Britain
astiteris. Attamen si Merlinus vates operam insisteret
you-may-have-stood yet if Merlin the-prophet effort should-press
dare: arbitror te posse consilio ipsius desiderio tuo
to-give I-think you to-be-able by-the-counsel his of-desire your
potiri.' Credulus itaque rex, Merlinum vocari jussit:
to-gain-possession credulous and-so the-king Merlin to-be-called ordered

nam et ipse ad obsidionem venerat. Vocatus confestim
for also he-himself to the-siege had-come called forthwith
Merlinus, cum in præsentia regis astitisset, jussus est
Merlin when in the-presence of-the-king he-had-stood ordered was
consilium dare, quo rex desiderium in Igerna expleret.
counsel to-give by-which the-king desire in Igerna might-fulfill
Qui comperta anxietate quam rex patiebatur, pro ea
who discovered the-anxiety which the-king suffered for her
commotus est super tanto amore ipsius, et ait: 'Ut voto tuo
moved was over so-great love his and says that of-wish your
potiaris, utendum est tibi novis artibus et tempore
you-may-gain-possession to-be-used is by-you new arts and in-time
tuo inauditis. Scio medicaminibus meis dare figuram Gorlois,
your unheard-of I-know with-medicines my to-give the-shape of-Gorlois
ita ut per omnia ipse videaris. Si itaque parueris,
so that in all-things him you-may-seem if and-so you-will-have-obeyed
faciam te prorsus simulare eum: Ulfinum vero Jordanum
I-shall-make you utterly to-resemble him Ulfin but Jordan
de Tintagol familiarem ejus. Alia autem specie sumpta,
of Tintagel intimate his another moreover form taken
adero tertius, poterisque tuto oppidum adire ad
I-shall-be-present third and-you-will-be-able safely the-town to-approach to
Igernam, ac aditum habere. Paruit itaque rex, diligentemque
Igerna and access to-have obeyed and-so the-king and-a-diligent
animum adhibuit. Postremo commissa familiaribus suis
mind applied finally committed to-intimates his-own
obsidione, se Merlini medicationibus commisit, et in
the-siege himself of-Merlin to-the-medications he-committed and into
speciem Gorlois transmutatus est. Mutatus est et Ulfin
the-form of-Gorlois transformed he-was changed was also Ulfin
in Jordanum, Merlinus in Bricelem: ita ut nemini quod
into Jordan Merlin into Bricel so that to-no-one what

fuerant compararent: deinde aggressi sunt viam versus
they-had-been they-appeared then undertaken they-have the-way towards
Tintagol, et cum crepusculo ad oppidum venerunt. Indicato
Tintagel and with twilight to the-town they-came shown
ocyus janitori quod consul adveniret, apertæ sunt januæ,
more-swiftly to-the-doorkeeper that the-consul was-coming opened were the-gates
et intromissi sunt viri. Quid enim aliud accidisset, cum
and let-in were the-men what for else would-have-happened since
ipse Gorlois reputaretur adesse? Commansit itaque rex
he-himself Gorlois was-reckoned to-be-present stayed and-so the-king
ea nocte cum Igerna, et sese desiderata Venere refecit.
that night with Igerna and himself with-desired love refreshed
Deceperat namque illam falsa specie quam assumpserat:
he-had-deceived for her by-the-false form which he-had-assumed
deceperat etiam fictitiis sermonibus, quos ornate componebat.
he-had-deceived also by-feigned speeches which ornately he-composed
Dicebat enim se egressum esse ab obsesso oppido, ut
he-said for himself gone-out to-be from the-besieged town so-that
sibi tam dilectæ rei atque oppido disponeret: unde
for-himself so beloved for-a-thing and for-the-town he-might-arrange whence
ipsa credula nihil quod poscebatur abnegavit. Concepit itaque
she credulous nothing which was-demanded denied she-conceived and-so
eadem nocte celeberrimum illum Arturum, qui postmodum
on-the-same night most-renowned that Arthur who afterward
ut celebris esset, mira probitate promeruit.
that famous he-might-be with-wonderful prowess deserved

Gorloi occiso, Uther Igernam matrimonio ducit

XX · GORLOIS IS KILLED, AND UTHER MARRIES IGERNA

In the king's absence his army attacks Dimilioc, and Gorlois is killed in a sortie. Messengers bring the news to Igerna and are amazed to find their lord sitting beside her, but Uther, in Gorlois' shape, says he lives and leaves to make peace with the king. He takes Tintagel and marries Igerna, and they have a son, Arthur, and a daughter, Anna.

Interea cum compertum esset per obsidionem, regem
meanwhile when discovered it-had-been through the-siege the-king
non adesse: exercitus ejus inconsulte agens, muros diruere
not to-be-present army his unadvisedly acting the-walls to-pull-down
conatur: et obsessum comitem ad prælium provocare. Qui
tries and the-besieged count to battle to-challenge who
etiam inconsulte faciens, egressus est cum commilitonibus
also unadvisedly acting gone-out has with comrades
suis, arbitrans parva manu tot armatis se posse
his-own thinking with-a-small band so-many armed-men himself to-be-able
resistere: pugnantes ergo hinc et inde inter primos
to-resist fighting therefore on-this-side and on-that among the-first
interfectus est Gorlois, et socii ejus dissipati. Captum est
killed was Gorlois and the-comrades his scattered taken was
quoque oppidum quod obsederant, et opes intus repertæ
also the-town which they-had-besieged and the-wealth within found
non æqua sorte divisæ: nam ut cuique administrabat fortuna
not by-equal lot divided for as to-each-one supplied fortune
et fortitudo, rapaci ungue rapiebat. Peracta tandem hujus
and strength with-greedy claw he-snatched completed at-last of-this
facti audacia: venerunt nuncii ad Igernam, qui et necem
deed the-boldness came messengers to Igerna who both the-death

ducis, et obsidionis eventum indicarent. Sed cum regem in
of-the-duke and of-the-siege the-outcome might-show but when the-king in
specie consulis juxta eam residere inspexissent, erubescentes
the-form of-the-consul beside her sitting they-had-seen blushing
admirabantur ipsum, quem in obsidione interfectum
they-wondered him whom in the-siege killed
deseruerant, ita incolumem pervenisse. Nesciebant enim quæ
they-had-left so unharmed to-have-arrived they-did-not-know for what
medicamenta Merlinus confecerat. Ad tales ergo rumores
medicines Merlin had-made at such therefore rumors
arridebat rex, atque cum his verbis Comitissam amplexabatur:
smiled the-king and with these words the-Countess embraced
'Non equidem interfectus sum: sed ut vides, vivo: doleo
not indeed killed I-am but as you-see I-live I-grieve
tamen oppidi mei destructionem, sociorumque meorum
yet of-the-town my the-destruction and-of-comrades my
cædem: unde nobis timendum est, ne superveniat rex: et
the-slaughter whence for-us to-be-feared it-is lest may-come-upon the-king and
nos in oppido isto intercipiat. Ibo ergo prius ei obviam,
us in town this may-intercept I-shall-go therefore first to-him to-meet
et me cum ipso pacificabo, ne nobis deterius contingat.
and myself with him I-shall-reconcile lest to-us worse may-happen
Egressus itaque petivit exercitum suum, et exuta specie
having-gone-out and-so he-sought army his-own and stripped the-form
Gorlois in Utherpendragon rediit. Cumque omnem eventum
of-Gorlois into Uther-Pendragon returned and-when the-whole outcome
didicisset, ob cædem Gorlois doluit: sed ob
he-had-learned on-account-of the-slaughter of-Gorlois he-grieved but on-account-of
Igernam a maritali copula solutam gavisus est. Reversus
Igerna from the-marital bond loosed rejoiced he-has having-returned
itaque ad oppidum Tintagol, cepit illud. Cepitque Igernam
and-so to the-town Tintagel he-took it and-took Igerna

et voto suo potitus est. Commanserunt deinde pariter
and of-wish his-own gained he-has stayed then together
non minimo amore ligati: progenueruntque filium et filiam.
not with-least love bound and-begot a-son and a-daughter
Fuit autem filii nomen Arturus, filiæ vero, Anna.
was moreover of-the-son the-name Arthur of-the-daughter indeed Anna

Octa et Eosa bellum renovant

XXI · OCTA AND EOSA RENEW THE WAR

While Uther lies sick, Octa and Eosa escape from prison to Germany and return with a great fleet, ravaging Albany. The king gives the army to Lot of Lothian, to whom he has married his daughter Anna. The war hangs in doubt, because the proud Britons refuse to obey the consul.

Cumque dies et tempora præterissent, occupavit infirmitas
and-when days and times had-passed seized sickness
regem: eumque multis diebus vexavit. Interim vero custodes
the-king and-him for-many days troubled meanwhile indeed the-guards
carceris, in quo Octa atque Eosa (quos supra memoravi)
of-the-prison in which Octa and Eosa whom above I-mentioned
tædiosam vitam ducebant, diffugerant cum eis in Germaniam,
a-tedious life led had-fled with them into Germany
terroremque per regnum intulerant. Asserebat namque rumor,
and-terror through the-kingdom had-brought asserted for rumor
ipsos jam commovisse Germaniam, classemque maximam
them already to-have-stirred Germany and-a-fleet greatest
paravisse in exitium insulæ redituros: quod et factum est.
to-have-prepared for the-ruin of-the-island about-to-return which also done was
Redierunt enim cum maxima classe sociisque innumerabilibus,
they-returned for with a-very-great fleet and-comrades innumerable

et partes Albaniæ ingressi, civitates atque cives igne ac
and the-parts of-Albany having-entered the-cities and the-citizens with-fire and
cæde affecerunt. Committitur itaque exercitus Britanniæ Lot
slaughter afflicted is-committed and-so the-army of-Britain to-Lot
de Londonesia, ut hostes longius arceret. Erat autem
of Lothian so-that the-enemies farther he-might-keep-off was moreover
consul ille Leir, eques strenuissimus, sapientia et ætate
consul that Leir a-knight most-vigorous in-wisdom and in-age
maturus. Probitate ergo ipsius acclamante, dederat ei rex
ripe prowess therefore his acclaiming had-given to-him the-king
Annam filiam suam, regnique sui curam, dum infirmitati
Anna daughter his-own and-of-kingdom his-own the-care while to-sickness
subjaceret. Hic cum in hostes progressus esset, multoties
he-lay-subject this-one when against the-enemies advanced had many-times
repulsus est ab eis, ita ut sese intra civitates reciperet:
repulsed was by them so that himself within the-cities he-withdrew
sæpius autem fugabat atque dissipabat illos, et nunc ad
more-often moreover he-put-to-flight and scattered them and now to
nemora nunc ad naves diffugere cogebat. Fuit inter eos
the-forests now to the-ships to-flee he-forced there-was between them
dubia præliorum decertatio, ita ut nesciretur utri
a-doubtful of-battles contest so that it-was-not-known to-which-of-two
victoria proveniret. Superbia enim civibus nocebat: quia
victory would-come pride for the-citizens harmed because
dedignabantur præceptis consulis obedire. Unde debiliores
they-disdained to-the-orders of-the-consul to-obey whence weaker
exeuntes nequibant imminentes hostes superare.
going-out they-could-not the-threatening enemies to-overcome

Uther, morbo conflictatus, feretro contra hostes vehitur

XXII · UTHER CARRIED TO BATTLE IN A LITTER

Hearing that the island is almost laid waste, Uther rebukes his nobles for their pride and weakness. He swears to lead them against the enemy himself. Since he cannot walk, he has a litter made to carry him.

Vastata ita fere tota insula, cum id regi nunciaretur:
laid-waste so almost the-whole island when this to-the-king was-announced
ultra quam infirmitas expetebat iratus est: jussitque
beyond what the-sickness demanded angry he-was and-ordered
cunctos proceres convenire, ut ipsos de superbia et
all the-nobles to-come-together so-that them for pride and
debilitate sua corriperet. Et cum omnes in præsentia
weakness their-own he-might-rebuke and when all in the-presence
sua conspexisset: convicia cum castigantibus verbis intulit,
his-own he-had-seen insults with chastising words he-brought
juravitque quod ipsemet eos in hostes conduceret.
and-swore that he-himself them against the-enemies would-lead
Præcepit itaque fieri sibi feretrum quo asportaretur,
he-ordered and-so to-be-made for-himself a-litter in-which he-might-be-carried
cum ingressum alterius modi abnegaret infirmitas. Præcepit
since going of-another manner denied the-sickness he-ordered
etiam cunctos paratos esse, ut cum opportunitas accideret,
also all ready to-be so-that when opportunity befell
in inimicos progrederentur. Nec mora, paratum est
against the-enemies they-should-advance nor delay prepared was
feretrum: parati sunt omnes, diesque opportunus instabat.
the-litter prepared were all and-the-day fitting pressed

Octa et Eosa, cum multis suorum, occiduntur

XXIII · OCTA AND EOSA KILLED

The Saxons at Verulam scorn to fight a half-dead king in a litter and leave the gates open, but the Britons nearly storm the walls. The next day the Saxons come out to battle, and Octa and Eosa are killed. Uther sits up in his litter laughing and declares it better to conquer half-dead than to be conquered in health, and better to die with honor than live in shame.

Imposito itaque rege, Verolamium perrexerunt, ubi prædicti
put-in and-so the-king to-Verulam they-proceeded where the-aforesaid
Saxones universum populum affligebant. Cumque edocti essent
Saxons the-whole people afflicted and-when taught had-been
Octa et Eosa adventum Britonum, regemque in feretro
Octa and Eosa the-arrival of-the-Britons and-the-king in a-litter
advectum, dedignati sunt cum eo præliari, quia in vehiculo
carried disdained they-have with him to-fight because in a-vehicle
advenerat. Aiebant enim ipsum semimortuum esse, nec tantos
he-had-come they-said for him half-dead to-be nor so-great
viros cum hujusmodi homine pugnare decere. Receperunt
men with such a-man to-fight to-befit they-withdrew
itaque sese intra urbem: et valvas, quasi nihil timentes,
and-so themselves within the-city and the-gates as-if nothing fearing
deseruerunt apertas. At Uther, cum id sibi relatum fuisset:
they-left open but Uther when this to-him reported had-been
jussit ocyus obsidere civitatem, ac mœnia undique invadere.
ordered more-swiftly to-besiege the-city and the-walls on-all-sides to-attack
Paruerunt itaque cives, et urbem obsederunt, mœniaque
obeyed and-so the-citizens and the-city besieged and-the-walls
invaserunt. Stragem autem Saxonibus dantes, fere dirutis muris
attacked slaughter moreover to-the-Saxons giving almost ruined walls

ingressi sunt: nisi Saxones ad ultimum resistere incœpissent.
entered they-had unless the-Saxons at the-last to-resist had-begun
Prævalentibus namque civibus, piguerat eos incœptæ superbiæ:
prevailing for the-citizens it-irked them of-the-begun pride
unde se defendere instituerunt. Scandantes itaque muros
whence themselves to-defend they-set-about climbing and-so the-walls
omnimodis telis Britones repellebant. Denique cum utrinque
with-every-sort-of weapons the-Britons they-repelled finally when on-both-sides
decertarent: supervenit nox, quæ singulos ab armis
they-contended came-up the-night which each-one from arms
ad quietem invitavit. Quietem desiderabant multi: plures
to rest invited rest desired many more
vero consilium quo adversarios suos perderent. At
indeed counsel by-which adversaries their-own they-might-destroy but
Saxones cum inspexissent superbiam suam sibi nocuisse,
the-Saxons when they-had-seen pride their-own to-them to-have-harmed
Britones vero triumphasse: proposuerunt cum diluculo egredi,
the-Britons indeed to-have-triumphed proposed with dawn to-go-out
inimicosque suos ad campestre prælium provocare, quod
and-the-enemies their-own to an-open-field battle to-challenge which
factum est. Nam ut diem protulit Titan, dispositis catervis
done was for when the-day brought-forth Titan arranged the-bands
egressi sunt, ut propositum exequerentur suum. Quod
gone-out they-have so-that the-purpose they-might-carry-out their-own which
videntes Britones, diviserunt milites suos per turmas, atque
seeing the-Britons divided knights their-own through troops and
obviam venientes prius invadere cœperunt. Resistunt ilico
to-meet coming first to-attack began resist on-the-spot
Saxones, invadunt Britones, et mutuam cædem utrobique
the-Saxons attack the-Britons and mutual slaughter on-both-sides
conficiunt. Postremo cum multum diei præteriisset: cessit
they-make finally when much of-the-day had-passed fell

victoria regi Britonum, interfectisque Octa et Eosa,
the-victory to-the-king of-the-Britons and-killed Octa and Eosa
terga dederunt Saxones. Tanta inde lætitia cepit regem, ita
their-backs gave the-Saxons so-great thence joy seized the-king so
ut cum prius sine juvamine alterius sese erigere nequiret,
that though before without help of-another himself to-raise he-could-not
levi conamine erectus, resedit in feretro, ac si subitam
with-slight effort raised he-sat-up in the-litter as if sudden
sanitatem recepisset. Solutus etiam in risum, hilari voce
health he-had-received loosened also into laughter with-cheerful voice
in hunc sermonem prorupit: "Vocabunt me Ambrones isti,
into this speech burst will-call me Ambrones these
regem semimortuum, quia infirmitate gravatus in feretro
the-king half-dead because by-sickness weighed-down in a-litter
jacebam. Sic equidem eram. Malo tamen semimortuus ipsos
I-lay so indeed I-was I-prefer yet half-dead them
superare, quam sanus et incolumis superari, sequenti
to-overcome than healthy and unharmed to-be-overcome with-the-following
vita perfuncturus. Præstantius enim est mori cum honore,
life about-to-be-done-with more-excellent for it-is to-die with honor
quam cum pudore vivere."
than with shame to-live

Uther haustu aquæ venenato diem obit

XXIV · UTHER DIES FROM A POISONED SPRING

The Saxons ravage the north and, unable to reach the king by force, plot to poison him. Their spies learn that Uther drinks only from a spring near his hall at Verulam and poison it, and he dies, with a hundred others. He is buried within the Giants' Dance beside Aurelius Ambrosius.

Devicti autem Saxones, non idcirco a malitia sua
defeated moreover the-Saxons not therefore from malice their-own
destiterunt: sed Aquilonares provincias ingressi, populos
desisted but the-northern provinces having-entered the-peoples
incessanter infestabant. Quos Uther rex (ut proposuerat)
unceasingly they-harassed whom Uther the-king as he-had-proposed
affectabat insequi: sed dissuaserunt principes, quia eum
desired to-pursue but dissuaded the-princes because him
gravior infirmitas post victoriam occupaverat. Unde audaciores
a-graver sickness after the-victory had-seized whence bolder
insistentes hostes, omnibus modis regnum subdere nituntur.
pressing-on the-enemies by-all means the-kingdom to-subject strive
Proditioni etiam solitæ indulgentes, machinantur qualiter
to-treachery also accustomed giving-themselves they-contrive how
regem dolo interficiant. Et cum alter aditus defecisset,
the-king by-guile they-may-kill and when another approach had-failed
statuerunt eum veneno perdere: quod factum est. Nam cum
they-decided him with-poison to-destroy which done was for when
in urbe Verolamio jaceret, direxerunt in paupere cultu legatos,
in the-city Verulam he-lay they-directed in poor garb envoys
qui statum curiæ addiscerent: qui cum totum didicissent,
who the-state of-the-court should-learn who when the-whole they-had-learned
inter cætera compererunt unum, quod proditioni ipsius
among other-things they-found one-thing which for-treachery his

prælegerunt. Erat namque prope aulam fons nitidissimæ
they-chose there-was for near the-hall a-spring of-most-clear
aquæ, quam rex solitus fuerat potare, cum ceteros liquores
water which the-king accustomed had-been to-drink since the-other liquors
propter infirmitatem abhorreret. Fontem namque aggressi sunt
on-account-of sickness he-shrank-from the-spring for attacked have
nefandi proditores, ipsumque undique veneno infecerunt,
the-abominable traitors and-it on-all-sides with-poison infected
ita ut manans aqua tota corrumperetur. Ut ergo potavit ex
so that the-flowing water whole was-corrupted when therefore drank from
ea rex, festinæ morti succubuit. Succubuerunt etiam centum
it the-king to-a-swift death he-succumbed succumbed also a-hundred
homines post illum, donec comperta fraude, cumulum terræ
men after him until discovered the-fraud a-heap of-earth
superposuerunt. Cum autem obitus regis divulgatus fuisset,
they-placed-over-it when moreover the-death of-the-king spread-abroad had-been
advenerunt pontifices cum clero regni: tuleruntque
came the-pontiffs with the-clergy of-the-kingdom and-carried
corpus ejus ad Cœnobium Ambrii: et intra choream gigantum
the-body his to the-Monastery of-Ambrius and within the-dance of-the-giants
juxta Aurelium Ambrosium more regio humaverunt.
beside Aurelius Ambrosius in-manner royal interred

BOOK IX

Arturus filius succedit, et Colgrinum circumsedit

I · ARTHUR BESIEGES COLGRIN

With the Saxons under Colgrin holding everything from the Humber to Caithness, the nobles have Dubricius crown Arthur, a youth of fifteen loved for his valor and generosity. Arthur defeats Colgrin by the Douglas and besieges him in York. Colgrin's brother Baldulph, routed by Cador, poses as a harper and is hauled over the walls; when Cheldric reaches Albany with six hundred ships, Arthur's counselors urge him to lift the siege.

Defuncto igitur Utherpendragon, convenerunt ex diversis
having-died therefore Uther-Pendragon came-together from various
provinciis proceres Britonum in civitatem Cilcestriæ: Dubricio
provinces the-nobles of-the-Britons into the-city of-Silchester to-Dubricius
urbis Legionum Archiepiscopo suggerentes, ut Arturum
of-the-City of-the-Legions Archbishop suggesting that Arthur
filium regis in regem consecraret. Angebat enim eos
son of-the-king into king he-should-consecrate pressed for them
necessitas: audito namque prædicti regis obitu, Saxones
necessity heard for of-the-aforesaid king the-death the-Saxons
concives suos ex Germania invitaverant: et duce
fellow-countrymen their-own from Germany had-invited and as-leader
Colgrino ipsos exterminare nitebantur. Subjugaverant etiam
Colgrin them to-exterminate strove they-had-subjugated also
sibi totam partem insulæ, quæ a flumine Humbri,
to-themselves all the-part of-the-island which from the-river Humber
usque ad mare Catanesium extenditur Dubricius ergo
all-the-way to the-sea of-Caithness stretches Dubricius therefore
calamitatem patriæ dolens, associatis sibi Episcopis
the-calamity of-the-country grieving joined to-himself the-Bishops

Arturum regni diademate insignivit. Erat autem
Arthur of-the-kingdom with-the-diadem marked was moreover
Arturus quindecim annorum juvenis, inauditæ virtutis atque
Arthur of-fifteen years a-youth of-unheard-of valor and
liberalitatis: in quo tantam gratiam innata bonitas præstiterat,
liberality in whom so-great grace inborn goodness had-offered
ut a cunctis fere populis amaretur. Insignibus ergo
that by all almost peoples he-was-loved with-the-insignia therefore
regiis initiatus, solitum morem servans, largitati indulsit.
royal installed the-accustomed custom keeping to-largess he-gave-himself
Confluebat ad eum tanta multitudo militum, ut eis quod
flowed-together to him so-great a-multitude of-knights that for-them what
dispensaret, deficeret. Sed cui naturalis inest largitio cum
he-might-dispense was-lacking but in-whom natural is-present largess with
probitate licet ad tempus indigeat, nullatenus tamen
prowess although for a-time he-may-be-in-need by-no-means yet
continua paupertas ei nocebit. Arturus ergo quia in illo
continual poverty to-him will-harm Arthur therefore because in him
probitas largitionem comitabatur: statuit Saxones inquietare,
prowess largess accompanied decided the-Saxons to-harass
ut eorum opibus quæ ei famulabatur ditaret
so-that their with-wealth which to-him served he-might-enrich
familiam. Commonebat etiam illud rectitudo, cum totius
the-household urged also it rightness since of-the-whole
insulæ monarchiam debuerat hereditario jure obtinere. Collecta
island the-monarchy he-ought by-hereditary right to-hold gathered
deinde sibi subdita juventute, Eboracum petivit. Cumque
then to-him subject the-youth York he-sought and-when
id Colgrino compertum esset, collegit Saxones, Scotos et
this to-Colgrin discovered had-been he-gathered Saxons Scots and
Pictos, venitque ei obvius cum multitudine maxima, juxta
Picts and-came to-him meeting with a-multitude greatest beside

flumen Duglas: ubi facto congressu, utriusque exercitus
the-river Douglas where made an-engagement of-each army
in majori parte periclitatus est. Victoria tamen potitus
in the-greater part imperiled was of-the-victory yet having-gained
Arturus, Colgrinum fugientem insecutus est: ingressumque
Arthur Colgrin fleeing pursued has and-him-having-entered
intra Eboracum obsedit. Audita itaque fratris sui fuga
within York he-besieged heard and-so of-brother his-own the-flight
Baldulphus, cum sex milibus virorum obsidionem petivit, ut
Baldulph with six thousand of-men the-siege sought so-that
ipsum inclusum liberaret. Erat autem tunc ipse, quando
him shut-in he-might-free was moreover then he-himself when
frater pugnaverat, expectans adventum Cheldrici ducis juxta
the-brother had-fought awaiting the-arrival of-Cheldric the-duke beside
maritima, qui eis ex Germania in auxilium venturus
the-coast who to-them from Germany for help about-to-come
erat. Cum itaque esset spatio decem miliariorum ab urbe,
was when and-so he-was at-a-distance of-ten miles from the-city
statuit nocturnum iter arripere, ut furtivam irruptionem
he-decided a-nightly march to-take so-that a-stealthy inroad
faceret. Quod edoctus Arturus, jussit Cadorem ducem
he-might-make which informed Arthur ordered Cador duke
Cornubiæ, cum sexcentis equitibus et tribus milibus peditum
of-Cornwall with six-hundred horsemen and three thousand footmen
eadem nocte illi obviare. Qui viam qua hostes præteribant
on-the-same night him to-meet who the-way by-which the-enemies were-passing
nactus, inopinum impetum fecit: dilaceratisque atque interfectis
having-got an-unexpected attack made and-torn and killed
Saxonibus fugam facere coegit. Qui ultra modum anxius,
the-Saxons flight to-make forced who beyond measure anxious
quod fratri suo auxilium subvectare nequiret: deliberavit
that to-brother his-own help to-bring he-could-not deliberated

apud se qualiter colloquio ipsius frueretur. Existimabat
with himself how of-the-conversation his he-might-enjoy he-thought
enim aditum salutis utrorumque consilio machinari posse:
for an-approach of-safety of-both by-counsel to-contrive to-be-able
si illius præsentiam adire quivisset. Cum ergo alterius
if his presence to-approach he-had-been-able since therefore of-another
modi aditum non haberet: rasit capillos suos et barbam,
manner approach not he-had he-shaved hair his-own and beard
cultumque joculatoris cum cythara cepit. Deinde intra
and-the-garb of-a-jester with a-harp took then within
castra deambulans, modulis quos in lyra componebat,
the-camp walking-about with-melodies which on the-lyre he-composed
sese cytharistam exhibebat. Cumque nulli suspectus esset,
himself a-harper he-showed and-when to-no-one suspect he-was
accessit ad mœnia urbis paulatim ceptam simulationem
he-approached to the-walls of-the-city little-by-little the-begun pretense
faciens. Postremo cum ab inclusis compertus esset, tractus
making finally when by the-shut-in discovered he-had-been drawn
est funiculis intra muros, et ad fratrem conductus. Ex tunc
he-was with-ropes within the-walls and to the-brother led from then
viso germano, osculis et amplexibus desideratis sese refecit.
seen the-brother with-kisses and embraces desired himself he-refreshed
Denique cum post multimodas deliberationes, in desperationem
finally when after manifold deliberations into despair
egrediendi incidissent, remeabant jam legati ex Germania,
of-going-out they-had-fallen were-returning already the-envoys from Germany
qui duce Cheldrico sexcentas naves milite forti oneratas
who as-leader Cheldric six-hundred ships with-knights strong loaded
in Albaniam conduxerant. Quo audito, dissuaserunt consiliarii
into Albany had-brought which heard dissuaded counselors

sui Arturo obsidionem diutius tenere, ne si tanta multitudo
his-own to-Arthur the-siege longer to-hold lest if so-great a-multitude
hostium supervenisset, dubium certamen committerent.
of-enemies had-come-up a-doubtful contest they-should-join

Hoelus quindecim millia militum, in auxilium Arturo, mittit

II · HOEL COMES TO HELP ARTHUR

Arthur withdraws to London and takes counsel with the clergy and nobles. Messengers go to Hoel, king of the Armorican Britons and son of Arthur's sister. Hoel lands at Hamo's port with fifteen thousand men and is received with embraces.

Paruit igitur Arturus domesticorum suorum consilio, et sese
obeyed therefore Arthur of-household his-own the-counsel and himself
intra urbem Londoniarum recepit. Ubi convocato clero et
within the-city of-London withdrew where called-together the-clergy and
totius potestatis suæ primatibus, consilium quærit, quid
of-the-whole power his-own the-primates counsel he-seeks what
optimum, quidve saluberrimum contra Paganorum irruptionem
best or-what most-wholesome against of-the-Pagans the-inroad
faceret. Communi tandem assensu illato, mittuntur in
he-should-do common at-last assent brought are-sent into
Armoricam nuncii ad regem Hoelum, qui ei calamitatem
Armorica messengers to the-king Hoel who to-him the-calamity
Britanniæ notificarent. Erat autem Hoelus filius sororis
of-Britain should-make-known was moreover Hoel son of-the-sister
Arturi ex Dubricio rege Armoricanorum Britonum generatus.
of-Arthur by Dubricius king of-the-Armorican Britons begotten
Unde audita inquietatione quæ avunculo ingerebatur, jussit
whence heard the-harassment which on-the-uncle was-heaped he-ordered

navigium suum parari, collectisque quindecim millibus
fleet his-own to-be-prepared and-gathered fifteen thousand
armatorum, proximo ventorum flatu ad portum Hamonis
of-armed-men with-the-next of-the-winds breath at the-port of-Hamo
applicuit. Excepit eum Arturus quo honore decebat,
landed received him Arthur with-what honor befitted
mutuos amplexus sæpissime innectens.
mutual embraces most-often weaving

Arturus Saxones subjectat et sibi tributarios facit

III · ARTHUR SUBDUES THE SAXONS

Arthur and Hoel relieve Lincoln, killing six thousand Saxons, and pursue the rest into the forest of Caledon, where Arthur fences them in with felled trees until hunger forces them to surrender. They leave their gold, give hostages, and promise tribute, but at sea they turn back, land at Totnes, ravage the land, and besiege Bath. Arthur hangs the hostages and, leaving Hoel sick at Alclud, marches to Bath, swearing to keep faith with God as the Saxons broke faith with him.

Emensis postmodum paucis diebus, urbem Kaerliudcoit
having-passed afterward a-few days the-city Kaerliudcoit
petunt a Paganis, quos supra memoravi, obsessam: hæc
they-seek by the-Pagans whom above I-mentioned besieged this
autem in Lindiseinensi provincia inter duo flumina super
moreover in the-Lindsey province between two rivers upon
montem locata, alio nomine Lindocolinum nuncupatur.
a-mountain placed by-another name Lincoln is-called
Ut igitur cum omni multitudine sua convenerunt,
when therefore with all multitude their-own they-came-together
præliati sunt cum Saxonibus, inauditam cædem inferentes.
fought they-have with the-Saxons unheard-of slaughter inflicting

Ceciderunt namque ex eis ea die sex milia, qui partim
fell for of them on-that day six thousand who partly
fluminibus submersi, partim telis percussi vitam amiserunt.
in-the-rivers drowned partly by-weapons struck life lost
Unde ceteri stupefacti, relicta obsidione fugerunt: quos
whence the-others stunned left the-siege fled whom
Arturus insequi non cessavit, donec in nemus Caledonis
Arthur to-pursue not ceased until into the-forest of-Caledon
venerunt. Ibi undique ex fuga confluentes, conati sunt
they-came there from-everywhere from flight flowing-together tried they-have
Arturo resistere. Conserto itaque prælio, stragem Britonibus
Arthur to-resist joined and-so the-battle slaughter on-the-Britons
faciunt, sese viriliter defendentes. Ibi etenim arborum
they-make themselves manfully defending there for of-the-trees
auxilio, tela Britonum vitabant. Quod Arturus intuens,
with-the-help the-weapons of-the-Britons they-avoided which Arthur seeing
jussit arbores circa illam partem nemoris incidi, et truncos
ordered the-trees around that part of-the-forest to-be-cut and the-trunks
ita in circuitu locari, ut egressus eis abnegaretur.
so in a-circuit to-be-placed that exit to-them might-be-denied
Volebat namque illos inclusos tam diu obsidere, donec
he-wished for them shut-in so long to-besiege until
fame interirent. Quo facto, jussit turmas ambire nemus,
by-hunger they-perished which done he-ordered the-troops to-surround the-forest
mansitque tribus diebus ibidem. Cum igitur Saxones quo
and-he-stayed for-three days there when therefore the-Saxons wherewith
vescerentur indigerent, ne subita fame perirent, petierunt eo
they-might-feed lacked lest by-sudden hunger they-perish they-sought on-this
pacto egressum, ut relicto omni auro et argento, cum solis
condition an-exit that left all gold and silver with only
navibus in Germaniam redire sinerentur. Promiserunt
ships into Germany to-return they-might-be-allowed they-promised

quoque se daturos ei tributum ex Germania,
also themselves about-to-give to-him tribute from Germany
obsidesque inde mansuros. Tunc Arturus quæsito consilio,
and-hostages thence about-to-remain then Arthur sought counsel
eorum petitioni acquievit. Retinuit namque ipsorum opes,
their to-petition assented he-kept for their wealth
reddendique vectigalis obsides, solumque abscessum largitus
and-to-be-rendered of-the-tax hostages and-only departure bestowed
est. Cumque illi in redeundo domum æquora sulcarent,
he-has and-when they in returning home the-seas were-furrowing
piguit peractæ pactionis, retortisque velis in Britanniam
it-irked-them of-the-completed agreement and-turned-back sails into Britain
redierunt, et Totonesium littus adiverunt. Nacti deinde
they-returned and the-Totnes shore went-to having-got then
patriam tellurem usque ad Sabrinum mare depopulantur,
the-native land all-the-way to the-Severn sea they-ravage
colonos letiferis vulneribus afficientes. Inde arrepto itinere
the-farmers with-deadly wounds afflicting thence taken the-march
versus pagum Badonis, urbem obsident. Idque cum regi
towards the-district of-Bath the-city they-besiege and-this when to-the-king
nunciatum esset, admirans ultra modum ipsorum facinus,
announced had-been marveling-at beyond measure their crime
jussit fieri judicium de illorum obsidibus brevi
he-ordered to-be-made judgment about their hostages with-short
mora suspendendis. Prætermissa etiam inquietatione, qua
delay to-be-hanged left-aside also the-harassment with-which
Scotos et Pictos opprimere incœperat, obsidionem dispergere
the-Scots and Picts to-crush he-had-begun the-siege to-disperse
festinavit. Maximis vero angustiis est cruciatus, quoniam
he-hurried with-greatest indeed anguish he-was tormented since
Hoelum nepotem suum morbo gravatum in civitatem Alclud
Hoel nephew his-own by-sickness weighed-down in the-city Alclud

deserebat. Postremo Sumersetensem provinciam ingressus, visa
he-was-leaving finally the-Somerset province having-entered seen
cominus obsidione, in hæc verba locutus est: "Quoniam
close-at-hand the-siege in these words spoken he-has since
impiissimi atque invisi nominis Saxones fidem mihi dedignati
most-impious and of-hated name the-Saxons faith to-me disdained
sunt servare: ego fidem Deo meo conservans, sanguinem
have to-keep I faith to-God my keeping the-blood
concivium meorum in ipsos hodie vindicare conabor. Armate
of-fellow-citizens my on them today to-avenge shall-try arm
vos viri, armate, et proditores istos viriliter invadite,
yourselves O-men arm and traitors these manfully attack
quos proculdubio auxiliante Christo triumphabimus."
whom without-doubt helping Christ we-shall-triumph-over

Dubricius contra Saxones concionatur: Arturi res gestæ: Colgrini et Baldulphi mors

IV · THE BATTLE OF BATH

From a hilltop Dubricius promises absolution to every Briton who dies for his country. Arthur arms himself with his golden dragon helmet, the shield Priwen painted with the Virgin, the sword Caliburn forged in Avalon, and the lance Ron. The Saxons hold out for a day and take a hill; the next day the Britons fight their way up, and Arthur, calling on Mary, kills 470 men with Caliburn alone; Colgrin and Baldulph fall, and Cheldric flees.

Hæc eo dicente, sanctus Dubricius urbis Legionum
these-things him saying holy Dubricius of-the-City of-the-Legions
Archiepiscopus, ascenso cujusdam montis cacumine, in
Archbishop climbed of-a-certain mountain the-top in
hunc modum celsa voce exclamavit: "Viri Christiana
this manner with-lofty voice cried-out O-men with-the-Christian

professione insigniti, maneat in vobis concivium vestrorum
profession marked may-remain in you of-fellow-citizens your
pietas et patriæ, qui proditione Paganorum exterminati,
the-dutifulness and of-the-country who by-the-treachery of-the-Pagans exterminated
vobis sempiternum erunt opprobrium, nisi ipsos defendere
to-you an-everlasting will-be reproach unless them to-defend
institeritis. Pugnate ergo pro patria vestra, et mortem
you-will-have-set-about fight therefore for country your also death
si supervenerit pro eadem ultro patimini: ipsa enim
if it-will-have-come-upon for the-same willingly suffer it-itself for
victoria est, et animæ remedium. Quicunque etenim pro
victory is and of-the-soul the-remedy whoever for for
confratribus suis interierit, vivam hostiam se præstat
brethren his-own will-have-perished a-living sacrifice himself offers
Deo, Christumque insequi non ambigitur, qui pro fratribus
to-God and-Christ to-follow not is-doubted who for brothers
suis animam suam dignatus est ponere. Si aliquis igitur
his-own soul his-own deigned has to-lay-down if any-one therefore
vestrum in hoc bello mortem subierit. fiet ei mors illa
of-you in this war death will-have-undergone will-be to-him death that
omnium delictorum suorum pœnitentia et absolutio, dum eam
of-all sins his-own the-penance and absolution while it
hoc modo recipere non diffugerit." Nec mora: beati viri
in-this manner to-receive not he-will-have-shunned nor delay of-the-blessed man
benedictione hilarati festinavit quisque armare se, et præceptis
by-the-blessing cheered hurried each-one to-arm himself and to-the-orders
ejus parere: ipse vero Arturus lorica tanto rege digna
his to-obey he-himself but Arthur in-a-breastplate of-so-great a-king worthy
indutus, auream galeam simulacro draconis insculptam capiti
clothed a-golden helmet with-the-image of-a-dragon engraved to-head
adaptat. Humeris quoque suis clypeum vocabulo Priwen:
fits on-shoulders also his-own a-shield by-the-word Priwen

in quo imago sanctæ Mariæ Dei genitricis impicta, ipsam
on which an-image of-holy Mary of-God the-mother painted her
in memoriam ipsius sæpissime revocabat. Accinctus etiam
into memory of-him most-often recalled girded also
Caliburno gladio optimo, et in insula Avallonis fabricato:
with-Caliburn a-sword best and in the-island of-Avalon forged
lancea dexteram suam decorat, quæ nomine Ron vocabatur:
with-a-lance right-hand his-own adorns which by-name Ron was-called
hæc erat ardua lataque lancea, cladibus apta. Deinde dispositis
this was a-tall and-broad lance for-slaughters fit then arranged
catervis, Saxones in cuneos more suo dispositos, audacter
the-bands the-Saxons in wedges in-fashion their-own arranged boldly
invasit. Ipsi vero tota die viriliter resistebant, Britones usque
he-attacked they but the-whole day manfully resisted the-Britons continually
insequentes. Vergente tandem ad occasum sole, proximum
pursuing sloping at-last to the-west the-sun the-nearest
occupant montem, pro castris eum habituri. Multitudine
they-seize mountain for camp it about-to-have with-the-multitude
etenim sociorum confisis, solus mons sufficere videbatur.
for of-comrades having-trusted alone the-mountain to-suffice seemed
At ut posterum sol diem reduxit: ascendit Arturus cum
but when the-next the-sun day brought-back climbed Arthur with
exercitu suo cacumen: sed in ascendendo suorum multos
army his-own the-top but in climbing of-his-own many
amisit. Saxones namque ex summitate occurrentes, facilius
lost the-Saxons for from the-summit running-against more-easily
ingerebant vulnera, dum ipsos citior cursus in descensu ageret,
heaped-on wounds while them a-swifter course in descent drove
quam eos in ascensu. Britones tamen cacumen maxima vi
than them in ascent the-Britons yet the-top with-greatest force
adepti, dextris hostium dextras suas confestim
having-reached with-the-right-hands of-the-enemies right-hands their-own forthwith

conferunt. Quibus Saxones pectora prætendentes, omni nisu
they-join to-whom the-Saxons breasts holding-out with-all effort
resistere nituntur. Cumque multum diei in hunc modum
to-resist strive and-when much of-the-day in this manner
præteriisset, indignatus est Arturus, ipsis ita successisse: nec
had-passed indignant was Arthur to-them so to-have-succeeded nor
sibi victoriam advenire. Abstracto igitur Caliburno gladio,
to-himself victory to-come drawn therefore Caliburn the-sword
nomen sanctæ Mariæ proclamat, et sese cito impetu
the-name of-holy Mary he-proclaims and himself with-swift attack
intra densas hostium acies immisit. Quemcunque attingebat,
within the-dense of-the-enemies lines thrust whomever he-reached
Deum invocando, solo ictu perimebat: nec requievit
God by-calling-upon with-a-single blow he-destroyed nor rested
impetum suum facere, donec quadringentos et septuaginta
attack his-own to-make until four-hundred and seventy
viros, solo Caliburno gladio peremit. Quod videntes
men with-single Caliburn the-sword he-destroyed which seeing
Britones, densatis turmis illum sequuntur, stragem undique
the-Britons thickened troops him follow slaughter on-all-sides
facientes. Ceciderunt ilico Colgrinus et Baldulphus ejus
making fell on-the-spot Colgrin and Baldulph his
frater, et multa milia aliorum. At viso sociorum periculo
brother and many thousands of-others but seen of-the-comrades the-danger
Cheldericus continuo in fugam versus est.
Cheldric at-once into flight turned was

Saxones post Cheldrici mortem, Cadori se reddunt

V · THE SAXONS SURRENDER TO CADOR

Arthur hurries north to relieve Hoel, besieged by the Scots and Picts at Alclud, and orders Cador to pursue the Saxons. Cador first seizes their ships to cut off escape, then hunts them through forests and caves to the island of Thanet. There he kills Cheldric and takes the surrender of the rest.

Rex igitur potitus victoria, Cadorem ducem Cornubiæ
the-king therefore having-gained of-the-victory Cador duke of-Cornwall
jussit illos persequi, dum ipse Albaniam petere festinaret.
ordered them to-pursue while he-himself Albany to-seek hurried
Denunciatum namque illi fuerat, Scotos atque Pictos
announced for to-him it-had-been the-Scots and Picts
obsedisse Hoelum in urbe Alclud, in qua ipsum supra
to-have-besieged Hoel in the-city Alclud in which him above
dixi infirmitate gravatum. Quocirca properabat ei in
I-said by-sickness weighed-down wherefore he-hastened to-him to
auxilium, ne a Barbaris occuparetur. Dux itaque Cornubiæ
help lest by the-barbarians he-should-be-seized the-duke and-so of-Cornwall
decem milibus comitatus, fugientes Saxones nondum insequi
by-ten thousand accompanied the-fleeing Saxons not-yet to-pursue
voluit: immo naves eorum festinanter exigebat, ut ipsis
wished nay the-ships their hastily he-sought-out so-that to-them
ingressum prohiberet. Mox ut ipsis potitus est, munivit
entry he-might-forbid soon when of-them gained he-has he-fortified
eas militibus optimis, qui introitum Paganis abnegarent, si
them with-knights best who entry to-the-Pagans should-deny if
ad eas confugerent. Deinde festinavit hostes sequi, sectatos
to them they-should-flee then he-hurried the-enemies to-follow the-followed
sine pietate trucidare: præceptum Arturi facturus. Qui modo
without pity to-slaughter the-order of-Arthur about-to-do who lately

gemina feritate fulminabant, nunc timido corde fugientes,
with-twin ferocity thundered now with-timid heart fleeing
aliquando occulta nemorum, aliquando montes et cavernas
sometimes the-hidden-parts of-the-forests sometimes mountains and caverns
petebant, ut spatium vivendi haberent. Postremo cum nihil
sought that a-space of-living they-might-have finally when nothing
eis tutamini accessisset, insulam Tanet lacero agmine
to-them for-protection had-come the-island Thanet with-torn column
ingrediuntur. Insequitur eos eodem dux Cornubiæ,
they-enter pursues them to-the-same-place the-duke of-Cornwall
solitam cædem inferens: nec requievit, donec perempto
accustomed slaughter inflicting nor rested until destroyed
Cheldrico, cunctos ad deditionem compulit, receptis obsidibus.
Cheldric all to surrender he-drove received hostages

De lacu Lumond: Arturus veniam Pictis et Scotis qui eo fugerant, concedit

VI · LOCH LOMOND

The Scots and Picts take refuge on the islands of Loch Lomond, a lake of sixty islands and sixty rivers with an eagle's nest on each rock. Arthur besieges them with a fleet for fifteen days, then routs the Irish king Guillamurius, who comes to their aid. When he begins to wipe out the Scots and Picts, their bishops come barefoot with relics, and he weeps and pardons them.

Pace itaque firmata, petivit urbem Alclud, quam Arturus
peace and-so established he-sought the-city Alclud which Arthur
jam ab oppressione barbarica liberaverat. Deinde duxit
already from oppression barbarian had-freed then he-led
exercitum suum Mureif, ubi obsidebantur Scoti et Picti, qui
army his-own to-Moray where were-besieged the-Scots and Picts who

tertio contra regem nepotemque ejus præliati, usque
for-the-third-time against the-king and-nephew his having-fought all-the-way
ad eandem provinciam diffugerant. Ingressi autem stagnum
to the-same province had-fled having-entered moreover the-lake
Lumond, occupaverunt insulas quæ intra erant, securum
Lomond they-seized the-islands which within were safe
refugium quærentes: hoc autem stagnum sexaginta insulas
refuge seeking this moreover lake sixty islands
continens, sexaginta flumina recipit: nec ex eo nisi unum
containing sixty rivers receives nor from it except one
solum ad mare decurrit. In insulis vero sexaginta rupes
alone to the-sea runs-down on the-islands indeed sixty rocks
manifestum est esse, totidem aquilarum nidos sustentantes:
evident it-is to-be as-many of-eagles nests sustaining
quæ singulis annis convenientes, prodigium quod in regno
which in-each years coming-together the-prodigy which in the-kingdom
venturum esset, celso clamore communiter edito notificabant.
about-to-come was with-lofty cry in-common uttered made-known
Ad has itaque insulas confugerant prædicti hostes ut
to these and-so islands had-fled the-aforesaid enemies so-that
stagni præsidio fruerentur: sed parum illis profuit. Nam
of-the-lake the-protection they-might-enjoy but little to-them it-profited for
Arturus collecto navigio flumina circuivit, ipsosque per
Arthur gathered a-fleet the-rivers went-round and-them through
quindecim dies obsidendo tanta afflixit fame, ut ad
fifteen days by-besieging with-so-great afflicted hunger that to
millia morerentur. Dumque illos in hunc modum opprimeret,
thousands they-died and-while them in this manner he-was-crushing
Guillamurius rex Hiberniæ cum maxima Barbarorum copia
Guillamurius king of-Ireland with greatest of-barbarians host
classe supervenit, ut ipsis oppressis auxilium subvectaret.
with-a-fleet came-up so-that to-them oppressed help he-might-bring

Prætermissa itaque obsidione, cœpit Arturus arma vertere
left-aside and-so the-siege began Arthur arms to-turn
in Hibernienses: quos sine pietate laceratos coegit ad
against the-Irish whom without pity torn he-forced to
patriam remeare. Potitus itaque victoria, vacavit iterum
the-country to-return having-gained and-so the-victory was-busy again
delere gentem Scotorum atque Pictorum, incomparabili
to-wipe-out the-people of-the-Scots and of-the-Picts to-incomparable
sævitiæ indulgens. Cumque nulli prout reperiebatur parceret,
savagery giving-himself and-when to-no-one as-each was-found he-spared
convenerunt omnes Episcopi miserandæ patriæ, cum omni
came-together all the-Bishops of-the-pitiable country with all
clero sibi subdito, reliquias sanctorum et ecclesiastica
clergy to-them subject the-relics of-the-saints and the-ecclesiastical
sacramenta nudis ferentes pedibus, misericordiam regis pro
sacraments with-bare carrying feet the-mercy of-the-king for
salute populi sui implorantes. Mox ut præsentiam ejus
the-safety of-the-people their-own imploring soon when the-presence his
habuerunt, flexis genibus deprecati sunt, ut pietatem super
they-had bent knees prayed they-have that pity upon
contrita gente haberet. Satis etenim periculi intulerat, nec
the-crushed people he-might-have enough for of-danger he-had-brought nor
erat opus perpaucos qui remanserant, usque ad unum delere.
was need the-very-few who had-remained all-the-way to one to-wipe-out
Sineret illos portiunculam patriæ habere, perpetuæ
he-should-allow them a-little-portion of-the-country to-have of-perpetual
servitutis jugum ultro congestaturos. Cumque regem in
servitude the-yoke willingly about-to-bear and-when the-king in
hunc modum rogavissent, commovit eum pietas in lacrimas,
this manner they-had-asked moved him pity into tears
sanctorumque virorum petitioni acquiescens, veniam donavit.
and-of-the-holy men to-the-petition assenting pardon he-granted

Arturus Hoelum de mirabilibus stagnorum instruit

VII · ARTHUR TELLS HOEL OF THE WONDERFUL LAKES

Hoel marvels at Loch Lomond, and Arthur tells him of another lake nearby, twenty feet square and five deep, with a different kind of fish in each corner. He describes a third in Wales near the Severn, called Linligwan, which swallows the sea without filling and then spews it up like a mountain. Anyone who stands facing it is drawn in, but one who turns his back is safe.

His itaque gestis, explorat Hoelus prædicti stagni situm,
these-things and-so done explores Hoel of-the-aforesaid lake the-situation
admiraturque tot flumina, tot insulas, tot rupes,
and-wonders so-many rivers so-many islands so-many rocks
tot numero aquilarum nidos adesse. Cumque ad mirum
so-many in-number of-eagles nests to-be-present and-when into wonder
contulisset, accessit Arturus, dixitque illi: aliud stagnum
he-had-turned approached Arthur and-said to-him another lake
magis esse mirandum in eadem provincia. Erat quippe haud
more to-be to-be-wondered-at in the-same province it-was indeed not
longe illinc, latitudinem habens viginti pedum, eademque
far from-there breadth having twenty of-feet and-with-the-same
mensura longitudinem, cum quinque pedum altitudine. In
measure length with five of-feet height in
quadrum vero, sive hominum arte, sive natura constitutum,
a-square indeed whether of-men by-art or by-nature set-up
quatuor genera piscium intra quatuor angulos procreabat: nec
four kinds of-fishes within four corners it-produced nor
in aliqua partium pisces alterius partis reperiebantur. Adjecit
in any of-the-parts fishes of-another part were-found he-added
etiam aliud stagnum in partibus Gualliarum prope Sabrinam
also another lake in the-parts of-Wales near the-Severn

esse, quod Pagenses Linligwan appellant: quod cum mare
to-be which the-countrymen Linligwan call which when the-sea
in ipsum fluctuat, in modum voraginis recipitur, sorbendoque
into it surges in the-manner of-a-whirlpool it-is-received and-by-swallowing
fluctus nullatenus repletur, ut riparum marginem operiat.
the-waves by-no-means is-filled so-that of-the-banks the-edge it-may-cover
At dum mare decrescit, instar montis eructat absorptas aquas,
but when the-sea decreases like a-mountain it-belches the-absorbed waters
quibus demum ripas tegit et aspergit. Interim si gens
with-which at-last the-banks it-covers and sprinkles meanwhile if the-people
totius patriæ illius facie versa prope astaret, recepta intra
of-the-whole country of-that face turned near should-stand received within
vestes undarum aspergine, vel vix vel nunquam elabi
the-clothes of-the-waves the-spray either scarcely or never to-slip-away
valeret, quin a stagno voraretur. Tergo autem verso,
they-could but-that by the-lake they-should-be-devoured back moreover turned
non est irroratio timenda, etiam si in ripis astaret.
not is the-sprinkling to-be-feared even if on the-banks one-should-stand

Arturus Eboracum renovat

VIII · ARTHUR RESTORES YORK

Arthur goes to York for Christmas and grieves at the ruined churches, whose archbishop Samson has been driven out. He makes his chaplain Pyramus archbishop, rebuilds the churches, and fills them with religious communities. He restores the nobles whom the Saxons had driven from their ancestral lands.

Data venia Scotorum populo, petivit rex Eboracum, instantis
given pardon of-the-Scots to-the-people sought the-king York of-the-pressing
natalis domini festum celebraturus. Cumque urbem intrasset,
nativity of-the-Lord the-feast about-to-celebrate and-when the-city he-had-entered

visa sacrarum ecclesiarum desolatione, condoluit. Expulso
seen of-the-holy churches the-desolation he-grieved driven-out
namque beato Samsone Archiepiscopo, cunctisque sanctæ
for blessed Samson the-Archbishop and-all of-holy
religionis viris, templa semiusta ab officio dei cessabant. Tanta
religion men the-temples half-burned from the-office of-God ceased so-great
etenim Paganorum insania prævaluerat. Exin convocato clero
for of-the-Pagans madness had-prevailed thence called-together the-clergy
et populo Pyramum capellanum suum Metropolitanæ sedi
and people Pyramus chaplain his-own to-the-Metropolitan see
destinavit. Ecclesias usque ad solum destructas renovat: atque
he-destined the-Churches all-the-way to the-ground destroyed he-renews and
religiosis cœtibus virorum ac mulierum exornat. Proceres autem
with-religious gatherings of-men and of-women he-adorns the-nobles moreover
inquietudine Saxonum expulsos, patriis honoribus restituit.
by-the-disturbance of-the-Saxons driven-out to-ancestral honors he-restored

Arturus sceptrum Scotorum Auguselo, Uriano Murefensium, Lot vero consulatum Londonesiæ donat

IX · ARTHUR RESTORES AUGUSELUS, URIAN, AND LOT

Arthur restores three royal brothers to their inheritance. Auguselus becomes king of the Scots, Urian of Moray, and Lot, who in Aurelius' time married Arthur's sister and fathered Gawain and Mordred, receives Lothian. Arthur then marries Guinevere, of noble Roman descent, raised in Cador's household and the most beautiful woman in the island.

Erant ibi tres fratres regali prosapia orti, Lot videlicet
there-were there three brothers from-royal lineage sprung Lot namely
atque Urianus, necnon et Auguselus: qui antequam Saxones
and Urian nor-not also Auguselus who before the-Saxons

prævaluissent, principatum illarum partium habuerant. Hos
had-prevailed the-principality of-those parts had-had these
igitur ut ceteros paterno jure donare volens, reddidit
therefore as the-others by-paternal right to-present wishing he-restored
Auguselo regiam potestatem Scotorum: fratremque ejus
to-Auguselus the-royal power of-the-Scots and-brother his
Urianum sceptro Murefensium insignivit: Lot autem,
Urian with-the-scepter of-the-men-of-Moray he-marked Lot moreover
qui tempore Aurelii Ambrosii sororem ipsius duxerat: ex
who in-the-time of-Aurelius Ambrosius the-sister of-him had-married of
qua Walgannum et Modedrium genuerat: ad consulatum
whom Gawain and Mordred he-had-begotten to the-consulship
Londonesiæ ceterarumque comprovinciarum, quæ ad eum
of-Lothian and-of-the-other neighboring-provinces which to him
pertinebant, reduxit. Denique cum totius patriæ statum in
belonged he-restored finally when of-the-whole country the-state into
pristinam dignitatem reduxisset, duxit uxorem Guanhumaram
former dignity he-had-restored he-married as-wife Guinevere
ex nobili genere Romanorum editam: quæ in thalamo Cadoris
from a-noble race of-the-Romans born who in the-chamber of-Cador
ducis educata, totius insulæ mulieres pulcritudine superabat.
the-duke brought-up of-the-whole island the-women in-beauty surpassed

Arturus Hiberniam, Islandiam, Gothlandiam, et Orcades imperio addit

X · ARTHUR CONQUERS IRELAND AND THE ISLANDS

The next summer Arthur sails to Ireland, defeats and captures King Guillamurius, and subdues the island. He conquers Iceland, and the kings of Gothland and the Orkneys submit of their own accord. He returns to Britain and keeps the peace for twelve years.

Adveniente deinde sequenti æstate, paravit classem suam,
coming then the-following summer he-prepared fleet his-own
adivitque Hiberniæ insulam, quam sibi subdere desiderabat.
and-went-to of-Ireland the-island which to-himself to-subject he-desired
Applicanti autem ipsi, prædictus rex Guillamurius cum
to-landing moreover him the-aforesaid king Guillamurius with
innumerabili gente obviam venit, contra illum dimicaturus.
innumerable people to-meet came against him about-to-fight
Cumque prælium incepisset, confestim gens ejus nuda et
and-when the-battle had-begun forthwith the-people his naked and
inermis, mire lacerata confugit quo ei locus refugii patebat.
unarmed wonderfully torn fled where to-it a-place of-refuge lay-open
Nec mora, captus est etiam Guillamurius et ad deditionem
nor delay taken was also Guillamurius and to surrender
coactus. Unde ceteri principes patriæ stupefacti, exemplo
forced whence the-other princes of-the-country stunned by-the-example
regis deditionem fecerunt. Subjugatis itaque totius Hiberniæ
of-the-king surrender made subjugated and-so of-the-whole of-Ireland
partibus, classem suam direxit in Islandiam, eamque debellato
the-parts fleet his-own he-directed into Iceland and-it subdued
populo subjugavit. Exin divulgato per ceteras insulas rumore
the-people subjugated thence spread-abroad through the-other islands the-rumor

quod ei nulla provincia resistere poterat, Doldavius rex
that to-him no province to-resist could Doldavius king
Gothlandiæ, et Gunfasius rex Orcadum ultro venerunt:
of-Gothland and Gunfasius king of-the-Orkneys of-their-own-accord came
promissoque vectigali subjectionem fecerunt. Emensa deinde
and-promised a-tax subjection made having-passed then
hyeme, reversus est in Britanniam, statumque regni in
the-winter returned he-has into Britain and-the-state of-the-kingdom into
firmam pacem renovans, moram duodecim annis ibidem fecit.
firm peace renewing a-stay for-twelve years there he-made

Norvegiam, Daciam, Aquitaniam et Galliam subjicit

XI · ARTHUR CONQUERS NORWAY AND GAUL

Arthur's court becomes the model of courtliness for distant peoples. He conquers Norway for his brother-in-law Lot, and Denmark, then besieges the tribune Frollo in Paris. Frollo proposes single combat and wounds Arthur, who splits his head with Caliburn; Hoel conquers Aquitaine and Gascony, and after nine years Arthur gives Normandy to Bedevere and Anjou to Kay.

Tunc invitatis probissimis quibusque ex longe positis regnis,
then invited the-most-valiant all from far placed kingdoms
cœpit familiam suam augmentare: tantamque urbanitatem
he-began household his-own to-increase and-so-great courtliness
in domo sua habere, ut æmulationem longe manentibus
in house his-own to-have that emulation far dwelling
populis ingereret. Unde nobilissimus quisque incitatus, nihili
peoples he-heaped whence most-noble each-one roused at-nothing
pendebat se, nisi sese sive in induendo, sive in arma
valued himself unless himself whether in dressing or in arms
ferendo, ad modum militum Arturi haberet. Denique
bearing after the-manner of-the-knights of-Arthur he-held finally

fama largitatis atque probitatis illius per extremos mundi
the-fame of-largess and of-prowess his through the-farthest of-the-world
cardines divulgata, reges transmarinorum regnorum nimius
hinges spread-abroad the-kings of-overseas kingdoms excessive
invadebat timor, ne inquietatione ejus oppressi, nationes sibi
invaded fear lest by-the-harassment his oppressed the-nations to-them
subditas amitterent. Mordacibus ergo curis anxiati, urbes
subject they-might-lose with-biting therefore cares troubled the-cities
atque urbium turres renovabant: oppida in congruis locis
and of-the-cities the-towers they-renewed towns in fitting places
ædificabant: ut si impetus Arturum in illos duceret,
they-built so-that if impulse Arthur against them should-lead
refugium, si opus esset, haberent. Cumque id Arturo
a-refuge if need were they-might-have and-when this to-Arthur
notificatum esset, extollens se quia cunctis timori erat,
made-known had-been lifting-up himself because to-all for-fear he-was
totam Europam sibi subdere affectat. Paratis deinde
the-whole Europe to-himself to-subject he-desires prepared then
navigiis Norwegiam prius adivit, ut illius diademate Lot
fleets Norway first he-went-to so-that its with-diadem Lot
sororium suum insigniret. Erat autem Lot nepos Sichelini
brother-in-law his-own he-might-mark was moreover Lot nephew of-Sichelin
regis Norwegensium, qui ea tempestate defunctus, regnum
king of-the-Norwegians who at-that time having-died kingdom
suum eidem destinaverat. At Norwegenses indignati illum
his-own to-the-same had-destined but the-Norwegians indignant him
recipere, erexerant jam quendam Riculfum in regiam
to-receive had-raised already a-certain Riculf into royal
potestatem, munitisque urbibus, Arturo se posse
power and-fortified the-cities to-Arthur themselves to-be-able
resistere existimabant. Erat tunc Walvanus filius prædicti
to-resist thought was then Gawain son of-the-aforesaid

Lot duodecim annorum juvenis, obsequio Sulpicii Papæ
Lot of-twelve years a-youth to-the-service of-Sulpicius the-Pope
ab avunculo traditus: a quo arma recepit. Ut ergo
by the-uncle handed-over from whom arms he-received when therefore
Arturus (sicut dicere incœperam) in Norwegense littus
Arthur as to-say I-had-begun on the-Norwegian shore
applicuit: obviavit ei rex Riculfus cum universo patriæ
landed met him king Riculf with all of-the-country
populo, prælіumque commisit: et cum multum cruoris in
the-people and-battle joined and when much of-gore on
utraque parte diffusum esset, prævaluerunt tandem Britones:
each side poured-out had-been prevailed at-last the-Britons
factoque impetu Riculfum cum multis peremerunt. Victoria
and-made an-attack Riculf with many destroyed of-the-victory
igitur potiti, civitates accumulata flamma invaserunt:
therefore having-gained the-cities with-heaped flame they-attacked
dispersisque pagensibus, sævitiæ indulgere non cessaverunt,
and-scattered the-countrymen to-savagery to-indulge not they-ceased
donec totam Norwegiam, necnon et Daciam, dominio
until all Norway nor-not also Dacia to-the-dominion
Arturi submiserunt. Quibus subactis, cum Lot in regem
of-Arthur they-subjected which subdued when Lot into king
Norwegiæ promovisset, navigavit Arturus ad Gallias, factisque
of-Norway he-had-advanced sailed Arthur to the-Gauls and-made
turmis patriam undique vastare incœpit. Erat tunc provincia
troops the-country on-all-sides to-lay-waste began was then the-province
Gallia Romæ Flolloni tribuno commissa, qui eam sub Leone
Gaul of-Rome to-Frollo tribune committed who it under Leo
Imperatore regebat. Qui cum Arturi adventum comperisset,
the-Emperor ruled who when of-Arthur the-arrival he-had-discovered
collegit omnem armatum militem qui potestati suæ parebat,
gathered every armed knight who to-power his-own was-obedient

et cum Arturo prælıatus est, sed minime resistere quivit.
and with Arthur fought he-has but by-no-means to-resist could
Nam Arturum juventus insularum omnium quas subjugaverat,
for Arthur the-youth of-the-islands of-all which he-had-subjugated
comitabatur. Unde tantum perhibebatur habere exercitum,
accompanied whence so-great he-was-held to-have an-army
quantum erat difficile ab ullo posse superari. Famulabatur
as-great-as was difficult by anyone to-be-able to-be-overcome was-servant
quoque ei melior pars Gallicanæ militiæ, quam sua
also to-him the-better part of-the-Gallic knighthood which by-his-own
largitate sibi obnoxiam fecerat. Flollo igitur cum sese in
largess to-himself bound he-had-made Frollo therefore when himself into
deteriorem prælii partem incidere vidisset, relicto confestim
the-worse of-the-battle part to-fall he-had-seen left forthwith
campo Parisios cum paucis diffugit. Ibi resociato dilapso
the-field to-Paris with a-few fled there regathered the-scattered
populo, munivit urbem: et iterum affectavit cum Arturo
people he-fortified the-city and again desired with Arthur
dimicare. At dum exercitum suum vicinorum auxilio
to-fight but while army his-own of-the-neighbors with-the-help
roborare intenderet, ex improviso venit Arturus, ipsumque
to-strengthen he-intended from unforeseen came Arthur and-him
intra civitatem obsedit. Emenso denique mense, cum Flollo
within the-city besieged having-passed finally a-month when Frollo
gentem suam fame perire doluisset, mandavit Arturo, ut
people his-own by-hunger to-perish had-grieved he-sent-word to-Arthur that
ipsi soli duellum inirent: et cui victoria provenisset,
they-themselves alone a-duel should-enter and to-whom victory had-come
alterius regnum obtineret. Erat enim ipse staturæ,
of-the-other the-kingdom should-hold was for he-himself of-stature
et audaciæ, et fortitudinis magnæ: quibus ultra modum
and of-boldness and of-strength great in-which beyond measure

confisus, ita mandaverat, ut hoc modo salutis aditum
having-trusted so he-had-sent-word that in-this manner of-safety an-approach
haberet. Quod cum Arturo nunciatum esset, placuit ei
he-might-have which when to-Arthur announced had-been pleased him
vehementer Flollonis affectus. Renuntiavitque sese paratum
vehemently of-Frollo the-disposition and-he-announced-back himself ready
fore prædictam conventionem tenere. Dato igitur ab utraque
to-be the-aforesaid agreement to-hold given therefore on each
parte fœdere, conveniunt uterque in insulam quæ erat extra
side the-pact come-together each into an-island which was outside
civitatem, populo expectante quid de eis futurum erat.
the-city the-people waiting what about them about-to-be was
Ambo erant decenter armati: super equos etiam miræ
both were becomingly armed upon horses also of-wonderful
velocitatis sedentes: nec erat promptum dinoscere utri
swiftness sitting nor it-was plain to-discern to-which-of-two
triumphus proveniret. Ut itaque erectis lanceis in adversis
triumph would-come when and-so raised lances on opposite
partibus steterunt, confestim subdentes equis calcaria,
sides they-stood forthwith putting to-the-horses the-spurs
sese maximis ictibus percusserunt. At Arturus gestans
themselves with-greatest blows they-struck but Arthur carrying
cautius lanceam, Flollonem in summitate pectoris infixit,
more-cautiously the-lance Frollo on the-top of-the-chest pierced
ejusque telo vitato, quantum vigor sinebat, illum in terram
and-his weapon avoided as-far-as strength allowed him on the-earth
prostravit. Evaginato quoque ense festinabat eum ferire, cum
laid-low drawn also the-sword he-hurried him to-strike when
Flollo velocius erectus, prætensa lancea occurrit: illatoque intra
Frollo more-swiftly raised with-held-out lance ran-up and-brought within
pectus equi Arturi letifero vulnere, utrumque concidere
the-chest of-the-horse of-Arthur a-deadly wound both to-fall

coegit. Britones ut prostratum regem viderunt, timentes
he-forced the-Britons when the-felled king they-saw fearing
eum peremptum esse, vix potuerunt retineri, quin rupto
him destroyed to-be scarcely could to-be-held-back but-that broken
fœdere in Gallos unanimiter irruerent. At dum metam
the-pact upon the-Gauls with-one-mind they-should-rush but while the-bound
pacis jam egredi meditarentur, erectus est ocyus Arturus:
of-peace already to-pass they-considered raised was more-swiftly Arthur
prætensoque clypeo imminentem sibi Flollonem cito cursu
and-with-held-out shield the-threatening to-him Frollo with-swift course
petivit. Instantes igitur cominus, mutuos ictus ingeminant,
sought pressing therefore hand-to-hand mutual blows they-redouble
alter neci alterius insistens. Denique Flollo invento aditu,
one on-the-death of-the-other pressing finally Frollo found an-opening
percussit Arturum in frontem, et nisi collisione cassidis
struck Arthur on the-forehead and unless by-the-collision of-the-helmet
mucronem hebetasset, mortiferum vulnus forsitan intulisset.
the-blade he-had-blunted a-deadly wound perhaps he-would-have-dealt
Manante ergo sanguine, cum Arturus loricam et clypeum
flowing therefore the-blood when Arthur the-breastplate and the-shield
rubere vidisset, ardentiori ira succensus est, atque erecto
to-redden had-seen with-more-burning anger inflamed he-was and raised
totis viribus Caliburno, impressit eum per galeam in
with-all strength Caliburn he-drove it through the-helmet into
caput Flollonis, quod in duas partes dissecuit. Quo vulnere
the-head of-Frollo which into two parts he-cut-apart by-which wound
cecidit Flollo, tellurem calcaneis pulsans, et spiritum in
fell Frollo the-earth with-heels beating and the-spirit into
auras emisit. Cumque id per exercitum divulgatum fuisset,
the-airs sent-forth and-when this through the-army spread-abroad had-been
concurrerunt cives, apertisque valvis civitatem Arturo
ran-together the-citizens and-opened the-gates the-city to-Arthur

tradiderunt. Qui deinde victoria potitus, divisit exercitum
handed-over who then of-the-victory having-gained divided army
suum in duas partes, et unam Hoelo duci commisit:
his-own into two parts and one to-Hoel the-duke committed
præcepitque illi ut ad expugnandum Guitardum Pictavensium
and-ordered him that for storming Guitard of-the-Poitevins
ducem iret: ipse vero cum reliqua parte ceteras
duke he-should-go he-himself but with the-remaining part the-other
provincias sibi subjugare vacavit. Mox Hoelus Aquitaniam
provinces to-himself to-subjugate was-busy soon Hoel Aquitaine
ingressus, urbes patriæ invasit, Guitardumque pluribus
having-entered the-cities of-the-country attacked and-Guitard by-many
præliis anxiatum, ad deditionem coegit. Guasconiam quoque
battles troubled to surrender forced Gascony also
ferro et flamma depopulans, principes ejusdem subjugavit.
with-sword and flame ravaging the-princes of-the-same subjugated
Emensis iterum novem annis, cum totius Galliæ partes
having-passed again nine years when of-the-whole of-Gaul the-parts
potestati suæ submisisset, venit iterum Arturus Parisios,
to-power his-own he-had-subjected came again Arthur to-Paris
tenuitque ibidem curiam: ubi convocato clero et populo,
and-held there a-court where called-together the-clergy and people
statum regni pace et lege confirmavit. Tunc largitus
the-state of-the-kingdom with-peace and law confirmed then bestowed
est Beduero pincernæ suo Neustriam, quæ nunc Normannia
he-has on-Bedevere butler his-own Neustria which now Normandy
dicitur: Caioque dapifero, Andegavensium provinciam. Plures
is-called and-on-Kay the-steward of-the-Angevins the-province many
quoque alias provincias nobilibus viris, qui in obsequio suo
also other provinces on-noble men who in service his-own

fuerant. Denique pacificatis quibusque civitatibus et populis,
had-been finally pacified all cities and peoples
incipiente vere in Britanniam est reversus.
beginning spring into Britain he-has returned

Arturus concilium regum sibi subjectorum in urbe Legionum convocat

XII · THE COURT AT THE CITY OF THE LEGIONS

As Pentecost nears, Arthur resolves to hold court and be crowned at the City of the Legions on the Usk, a rich city with golden roofs like Rome's, two churches, and a school of two hundred philosophers who read the stars. His envoys summon kings, archbishops, consuls, and nobles from all Britain, the islands, and Gaul, and no prince of any worth this side of Spain stays away, so far has Arthur's generosity spread.

Cum igitur solennitas Pentecostes advenire inciperet, post
when therefore the-solemnity of-Pentecost to-come began after
tantum triumphum maxima lætitia fluctuans Arturus,
so-great a-triumph with-greatest joy surging Arthur
affectavit curiam ilico tenere, regnique diadema capiti
desired a-court on-the-spot to-hold and-of-the-kingdom the-diadem on-head
suo imponere. Reges etiam et duces sibi subditos ad
his-own to-place the-kings also and dukes to-him subject to
ipsam festivitatem convenire: ubi et illam venerabiliter
the-same festival to-come-together where both it reverently
celebraret, et inter proceres suos firmissimam pacem
he-might-celebrate and among the-nobles his-own most-firm peace
renovaret. Indicato autem familiaribus suis quod affectaverat:
he-might-renew shown moreover to-intimates his-own what he-had-desired
consilium cepit, ut in urbe Legionum suum exequeretur
counsel he-took that in the-City of-the-Legions his-own he-should-carry-out

propositum. In Glamorgantia etenim super Oscam fluvium,
purpose in Glamorgan for upon the-Usk river
non longe a Sabrino mari, amœnissimo situ locata, præ
not far from the-Severn sea in-a-most-pleasant situation placed before
ceteris civitatibus divitiis abundans, tantæ solennitati apta
the-other cities in-riches abounding for-so-great a-solemnity fit
erat. Ex una namque parte prædictum nobile flumen juxta
it-was on one for side the-aforesaid noble river beside
eam fluebat, per quod transmarini reges et principes, qui
it flowed through which the-overseas kings and princes who
venturi erant navigio advehi poterant: ex alia vero
about-to-come were by-ship to-be-carried could on the-other indeed
parte pratis atque nemoribus vallata, regalibus præpollebat
side by-meadows and forests walled in-royal it-excelled
palatiis: ita ut aureis tectorum fastigiis Romam imitaretur.
palaces so that with-the-golden of-the-roofs gables Rome it-imitated
Duabus autem eminebat Ecclesiis, quarum una in honore
with-two moreover it-stood-out Churches of-which one in honor
Julii martyris erecta, virgineo Deo dicatarum puellarum
of-Julius the-martyr raised with-a-virginal to-God dedicated of-girls
choro perpulcre ornabatur: altera vero in beati Aaron
choir most-beautifully was-adorned the-other indeed in of-blessed Aaron
ejusdem socii nomine fundata, canonicorum conventu
of-the-same the-comrade name founded of-canons by-a-convent
subnixa, tertiam metropolitanam sedem Britanniæ habebat.
supported the-third metropolitan see of-Britain held
Præterea gymnasium ducentorum philosophorum habebat: qui
besides a-school of-two-hundred philosophers it-had who
astronomia atque ceteris artibus eruditi, cursus stellarum
in-astronomy and other arts learned the-courses of-the-stars
diligenter observabant, et prodigia eo tempore ventura
diligently observed and the-prodigies at-that time about-to-come

regi Arturo veris argumentis prædicebant. Tot ergo
to-the-king Arthur with-true arguments foretold with-so-many therefore
delitiarum copiis præclara, festivitati edictæ disponitur.
of-delights abundances famous for-the-festival proclaimed it-is-arranged
Missis deinde in diversa regna legatis, invitantur tam
sent then into various kingdoms envoys are-invited as-well
ex Galliis quam ex collateralibus insulis Oceani, qui
from the-Gauls as from the-neighboring islands of-the-Ocean those-who
ad curiam venire deberent. Venerunt ergo Auguselus rex
to the-court to-come ought came therefore Auguselus king
Albaniæ, quæ nunc Scotia dicitur, Urianus rex Murefensium:
of-Albany which now Scotland is-called Urian king of-the-men-of-Moray
Caduallo Leuirh rex Venedotorum, qui nunc Nortgualenses
Cadwallo Lewirh king of-the-Venedotians who now North-Welsh
dicuntur: Sater rex Demetorum, id est Suthgualensium:
are-called Sater king of-the-Demetians that is of-the-South-Welsh
Cador rex Cornubiæ: trium etiam metropolitanarum sedium
Cador king of-Cornwall of-the-three also metropolitan sees
Archipræsules, Londoniensis videlicet, Eboracensis, nec non ex
the-Archbishops of-London namely of-York nor not from
urbe Legionum Dubricius. Hic Britanniæ primus Apostolicæ
the-City of-the-Legions Dubricius this-one of-Britain the-first of-the-Apostolic
sedis legatus tanta religione clarebat, ut quemque languore
see legate with-so-great religion shone that each-one by-sickness
gravatum orationibus suis sanaret. Venerunt nobilium civitatum
weighed-down with-prayers his-own he-healed came of-noble cities
consules, Morvid consul Claudiocestriæ: Mauron Guigornensis:
the-consuls Morvid consul of-Gloucester Mauron of-Worcester
Anaraut Saleberiensis; Arthgal Cargueitensis, quæ Warguit
Anaraut of-Salisbury Arthgal of-Cargueit which Warwick
appellatur: Jugein ex Legecestria: Cursalem ex Kaicestria:
is-called Jugein from Leicester Cursalem from Kaicester

Kimmare dux Doroberniæ: Galluc Saleberiensis: Urgennius
Kimmare duke of-Dorobernia Galluc of-Salisbury Urgennius
ex Badone: Jonathal Dorocestrensis: Boso Ridocensis, id est,
from Bath Jonathal of-Dorchester Boso of-Ridoc that is
Oxenefordiæ. Præter consules venerunt non minoris dignitatis
of-Oxford besides the-consuls came not of-lesser dignity
heroes, Danaut, Mappapo: Cheneus, Mapcoil, Pereder,
heroes Danaut Mappapo Cheneus Mapcoil Pereder
Maberidur, Guisul, Mapnogoit, Regin, Mapclaut, Eddelein,
Maberidur Guisul Mapnogoit Regin Mapclaut Eddelein
Mapeledauc, Kincar, Mabbagan, Kimmare, Gorboniam,
Mapeledauc Kincar Mabbagan Kimmare Gorboniam
Mapgoit, Clofaut, Rupmaneton, Kimbelim, Maptrunat,
Mapgoit Clofaut Rupmaneton Kimbelim Maptrunat
Cathleus, Mapcatel, Kinlich, Mapneton, plures quoque alii,
Cathleus Mapcatel Kinlich Mapneton many also others
quorum nomina longum est enumerare. Ex collateralibus
whose names long it-is to-enumerate from the-neighboring
etiam insulis, Guillamurius rex Hiberniæ: Maluasius rex
also islands Guillamurius king of-Ireland Malvasius king
Islandiæ: Doldavius rex Godlandiæ: Gunvasius rex Orcadum:
of-Iceland Doldavius king of-Gothland Gunvasius king of-the-Orkneys
Lot rex Norwegiæ: Aschillius rex Dacorum. Ex transmarinis
Lot king of-Norway Aschil king of-the-Danes from overseas
quoque partibus, Holdinus rex Rutenorum: Leodegarius
also parts Holdin king of-the-Ruteni Leodegar
consul Boloniæ: Beduerus pincerna, dux Normanniæ: Borellus
consul of-Boulogne Bedevere the-butler duke of-Normandy Borel
Cenomanensis: Caius dapifer, dux Andegavensis: Guitardus
of-Le-Mans Kay the-steward duke of-Anjou Guitard
Pictavensis: duodecim quoque Galliarum pares, quos Guerinus
of-Poitou the-twelve also of-the-Gauls peers whom Guerin

Carnotensis conducebat. Hoelus dux Armoricanorum Britonum
of-Chartres led Hoel duke of-the-Armorican Britons
cum proceribus sibi subditis, qui tanto apparatu
with the-nobles to-him subject who with-so-great an-array
ornamentorum, mularum et equorum incedebant, quantum
of-ornaments of-mules and of-horses advanced as-great-as
difficile est describere. Præter hos non remansit princeps
difficult it-is to-describe besides these not remained a-prince
alicujus precii citra Hispaniam, qui ad istud edictum
of-any worth on-this-side-of Spain who to this edict
non veniret. Nec mirum: largitas namque Arturi per
not should-come nor wonder the-largess for of-Arthur through
totum mundum divulgata, cunctos in amorem illius illexerat.
the-whole world spread-abroad all into love of-him had-enticed

De Arturi coronatione

XIII · THE CROWNING OF ARTHUR

The archbishops crown Arthur, and four kings bear golden swords before him, while four queens carry white doves before Guinevere. The music in the two churches is so sweet that the knights run from one to the other. Following the Trojan custom, the men feast with the king and the women with the queen, and Britain surpasses all kingdoms in wealth and elegance, its ladies loving only knights proven three times in battle.

Omnibus denique in urbe congregatis, solennitate instante,
all finally in the-city gathered the-solemnity pressing
archipræsules ad palatium ducuntur, ut regem diademate
the-archbishops to the-palace are-led so-that the-king with-the-diadem
regali coronarent. Dubricius ergo, quoniam in sua diœcesi
royal they-might-crown Dubricius therefore since in his-own diocese

curia tenebatur, paratus ad celebrandum obsequium, hujus
the-court was-held ready for celebrating the-service of-this
rei curam suscepit. Rege tandem insignito, ad templum
matter the-care took-up the-king at-last marked to the-temple
Metropolitanæ sedis ornate conducitur: a dextro enim
of-the-Metropolitan see ornately is-led on the-right for
et a lævo latere duo Archipontifices ipsum tenebant.
and on the-left side two Archpontiffs him held
Quatuor autem reges, Albaniæ videlicet atque Cornubiæ,
four moreover kings of-Albany namely and of-Cornwall
Demetiæ et Venedociæ, quorum illud jus fuerat, quatuor
of-Demetia and of-Venedotia whose that right had-been four
aureos gladios ferentes ante ipsum, præibant. Conventus
golden swords carrying before him went-before the-assembly
quoque multimodorum ordinatorum, miris modulationibus
also of-manifold ordained-men with-wonderful melodies
præcinebat. Ex alia autem parte reginam suis
sang-before on the-other moreover side the-queen with-her-own
insignibus laureatam Archipræsules atque Pontifices ad
insignia laureled the-Archbishops and Pontiffs to
templum Deo dicatarum puellarum conducebant. Quatuor
the-temple to-God dedicated of-girls led the-four
quoque prædictorum regum reginæ, quatuor albas columbas
also of-the-aforesaid kings queens four white doves
de more præferebant. Mulieres autem quæ aderant,
according-to custom carried-before the-women moreover who were-present
illam cum maximo gaudio sequebantur. Postremo peracta
her with greatest joy followed finally completed
processione, tot organa, tot cantus fiunt in utrisque
the-procession so-many organs so-many songs are-made in both
templis, ita ut præ nimia dulcedine milites qui aderant
temples so that for excessive sweetness the-knights who were-present

nescirent quod templorum prius peterent. Catervatim ergo
did-not-know which of-the-temples first they-should-seek in-crowds therefore
nunc ad hoc, nunc ad illud ruebant: nec si totus dies
now to this now to that they-rushed nor if the-whole day
celebrationi deditus esset, tædium aliquod ipsis generaret.
to-the-celebration given had-been weariness any to-them would-beget
Divinis tandem obsequiis in utroque celebratis, rex et
divine at-last services in both celebrated the-king and
regina diademata sua deponunt: assumptisque levioribus
the-queen diadems their-own lay-down and-taken lighter
ornamentis, ille ad suum palatium cum viris: hæc ad
ornaments he to his-own palace with the-men she to
aliud cum mulieribus epulatum incedunt. Antiquam namque
another with the-women to-feast proceed the-ancient for
consuetudinem Trojæ servantes Britones, consueverant mares
custom of-Troy keeping the-Britons were-accustomed males
cum maribus, mulieres cum mulieribus festivos dies separatim
with males women with women festive days separately
celebrare. Collocatis postmodum cunctis, ut singulorum
to-celebrate placed afterward all as of-the-single-ones
dignitas expetebat, Caius dapifer Herminio ornatus, mille
the-dignity demanded Kay the-steward with-ermine adorned by-a-thousand
vero nobilissimis juvenibus comitatus est: qui omnes
indeed most-noble youths accompanied was who all
Herminio induti, fercula cum ipso ministrabant. Ex alia
with-ermine clothed the-dishes with him served from the-other
vero parte, Beduerum pincernam totidem vario amicti
indeed side Bedevere the-butler as-many in-vair clothed
sequuntur: qui in scyphis diversorum generum, multimoda
follow who in cups of-various kinds manifold
pocula cum ipso distribuebant. In palatio quoque reginæ
drinks with him distributed in the-palace also of-the-queen

innumerabiles ministri diversis ornamentis induti, obsequium
innumerable servants in-various ornaments clothed service
suum præstabant, morem suum exercentes: quem si omnino
their-own offered the-custom their-own exercising which if wholly
describere pergerem nimiam historiæ prolixitatem generarem.
to-describe I-were-to-proceed excessive of-the-history length I-would-beget
Ad tantum etenim statum dignitatis Britannia tunc provecta
to so-great for a-state of-dignity Britain then advanced
erat, quod copia divitiarum, luxu ornamentorum,
was that by-abundance of-riches by-luxury of-ornaments
facetia incolarum, cetera regna excellebat. Quicumque
by-the-elegance of-the-inhabitants the-other kingdoms it-excelled whoever
ergo famosus probitate miles in eadem erat, unius coloris
therefore famous for-prowess knight in the-same was of-one color
vestibus atque armis utebatur. Facete etiam mulieres consimilia
clothes and arms used elegantly also the-women similar
indumenta habentes, nullius amorem habere dignabantur, nisi
garments having of-no-one the-love to-have deigned unless
tertio in militia approbatus esset. Efficiebantur ergo
three-times in knighthood approved he-had-been were-made therefore
castæ mulieres, et milites amore illarum meliores.
chaste the-women and the-knights by-love of-them better

Arturus omnes muneribus ditat

XIV · ARTHUR ENRICHES ALL WITH GIFTS

After the feasts the knights hold mock battles on horseback while the women watch from the walls. Others compete with javelins, spears, stones, and dice, and Arthur rewards the winners with gifts. On the fourth day he gives cities, castles, sees, and abbeys to all who serve him.

Refecti tandem epulis, diversi diversos ludos composituri
refreshed at-last with-feasts different-ones different games about-to-arrange
campos extra civitatem adeunt. Mox milites simulacrum prælii
the-fields outside the-city they-go-to soon the-knights a-likeness of-battle
ciendo, equestrem ludum componunt: mulieres in edito
by-stirring-up an-equestrian game arrange the-women on the-height
murorum aspicientes, in furiales amoris flammas amore joci
of-the-walls watching into furious of-love flames by-love of-the-sport
irritant. Alii cum Celtibus, alii cum hasta, alii ponderosorum
they-rouse others with javelins others with the-spear others of-heavy
lapidum jactu, alii cum saxis, alii cum aleis ceterorumque
stones with-the-throw others with stones others with dice and-of-other
jocorum diversitate contendentes, quod diei restabat,
sports with-variety contending what of-the-day remained
postposita lite, prætereunt. Quicunque vero ludi sui
set-aside quarrel pass whoever indeed of-game his-own
victoriam adeptus erat, ab Arturo largis muneribus ditabatur.
the-victory obtained had by Arthur with-large gifts was-enriched
Consumptis ergo primis in hunc modum tribus diebus,
spent therefore the-first in this manner three days
instante quarto vocantur cuncti, qui ei propter honores
pressing the-fourth are-called all who to-him on-account-of honors
obsequium præstabant, et singuli singulis possessionibus,
service offered and single-ones with-single possessions

civitatibus videlicet atque castellis, Archiepiscopatibus,
with-cities namely and castles with-Archbishoprics
Episcopatibus, Abbatiis, ceterisque honoribus donantur.
with-Bishoprics with-Abbeys and-with-other honors are-presented

Lucius Tiberius ad Arturum epistolam mittit

XV · LUCIUS TIBERIUS SENDS A LETTER TO ARTHUR

Dubricius retires to a hermit's life, and David, the king's uncle, succeeds him. Twelve envoys bearing olive branches bring a letter from Lucius, procurator of the Republic, demanding the tribute Britain owes Rome and summoning Arthur to Rome by mid-August for judgment. Climbing the giants' tower to deliberate, Cador laughs that God has sent the Romans to rouse the Britons from five years of dice and women.

Beatus igitur Dubricius in eremiticam vitam anhelans, sese
blessed therefore Dubricius for the-hermit life panting himself
ab Archiepiscopali sede deposuit: in cujus locum sacratur
from the-Archiepiscopal see deposed in whose place is-consecrated
David regis avunculus, cujus vita exemplum totius bonitatis
David of-the-king the-uncle whose life an-example of-all goodness
erat, his quos doctrina imbuerat. In loco vero sancti
was to-those whom with-teaching he-had-imbued in the-place indeed of-holy
Samsonis Dolensis Archipræsulis, destinatur Chelianus illustris
Samson of-Dol Archbishop is-destined Chelian a-renowned
Presbyter Landaviæ, annuente Hoelo rege Armoricanorum
Priest of-Llandaff assenting Hoel king of-the-Armorican
Britonum: cujus vita et boni mores virum commendaverant.
Britons whose life and good ways the-man had-commended
Episcopatus vero Silcestriæ Mauganio: et Guintoniæ Diwanio
the-Bishopric indeed of-Silchester to-Maugannius and of-Winchester to-Diwanius

decernitur: decernitur quoque pontificalis insula Alclud
is-decreed is-decreed also the-pontifical island Alclud
Eledanio. Dum hæc inter eos distribueret: ecce duodecim
to-Eledanius while these-things among them he-distributed behold twelve
viri maturæ ætatis, reverendi vultus, ramos olivæ, in signum
men of-ripe age of-venerable countenance branches of-olive as a-sign
legationis in dextris ferentes, moderatis vocibus et passibus
of-embassy in right-hands carrying with-measured voices and steps
ad regem ingrediuntur: et eo salutato, literas ipsi ex parte
to the-king enter and him greeted letters to-him from the-side
Lucii Tiberii in hæc verba obtulerunt: "Lucius Reipublicæ
of-Lucius Tiberius in these words they-offered Lucius of-the-Republic
procurator, Arturo regi Britanniæ quod meruit. Admirans
procurator to-Arthur king of-Britain what he-has-deserved wondering
vehementer admiror super tuæ tyrannidis protervia. Admiror,
vehemently I-wonder at your of-tyranny the-insolence I-wonder
inquam, et injuriam quam Romæ intulisti. Recolligens
I-say and the-wrong which to-Rome you-have-brought recalling
indignor quod extra te egressus, eam cognoscere diffugias:
I-am-indignant that outside yourself having-gone it to-recognize you-shun
nec animadvertere festines, quid sit injustis actibus senatum
nor to-notice you-hasten what it-is by-unjust acts the-senate
offendisse, cui totum orbem famulatum debere non
to-have-offended to-which the-whole world service to-owe not
ignoras. Etenim tributum Britanniæ quod Senatus tibi
you-are-ignorant for the-tribute of-Britain which the-Senate to-you
præceperat: quia Caius Julius, ceterique Romanæ dignitatis
had-ordered because Gaius Julius and-the-other of-the-Roman dignity
viri illud multis temporibus habuerunt: neglecto tanti ordinis
men it for-many times had neglected of-so-great an-order
imperio detinere præsumpsisti: eripuisti quoque Galliam:
the-command to-withhold you-have-presumed you-have-snatched also Gaul

eripuisti Allobrogum provinciam: eripuisti omnes
you-have-snatched of-the-Allobroges the-province you-have-snatched all
Oceani insulas: quarum reges, dum Romana potestas in
of-the-Ocean the-islands whose kings while the-Roman power in
illis partibus prævaluit, vectigal majoribus nostris reddiderunt.
those parts prevailed tax to-forefathers our rendered
Quia ergo de tantis injuriarum tuarum cumulis senatus
because therefore for so-great of-wrongs your heaps the-senate
rectitudinem petere decrevit, mediantem Augustum proximi
justice to-seek has-decided mid August of-the-next
anni terminum præfigens, Romam te venire jubeo: ut
year as-the-limit fixing to-Rome you to-come I-order so-that
dominis tuis satisfaciens, sententiæ quam eorum dictavit
to-lords your giving-satisfaction to-the-sentence which their has-dictated
justitia, acquiescas. Sin autem, ego ipse partes tuas adibo,
justice you-may-assent if-not moreover I myself parts your shall-approach
et quicquid vesania tua Reipublicæ eripuit, eidem
and whatever madness your from-the-Republic has-snatched to-the-same
mediantibus gladiis restituere conabor." Quæ ut in præsentia
mediating swords to-restore I-shall-try which when in the-presence
regum et consulum recitatæ fuerunt: secessit Arturus cum
of-kings and consuls recited they-had-been withdrew Arthur with
eis in giganteam turrim, quæ in introitu erat, tractaturus
them into the-giant tower which at the-entrance was about-to-treat
quæ contra talia mandata disponi deberent. At dum
what-things against such commands to-be-arranged ought but while
gradus ascendere incepissent, Cador dux Cornubiæ, ut erat
the-steps to-climb they-had-begun Cador duke of-Cornwall as he-was
læti animi, in hunc sermonem cum risu coram rege
of-glad mind into this speech with laughter before the-king
solutus est: Hucusque in timore fueram, ne Britones longa
loosened was hitherto in fear I-had-been lest the-Britons by-long

pace quietos, otium quod ducunt ignavos faceret: famamque
militiæ, qua ceteris gentibus clariores censentur, in
eis omnino deleret. Quippe ubi usus armorum videtur
abesse; alearum vero et mulierum inflammationes, ceteraque
oblectamenta adesse: dubitandum non est, quin id quod
erat virtutis, quod honoris, quod audaciæ, quod famæ,
ignavia commaculet. Fere namque transacti sunt quinque
anni, ex quo prædictis delitiis dediti exercitio Martis
caruimus. Deus igitur ut nos segnitia liberaret, Romanos
in hunc affectum induxit, ut in pristinum statum nostram
probitatem reducerent. Hæc et his similia illo cum
ceteris dicente, venerunt tandem ad sedilia, ubi collocatis
singulis, Arturus illos in hunc modum affatus est.

peace quiet the-idleness which they-lead cowards should-make and-the-fame
of-knighthood by-which than-other peoples more-famous they-are-thought in
them altogether should-wipe-out indeed where the-use of-arms seems
to-be-absent of-dice indeed and of-women the-inflammations and-other
delights to-be-present to-be-doubted not it-is but-that that which
was of-valor what of-honor what of-boldness what of-fame
sloth may-stain almost for passed have five
years since when to-the-aforesaid delights given the-exercise of-Mars
we-have-lacked God therefore that us from-sloth he-might-free the-Romans
into this disposition has-led that into the-former state our
prowess they-might-lead-back these and to-these similar-things him with
the-others saying they-came at-last to the-seats where placed
the-single-ones Arthur them in this manner addressed has

Arturus, concilio habito, singulis dat veniam quid sentiant dicendi

XVI · ARTHUR TAKES COUNSEL

Arthur argues that what Caesar took by force gives no right to tribute. By the same reasoning Rome owes tribute to him, since Belinus and Brennius took Rome and Constantine and Maximianus, his kinsmen, ruled the empire. As for Gaul and the islands, Rome did not defend them when he took them.

Consocii (inquit) adversitatis et prosperitatis, quorum
O-companions he-says of-adversity and of-prosperity whose
probitates hactenus et in dandis consiliis, et in militiis
prowesses hitherto both in giving counsels and in knighthoods
agendis expertus sum: adhibete nunc unanimiter sensus
doing tested I-have apply now with-one-mind senses
vestros, et sapienter prævidete quæ super talibus mandatis
your and wisely foresee what-things upon such commands
nobis esse agenda noveritis. Quicquid enim a sapiente
for-us to-be to-be-done you-will-have-known whatever for by a-wise-man
diligenter prævidetur, cum ad actum accedit, facilius toleratur.
diligently is-foreseen when to act it-comes more-easily is-borne
Facilius ergo inquietationem Lucii tolerare poterimus, si
more-easily therefore the-harassment of-Lucius to-bear we-shall-be-able if
communi studio præmeditati fuerimus, quibus modis eam
with-common zeal premeditated we-shall-have by-what means it
debilitare instemus. Quam non multum nobis timendam esse
to-weaken we-may-press which not much by-us to-be-feared to-be
existimo: cum ex irrationabili causa exigat tributum, quod
I-think since from an-unreasonable cause he-demands the-tribute which
ex Britannia habere desiderat. Dicit enim ipsum sibi
from Britain to-have he-desires he-says for it to-himself

dari debere, quia Julio Cæsari ceterisque successoribus
to-be-given to-be-owed because to-Julius Caesar and-to-the-other successors
suis redditum fuerit: qui dissidio veterum Britonum
his-own rendered it-has-been who by-the-dissension of-the-old Britons
invitati cum armata manu in Britanniam applicuerunt: atque
invited with an-armed band into Britain landed and
patriam domesticis motibus vacillantem suæ potestati
the-country with-domestic disturbances tottering to-their-own power
vi et violentia submiserunt. Quia vero hoc modo eam
by-force and violence subjected because indeed in-this manner it
adepti fuerunt, vectigal ex ea injuste ceperunt. Nihil enim
obtained they-have the-tax from it unjustly they-took nothing for
quod vi et violentia acquiritur, juste ab ullo possidetur
which by-force and violence is-acquired justly by anyone is-possessed
qui violentiam intulit. Irrationabilem ergo causam prætendit,
who violence has-brought an-unreasonable therefore cause he-pretends
qua nos jure sibi tributarios esse arbitratur, Quoniam
by-which us by-right to-himself tributaries to-be he-thinks since
autem id quod injustum est, a nobis præsumit exigere:
moreover that which unjust is from us he-presumes to-demand
consimili ratione petamus ab illo tributum Romæ: et qui
with-similar reasoning let-us-seek from him tribute of-Rome and who
fortior supervenerit, ferat quod habere exoptavit. Nam
stronger will-have-come-upon let-him-carry-off what to-have he-has-longed for
si quia Julius Cæsar ceterique Romani reges Britanniam olim
if because Julius Caesar and-the-other Roman kings Britain once
subjugaverunt, vectigal nunc debere sibi ex illa reddi
subjugated a-tax now to-be-owed to-himself from it to-be-rendered
decernit: similiter nunc ego censeo, quod Roma mihi
he-decides likewise now I judge that Rome to-me
tributum reddere debet, quia antecessores mei eam antiquitus
tribute to-render ought because predecessors my it of-old

obtinuerunt. Belinus etenim serenissimus ille Britonum
held Belinus for most-serene that of-the-Britons
rex, usus auxilio fratris sui, Brenni videlicet ducis
king having-used the-help of-brother his-own Brennius namely duke
Allobrogum, suspensis in medio foro viginti nobilioribus
of-the-Allobroges hanged in the-middle forum twenty more-noble
Romanis, urbem ceperunt, captamque multis temporibus
Romans the-city they-took and-the-taken for-many times
possederunt. Constantinus etiam Helenæ filius, nec non et
possessed Constantine also of-Helena son nor not also
Maximianus, uterque mihi cognatione propinquus, alter post
Maximianus both to-me by-kinship near one after
alterum diademate Britanniæ insignitus, thronum Romani
the-other with-the-diadem of-Britain marked the-throne of-the-Roman
Imperii adeptus est. Censetisne ergo vectigal a Romanis
Empire obtained has do-you-judge therefore a-tax from the-Romans
petendum? De Gallia autem, sive de collateralibus insulis
to-be-sought about Gaul moreover or about the-neighboring islands
Oceani, non est respondendum: cum illas diffugeret defendere,
of-the-Ocean not is to-be-answered since them be-shunned to-defend
quando easdem potestati eorum subtrahebamus." Hæc et
when the-same from-power their we-were-taking-away these and
his similia eo dicente, Hoelus rex Armoricanorum
to-these similar-things him saying Hoel king of-the-Armorican
Britonum, ceteros præcedere exorsus, in hæc verba respondit.
Britons the-others to-precede having-begun in these words answered

Hoelus sententiam suam de bello Romano prodit

XVII · HOEL GIVES HIS OPINION ON THE ROMAN WAR

Hoel praises Arthur's reasoning as Ciceronian and is sure of victory. He cites the Sibyl's prophecy that three Britons will rule the Roman empire; Belinus and Constantine have done so, and Arthur is the third. He promises ten thousand armed men.

Licet unusquisque vestrum totus in se reversus, omnia
although each-one of-you wholly into himself having-turned all-things
et de omnibus animo tractare valeret, non existimo eum
and about all-things in-mind to-handle were-able not I-think him
præstantius consilium posse invenire, quam istud quod modo
more-excellent counsel to-be-able to-find than that which just-now
discretio solertis prudentiæ tuæ recoluit. Provide etenim
the-discretion of-the-skillful prudence your has-recalled foresightedly for
providit nobis tua deliberatio Tulliano liquore lita. Unde
has-provided for-us your deliberation with-Tullian liquor smeared whence
constantis viri affectum: sapientis animi effectum: optimi
of-a-constant man the-disposition of-a-wise mind the-effect of-best
consilii profectum laudare indesinenter debemus. Nam si
counsel the-progress to-praise unceasingly we-ought for if
juxta prædictam rationem Romam adire volueris, non
according-to the-aforesaid reasoning Rome to-approach you-will-wish not
dubito quin triumpho potiamur: dum libertatem nostram
I-doubt but-that of-the-triumph we-may-gain while liberty our
tueamur: dum juste ab inimicis nostris exigamus, quod a
we-defend while justly from enemies our we-demand what from
nobis injuste petere incœperunt. Quicunque enim sua
us unjustly to-seek they-have-begun whoever for their-own-things
alteri eripere conatur, merito quæ sua sunt, per
from-another to-snatch tries deservedly the-things-which his-own are through

eum quem impetit, amittit. Quia ergo Romani nostra
him whom he-attacks loses because therefore the-Romans our-things
nobis demere affectant: sua illis procul dubio
from-us to-take-away desire their-own-things from-them far from-doubt
auferemus, si licentia nobis congrediendi præstabitur. En
we-shall-take-away if leave to-us of-engaging will-be-offered behold
congressus cunctis Britonibus desiderandus: En vaticinia
an-engagement by-all Britons to-be-desired behold the-prophecies
Sibyllæ, quæ veris auguriis testantur, ex Britannico genere
of-the-Sibyl which with-true auguries testify from the-British race
tertio nasciturum, qui Romanum obtinebit imperium. De
a-third-time to-be-born-one who the-Roman will-hold empire about
duobus autem adimpleta sunt oracula: cum manifestum sit,
two moreover fulfilled have-been the-oracles since manifest it-is
præclaros (ut dixisti) principes Belinum atque Constantinum
the-famous as you-said princes Belinus and Constantine
imperii Romani gessisse imperia. Nunc vero te tertium
of-the-empire Roman to-have-wielded the-commands now indeed you as-the-third
habemus, cui tantum culmen honoris promittitur. Festina
we-have to-whom so-great a-peak of-honor is-promised hurry
ergo recipere, quod Deus non differt largiri: Festina
therefore to-receive what God not delays to-bestow hurry
subjugare, quod ultro vult subjugari: Festina nos omnes
to-subjugate what willingly wishes to-be-subjugated hurry us all
exaltare, qui ut exalteris, nec vulnera recipere, nec
to-exalt who that you-may-be-exalted neither wounds to-receive nor
vitam amittere diffugimus, ut autem hoc perficias, decem
life to-lose shun that moreover this you-may-complete with-ten
millibus armatorum præsentiam tuam comitabor."
thousand of-armed-men the-presence your I-shall-accompany

Auguseli sententia

XVIII · AUGUSELUS' OPINION

Auguselus, king of Albany, rejoices that at last they can avenge their fathers on the Romans and Germans. He thirsts for their blood like a man kept from a spring for three days. He promises two thousand horsemen besides foot soldiers.

Auguselus etiam rex Albaniæ, ut Hoelus finem dicendi
Auguselus also king of-Albany when Hoel an-end of-speaking
fecerat, quod super hac re affectabat, in hunc modum
had-made what about this matter he-desired in this manner
manifestare perrexit. "Ex quo dominum meum ea
to-make-plain proceeded from which lord my those-things
quæ dixit affectare conjeci: tanta lætitia animo meo
which he-said to-desire I-gathered so-great joy into-mind my
illapsa est, quantam nequeo in præsentia exprimere. Nihil
slipped has as-great-as I-cannot in the-present to-express nothing
enim in transactis debellationibus, quas tot et tantis
for in the-past warrings which on-so-many and so-great
regibus intulimus, egisse videmur, dum Romani et
kings we-have-brought to-have-done we-seem while the-Romans and
Germani illæsi permaneant: nec in illos clades, quas
Germans unharmed remain nor on them the-disasters which
olim nostratibus ingesserunt, viriliter vindicemus. At nunc
once on-our-countrymen they-heaped manfully we-avenge but now
quoniam nobis licentia congrediendi permittitur, gaudens
since to-us leave of-engaging is-permitted rejoicing
admodum gaudeo, et desiderio diei quo conveniemus
greatly I-rejoice and with-desire of-the-day on-which we-shall-come-together
æstuans, sitio cruorem illorum, quemadmodum fontem,
burning I-thirst-for the-gore of-them just-as a-spring

si triduo prohiberer ne biberem. O si illam lucem
if for-three-days I-were-prevented lest I-should-drink O if that light
videbo, quam dulcia erunt vulnera, quæ vel recipiam vel
I-shall-see how sweet will-be the-wounds which either I-shall-receive or
inferam, quando dextras conferemus? Ipsa etiam mors dulcis
I-shall-inflict when right-hands we-shall-join itself also death sweet
erit, dum eam in vindicando patres nostros, in tuendo
will-be while it in avenging fathers our in defending
libertatem nostram, in exaltando regem nostrum perpessus
liberty our in exalting king our suffered
fuero. Aggrediamur ergo semiviros illos, et aggrediendo
I-shall-have let-us-attack therefore half-men those and by-attacking
perstemus, ut devictis ipsis, eorum honoribus cum læta
let-us-persevere so-that defeated them of-them honors with glad
potiamur victoria. Exercitum autem nostrum duobus
we-may-gain-possession victory the-army moreover our by-two
milibus armatorum equitum, exceptis peditibus, augebo."
thousand of-armed horsemen excepted the-footmen I-shall-increase

Omnes de bello consentiunt

XIX · ALL AGREE ON WAR

The others promise their service. Britain alone gives sixty thousand armed men, the six island kingdoms 120,000 foot, and the duchies of Gaul eighty thousand. The twelve peers of Gaul bring twelve hundred more, in all 183,200 besides the uncounted foot.

Postquam etiam ceteri ad hoc, quæ dicenda erant,
after also the-others to this what-things to-be-said were
dixerunt; promiserunt ei singuli quod in obsequium ejus
had-said promised to-him each-one what into service his

debebant: ita ut præter eos quos promiserat dux Armoricæ,
they-owed so that besides those whom had-promised the-duke of-Armorica
ex sola insula Britanniæ sexaginta millia omnibus armis
from the-sole island of-Britain sixty thousand with-all arms
armatorum computarentur. At reges ceterarum insularum,
of-armed-men were-counted but the-kings of-the-other islands
quoniam non duxerant in morem equites habere: pedites
since not they-had-led into custom horsemen to-have footmen
quot quisque debebat, promittunt: ita ut ex sex insulis,
as-many-as each-one owed they-promise so that from six islands
videlicet Hiberniæ, Islandiæ, Gothlandiæ, Orcadum, Norwegiæ,
namely of-Ireland of-Iceland of-Gothland of-the-Orkneys of-Norway
atque Daciæ, sexies viginti millia essent annumerata. Ex
and of-Dacia six-times twenty thousand were counted from
Gualliarum autem ducatibus, Rutenorum, Portuniensium,
of-the-Gauls moreover the-dukedoms of-the-Ruteni of-the-Portunians
Estrusiensium, Cenomannorum, Andegavensium, Pictavensium,
of-the-Estrusians of-the-Cenomani of-the-Angevins of-the-Poitevins
octoginta millia. Ex duodecim autem consulatibus eorum
eighty thousand from the-twelve moreover consulships of-those
qui cum Guerino Carnotensi aderant, duodecies centum. Qui
who with Guerin of-Chartres were-present twelve-times a-hundred who
omnes simul erant, centum octoginta et tria millia et
all together were a-hundred eighty and three thousand and
ducenti, præter pedites, qui sub numero leviter non cadebant.
two-hundred besides the-footmen who under number easily not fell

Arturus bellum parat

XX · ARTHUR PREPARES FOR WAR

Arthur sends the kings home to raise their armies and meet him on the Kalends of August at the port of Barfleur, to march through the Allobroges against the Romans. He tells the emperors' envoys that he will pay no tribute. He will come to Rome to demand from them what they have demanded from him.

Rex igitur Arturus videns omnes in obsequium suum
the-king therefore Arthur seeing all for service his-own
unanimiter paratos, præcepit eis celeriter repatriare, et
with-one-mind ready ordered them swiftly to-return-home and
exercitum promissum disponere, et in Kalendis Augusti ad
the-army promised to-arrange and on the-Kalends of-August to
portum Barbæ fluvii festinare, ut illinc Allobrogum
the-port of-the-Barbe of-the-river to-hurry so-that from-there of-the-Allobroges
fines cum ipso adituri Romanis obviam venirent.
the-borders with him about-to-approach to-the-Romans to-meet they-might-come
Imperatoribus autem per eorundem legatos mandavit, se
to-the-Emperors moreover through the-same envoys he-sent-word himself
nequaquam eis redditurum tributum, nec ob illud ut
by-no-means to-them about-to-render tribute nor for this that
sententiæ eorum acquiesceret, Romam aditurum: immo ut
to-the-sentence their he-might-assent to-Rome about-to-go nay so-that
ex illis expeteret, quod ab illo judicio suo expetere
from them he-might-demand what from him by-judgment their-own to-demand
decreverant. Digrediuntur ergo legati: digrediuntur reges;
they-had-decided depart therefore the-envoys depart the-kings
digrediuntur proceres: et quod eis præceptum fuerat,
depart the-nobles and what to-them ordered had-been
perficere non differunt.
to-complete not they-delay

BOOK X

Lucius Tiberius orientales copias contra Britannos congregat

I · LUCIUS GATHERS THE EAST

On the Senate's order Lucius Tiberius summons the kings of the East to join him against Britain. The kings of Greece, Africa, Spain, Parthia, Media, Libya, Egypt, and Babylon come, with the dukes of Bithynia and Phrygia and others. With them come senators, Lucius Catellus, Marius Lepidus, Gaius Metellus Cotta, and more, until the host numbers 40,160.

Lucius ergo Tiberius, agnito hujus responsi edicto, jussu
Lucius therefore Tiberius learned of-this answer the-edict by-the-order
senatus Orientalibus edixit regibus; ut parato exercitu secum
of-the-senate to-the-Eastern proclaimed kings that prepared an-army with-him
ad subjugandam Britanniam venirent. Convenerunt ocyus,
for subjugating Britain they-should-come came-together more-swiftly
Epistrophius rex Græcorum: Mustensar rex Africanorum:
Epistrophius king of-the-Greeks Mustensar king of-the-Africans
Alifantinam rex Hispaniæ: Hirtacius rex Parthorum: Boccus
Alifantinam king of-Spain Hirtacius king of-the-Parthians Boccus
Medorum: Sertorius Libyæ: Serses rex Itureorum: Pandrasus
of-the-Medes Sertorius of-Libya Xerxes king of-the-Ituraeans Pandrasus
rex Ægypti: Micipsa rex Babyloniæ: Polytetes dux Bithyniæ:
king of-Egypt Micipsa king of-Babylon Polytetes duke of-Bithynia
Teucer dux Phrygiæ: Evander Syriæ: Aethion Bœotiæ:
Teucer duke of-Phrygia Evander of-Syria Aethion of-Boeotia
Hippolytus Cretæ, cum ducibus et proceribus sibi subditis.
Hippolytus of-Crete with dukes and nobles to-them subject
Ex senatorio quoque ordine Lucius Catellus: Marius Lepidus:
from the-senatorial also order Lucius Catellus Marius Lepidus
Caius Metellus Cotta: Quintus Milvius Catulus: Quintus
Gaius Metellus Cotta Quintus Milvius Catulus Quintus

Carutius: tot etiam alii quod inter totum quadraginta
Carutius so-many also others that in all forty
millia, et centum et sexaginta computati fuerunt.
thousand and a-hundred and sixty counted were

Arturus nepoti suo Modredo Britanniam regendam committit: somnium ejus apud Hamonis portum

II · ARTHUR'S DREAM AT HAMO'S PORT

Arthur commits Britain to his nephew Mordred and Queen Guinevere and sails from Hamo's port. At midnight he dreams of a bear flying through the air and a dragon from the west that burns it and casts it to the ground. His men read it as a fight with a giant, but Arthur takes it for himself and the emperor, and they land at Barfleur to await the kings.

Dispositis itaque quibusque necessariis, incipientibus Kalendis
arranged and-so all necessary-things beginning the-Kalends
Augusti iter versus Britanniam arripiunt. Comperto
of-August the-march towards Britain they-take discovered
igitur adventu ipsorum Arturus, Modredo nepoti suo
therefore the-arrival their Arthur to-Mordred nephew his-own
ad conservandum Britanniam, atque Ganhumaræ reginæ
for keeping Britain and to-Guinevere the-queen
committens, cum exercitu suo portum Hamonis adivit,
committing with army his-own the-port of-Hamo went-to
ubi tempestivo ventorum afflatu mare ingressus est. Dum
where with-timely of-the-winds breath the-sea entered he-has while
autem innumeris navibus circumseptus, prospero cursu et
moreover by-innumerable ships surrounded with-prosperous course and
cum gaudio altum secaret, quasi media hora noctis
with joy the-deep he-was-cutting about the-middle hour of-the-night

instante, gravissimus somnus eum intercepit. Sopitus etenim
pressing a-most-heavy sleep him overtook lulled for
per somnum vidit ursum quendam in aere volantem, cujus
through sleep he-saw a-bear certain in the-air flying whose
murmure tota littora intremebant. Terribilem quoque draconem
at-the-growl all the-shores trembled a-terrible also dragon
ab occidente advolare, qui splendore oculorum suorum
from the-west to-fly-towards which with-the-splendor of-eyes its-own
patriam illuminabat. Alterum vero alteri occurrentem miram
the-country lit the-one indeed the-other meeting a-wonderful
pugnam committere. Sed præfatum draconem, in ursum
fight to-join but the-aforesaid dragon upon the-bear
sæpius irruentem, ignito anhelitu comburere, combustumque
more-often rushing with-fiery breath to-burn and-the-burned
in terram prosternere. Expergefactus ergo Arturus adstantibus
to the-earth to-lay-low awakened therefore Arthur to-the-bystanders
quod somniaverat indicavit, qui exponentes dicebant, draconem
what he-had-dreamed showed who expounding said the-dragon
significare ipsum: ursum vero aliquem gigantem, qui cum
to-signify him the-bear indeed some giant who with
ipso congrederetur: pugnam autem eorum portendere bellum
him should-engage the-fight moreover their to-portend the-war
quod inter ipsos futurum erat: victoriam autem draconis,
which between them about-to-be was the-victory moreover of-the-dragon
illam quæ ipsi proveniret. At Arturus aliud conjectabat,
that which to-him should-come but Arthur another-thing guessed
existimans ob se et imperatorem, talem visionem
thinking on-account-of himself and the-emperor such a-vision
contigisse. Rubente tandem post cursum noctis aurora,
to-have-happened reddening at-last after the-course of-the-night the-dawn
in portum Barbæ fluvii applicuerunt. Mox tentoria
into the-port of-the-Barbe of-the-river they-landed soon tents

sua figentes, expectaverunt ibidem insulanos reges, cum
their-own fixing they-awaited there the-island kings with
provincialibus provinciarum ducibus venturis.
the-provincial of-the-provinces dukes about-to-come

Arturus gigantem cædit

III · ARTHUR KILLS THE GIANT

A Spanish giant has carried Hoel's niece Helena to Saint Michael's mount. Arthur goes by night with Kay and Bedevere, and on the smaller peak Bedevere finds Helena's old nurse weeping over her grave; the girl died of terror in the giant's embrace, and he has ravished the nurse. Arthur finds the giant roasting pigs and wounds his brow, blinding him with blood; the giant forces Arthur to his knees, but Arthur drives his sword into his skull, and Hoel builds a church over the girl's tomb.

Interea nunciatur Arturo, quendam miræ magnitudinis
meanwhile it-is-announced to-Arthur a-certain of-wonderful size
gigantem ex partibus Hispaniarum advenisse, et Helenam
giant from the-parts of-the-Spains to-have-come and Helena
neptem ducis Hoeli custodibus ejusdem eripuisse, et in
niece of-the-duke of-Hoel from-the-guards of-the-same to-have-snatched and onto
cacumen montis, qui nunc Michaelis dicitur, cum illa
the-top of-the-mountain which now of-Michael is-called with her
diffugisse: milites vero patriæ insequutos, nihil adversus
to-have-fled the-knights indeed of-the-country having-pursued nothing against
eum profecisse: nam sive mari sive terra illum invadebant,
him to-have-achieved for whether by-sea or by-land him they-attacked
aut eorum naves ingentibus saxis obruebat, aut diversorum
either their ships huge rocks he-overwhelmed or of-various
generum telis interimebat: sed et plures capiebat quos
kinds with-weapons destroyed but also many he-took whom

semivivos devorabat. Nocte ergo sequenti in secunda hora,
half-alive he-devoured at-night therefore following at the-second hour
assumpto Caio dapifero et Beduero pincerna, clam ceteris
taken Kay the-steward and Bedevere the-butler secretly from-the-others
tentoria egressus, viam montem versus arripuit. Tanta
the-tents having-gone-out the-way the-mountain towards he-took with-so-great
namque virtute prævalendo, negligebat contra talia monstra
for valor prevailing he-disdained against such monsters
exercitum ducere: cum et ipsos hoc modo animaret, et
an-army to-lead since both them in-this manner he-would-encourage and
solus ad illa destruenda sufficeret. Ut igitur prope montem
alone for them to-be-destroyed would-suffice when therefore near the-mountain
venerunt, aspexerunt quendam rogum super eum ardentem:
they-came they-saw a-certain pyre upon it burning
alium vero super minorem qui non longe ab altero
another indeed upon a-smaller which not far from the-other
distabat. Dubitantes ergo, super quem eorum habitaret gigas:
was-distant doubting therefore upon which of-them dwelt the-giant
Beduerum dirigunt ut rei certitudinem exploret.
Bedevere they-direct so-that of-the-matter the-certainty he-may-search-out
At ille inventa quadam navicula, prius ad minorem navigavit:
but he found a-certain little-boat first to the-smaller sailed
quem aliter nequibat adire, quoniam intra mare situs
which otherwise he-could-not to-approach since within the-sea situated
erat, Cuius cum cacumen incepisset ascendere, audito desuper
it-was whose when the-top he-had-begun to-climb heard from-above
fœmineo ululatu, primo inhorruit: quia dubitabat monstrum
a-woman's wailing at-first he-shuddered because he-doubted monster
illud adesse. Revocata ocyus audacia, gladium evaginavit,
that to-be-present recalled more-swiftly boldness the-sword he-drew
et ascenso culmine nihil aliud reperit præter rogum quem
and climbed the-summit nothing else found except the-pyre which

prospexerat. Inspexit quoque tumulum recenter factum, et
he-had-seen-ahead he-saw also a-mound newly made and
juxta eum, quandam anum flentem, et ejulantem: quæ
beside it a-certain old-woman weeping and wailing who
ut eum aspexit, confestim fletu impediente, in hunc
when him she-saw forthwith weeping hindering in this
modum est profata: "O infelix homo, quod infortunium te
manner has spoken O unhappy man what misfortune you
in hunc locum subvectat! O inenarrabiles mortis pœnas
into this place brings-up O unspeakable of-death the-penalties
passure: miseret me tui: miseret, quia tam detestabile
about-to-suffer it-pities me of-you it-pities because so detestable
monstrum florem juventutis tuæ in hac nocte consumet.
a-monster the-flower of-youth your on this night will-consume
Aderit namque sceleratissimus ille invisi nominis gigas
will-be-present for most-wicked that of-hated name giant
qui neptem ducis, quam modo hic intumulavi, et me
who the-niece of-the-duke whom just-now here I-have-entombed and me
altricem illius, in hunc montem advexit: qui inaudito
the-nurse of-her onto this mountain carried who with-unheard-of
mortis genere te absque cunctamine afficiet. Proh tristia fata!
of-death kind you without hesitation will-afflict oh sad fates
serenissima alumna, recepto intra tenerrimum pectus timore,
the-most-serene nursling received within the-most-tender breast fear
dum eam nefandus ille amplecteretur, vitam diuturniori
while her abominable that-one was-embracing life with-longer
luce dignam finivit. Ut igitur illam, quæ erat mihi alter
light worthy ended when therefore her who was to-me another
spiritus, altera vita, altera dulcedo jucunditatis, fœdo coitu
spirit another life another sweetness of-delight with-foul intercourse
suo deturpare nequivit, detestanda venere succensus, mihi
his-own to-defile he-could-not with-detestable lust inflamed on-me

invitæ (Deum et senectutem meam testor) vim et
unwilling God and old-age my I-call-to-witness force and
violentiam ingessit. Fuge, dilecte mi, fuge: ne si more
violence he-heaped flee O-beloved my flee lest if in-manner
suo mecum coiturus advenerit, te hoc modo repertum
his-own with-me about-to-lie he-will-have-come you in-this manner found
miserabili cæde dilaniet." At ille, quantum humanæ
with-miserable slaughter he-may-tear-apart but he as-much-as of-human
naturæ possibile est, commotus, eam amicis sedavit verbis,
nature possible is moved her with-friendly calmed words
et promisso festinantis auxilii solamine, ad Arturum
and with-the-promise of-hastening of-help comfort to Arthur
reversus est, et omnia quæ invenerat indicavit. Arturus
returned he-has and all-things which he-had-found showed Arthur
autem casum ingemiscens puellæ, præcepit eis ut sibi soli
moreover the-fate bewailing of-the-girl ordered them that to-him alone
illum invadere permitterent: sed si necessitas accideret, in
him to-attack they-should-permit but if necessity befell to
auxilium procedentes, viriliter aggrederentur. Direxerunt inde
help advancing manfully they-should-attack they-directed thence
iter ad majorem montem, et equos suos armigeris
the-march to the-greater mountain and horses their-own to-the-squires
commiserunt, et cum Arturo præcedente ascenderunt.
they-committed and with Arthur going-before climbed
Aderat autem inhumanus ille ad ignem, illitus ora
was-present moreover inhuman that-one at the-fire smeared the-mouth
tabo semesorum porcorum, quos partim devoraverat,
with-the-gore of-half-eaten pigs which partly he-had-devoured
partim vero verubus infixos suppositis prunis torrebat.
partly indeed on-spits fixed put-under coals he-roasted
Mox ut illos, nihil tale præmeditatus, aspexit, festinavit
soon when them nothing such having-foreseen he-saw he-hurried

clavam suam sumere, quam duo juvenes vix a terra
club his-own to-take which two youths scarcely from the-earth
erigerent. Evaginavit ergo rex gladium suum, et prætenso
could-raise drew therefore the-king sword his-own and held-out
clypeo, quantum velocitas sinebat, properabat eum præpedire,
shield as-much-as speed allowed hastened him to-hinder
antequam clavam cepisset. At ille non ignarus meditationis,
before the-club he-had-taken but he not ignorant of-the-plan
jam ceperat eam, regemque interposito clypeo tanto
already had-taken it and-the-king interposed the-shield with-so-great
percussit conamine, quod sonitu ictus et tota littora
struck effort that with-the-sound of-the-blow both all the-shores
replevit, et aures ejusdem ultra modum hebetavit. Arturus
he-filled and the-ears of-the-same beyond measure he-dulled Arthur
vero acri ignescens ira, erecto in frontem ipsius ense,
but with-sharp blazing anger raised on the-forehead his the-sword
vulnus intulit, tametsi non mortale, unde tamen sanguis in
a-wound inflicted although not mortal whence yet blood into
faciem et oculos ejus profluens, ejusdem excæcavit aciem.
the-face and eyes his flowing of-the-same blinded the-sight
Interposuerat namque clavam ictui, et frontem suam
had-interposed for the-club to-the-blow and forehead his-own
a letali vulnere muniverat. Excæcatus autem profluente
from a-deadly wound had-fortified blinded moreover by-flowing
sanguine, acrior insurgit, et velut aper evadens per
blood more-fiercely he-rises and like a-boar escaping through
venabulum in venatorem, ita irruit per gladium in
a-hunting-spear upon the-hunter so rushed through the-sword upon
regem, et complectendo eum per medium, coegit eum
the-king and by-embracing him through the-middle forced him
genua humi flectere. Arturus itaque revocata virtute,
knees on-the-ground to-bend Arthur and-so recalled valor

ocyus elabitur: et celeriter nunc hinc nunc illinc
more-swiftly slips-away and swiftly now on-this-side now on-that-side
nefandum gladio diverberat: nec requievit, donec letali
the-abominable-one with-the-sword strikes nor rested until a-deadly
vulnere illato totum mucronem capiti impressit, qua
wound inflicted the-whole blade into-the-head he-drove where
cerebrum testa protegebatur. Exclamavit vero invisus ille,
the-brain by-the-skull was-protected cried-out indeed hated that-one
et velut quercus ventorum viribus eradicata, cum maximo
and like an-oak of-the-winds by-the-force uprooted with greatest
sonitu corruit. Rex illico in risum solutus, præcepit
sound fell the-king on-the-spot into laughter loosened ordered
Beduero amputare ei caput, et dare uni armigerorum ad
Bedevere to-cut-off from-him the-head and to-give to-one of-the-squires for
deferendum ad castra: ut spectaculum intuentibus fieret.
carrying to the-camp so-that a-spectacle for-the-beholders it-might-be
Præcepit intuentibus fieri silentium: dicebat autem se
he-ordered to-the-beholders to-be-made silence he-said moreover himself
non invenisse alium tantæ virtutis, postquam Rithonem
not to-have-found another of-so-great valor after Ritho
gigantem in Aravio monte interfecit, qui eum ad prælium
the-giant on the-Aravian mountain he-killed who him to battle
invitaverat. Hic namque ex barbis regum quos peremerat,
had-challenged this-one for from the-beards of-the-kings whom he-had-destroyed
fecerat sibi pelles, et mandaverat Arturo ut barbam
had-made for-himself furs and had-sent-word to-Arthur that beard
suam diligenter excoriaret, atque excoriatam sibi dirigeret:
his-own diligently he-should-flay and the-flayed to-him should-direct
ut quemadmodum ipse ceteris præerat regibus, ita
so-that just-as he-himself over-the-other was-set kings so
quoque in honorem ejus ceteris barbis ipsam superponeret.
also in honor his above-the-other beards it he-would-place

Sin autem, provocabat eum ad prælium: et qui fortior
if-not moreover he-challenged him to battle and who stronger
supervenisset, pelles et barbam devicti tulisset. Inito
had-come-out the-furs and the-beard of-the-defeated should-carry-off entered
itaque certamine, triumphavit Arturus, et barbam alterius
and-so the-contest triumphed Arthur and the-beard of-the-other
cepit et spolium, et postea nulli fortiori isto obviaverat,
took and the-spoil and afterward none stronger than-this-one he-had-met
ut superius asserebat. Victoria igitur (ut prædictum est)
as above he-asserted of-the-victory therefore as said-before it-has-been
potitus, in secundo noctis diluculo ad tentoria sua
having-gained in the-second of-the-night dawn to tents their-own
cum capite remeaverunt: ad quod admirandum catervatim
with the-head they-returned to which to-be-wondered-at in-crowds
concurrebant, ei ascribentes laudes, qui patriam a tanta
they-ran-together to-him ascribing praises who the-country from so-great
ingluvie liberaverat. At Hoelus ob casum suæ neptis
gluttony had-freed but Hoel on-account-of the-fate of-his-own niece
tristis, præcepit ædificare basilicam super corpus ipsius in
sad ordered to-build a-basilica over the-body her on
monte quo jacebat, qui nomen ex tumulo puellæ nactus,
the-mountain where she-lay which the-name from the-tomb of-the-girl having-got
Tumba Helenæ, usque in hodiernum diem, vocatur.
the-Tomb of-Helena all-the-way into today's day is-called

Initur pugna cum Romanis: Petreius Cotta et alii captivi liberantur

IV · PETREIUS COTTA CAPTURED

Arthur marches toward Autun and sends Boso, Guerin, and Gawain to order Lucius out of Gaul. When the emperor's nephew Quintilianus sneers that Britons boast more than they fight, Gawain beheads him, and the envoys fight their way back to a wood where six thousand Britons lie hidden. The senator Petreius Cotta drives them back until Boso seizes him by the neck and drags him down, and the Britons take him and many captives to Arthur, who sends them under guard to Paris.

Congregatis tandem cunctis quos expectaverat Arturus, illinc
gathered at-last all whom he-had-awaited Arthur from-there
Augustodunum progreditur, ubi imperatorem esse existimabat.
to-Autun advances where the-emperor to-be he-thought
Ut autem ad Albam fluvium venit, annunciatum est
when moreover to the-Aube river he-came announced it-was
ei, illum castra sua non longe posuisse, et tanto
to-him him camp his-own not far to-have-placed and with-so-great
incedere exercitu, quanto (ut aiebant) resistere nequiret.
to-advance an-army as-great-as as they-said to-resist he-could-not
Nec idcirco perterritus cœptis suis desistere voluit,
nor therefore terrified from-undertakings his-own to-desist he-wished
sed super ripam fluminis castra sua metatus est, unde
but upon the-bank of-the-river camp his-own measured-out he-has whence
posset exercitum suum libere conducere, et si opus
he-might-be-able army his-own freely to-lead and if need
esset, sese intra ea recipere. Duos autem consules, Bosonem
were himself within it to-withdraw two moreover consuls Boso
Devadoboum et Guerinum Carnotensem: Walganium etiam
of-Oxford and Guerin of-Chartres Gawain also
nepotem suum Lucio Tiberio direxit, ut suggererent ei
nephew his-own to-Lucius Tiberius he-directed so-that they-might-suggest to-him

quatenus recederet e finibus Galliæ, aut in postero die
that he-should-withdraw from the-borders of-Gaul or on the-next day
ad experiendum veniret, uter eorum majus jus in Galliam
for testing he-should-come which of-them greater right over Gaul
haberet. Juventus ergo curiæ maximo gaudio fluctuans,
might-have the-youth therefore of-the-court with-greatest joy surging
cœpit instimulare Walganium, ut intra castra imperatoris
began to-goad Gawain that within the-camp of-the-emperor
inciperet, quo occasionem haberent congrediendi cum
he-should-begin by-which an-occasion they-might-have of-engaging with
Romanis. Perrexerunt illi ad Lucium, et præceperunt illi a
the-Romans proceeded they to Lucius and ordered him from
Gallia recedere, aut in postero die ad pugnandum venire.
Gaul to-withdraw or on the-next day for fighting to-come
At dum responderet eis, quod non deberet recedere: immo
but while he-answered them that not he-ought to-withdraw nay
ad regendum illam accedere: interfuit Caius Quintilianus
for ruling it to-approach was-present Gaius Quintilianus
ejusdem nepos, qui dicebat, Britones magis jactantia atque
of-the-same the-nephew who said the-Britons more in-boasting and
minis abundare, quam audacia et probitate valere. Iratus
in-threats to-abound than in-boldness and in-prowess to-be-strong angry
illico Walganius stricto ense, quo accinctus erat,
on-the-spot Gawain drawn the-sword with-which girded he-was
irruit in eum, et ejusdem capite amputato, ad equos
rushed upon him and of-the-same the-head cut-off to the-horses
cum sociis digreditur. Insequuntur Romani partim pede,
with the-comrades goes-off pursue the-Romans partly on-foot
partim equis, ut concivem suum in legatos omni nisu
partly on-horses so-that fellow-citizen their-own on the-envoys with-all effort
diffugientes vindicarent. At Guerinus Carnotensis, dum
fleeing they-might-avenge but Guerin of-Chartres while

quidam eorum ipsum attingere inciperet, ex improviso
a-certain of-them him to-reach began from unforeseen
reversus direxit lanceam suam, atque ipsum per arma et
having-turned directed lance his-own and him through arms and
per medium corpus perforatum humi, quantum potuit,
through the-middle body pierced on-the-ground as-much-as he-could
prostravit. Invidit ergo Boso Devadoboum, quoniam tantam
laid-low envied therefore Boso of-Oxford because so-great
probitatem fecisset Carnotensis: et retorquens equum suum,
prowess had-done the-man-of-Chartres and turning-back horse his-own
cui primo obviavit, ingessit illi lanceam in gulam, et
whom first he-met he-drove-into him the-lance into the-throat and
letaliter vulneratum coegit caballum deserere, quo eum
mortally wounded forced the-horse to-desert by-which him
insequebatur. Interea Marcellus Mutius maximo affectu
he-pursued meanwhile Marcellus Mutius with-greatest desire
volens Quintilianum vindicare, Walganio jam imminebat a
wishing Quintilianus to-avenge on-Gawain already pressed from
tergo, atque cœperat retinere: cum ipse reversus continuo
the-back and had-begun to-hold-back when he-himself having-turned at-once
galeam cum ipso capite usque ad pectus gladio quem
the-helmet with the-head itself all-the-way to the-chest with-the-sword which
tenebat abscidit. Præcepit etiam ei Walganius, quem intra
he-held cut-off he-ordered also him Gawain whom within
castra trucidaverat, in infernum renunciare, Britones minis
the-camp he-had-slaughtered in hell to-report the-Britons in-threats
et jactantia hoc modo abundare. Sociis deinde resociatis,
and in-boasting in-this manner to-abound the-comrades then regathered
hortatur ut pari impetu reversi, quisque suum
he-urges that with-equal attack having-turned each-one his-own-man
prosternere laboraret. Acquiescentes ergo ei, revertuntur
to-lay-low should-labor assenting therefore to-him they-turn-back

et quisque unum prosternit. At Romani usque insequentes,
and each-one one lays-low but the-Romans continually pursuing
quandoque lanceis, quandoque gladiis percutiebant eos: sed
sometimes with-lances sometimes with-swords struck them but
nec retinere nec prosternere valebant. Dum autem prope
neither to-hold nor to-lay-low were-able while moreover near
quandam silvam (ut dictum est) insequerentur: confestim
a-certain wood as said it-has-been they-pursued forthwith
congrediuntur ex illa circiter sex milia Britonum, qui
engage from it about six thousand of-Britons who
fuga consulum comperta, intra eam delituerant, ut eis
the-flight of-the-consuls discovered within it had-lain-hid so-that to-them
auxilium subvectarent. Egressi autem suffixere calcaria
help they-might-bring having-gone-out moreover they-put spurs
equis suis: et aera clamore complentes, et clypeos
to-horses their-own and the-air with-shouting filling and shields
pectoribus prætendentes, Romanos ex improviso invadunt: et
to-the-breasts holding-out the-Romans from unforeseen they-attack and
confestim in fugam propellunt. Sed ut unanimiter insequentes,
forthwith into flight drive but as with-one-mind pursuing
quosdam eorum ab equis suis cum lanceis sejungunt:
some of-them from horses their-own with lances they-separate
quosdam autem retinent: quosdam interficiunt. Quod cum
some moreover they-hold some they-kill which when
Petreio senatori nunciatum esset, decem milibus comitatus,
to-Petreius the-senator announced had-been by-ten thousand accompanied
subvenire sociis suis festinavit: coegitque Britones ad
to-come-to-help comrades his-own he-hurried and-forced the-Britons to
silvam ex qua egressi fuerant recurrere, nec sine detrimento
the-wood from which gone-out they-had to-run-back nor without loss
suorum, diffugiendo etenim Britones revertebantur instructi
of-their-own in-fleeing for the-Britons turned-back taught

locis, atque insequentibus stragem ingerebant maximam.
by-the-places and on-the-pursuing slaughter heaped greatest
Quibus hoc modo cedentibus, Hiderus cum quinque milibus
whom in-this manner yielding Hiderus with five thousand
accelerabat, ut eisdem subveniret. Resistunt ergo
hastened so-that to-the-same he-might-come-to-help resist therefore
ipsi, et quibus terga paulo ante dederant, nunc pectora
they and to-whom their-backs a-little before they-had-given now breasts
opponentes, validos ictus viriliter inferre elaborant. Resistunt
opposing strong blows manfully to-deal they-labor resist
etiam Romani et quandoque eos prosternunt: quandoque vero
also the-Romans and sometimes them lay-low sometimes indeed
ab illis prosternuntur. At Britones toto affectu desiderabant
by them are-laid-low but the-Britons with-whole desire longed-for
militiam: sed nec multum curabant in quem eventum
knighthood but nor much cared into what outcome
inciderent, dum eam incipiebant. Romani autem sapientius
they-might-fall while it they-were-beginning the-Romans moreover more-wisely
agebant, quos Petreius Cotta, more boni ducis, nunc ad
acted whom Petreius Cotta in-the-manner of-a-good leader now for
invadendum, nunc ad diffugiendum, sapienter edocebat: et ita
attacking now for retreating wisely taught and so
maximum damnum ceteris impendebat. Quod cum Bosoni
greatest loss on-the-others he-inflicted which when to-Boso
compertum esset, plures eorum quos audaciores noverat,
discovered had-been many of-them whom bolder he-knew
sejunxit a ceteris, et eos hoc modo affatus est: “Quoniam
he-separated from the-others and them in-this manner addressed he-has since
nesciente Arturo istud prælium incepimus, cavendum nobis
not-knowing Arthur this battle we-have-begun to-be-taken-care-of by-us
est, ne in pejorem partem incepti nostri decidamus. Nam
it-is lest into the-worse part of-undertaking our we-fall for

si in illam deciderimus, et maximum damnum militum
if into it we-shall-have-fallen both greatest loss of-knights
nostrorum incurremus, et regem nostrum ad execrandum nos
our we-shall-incur and the-king our to cursing us
commovebimus. Resumite audaciam: et sequimini me per
we-shall-move resume boldness and follow me through
catervas Romanorum: ut si fortuna faverit, Petreium
the-bands of-the-Romans so-that if fortune will-have-favored Petreius
interficiamus sive capiamus." Subduxerunt itaque calcaria equis
we-may-kill or we-may-take they-put and-so spurs to-horses
suis, et cuneos hostium pari impetu penetrans, ad
their-own and the-wedges of-the-enemies with-equal attack piercing to
locum quo Petreius socios suos commonebat, venerunt. In
the-place where Petreius comrades his-own was-exhorting came upon
quem ocyus Boso irruens, eundem per collum amplectitur,
whom more-swiftly Boso rushing the-same by the-neck embraces
et sicut præmeditatus fuerat, cum illo in terram corruit.
and as planned-beforehand he-had with him to the-earth fell
Concurrunt ergo Romani, ut eum hostibus eripiant:
run-together therefore the-Romans that him from-the-enemies they-may-snatch
concurrerunt autem Britones, ut Bosoni auxilientur. Fit
ran-together moreover the-Britons that to-Boso they-might-help is-made
itaque inter eos maxima cædes: fit clamor: fit turbatio:
and-so between them greatest slaughter is-made a-cry is-made confusion
dum hi ducem suum liberare, illi eum retinere conantur,
while these leader their-own to-free those him to-hold try
Invicem ergo vulnerabant et vulnerabantur: prosternebant et
in-turn therefore they-wounded and were-wounded laid-low and
prosternebantur. Illic itaque videri poterat quis hasta, quis
were-laid-low there and-so to-be-seen it-could who with-spear who
gladio, quis telo prævaleret. Denique Britones densata
with-sword who with-weapon prevailed finally the-Britons with-thickened

caterva incidentes, impetumque Romanorum ferentes, sese
band falling-on and-the-attack of-the-Romans bearing themselves
intra fortitudinem prælii sui cum Petreio recipiunt. Sed
within the-strength of-battle their-own with Petreius withdraw but
confestim impetum fecerunt in illos, jam rectore suo
forthwith an-attack they-made upon them now of-ruler their-own
orbatos, jam in majori parte debilitatos, jam etiam dilapsos,
bereft now in the-greater part weakened now also scattered
atque terga eisdem ostendentes. Incumbentes igitur,
and their-backs to-the-same showing pressing-on therefore
ipsos a tergo cædunt: cæsos prosternunt: prostratos
them from the-back they-cut-down the-cut-down they-lay-low the-laid-low
dispoliant: dispoliatos prætereunt, ut ceteros insequantur. Sed
they-despoil the-despoiled they-pass so-that the-others they-may-pursue but
et plures capiunt, quos regi præsentare affectant. Postremo
also many they-take whom to-the-king to-present they-desire finally
postquam satis periculi ipsis ingesserunt, remeaverunt cum
after enough of-danger on-them they-had-heaped they-returned with
spoliis et captivis ad castra, et indicantes quod sibi
spoils and captives to the-camp and showing what to-them
contigerat, Petreium Cottam, et ceteros captivos Arturo
had-happened Petreius Cotta and the-other captives to-Arthur
cum victoriæ lætitia obtulerunt. Quibus ille congratulans,
with of-victory joy offered to-whom he congratulating
et honores, et honorum augmentationes promisit: quoniam
both honors and of-honors increases promised since
eo absente tantam probitatem egerant. Captivos autem in
him absent so-great prowess they-had-done the-captives moreover into
carcerem trudere volens, ad se vocavit quosdam qui eos in
prison to-thrust wishing to himself he-called certain-men who them on
crastinum Parisios ducerent, et custodibus oppidi servandos
the-morrow to-Paris should-lead and to-the-guards of-the-town to-be-kept

traderent, donec ex illis aliud fieri præcepisset.
should-hand-over until about them other to-be-done he-should-have-ordered
Jussit etiam Cadorem ducem, Beduerumque pincernam, nec
he-ordered also Cador the-duke and-Bedevere the-butler nor
non et duos consules Borellum et Richerium cum famulis
not also two consuls Borel and Richer with servants
suis ipsos conducere, donec venirent eo, quo minime
their-own them to-escort until they-came thither where least
disturbationem Romanorum timuissent.
disturbance of-the-Romans they-would-have-feared

Romani iterum Britannos adorti fugantur

V · THE ROMANS AMBUSH THE ESCORT

Fifteen thousand Romans under Vulteius Catellus, Quintus Carutius, and the kings of Syria and Libya lie in ambush for the escort. They fall on the Britons by surprise, and the escort is near to losing the captives when Guitard, duke of the Poitevins, arrives with three thousand men. Borel of Le Mans and four other nobles fall, but Vulteius and Evander are killed, and the Britons send the captives on to Paris.

At Romani forte comperientes istum apparatum, imperatore
but the-Romans by-chance learning this preparation the-emperor
jubente, elegerunt quindecim millia suorum, qui nocte illa
commanding chose fifteen thousand of-their-own who on-night that
iter eorum præcederent: atque cum ipsis congressuri suorum
the-way of-them should-go-before and with them about-to-engage of-their-own
liberationi instarent. Ipsis quoque præfecerunt Vulteium
to-the-release should-press to-them also they-set-over Vulteius
Catellum et Quintum Carutium senatores: Evandrum etiam
Catellus and Quintus Carutius senators Evander also

regem Syriæ, et Sertorium Libyæ regem: qui nocte illa cum
king of-Syria and Sertorius of-Libya king who on-night that with
prædictis militibus jussum iter arripuerunt, et latibulis
the-aforesaid knights the-ordered way took-up and for-hiding-places
convenientem locum adepti delituerunt, per quem ipsos
fitting a-place having-gained lay-hidden through which them
ituros arbitrabantur. Mane autem facto Britones viam
about-to-go they-thought the-morning moreover made the-Britons the-road
ineunt cum captivis: et jam prope locum incedunt, nescii
enter with the-captives and now near the-place advance unaware
quos dolos versuti hostes instituerant. Cum vero penetrare
what tricks the-crafty enemies had-set-up when indeed to-pass-through
incepissent: egressi ex improviso Romani, ipsos nihil tale
they-had-begun having-come-out from unforeseen the-Romans them nothing such
præmeditatos occupaverunt, et penetraverunt. At illi quamvis
having-foreseen seized and broke-through but they although
tam ex improviso occupati fuissent: tandem tamen resociati,
so from unforeseen seized they-had-been at-last yet rallied
viriliter resistunt, et quosdam circa captivos statuunt: quosdam
manfully resist and some around the-captives they-station some
autem per catervas distribuunt, qui cum hostibus congrediantur.
moreover by companies they-distribute who with the-enemies should-engage
Agmini autem illi quod ad conservandos statuerunt captivos,
to-the-column moreover that which for to-be-kept they-appointed the-captives
Richerium et Beduerum præfecerunt: Cador vero dux Cornubiæ
Richer and Bedevere they-set-over Cador but duke of-Cornwall
atque Borellus ceteris præponuntur. Sed Romani omnes sine
and Borel to-the-rest are-put-in-charge but the-Romans all without
ordine eruperant, nec curabant suos per turmas disponere:
order had-burst-out nor cared their-own by troops to-dispose
immo omni nisu præstantes, Britonibus stragem dabant, dum
rather with-all effort pressing on-the-Britons slaughter they-dealt while

turmas disponere, dum semet ipsos defendere elaborarent.
troops to-dispose while them themselves to-defend they-labored
Unde ultra modum debilitati, illos quos conducebant turpiter
whence beyond measure weakened those whom they-were-escorting shamefully
amisissent, nisi fortuna optatum auxilium eis accelerasset.
they-would-have-lost unless fortune the-wished-for help to-them had-hastened
Guitardus etenim dux Pictavensium comperto dolo prædicto,
Guitard for duke of-the-Poitevins learned the-trick aforesaid
cum tribus milibus advenerat, cujus freti auxilio tandem
with three thousand had-arrived whose relying on-the-help at-last
prævaluerunt: et vicem prædictæ stragis impudentibus
they-prevailed and the-requital of-the-aforesaid slaughter to-the-shameless
grassatoribus reddidere. Attamen multos suorum in primo
raiders paid-back yet many of-their-own in the-first
congressu amiserunt. Amiserunt etenim inclytum illum
encounter they-lost they-lost for famous that
Cenomanorum consulem Borellum: qui dum cum Evandro
of-the-Cenomani consul Borel who while with Evander
rege Syriæ congrederetur, lancea ipsius intra gulam infixa
king of-Syria he-was-engaging by-the-lance of-him within the-throat fixed
vitam cum sanguine eructavit. Amiserunt quoque quatuor
life with blood belched-out they-lost also four
proceres, Hirelgam Deperirum, Mauricium Cadorcanensem,
nobles Hirelgas of-Periron Maurice of-Cahors
Aliduc de Tintagol, et filium Hider: quibus audaciores non
Aliduc of Tintagel and the-son of-Hider than-whom bolder not
facile reperiri poterant, nec tamen audaciæ suæ desistentes
easily to-be-found could nor yet from-boldness their-own desisting
sibi desperaverunt: sed omni nisu instantes, et captivos
of-themselves despaired but with-all effort pressing and the-captives
custodire, et inimicos prosternere intendebant. Romani tandem
to-guard and the-enemies to-lay-low they-strove the-Romans at-last

congressum eorum ferre non valentes, ocyus relinquere
the-onset of-them to-bear not being-able more-swiftly to-leave
campum, et castra sua petere cœperunt. At Britones
the-field and camp their-own to-seek began but the-Britons
usque insequentes stragem inferunt, complures capiunt, nec
continually pursuing slaughter inflict very-many they-take nor
requieverunt, donec Vultei Catello et Evandro rege Syriæ
rested until Vulteius Catellus and Evander king of-Syria
peremptis, ceteros penitus dissipaverunt. Habita igitur victoria,
slain the-rest utterly they-scattered had therefore the-victory
captivos quos ducebant, miserunt Parisios: atque cum illis
the-captives whom they-were-leading they-sent to-Paris and with those
quos recenter ceperant, ad regem suum repedantes, spem
whom recently they-had-taken to the-king their-own returning hope
summæ victoriæ promittebant, cum admodum pauci de
of-the-highest victory they-promised since very few over
tot supervenientibus hostibus triumphum habuissent.
so-many coming-upon enemies triumph they-had-had

Lucius Tiberius Lengrias adit:
Arturus vallem Suesianam ingreditur

VI · THE VALLEY OF SAUSSY

Lucius, wavering between battle and waiting for the emperor Leo, withdraws by night to Langres. Arthur goes ahead of him into the valley of Saussy and sets a legion under Morvid of Gloucester apart as a reserve. He draws up his army in companies of foot and horse, posts the kings and dukes over each, and stands with his own legion under the golden dragon.

Lucius autem Tiberius, tales casus moleste ferens, animum
Lucius moreover Tiberius such misfortunes grievously bearing mind
suum diversis cruciatibus vexatum, nunc huc, nunc illuc
his-own by-various torments troubled now hither now thither
revolvit, hæsitando an cœpta prælia cum Arturo committat,
turns-over by-hesitating whether the-begun battles with Arthur he-should-join
an intra Augustodunum receptus, auxilium Leonis imperatoris
or within Autun received the-help of-Leo the-emperor
expectet. Acquiescens tandem formidini nocte sequenti
he-should-await yielding at-last to-fear on-night the-following
prædictam civitatem aditurus Lengrias cum exercitibus suis
the-aforesaid city about-to-approach Langres with armies his-own
ingreditur. Quod ut Arturo compertum est, affectans iter
he-enters which when to-Arthur learned was desiring the-way
ejus præcedere, eadem nocte, relicta a læva civitate, quandam
of-him to-go-before on-the-same night left on the-left the-city a-certain
vallem, quam Lucius transgressurus erat, ingreditur, quæ Suesia
valley which Lucius about-to-cross was he-enters which Saussy
vocabatur. Commilitones ergo suos per catervas disponere
was-called the-fellow-soldiers therefore his-own by companies to-dispose
volens, legionem unam cui præfecerat Morvid consulem
wishing legion one over-which he-had-set Morvid consul

Claudiocestriæ jussit adesse, ut si opus accidisset,
of-Gloucester he-ordered to-be-present so-that if need should-have-befallen
sciret quo posset sese recipere, et resociatis turmis iterum
he-might-know where he-could himself to-withdraw and rallied the-troops again
hostibus prælia ingerere. Ceteros etiam per catervas septenas
on-the-enemies battles to-press the-rest also by companies seven
distribuens, et in unaquaque caterva quinquies mille, quingentos
distributing and in each company five-times thousand five-hundred
et quinquaginta quinque viros omnibus armis instructos
and fifty five men with-all arms equipped
collocavit. Pars quoque statutarum turmarum disponitur,
he-placed a-part also of-the-appointed troops is-disposed
equestris: pars autem altera pedestris: daturque præceptum inter
mounted a-part but other on-foot and-is-given an-order among
eos, ut dum pedestris turma ad invadendum intendat: equestris
them that while the-foot troop to attacking should-aim the-mounted
illico ab obliquo superveniens, stricto agmine dissipare
on-the-spot from the-flank coming-upon in-close column to-scatter
hostes nitatur. Erant autem pedestres catervæ, Britannico
the-enemies should-strive were moreover the-foot companies in-British
more, cum dextro et sinistro cornu in quadrum statutæ:
manner with right and left wing in a-square set
quarum uni Auguselus rex Albaniæ, et Cador dux Cornubiæ,
of-which over-one Auguselus king of-Albany and Cador duke of-Cornwall
unus in dextro cornu, et alter in sinistro præficiuntur:
one on the-right wing and the-other on the-left are-set-over
alii vero, duo insignes consules, Guerinus videlicet
over-another but two distinguished consuls Guerin namely
Carnotensis, et Boso de Richiden, quæ lingua Saxonum
of-Chartres and Boso of Richiden which in-the-tongue of-the-Saxons
Oxineford nuncupatur: tertiæ vero turmæ Aschil rex
Oxford is-called over-the-third but troop Aschil king

Dacorum, atque Lot rex Norwegensium: quartæ Hoelus dux
of-the-Danes and Lot king of-the-Norwegians over-the-fourth Hoel duke
Armoricanorum atque Walguainus nepos regis. Post has autem
of-the-Armoricans and Gawain nephew of-the-king after these moreover
quatuor, fuerunt aliæ quatuor a dorso statutæ, quarum uni
four were other four at the-back set of-which over-one
præponuntur Caius dapifer, et Beduerus pincerna: alii
are-set-over Kay the-steward and Bedevere the-butler over-another
autem præficiuntur Holdinus dux Rutenorum, et Guitardus
moreover are-set-over Holdin duke of-the-Ruteni and Guitard
dux Pictavensium: tertiæ Vigenis de Legecestria, et Jonathal
duke of-the-Poitevins over-the-third Vigenis of Leicester and Jonathal
Dorecestrensis, atque Cursalem de Caicestria: quartæ vero
of-Dorchester and Cursalem of Kaicester over-the-fourth but
Urbgennius de Badone. Ipse quoque elegit post hos sibi
Urbgennius of Bath he-himself also chose behind these for-himself
et legioni uni quam sibi adesse affectaverat, locum
and for-the-legion one which to-himself to-be-present he-had-wished a-place
quendam, quo aureum draconem infixit, quem pro vexillo
certain in-which the-golden dragon he-planted which for standard
habebat, quo vulnerati et fatigati, si necessitas compelleret,
he-had whither the-wounded and the-wearied if necessity should-compel
quasi ad castra diffugerent. Aderant autem in legione illa
as-if to the-camp might-flee were-present moreover in legion that
quam secum habebat, sex milia, sexcenti sexaginta sex.
which with-him he-had six thousand six-hundred sixty six

Arturus milites hortatur

VII · ARTHUR EXHORTS HIS KNIGHTS

Arthur reminds his men that they made Britain mistress of thirty kingdoms and have lost none of their valor in five years of peace. The Romans who think them sluggish have already fled from them once and will be caught in this valley like cattle. If they win, they will take Rome, and its gold, silver, palaces, and cities will be theirs, and all shout that they will die before they leave the field.

Dispositis itaque cunctis, commilitones suos in hæc verba
disposed and-so all fellow-soldiers his-own in these words
affatur: "Domestici mei, qui Britanniam terdenorum regnorum
he-addresses O-household-men my who Britain of-thirty kingdoms
fecistis dominam, vestræ congratulor probitati, quam nullatenus
made mistress on-your I-congratulate prowess which in-no-way
deficere, immo magis vigere considero: licet quinque annis
to-fail rather more to-flourish I-consider although for-five years
inexercitati, oblectamentis ocii potius, quam usui
unexercised to-the-delights of-leisure rather than to-the-practice
militiæ dediti fuistis hactenus: nequaquam tamen ab
of-knighthood given you-have-been hitherto by-no-means yet from
innata bonitate degeneravistis: sed in ipsa perseverantes,
inborn goodness you-have-degenerated but in it persevering
Romanos propulistis in fugam: qui instimulante superbia
the-Romans you-drove into flight who goading the-pride
suorum, libertatem vobis demere affectaverunt: qui ampliori
of-their-own liberty from-you to-take-away sought who in-greater
numero incedentes, ingerere prælia cœperunt: qui congressui
number advancing to-press battles began who to-the-onset
vestro resistere non valentes, sese turpiter intra civitatem
your to-resist not being-able themselves shamefully within city

istam receperunt, ex qua ad præsens egressuris,
that withdrew from which at present to-them-about-to-come-out
et per istam vallem, Augustodunum petituris, obviam
and through that valley Autun about-to-seek in-the-way
poteritis adesse: et nihil tale præmeditatos, veluti pecudes
you-will-be-able to-be-present and nothing such having-foreseen like cattle
occupare. Sane Orientalium gentium segnitiam in vobis
to-seize truly of-the-Eastern peoples the-sluggishness in you
esse existimabant: dum patriam vestram facere tributariam,
to-be they-supposed when the-country your to-make tributary
et vosmetipsos subjugare affectarent. Numquid noverunt
and yourselves to-subjugate they-sought do-not they-know
quæ bella Dacis atque Norwegensibus, Gallorumque
what wars on-the-Danes and the-Norwegians and-of-the-Gauls
ducibus intulistis? quos meæ subdidistis potestati, et
on-the-dukes you-brought whom to-my you-subjected power and
ab eorum pudendo dominio liberavistis: Qui igitur in
from their shameful dominion you-freed who therefore in
graviori decertatione valuimus: in hæc leviori sine dubio
a-heavier contest we-were-strong in this lighter without doubt
prævalebimus, si pari affectu semiviros illos elaboraverimus
we-shall-prevail if with-equal zeal half-men those we-shall-have-labored
opprimere. Quantos honores quisque vestrum possidebit, si
to-crush how-great honors each of-you will-possess if
voluntati meæ atque præceptis meis, ut fideles commilitones,
to-will my and commands my as faithful fellow-soldiers
acquieveritis? Subjugatis etenim ipsis, continuo Romam
you-will-have-assented subjugated for them at-once Rome
petemus, petitam capiemus, captam possidebimus: et sic
we-shall-seek sought we-shall-take taken we-shall-possess and so
aurum, argentum, palatia, turres, oppida, civitates, et ceteras
gold silver palaces towers towns cities and the-other

victorum divitias habebitis. Adhuc autem ipso dicente talia,
of-the-victors riches you-will-have still moreover him saying such-things
omnes uno clamore assentiunt: parati mortem prius recipere,
all with-one shout assent ready death sooner to-receive
quam vivente ipso campum diffugiendo relinquere.
than living him the-field by-fleeing to-leave

Eodem modo Lucius Tiberius apud milites concionatur

VIII · LUCIUS ADDRESSES HIS SOLDIERS

Lucius learns of the ambush and resolves to fight rather than flee. He tells his leaders that their ancestors fought as if God had not foreseen their deaths and so conquered the world, and he urges them to stand firm through the first onset. The Romans draw up twelve wedges under Roman senators and the kings of the East, and Lucius sets the golden eagle in the middle as a rallying point.

At Lucius Tiberius comperiens insidias, quæ ipsi parabantur,
but Lucius Tiberius learning the-ambush which for-him were-being-prepared
noluit ut affectaverat diffugere: sed revocata audacia,
was-unwilling as he-had-wished to-flee but recalled boldness
ipsos in eadem valle aditurus, duces suos convocavit,
them in the-same valley about-to-approach leaders his-own called-together
atque his verbis allocutus est: “Patres venerandi, quorum
and with-these words addressed has O-fathers venerable whose
imperio et orientalia et occidentalia regna subjici
to-the-command both the-eastern and the-western kingdoms to-be-subjected
debuerant, majorum vestrorum memores estote: qui ut
were-bound of-the-ancestors your mindful be who that
adversarios Reipublicæ superarent, non abhorrescebant
the-adversaries of-the-Republic they-might-overcome not shrank
effundere sanguinem suum, sed exemplum probitatis et
to-pour-out blood their-own but an-example of-prowess and

militiæ posteris suis relinquentes, ita decertabant, ac si
of-knighthood to-posterity their-own leaving so they-fought as if
in prælio Deus non providisset eos morituros. Triumphabant
in battle God not had-foreseen them about-to-die they-triumphed
ergo sæpius, et triumphando mortem evadebant, quia
therefore very-often and by-triumphing death they-escaped because
nulli alia erant proventura, quam quæ ex providentia
to-no-one other-things were about-to-come-forth than what from the-providence
Dei condescendebant. Augebatur itaque Respublica: augebatur
of-God came-down was-increased and-so the-Republic was-increased
eorundem probitas: et quod honestatis, quod honoris, quod
of-the-same the-prowess and what of-honesty what of-honor what
largitatis in generosis esse solebat, in eis diutius vigens,
of-generosity in the-noble to-be was-wont in them longer flourishing
ipsos et ipsorum posteros in dominium totius orbis
them and of-them the-descendants into dominion of-the-whole world
promovebat. Id igitur in vobis excitare desiderans, hortor vos
promoted that therefore in you to-arouse desiring I-exhort you
ut pristinam bonitatem revocetis, atque in eadem perstantes,
that the-former goodness you-recall and in the-same persisting
inimicos nostros in valle qua nobis insidiantur, petentes,
enemies our in the-valley in-which for-us they-lie-in-wait seeking
quod nostrum est ab illis exigere contendatis. Ne existimetis
what ours is from them to-exact you-strive do-not think
me idcirco intra civitatem hanc receptum esse, ut
me for-this-reason within city this withdrawn to-have-been that
vel eos vel eorum congressum abhorruerim: immo arbitrans
either them or their onset I-shrank-from rather judging
quod nos stulte prosequerentur, et ut prosequentibus ex
that us foolishly they-would-pursue and that to-the-pursuers from
improviso obviaremus, atque ipsos segregatim irruentes magna
unforeseen we-might-meet and them separately rushing-in with-great

strage infestaremus. Nunc autem quoniam aliter quam rati
slaughter we-might-harass now moreover since otherwise than reckoned
eramus fecerunt, et nos aliter faciamus. Petamus etenim
we-had they-have-done also we otherwise let-us-do let-us-seek for
illos, et audacter invadamus: vel si convaluerint, unanimiter
them and boldly let-us-attack or if they-will-have-prevailed with-one-mind
resistamus, et primum impetum toleremus, et sic proculdubio
let-us-resist and the-first onset let-us-bear and so without-doubt
triumphabimus. In pluribus etenim decertationibus, qui in
we-shall-triumph in very-many for contests he-who in
primo congressu perstare potuit, cum victoria sæpissime
the-first encounter to-stand-firm could with victory most-often
abivit. Ut his itaque et pluribus aliis finem dicendi
went-away when to-these and-so and many others an-end of-speaking
fecit, omnes uno assensu faventes, socias quoque manus
he-made all with-one assent favoring allied also hands
jurejurando promittentes, ad armandum sese festinant.
by-oath promising to arming themselves hasten
Armati tandem Lengrias egrediuntur, atque prædictam vallem
armed at-last Langres they-go-out-of and the-aforesaid valley
adierunt, ubi Arturus catervas suas statuerat. Porro et illi
approached where Arthur companies his-own had-set further also they
duodecim cuneata agmina, atque omnia pedestria fecerunt,
twelve wedge-shaped columns and all on-foot made
quæ Romano more ad modum cunei ordinata, sex millia
which in-Roman manner to the-manner of-a-wedge ordered six thousand
militum cum sexcentis sexaginta sex, exercitum suum
of-knights with six-hundred sixty six army their-own
disponentes continebant. Sed et unicuique suos ductores
disposing contained but also to-each its-own leaders
dederunt: ut monitu eorum et invaderent et ceteris
they-gave that by-the-warning of-them both they-might-attack and to-the-others

irruentibus resisterent. Uni etenim præfecerunt Lucium
rushing-in might-resist over-one for they-set Lucius
Catellum senatorem, et Alifantinam regem Hispaniæ. Alii
Catellus the-senator and Alifantinam king of-Spain over-another
vero Hirtacium regem Parthorum, et Marium Lepidum
but Hirtacius king of-the-Parthians and Marius Lepidus
senatorem: tertio Boccum regem Medorum, et Caium
the-senator over-the-third Boccus king of-the-Medes and Gaius
Metellum senatorem: quarto Sertorium regem Libyæ,
Metellus the-senator over-the-fourth Sertorius king of-Libya
et Quintum Milvium senatorem. Hæc quatuor agmina in
and Quintus Milvius the-senator these four columns in
prima acie statuta fuerunt. Post ipsa vero alia quatuor a
the-first line set were behind them indeed other four at
dorso, quorum uni Sersem regem Itureorum præfecerunt:
the-back of-which over-one Xerxes king of-the-Ituraeans they-set
alii vero Pandrasum regem Ægypti: tertio Polytetem
over-another but Pandrasus king of-Egypt over-the-third Polytetes
ducem Bithyniæ: quarto Teucrum ducem Phrygiæ. Post
duke of-Bithynia over-the-fourth Teucer duke of-Phrygia after
hæc quoque alia quatuor agmina, et cuidam illorum
these also other four columns and to-a-certain-one of-them
dederunt Quintum Carucium senatorem: alii autem
they-gave Quintus Carutius the-senator to-another moreover
Lælium Hostiensem: tertio Sulpitium Subuculum: quarto
Laelius of-Ostia to-the-third Sulpicius Subuculus to-the-fourth
Mauricium Silvanam. Ipse autem inter eos nunc hac
Mauricius Silvanus he-himself moreover among them now this-way
nunc illac incedebat, suggerendo et docendo, qualiter
now that-way went-about by-prompting and by-teaching how
sese haberent. In medio etiam auream aquilam, quam
themselves they-should-hold in the-middle also the-golden eagle which

pro vexillo duxerat, jussit firmiter poni: et quoscunque
for standard he-had-led he-ordered firmly to-be-placed and whomever
casus segregasset, submonuit ut ad eam reverti conarentur.
chance should-have-separated he-warned that to it to-return they-should-try

Pugna inter Britannos et Romanos commissa

IX · THE BATTLE WITH THE ROMANS

The armies clash and the Britons suffer first: Bedevere is killed by Boccus, king of the Medes, and Kay is mortally wounded. Bedevere's nephew Hirelgas charges with three hundred men, kills Boccus, and tears his body to pieces beside his uncle's. Kings and consuls fall on both sides until Hoel and Gawain, blazing like fire, drive the Romans back to the emperor's own column.

Postquam autem in adversa parte, hinc Britones, illinc
after moreover on opposite side on-this-side the-Britons on-that-side
Romani erectis steterunt telis: confestim (audito classicorum
the-Romans raised stood weapons forthwith heard of-the-trumpets
sonitu) agmen illud cui rex Hispaniæ et Lucius Catellus
the-sound column that over-which the-king of-Spain and Lucius Catellus
præerant, in catervam illam quam rex Scotiæ et dux
were-in-command upon company that which the-king of-Scotland and the-duke
Cornubiæ ducebant, audacter irruit: sed illam stricte irruentem
of-Cornwall led boldly rushed but it closely rushing-in
nequaquam disgregare potuit. Cui itaque sævissime invadenti
by-no-means to-break-apart could which and-so most-fiercely attacking
occurrit caterva quam Guerinus et Boso regebant, et dum
ran-to-meet the-company which Guerin and Boso ruled and while
alia, ut prædictum est, resisteret, subito cursu equorum,
the-other as said-before it-has-been resisted with-sudden charge of-horses
impetum in eandem fecit: et illa penetrata, obviavit agmini,
an-onset upon the-same made and that pierced met the-column

quod rex Parthorum ducebat contra turmam Aschillii regis
which the-king of-the-Parthians led against the-troop of-Aschil king
Dacorum. Nec mora, concurrunt hinc et inde catervæ,
of-the-Danes nor delay they-clash on-this-side and on-that the-companies
et mutuo sese penetrantes, maximam pugnam lacessunt.
and mutually each-other piercing a-very-great fight provoke
Fit itaque miseranda cædes inter eos cum supremo
there-is-made and-so pitiable slaughter among them with the-utmost
clamore, et terram vertice et calcaneis pulsantes, vitam in
clamor and the-earth with-crown and with-heels beating life on
utraque parte cum sanguine eructant. Sed primum damnum
either side with blood they-belch-out but the-first loss
Britonibus illatum est: quia Beduerus pincerna peremptus
on-the-Britons inflicted was because Bedevere the-butler slain
fuit: Caius dapifer letaliter vulneratus. Nam cum Beduerus
was Kay the-steward mortally wounded for when Bedevere
Bocco Medorum regi obviaret, lancea ejusdem confossus
Boccus of-the-Medes the-king met by-the-lance of-the-same pierced
inter hostiles catervas peremptus corruit. Caius autem dapifer,
among the-hostile companies slain fell Kay moreover the-steward
dum ipsum vindicare conaretur, intra Medorum turmas
while him to-avenge he-tried within of-the-Medes the-troops
circundatus, mortiferum vulnus recepit: qui tamen more
surrounded a-deadly wound received who yet in-the-manner
boni militis, cum ala quam ducebat viam aperiens,
of-a-good knight with the-wing which he-led a-way opening
cæsis et dissipatis Medis, sese intra suos, integra caterva
slain and scattered the-Medes himself among his-own with-whole company
recepisset, nisi obviam venisset agmini regis Libyæ,
would-have-withdrawn unless in-the-way he-had-come to-the-column of-the-king of-Libya
cujus irruptio illos quos ducebat omnes disgregavit: utcunque
whose onrush those whom he-led all broke-apart somehow

tamen cum paucis retrocedens, ad aureum diffugit Draconem
yet with a-few retreating to the-golden he-fled Dragon
cum corpore Bedueri. O quanta lamenta Neustriensium,
with the-body of-Bedevere O how-great the-laments of-the-Neustrians
dum corpus sui ducis tot vulneribus dilaniatum
when the-body of-their-own duke by-so-many wounds torn
aspicerent! O quantos Andegavensium planctus, dum Caii
they-beheld O how-great of-the-Angevins the-wailings when of-Kay
consulis sui vulnera pluribus modis tractarent! Sed non
consul their-own the-wounds in-many ways they-handled but not
opus erat querela, quia undique sanguinolentæ acies mutuo
need was for-complaint because on-every-side the-bloody lines mutually
irruentes, non permittebant eis spatium prædicti gemitus:
rushing-in not permitted to-them room of-the-aforesaid groaning
quin ipsos ad defendendum sese coegissent. Hirelgas
but-that them to defending themselves they-had-compelled Hirelgas
ergo nepos Bedueri ultra modum ob mortem ipsius
therefore nephew of-Bedevere beyond measure on-account-of the-death of-him
commotus, trecentos suorum associavit sibi, et velut aper
moved three-hundred of-his-own joined to-himself and like a-boar
intra turmam canum, sic per hostiles catervas subito cursu
within a-pack of-dogs so through the-hostile companies with-sudden charge
equorum, locum ubi vexillum regis Medorum aspexerat,
of-horses the-place where the-standard of-the-king of-the-Medes he-had-seen
petivit: parum cogitans quid sibi contingere posset, dum
sought little thinking what to-himself to-befall might while
avunculum suum vindicaret. Adeptus tandem locum quem
uncle his-own he-avenged having-gained at-last the-place which
affectaverat, prædictum regem peremit, peremptumque ad
he-had-sought the-aforesaid king he-slew and-slain to
socios suos deportavit, deportatumque juxta corpus pincernæ,
comrades his-own carried-off and-carried-off beside the-body of-the-butler

omnino dilaniavit. Deinde maximo clamore concivium
utterly tore-apart then with-the-greatest shout of-fellow-citizens
suorum turmas inanimando, hortabatur in hostes irruere,
his-own the-troops by-animating he-urged on the-enemies to-rush
crebrisque irruptionibus infestare, dum eis virtus recenter
and-with-frequent onrushes to-harass while in-them valor freshly
fervebat, dum illis formidolosis pectus tremebat, dum
glowed while in-those fearful the-breast trembled while
cominus imminentes, sapientius quam ceteri per catervas
at-close-quarters pressing more-wisely than the-others by companies
dispositi essent, atque crudelius damnum ingerere sæpius
disposed they-were and more-cruelly loss to-inflict more-often
valuissent. Inanimati igitur hortamine illius, impetum
they-had-been-able animated therefore by-the-exhortation of-him an-onset
in hostes undique fecerunt: quo maxima strages
upon the-enemies on-every-side they-made by-which very-great slaughter
utrinque facta fuit. In parte namque Romanorum, exceptis
on-both-sides made was on the-side for of-the-Romans excepted
innumerabilibus aliis, Alifantinam rex Hispaniæ, et Micipsa
countless others Alifantinam king of-Spain and Micipsa
Babyloniensis, Quintus quoque Milvius et Marius Lepidus
of-Babylon Quintus also Milvius and Marius Lepidus
senatores occubuerunt. Corruerunt etiam in parte Britonum,
senators fell fell also on the-side of-the-Britons
Holdinus rex Rutenorum et Leodegarius Boloniensis: tres
Holdin king of-the-Ruteni and Leodegar of-Boulogne three
etiam consules Britanniæ, Cursalem Caicestrensis: Galluc,
also consuls of-Britain Cursalem of-Kaicester Galluc
Salesberiensis, et Urbgennius de Badone. Unde turmæ
of-Salisbury and Urbgennius of Bath whence the-troops
quas conducebant, ultra modum debilitatæ, retrocesserunt,
which they-led beyond measure weakened fell-back

donec venerunt ad aciem Armoricanorum Britonum, quam
until they-came to the-line of-the-Armorican Britons which
Hoelus et Walgainus regebant. Quæ itaque velut flamma
Hoel and Gawain ruled which and-so like a-flame
ignescens, impetum fecit in hostes, et revocatis illis qui
kindling an-onset made upon the-enemies and recalled those who
retrocesserant, illos qui paulo ante sequebantur, diffugere
had-fallen-back those who a-little before were-following to-flee
coegit. Sed et usque insequens, nunc ipsos diffugientes
compelled but also continually pursuing now them fleeing
prosternit, nunc interficit: nec stragem ingerere cessat, donec
lays-low now kills nor slaughter to-inflict ceases until
ad turmam imperatoris venit: qui visa calamitate sociorum,
to the-troop of-the-emperor it-comes who seen the-calamity of-his-allies
properat ipsis succursum præstare.
hastens to-them succor to-furnish

Hoelus et Walgainus conspicuos se in pugna gerunt

X · HOEL AND GAWAIN

The consul Kimarcocus and three famous nobles fall with two thousand men. Hoel and Gawain, whom no age has bettered, charge the emperor's wedge from opposite sides, Gawain seeking always to meet Lucius himself. It cannot be said which of the two is the stronger.

Inito itaque congressu, debilitantur Britones. Kimarcocus
begun and-so the-encounter are-weakened the-Britons Kimarcocus
siquidem consul Trigeriæ, necnon et duo milia cum eo
indeed consul of-Treguier nor-not also two thousand with him
corruerunt. Corruerunt etiam tres inclyti proceres, Richomarcus
fell fell also three famous nobles Richomarcus

et Bloccovius atque Lagivius de Bodloano: qui si principes
and Bloccovius and Lagivius of Bodloan who if princes
fuissent regnorum, ob tantam probitatem quam
they-had-been of-kingdoms on-account-of so-great prowess which
habebant, ventura ætas famam eorum celebraret. Nam et
they-had the-coming age the-fame of-them would-celebrate for also
dum prædictum impetum cum Hoelo et Walgaino facerent,
while the-aforesaid onset with Hoel and Gawain they-made
non evadebat hostis cui imminebant, quin ei vitam
not escaped an-enemy on-whom they-pressed but-that from-him life
vel gladio vel lancea eripuissent. Sed postquam intra aciem
either with-sword or with-lance they-had-snatched but after within the-line
Lucii ventum fuit, undique a Romanis circumsepti, cum
of-Lucius come it-was on-every-side by the-Romans hemmed-in with
prædicto consule et prædictis militibus conciderunt. Hoelus
the-aforesaid consul and the-aforesaid knights they-fell Hoel
ergo et Walgainus, quibus meliores præterita secula non
therefore and Gawain than-whom better past ages not
genuerant, comperta strage suorum, acriores institerunt: et
had-begotten learned the-slaughter of-their-own fiercer pressed-on and
nunc hac nunc illac, unus ex una parte, alter ex altera,
now this-way now that-way one from one side the-other from the-other
discurrentes, cuneum imperatoris infestabant. At Walgainus
running-about the-wedge of-the-emperor harassed but Gawain
semper recenti virtute exæstuans, nitebatur ut aditum
always with-fresh valor seething strove that access
congrediendi cum Lucio haberet: nitendo ut audacissimus
of-engaging with Lucius he-might-have by-striving like a-most-daring
miles irruebat: irruendo hostes prosternebat: prosternendo
knight he-rushed-in by-rushing-in the-enemies he-laid-low by-laying-low
cædebat. Hoelus quoque non inferior illo, ex alia parte
he-slew Hoel also not inferior than-him from the-other side

fulminabat. Socios etiam suos hortabatur, inimicos feriebat,
thundered comrades also his-own he-urged the-enemies he-struck
eorumque ictus haud timidus recipiebat: nec ulla hora deficiebat
and-their blows not timid he-received nor any hour he-failed
quin sæpissime et percuteretur et percuteret. Non facile
but-that very-often both he-was-struck and he-struck not easily
definiri poterat, uter eorum alterius vires excederet.
to-be-determined it-could which of-them of-the-other the-strength exceeded

Lucio Tiberio occiso, Britones victoria potiuntur

XI · THE DEATH OF LUCIUS TIBERIUS

Gawain at last meets Lucius, who rejoices to test himself against so famous a knight, but the Romans rally and drive the Armoricans back. Arthur rushes in with drawn Caliburn, shouting to his men to remember their right hands and their liberty, and kills two kings. Morvid's hidden legion falls on the Romans from behind, Lucius is killed by an unknown lance, and the Britons win with great labor.

Porro Walgainus turmas (ut prædictum est) invadens,
further Gawain the-troops as said-before it-has-been attacking
invenit tandem aditum quem optabat: et in imperatorem
found at-last the-access which he-wished and upon the-emperor
irruit, et cum illo congressus est. At Lucius prima juventute
rushed and with him engaged has but Lucius in-first youth
florens, multum audaciæ, multum vigoris, multum probitatis
flourishing much of-boldness much of-vigor much of-prowess
habebat: nihilque magis desiderabat, quam congredi cum
had and-nothing more desired than to-engage with
milite tali, qui ipsum cogeret experiri, quantum in militia
a-knight such who him should-compel to-test how-much in knighthood
valeret. Resistens itaque Walgaino, congressum ejus inire
he-was-worth resisting and-so Gawain the-onset of-him to-enter

lætatur, et gloriatur, qui tantam famam de eo audierat.
he-rejoices and he-glories who so-great fame of him had-heard
Commisso diutius inter se prælio, dant ictus validos,
joined for-long between themselves the-battle they-give blows strong
et clypeos ictibus prætendendo, uterque neci alterius
and shields to-the-blows by-holding-out each on-the-death of-the-other
imminere elaborabat. Dum autem acrius in hunc modum
to-press labored while moreover more-fiercely in this manner
decertarent: ecce Romani subito vires recuperantes, impetum
they-fought behold the-Romans suddenly strength recovering an-onset
in Armoricanos faciunt, et imperatori suo subvenientes,
upon the-Armoricans make and to-the-emperor their-own coming-to-help
Hoelum et Walgainum cum suis turmis cædendo
Hoel and Gawain with their-own troops by-slaying
propulerunt, donec Arturo obviam et ejusdem agmini ex
drove-back until to-Arthur in-the-way and of-the-same to-the-column from
improviso venerunt: ipse etenim audita suorum strage, quæ
unforeseen they-came he for heard of-his-own the-slaughter which
paulo ante eisdem dabatur, cum legione irruerat, et
a-little before to-the-same was-being-given with the-legion had-rushed-in and
abstracto Caliburno gladio optimo, excelsa voce atque verbis
drawn Caliburn sword best with-lofty voice and words
commilitones suos inanimabat, inquiens: “Quid facitis viri?
fellow-soldiers his-own animated saying what do-you O-men
Ut quid muliebres permittitis illæsos abire? Ne abscedat
to what-end the-womanish do-you-permit unharmed to-go-away let-not depart
illorum ullus vivus. Mementote dextrarum vestrarum, quæ
of-them any alive remember the-right-hands your which
tot præliis exercitatæ, terdena regna potestati meæ
in-so-many battles trained thirty kingdoms to-power my
subdiderunt. Mementote avorum vestrorum, quos Romani,
subjected remember the-grandfathers your whom the-Romans

dum fortiores erant, tributarios fecerunt. Mementote libertatis
while stronger they-were tributary made remember liberty
vestræ, quam semiviri isti, et vobis debiliores, demere
your which half-men these and than-you weaker to-take-away
affectant. Ne abeat ullus vivus, ne abeat. Quid facitis?"
seek let-not go-away any alive let-not go-away what do-you
Hæc et plura alia vociferando, irruebat in hostes,
these and many other-things by-shouting he-rushed upon the-enemies
prosternebat, cædebat, et cuicunque obviabat, aut, ipsum
he-laid-low he-slew and whomever he-met either him
aut ipsius equum uno ictu interficiebat. Diffugiebant ergo
or of-him the-horse with-one blow he-killed they-fled therefore
ipsum velut pecudes ferocem leonem, quem sæva fames
him like cattle a-fierce lion whom savage hunger
instimulat ad devorandum quicquid casus subvectat. Arma
goads to devouring whatever chance brings-up arms
sua nihil eis proficiebant, quin Caliburnus dextera
their-own nothing them profited but-that Caliburn by-the-right-hand
tam virtuosi regis vibratus, cogeret ipsos animas eructare
so of-valiant king brandished compelled them souls to-belch-out
cum sanguine. Duos reges, Sertorium Libyæ, Bithyniæque
with blood two kings Sertorius of-Libya and-of-Bithynia
Polytetem infortunium illi obtulit, quos abscissis capitibus,
Polytetes misfortune to-him offered whom cut-off heads
ad tartara direxit. Viso igitur rege suo in hunc modum
to Tartarus he-sent seen therefore the-king their-own in this manner
decertante, Britones majorem audaciam capessunt: Romanos
fighting the-Britons greater boldness seize the-Romans
unanimiter invadunt: densata caterva incedunt: et dum ex
with-one-mind they-attack in-thickened company they-advance and while from
una parte pedestres hoc modo infestarent, equestres ex
one side the-foot in-this manner harassed the-horse from

alia prosternere et penetrare conabantur. Resistunt tamen
the-other to-lay-low and to-pierce tried resist yet
acriter Romani: et monitu Lucii, illustris regis vicem
fiercely the-Romans and by-the-warning of-Lucius of-the-illustrious king the-requital
illatæ cladis Britonibus reddere elaborabant. Tanta igitur
of-the-inflicted disaster to-the-Britons to-pay-back labored with-such therefore
vi in utraque parte pugnatur, ac si tunc primum recenter
force on either side it-is-fought as if then first freshly
convenirent. Hinc autem Arturus sæpius ac sæpius (ut
they-met on-this-side moreover Arthur often and often as
prædictum est) hostes percutiens, Britones ad perstandum
said-before it-has-been the-enemies striking the-Britons to standing-firm
hortabatur: illinc vero Lucius Tiberius Romanos suos, et
urged on-that-side indeed Lucius Tiberius Romans his-own both
monebat, et in præclaras probitates multoties ducebat. Nec
admonished and into splendid feats-of-prowess many-times led nor
ipse cessabat ferire: sed in omnes partes turmas suas
he-himself ceased to-strike but in all directions troops his-own
circuiens, quemcunque hostem casus offerebat, vel lancea, vel
going-round whatever enemy chance offered either with-lance or
gladio perimebat. Fiebat itaque in utraque parte cædes
with-sword he-slew there-was-made and-so on either side slaughter
abhorrenda: quia quandoque Britones, quandoque Romani
abhorrent because at-times the-Britons at-times the-Romans
versa vice prævalebant. Postremo dum talis decertatio
turned in-turn prevailed finally while such contest
inter eos fieret, ecce Morvid consul Claudiocestriæ cum
between them was-made behold Morvid consul of-Gloucester with
legione, quam esse intra colles superius dixi, subito cursu
the-legion which to-be among the-hills above I-said with-sudden charge
occurrit: et hostes nihil tale præmeditatos a dorso
ran-up and the-enemies nothing such having-foreseen from the-back

invasit: invadens invasos penetravit: penetrans penetratos
attacked attacking the-attacked pierced piercing the-pierced
dissipavit, atque maximam stragem fecit. Tunc multa milia
scattered and a-very-great slaughter made then many thousands
Romanorum conciderunt. Tunc etiam Lucius imperator intra
of-Romans fell then also Lucius the-emperor among
turmas occupatus, cujusdam lancea confossus interiit.
the-troops engaged of-a-certain-one by-the-lance pierced perished
At Britones usque insequentes, victoriam, licet maximo
but the-Britons continually pursuing the-victory though with-the-greatest
labore, habuerunt.
labor had

Romani partim fugiunt, partim se captivos reddunt

XII · SOME ROMANS FLEE AND OTHERS SURRENDER

The broken Romans scatter into woods, cities, and towns, and the Britons pursue and slaughter them. Most hold out their hands like women to be bound. Geoffrey sees in it divine providence, since the Romans' ancestors once harried the Britons' forebears with unjust tribute.

Disgregati igitur Romani, partim devia et nemora, cogente
broken-apart therefore the-Romans partly byways and woods compelling
timore, carpebant: partim ad civitates et oppida, et ad
fear took partly to cities and towns and to
quæque tutissima loca diffugiebant. Quos Britones omni nisu
each safest places fled whom the-Britons with-all effort
insequendo, miserabili cæde afficiunt, capiunt, despoliant. Ita
by-pursuing with-wretched slaughter afflict take despoil so
quod maxima pars eorum ultro protendebat manus
that the-greatest part of-them of-its-own-accord held-out hands

suas muliebriter vinciendas: ut pauxillum spatium ad
their-own womanishly to-be-bound that a-little space for
vivendum haberent. Quod divinæ providentiæ stabat loco,
living they-might-have which of-divine providence stood in-the-place
cum et veteres eorum priscis temporibus avos istorum
since both the-old of-them in-ancient times the-grandfathers of-these
injustis inquietationibus infestassent: et isti nunc libertatem,
with-unjust disturbances had-harassed and these now the-liberty
quam illi eisdem demere affectabant, tueri instarent,
which those from-the-same to-take-away sought to-defend pressed
abnegantes tributum, quod ab ipsis injuste exigebatur.
refusing the-tribute which from them unjustly was-exacted

Corpora mortuorum sepeliuntur

XIII · THE DEAD ARE BURIED

Arthur has his nobles' bodies taken to nearby abbeys, Bedevere to Bayeux, Kay to Caen, and Holdin to Therouanne. He has the enemy dead buried and sends Lucius' body to the Senate, saying that no other tribute is owed from Britain. Wintering in Gaul, he subdues the Allobroges, but as he begins to cross the Alps for Rome, he learns that Mordred has seized the crown and taken Queen Guinevere.

Habita denique victoria illa, Arturus corpora procerum suorum
had finally victory that Arthur the-bodies of-nobles his-own
ab hostilibus cadaveribus separari jubet: separata autem,
from the-hostile corpses to-be-separated orders separated moreover
regio more parari: parata vero ad conprovinciales Abbatias
in-royal manner to-be-prepared prepared indeed to the-neighboring Abbeys
deferri, ut ibidem honorifice sepelirentur. At Beduerus
to-be-carried that there honorably they-might-be-buried but Bedevere
pincerna ad Bajocas civitatem suam, quam Beduerus primus et
the-butler to Bayeux city his-own which Bedevere the-first and

proavus ejus edificaverat, ab Neustriensibus cum maximis
great-grandfather of-him had-built by the-Neustrians with the-greatest
lamentis deportatur. Ibi in quodam cœmeterio quod in Australi
laments is-carried there in a-certain cemetery which in the-Southern
parte civitatis erat, juxta murum honorifice positus fuit: Cheudo
part of-the-city was beside the-wall honorably laid was Kay
autem ad Camum oppidum, quod ipse construxerat, graviter
moreover to Caen the-town which he-himself had-built grievously
vulneratus asportatur, et paulo post eodem vulnere defunctus,
wounded is-carried and a-little after by-the-same wound having-died
in quodam nemore, in cœnobio eremitarum, qui ibidem non
in a-certain wood in the-convent of-hermits who there not
longe ab oppido erant: ut decuit Andegavensium ducem,
far from the-town were as befitted of-the-Angevins the-duke
humatus fuit. Holdinus quoque dux Rutenorum Flandrias
buried was Holdin also duke of-the-Ruteni to-Flanders
delatus, in Terivana civitate sua sepultus est. Ceteri autem
carried in Therouanne city his-own buried was the-other moreover
consules et proceres, ut præceperat Arturus, ad vicinas
consuls and nobles as had-ordered Arthur to the-neighboring
Abbatias delati sunt. Hostes quoque suos miseratus, præcepit
Abbeys carried were the-enemies also his-own having-pitied he-ordered
indigenis sepelire eos: corpusque Lucii ad senatum deferre,
the-natives to-bury them and-the-body of-Lucius to the-senate to-carry
mandans non debere aliud tributum ex Britannia reddi.
sending-word not to-be-due other tribute from Britain to-be-paid
Deinde post subsequentem hyemem, in partibus illis moratus
then after the-following winter in parts those stayed
est: et civitates Allobrogum subjugare vacavit. Adveniente
he-has and the-cities of-the-Allobroges to-subjugate he-gave-time arriving
vero æstate, cum Romam petere affectaret, et montes
but the-summer when Rome to-seek he-desired and the-mountains

transcendere incœpisset, nunciatur ei Modredum nepotem
to-cross he-had-begun it-is-announced to-him Mordred nephew
suum, cujus tutelæ commiserat Britanniam, ejusdem
his-own whose to-the-keeping he-had-committed Britain of-the-same
diademate per tyrannidem et proditionem insignitum
with-the-diadem through tyranny and treachery crowned
esse; reginamque Ganhumaram, violato jure priorum
to-have-been and-the-queen Guinevere violated the-law of-the-former
nuptiarum, eidem nefanda Venere copulatam esse.
nuptials to-the-same by-unspeakable Venus joined to-have-been

BOOK XI

Modredus, cæsis multis ex Arturi exercitu, tandem victus Wintoniam petit

I · MORDRED DRIVEN TO WINCHESTER

Geoffrey tells the last battles briefly, as he found them in the British book and heard them from Walter of Oxford. Arthur returns to Britain, while Mordred has promised the Saxon Cheldric the land from the Humber to Scotland and gathered eighty thousand pagans and Christians. At Richborough Gawain and Auguselus fall, but Arthur drives Mordred to Winchester, and Guinevere, despairing, takes the veil among the nuns of Julius the martyr at the City of the Legions.

De hoc quidem, consul auguste, Gaufridus Monumetensis
of this indeed O-consul august Geoffrey of-Monmouth
tacebit. Sed ut in Britannico præfato sermone invenit, et
will-be-silent but as in the-British aforesaid discourse he-found and
a Gualtero Oxinefordensi in multis historiis peritissimo
from Walter of-Oxford in many histories most-skilled
viro audivit, vili licet stylo, breviter tamen propalabit,
a-man heard in-a-mean though style briefly yet he-will-make-known

quæ prælia inclytus ille rex post victoriam istam, in
what battles famous that king after victory this into
Britanniam reversus, cum nepote suo commiserit. Ut
Britain having-returned with nephew his-own joined when
igitur infamia prænunciati sceleris aures ipsius attigit,
therefore the-ill-report of-the-announced crime the-ears of-him reached
continuo dilata inquietatione, quam Leoni regi Romanorum
at-once put-off the-disturbance which on-Leo king of-the-Romans
ingerere affectaverat: dimisso Hoelo duce Armoricanorum
to-inflict he-had-sought dismissed Hoel duke of-the-Armoricans
cum exercitu Galliarum, ut partes illas pacificaret: confestim
with the-army of-the-Gauls that parts those he-might-pacify forthwith
cum Insulanis tantummodo regibus, eorumque exercitibus in
with the-Island only kings and-their armies into
Britanniam remeavit. Prædictus autem sceleratissimus proditor
Britain he-returned the-aforesaid moreover most-wicked traitor
ille Modredus, Cheldricum Saxonum ducem in Germaniam
that Mordred Cheldric of-the-Saxons duke into Germany
direxerat, ut in illa quoscunque posset associaret sibi,
had-sent that in it whomever he-could he-might-join to-himself
et associatis quibuscunque, iterum citissimis velis rediret.
and joined whomever again with-swiftest sails might-return
Spoponderat etiam se ipsi hoc pacto daturum partem
he-had-promised also himself to-him on-this bargain about-to-give part
illam insulæ, quæ a flumine Humbro usque ad Scotiam
that of-the-island which from the-river Humber all-the-way to Scotland
porrigebatur, et quicquid in Cantia tempore Vortegirni Horsus
stretched and whatever in Kent in-the-time of-Vortigern Horsa
et Hengistus possederant. At ille peracto ipsius præcepto,
and Hengist had-possessed but he carried-out of-him the-order
cum octingentis navibus plenis armatis Paganis applicuerat: et
with eight-hundred ships full with-armed Pagans had-landed and

fœdere dato, huic proditori quasi suo regi parebat. Associaverat
a-treaty given this traitor as-if his-own king he-obeyed he-had-joined
quoque sibi Scotos, Pictos, Hibernienses, et quoscunque
also to-himself the-Scots Picts Irish and whomever
callebat habuisse avunculum suum odio. Erant autem
he-knew to-have-had uncle his-own in-hatred were moreover
omnes numero quasi octoginta milia, tam Paganorum quam
all in-number about eighty thousand as-well of-Pagans as
Christianorum, quorum auxilio fretus, et quorum multitudine
of-Christians whose on-the-help relying and whose by-the-multitude
comitatus, Arturo in Rutupi portum applicanti obviam venit:
accompanied to-Arthur into of-Rutupi the-port landing in-the-way he-came
et commisso prælio maximam stragem dedit applicantibus.
and joined battle very-great slaughter he-dealt on-the-landing-men
Auguselus etenim rex Albaniæ, et Walgainus nepos regis,
Auguselus for king of-Albany and Gawain nephew of-the-king
cum innumerabilibus aliis in die illa corruerunt. Successit
with countless others on day that fell succeeded
autem Auguselo in regnum Eventus filius Uriani fratris
moreover to-Auguselus in the-kingdom Eventus son of-Urian brother
sui, qui postea in decertationibus istis, multis probitatibus
his-own who afterward in contests these by-many feats-of-prowess
claruit. Postquam tandem, etsi magno labore, littora adepti
shone after at-last although with-great labor the-shores gained
fuerunt, mutuam reddendo cladem, Modredum et exercitum
they-had mutual by-returning disaster Mordred and the-army
ejus pepulerunt in fugam. Assiduis namque debellationibus
of-him they-drove into flight with-constant for warfare
usi, sapienter turmas suas disposuerant: quæ partim
having-used wisely troops their-own they-had-disposed which partly
pede, partim equo distributæ, tali modo decertabant: quod
on-foot partly on-horse distributed in-such manner fought that

cum pedestre agmen ad invadendum vel resistendum intenderet,
when the-foot column to attacking or resisting strove
equestre ilico obliquo irruens, omni nisu hostes penetrare
the-mounted on-the-spot slantwise rushing with-all effort the-enemies to-pierce
conaretur, unde eos ad diffugiendum coegerunt. Perjurus ergo
tried whence them to fleeing they-compelled the-perjured therefore
ille revocatis undique suis, insequenti nocte Guintoniam
that-one recalled from-everywhere his-own on-the-following night Winchester
ingressus est. Quod ut Ganhumaræ reginæ annunciatum
entered has which when to-Guinevere the-queen announced
est, confestim desperans, ab Eboraco ad urbem Legionum
was forthwith despairing from York to the-City of-the-Legions
diffugit, atque in templo Julii martyris, inter monachas
fled and in the-church of-Julius martyr among the-nuns
ejusdem caste vivere proposuit, et vitam monachalem suscepit.
of-the-same chastely to-live resolved and the-life monastic took-up

Modredus occiditur: Arturus vulneratus regnum Constantino tradit

II · THE BATTLE OF CAMBULA

Arthur besieges Winchester and routs Mordred, who flees to Cornwall and makes his stand on the river Cambula. Arthur breaks into Mordred's troop with six thousand men, and the traitor falls with many thousands. Nearly every leader on both sides is killed, and Arthur, mortally wounded, is carried to the island of Avalon to be healed, giving the crown to his kinsman Constantine, son of Cador, in the year 542.

At Arturus acriori ira accensus, quoniam tot centena
but Arthur with-keener wrath kindled since so-many hundreds
comilitonum suorum amiserat: in tertia die datis prius
of-fellow-soldiers his-own he-had-lost on the-third day given first

sepulturæ peremptis, civitatem adivit: atque intra eam
to-burial the-slain the-city he-approached and within it
receptum nebulonem obsedit. Qui tamen cœptis suis
withdrawn the-scoundrel besieged who yet from-undertakings his-own
desistere nolens, sed ipsos qui ei adhærebant pluribus
to-desist unwilling but those who to-him adhered in-many
modis inanimans, cum agminibus suis egreditur, atque
ways encouraging with columns his-own goes-out and
cum avunculo suo præliari disponit. Inito ergo certamine,
with uncle his-own to-fight arranges begun therefore the-contest
facta est maxima cædes in utraque parte, quæ tandem
made was very-great slaughter on either side which at-last
magis in partem illius illata, coegit eum campum turpiter
more upon the-side of-him inflicted compelled him the-field shamefully
relinquere. Qui deinde non multum curans, quæ sepultura
to-leave who then not much caring what burial
peremptis suis fieret: cito remige fugæ evectus,
to-the-slain his-own might-be-made with-swift oarsman of-flight borne-away
Cornubiam versus iter arripuit. Arturus autem interna
Cornwall toward the-way took-up Arthur moreover by-inward
anxietate cruciatus, quoniam totiens evasisset, confestim
anxiety tormented since so-often he-had-escaped forthwith
prosecutus est eum in prædictam patriam usque ad
pursued has him into the-aforesaid country all-the-way to
flumen Cambula, ubi ille adventum ejus expectabat. Porro
the-river Cambula where he the-coming of-him awaited further
Modredus, ut erat omnium audacissimus, et semper
Mordred as he-was of-all the-boldest and always
ad invadendum celerrimus, confestim milites suos per
for attacking the-swiftest forthwith knights his-own by
catervas distribuit, affectans vincere vel mori potius, quam
companies distributed desiring to-conquer or to-die rather than

prædicto modo diutius fugere. Remanserant adhuc ei ex
in-the-aforesaid manner longer to-flee had-remained still to-him from
prædicto numero sociorum sexaginta milia, ex quibus fecit
the-aforesaid number of-allies sixty thousand from whom he-made
turmas tres: et in unaquaque posuit sex milia armatorum
troops three and in each he-put six thousand of-armed-men
et sexcentos sexaginta sex. Præterea vero fecit unam
and six-hundred sixty six besides indeed he-made one
turmam ex ceteris qui superfuerant, et unicuique aliarum
troop from the-rest who had-remained and to-each of-the-others
ductoribus datis, eam tutelæ suæ permisit. His itaque
leaders given it to-the-keeping his-own entrusted these and-so
distributis quemlibet eorum inanimabat, promittens ceterorum
distributed each of-them he-encouraged promising of-the-others
possessiones eis, si ad triumphandum perstarent. Arturus
the-possessions to-them if for triumphing they-stood-firm Arthur
quoque suum exercitum in adversa parte statuit, quem per
also his-own army on the-opposite side set which into
novem divisit agmina pedestria cum dextro ac sinistro cornu
nine divided columns on-foot with right and left wing
quadrata: et unicuique præsidibus commissis, hortatur ut
squared and to-each commanders committed he-urges that
perjuros et latrones interimant, qui monitu proditoris
the-perjured and robbers they-should-destroy who by-the-warning of-the-traitor
sui de externis regionibus in insulam advecti, suos
their-own from foreign regions into the-island brought their-own
eis honores demere affectabant. Dicit etiam diversos
from-them honors to-take-away sought he-says also diverse
diversorum regnorum Barbaros imbelles atque belli usus
of-diverse kingdoms Barbarians unwarlike and of-war of-the-practice
ignaros esse, et nullatenus ipsis virtuosis viris et pluribus
ignorant to-be and in-no-way to-these valiant men and in-many

debellationibus usis resistere posse, si audacter invadere
wars practiced to-resist to-be-able if boldly to-attack
et viriliter decertare affectarent. Ipsis itaque commilitones
and manfully to-fight they-should-desire them and-so fellow-soldiers
suos hinc et inde cohortantibus, subito impetu
their-own on-this-side and on-that exhorting with-sudden onset
concurrunt acies, et commisso prælio crebros ictus innectere
clash the-lines and joined battle frequent blows to-interweave
elaborant. Fiunt ilico in utrisque partibus tantæ
they-labor there-are-made on-the-spot on both sides such
strages, tanti morientium gemitus, tanti invadentium furores,
slaughters such of-the-dying groans such of-the-attackers furies
quantos laboriosum est describere et dolorosum audire.
as-great-as laborious it-is to-describe and grievous to-hear
Undique etenim vulnerabant et vulnerabantur: perimebant
on-every-side for they-wounded and they-were-wounded they-slew
et perimebantur. Postquam autem multum diei in hunc
and they-were-slain after moreover much of-the-day in this
modum duxerunt, irruit tandem Arturus cum agmine uno,
manner they-had-spent rushed at-last Arthur with column one
quo sex milia sexcentos et sexaginta sex posuerat, in
in-which six thousand six-hundred and sixty six he-had-put upon
turmam illam ubi Modredum sciebat esse, et viam gladiis
troop that where Mordred he-knew to-be and a-way with-swords
aperiendo, eam penetravit, atque tristissimam cædem ingessit.
by-opening it pierced and the-saddest slaughter inflicted
Concidit namque proditor ille nefandus, et multa milia cum
fell for traitor that unspeakable and many thousands with
eo. Nec tamen ob casum ejus diffugiunt ceteri: sed ex
him nor yet on-account-of the-fall of-him flee the-rest but from
omni campo confluentes, quantum audaciæ dabatur, resistere
all the-field flocking-together as-much-as of-boldness was-given to-resist

conantur. Committitur ergo dirissima pugna inter eos, qua
try is-joined therefore a-most-dire fight between them in-which
omnes fere duces qui in ambabus partibus affuerant,
all almost the-leaders who on both sides had-been-present
cum suis catervis corruerunt. Corruerunt etenim in parte
with their-own companies fell fell for on the-side
Modredi, Cheldricus, Elafius, Egbrictus, Bunignus, Saxones:
of-Mordred Cheldric Elafius Egbrict Bunignus Saxons
Gillapatriæ, Gillamor, Gislafel, Gillarium, Hibernenses. Scoti
Gillapatric Gillamor Gislafel Gillarius Irish Scots
etiam et Picti cum omnibus fere quibus dominabantur. In
also and Picts with all almost whom they-ruled on
parte autem Arturi Olbrictus rex Norwegiæ, Aschillius rex
the-side moreover of-Arthur Olbrict king of-Norway Aschil king
Daciæ, Cador Limetiæ Cassibellaunus, cum multis milibus
of-Dacia Cador of-Limetia Cassibellaunus with many thousands
suorum tam Britonum quam ceterarum gentium quas
of-their-own as-well of-Britons as of-other peoples whom
secum adduxerat. Sed et inclytus ille rex Arturus letaliter
with-him he-had-brought but also famous that king Arthur mortally
vulneratus est, qui illinc ad sananda vulnera sua in insulam
wounded was who thence for to-be-healed wounds his-own into the-island
Avallonis advectus, cognato suo Constantino, filio Cadoris
of-Avalon borne to-kinsman his-own Constantine son of-Cador
ducis Cornubiæ, diadema Britanniæ concessit, anno ab
duke of-Cornwall the-diadem of-Britain granted in-the-year from
incarnatione dominica quingentesimo quadragesimo secundo.
the-incarnation of-the-Lord five-hundredth fortieth second

Rebellant Saxones

III · THE SAXONS REBEL

The Saxons and Mordred's two sons rise against Constantine and, failing, seize London and Winchester. Saint Daniel of Bangor dies, and Theonus of Gloucester becomes archbishop of London. Saint David, archbishop of the City of the Legions, dies at Menevia in the abbey Saint Patrick founded, and Kincus of Llanpatern succeeds him.

Constantino igitur diademate insignito, insurrexerunt
Constantine therefore with-the-diadem crowned rose-up
Saxones, et duo filii Modredi nec in eum prævalere
the-Saxons and two sons of-Mordred nor against him to-prevail
quiverunt: sed post plurima prælia diffugiendo, unus
were-able but after very-many battles by-fleeing one
Londonias, alter vero Guintoniam ingressus, eas obtinere
London the-other but Winchester having-entered them to-hold
cœperunt. Tunc defunctus est sanctus Daniel Bangornensis
began then died has saint Daniel of-Bangor
ecclesiæ religiosissimus Antistes, et Theonus Glouecestrensis
of-the-church most-religious Prelate and Theonus of-Gloucester
episcopus in Archiepiscopatum Londoniarum eligitur. Tunc
bishop to the-Archbishopric of-London is-elected then
obiit sanctissimus urbis Legionum archiepiscopus David
died the-most-holy of-the-City of-the-Legions archbishop David
in Menevia civitate, intra abbatiam suam, quam præ ceteris
in Menevia city within abbey his-own which before the-other
suæ diœcesis monasteriis dilexerat, quia beatus Patricius,
of-his-own diocese monasteries he-had-loved because blessed Patrick
qui nativitatem ejus prophetaverat, ipsam fundavit. Dum
who the-birth of-him had-prophesied it founded while

enim ibi apud confratres suos moram faceret, subito
for there among brethren his-own stay he-made by-sudden
languore gravatus, defunctus est, et jubente Malgone
sickness weighed-down died he-has and ordering Malgo
Venedotorum rege in eadem ecclesia sepultus. Pro
of-the-Venedotians king in the-same church buried in-place-of
eo ponitur in Metropolitana sede Kincus Lampaternensis
him is-put in the-Metropolitan see Kincus of-Llanpatern
ecclesiæ antistes, et ad altiorem dignitatem promovetur.
of-the-church prelate and to a-higher dignity is-promoted

Constantinus, post filios Modredi interfectos, ipse a Conano interficitur

IV · CONSTANTINE AND MORDRED'S SONS

Constantine subdues the Saxons and takes Mordred's sons, killing one before the altar of Saint Amphibalus at Winchester and the other before an altar in a London monastery. In the third year he is killed by Conan, struck by God's judgment. He is buried beside Uther Pendragon in the stone circle near Salisbury called Stonehenge.

At Constantinus insecutus est Saxones, et eos potestati
but Constantine pursued has the-Saxons and them to-power
suæ subjugavit. Et prædictos filios Modredi cepit: et
his-own subjugated and the-aforesaid sons of-Mordred took and
alterum juvenem Guintoniæ in ecclesiam sancti Amphibali
the-one youth at-Winchester into the-church of-saint Amphibalus
fugientem, ante altare trucidavit: alterum vero Londoniis
fleeing before the-altar he-butchered the-other indeed at-London
in quorundam fratrum Cœnobio absconditum, atque tandem
in of-certain brothers the-Convent hidden and at-last
juxta altare inventum, crudeli morte affecit. Exin tertio
beside the-altar found with-cruel death afflicted thereafter in-the-third

anno interfectus est a Conano, sententia Dei percussus,
year killed he-was by Conan by-the-sentence of-God struck
et juxta Utherpendragon intra lapidum structuram sepultus
and beside Uther-Pendragon within of-stones the-structure buried
fuit, quæ haud longe a Salesberia mira arte composita,
he-was which not far from Salisbury with-wondrous art put-together
Anglorum lingua Stanheng nuncupatur.
of-the-English in-the-tongue Stonehenge is-called

Conanus solio potitur

V · CONAN TAKES THE THRONE

Aurelius Conan, Constantine's nephew, a youth of wonderful prowess, rules the whole island and would deserve the crown but for his love of civil war. He imprisons the uncle who should have reigned and kills his two sons. He dies in the second year of his reign.

Huic successit Aurelius Conanus miræ probitatis juvenis,
to-him succeeded Aurelius Conan of-wondrous prowess a-youth
et ipsius nepos, qui monarchiam totius insulæ tenens
and of-him nephew who the-monarchy of-the-whole island holding
ejusdem diademate dignus esset, si non foret civilis belli
of-the-same of-the-diadem worthy would-be if not he-were of-civil war
amator: avunculum etenim suum, qui post Constantinum
a-lover uncle for his-own who after Constantine
regnare debuit, inquietavit, atque in carcerem posuit: ejusque
to-reign ought harassed and in prison put and-his
duobus filiis peremptis, regnum obtinuit, secundoque regni
two sons slain the-kingdom obtained and-in-the-second of-reign
sui anno defunctus est.
his-own year died he-has

Wortiporius Conano succedit

VI · VORTIPORIUS SUCCEEDS CONAN

Vortiporius succeeds Conan, and the Saxons rise against him with a great fleet of their countrymen from Germany. He defeats them in battle. He governs the whole kingdom for four years with diligence and peace.

Conano successit Wortiporius: in quem insurrexerunt
to-Conan succeeded Vortiporius against whom rose-up
Saxones, conducentes concives suos ex Germania
the-Saxons bringing fellow-citizens their-own from Germany
maximo navigio. Sed ipse prælium cum ipsis inivit, et
with-a-very-great fleet but he battle with them entered and
superavit: et monarchiam totius regni adeptus, populum
overcame and the-monarchy of-the-whole kingdom having-gained the-people
quatuor annis gubernavit cum diligentia et pace.
for-four years governed with diligence and peace

Malgo, rex factus, pulcritudinem corporis Sodomitarum peste deturpat

VII · KING MALGO'S VICE

Malgo, the handsomest man in Britain, expels many tyrants and is strong in arms, generous, and of great prowess. He makes himself hateful to God by sodomy. He rules the whole island and adds to it by hard battles Ireland, Iceland, Gothland, the Orkneys, Norway, and Denmark.

Cui successit Malgo omnium fere Britanniæ pulcherrimus,
to-whom succeeded Malgo of-all almost of-Britain the-most-beautiful
multorum tyrannorum depulsor, robustus armis, largior
of-many tyrants the-expeller sturdy in-arms more-generous

ceteris: et ultra modum probitate præclarus, nisi Sodomitana
than-the-others and beyond measure in-prowess illustrious unless in-the-Sodomitic
peste volutatus, sese Deo invisum exhibuisset. Hic etiam totam
plague wallowing himself to-God hateful he-had-shown he also the-whole
insulam obtinuit: et sex comprovinciales Oceani insulas,
island obtained and six neighboring of-the-Ocean islands
Hiberniam videlicet, atque Islandiam, Godlandiam, Orcades,
Ireland namely and Iceland Gothland the-Orkneys
Norwegiam, Daciam, adjecit dirissimis præliis potestati suæ.
Norway Dacia added by-most-dire battles to-power his-own

Britannia, sub rege Caretico bellis civilibus afflicta, præda fit Saxonibus et Africanis

VIII · CARETICUS AND GORMUND

Careticus, a lover of civil war, is hateful to God and the Britons. The Saxons bring in Gormund, king of the Africans, who has conquered Ireland, and with 166,000 Africans he hunts Careticus from city to city and besieges him in Cirencester. Isembard, nephew of King Louis of the Franks, forsakes his faith to join Gormund, who burns the city, drives Careticus beyond the Severn, and burns the island from sea to sea.

Malgoni successit Careticus, amator civilium bellorum, invisus
to-Malgo succeeded Careticus a-lover of-civil wars hateful
Deo et Britonibus. Cujus inconstantiam comperientes
to-God and to-the-Britons whose inconstancy learning
Saxones, iverunt propter Gormundum regem Africanorum in
the-Saxons went for Gormund king of-the-Africans into
Hiberniam, in quam maximis navigiis advectus, gentem
Ireland into which with-very-great fleets borne the-people
patriæ subjugaverat. Exin proditione eorum, cum centum
of-the-country he-had-subjugated thereafter by-the-treachery of-them with hundred

sexaginta sex millibus Africanorum ad Britanniam transfretavit,
sixty six thousands of-Africans to Britain crossed
quam in una parte mentitæ fidei Saxones, in alia vero
which on one side of-lying faith the-Saxons on the-other indeed
cives patriæ, civilia bella inter se assidue agentes,
the-citizens of-the-country civil wars among themselves constantly waging
penitus devastabant. Inito ergo fœdere cum Saxonibus
utterly laid-waste entered therefore a-treaty with the-Saxons
oppugnavit Careticum regem et post plurima prælia inter eos,
he-attacked Careticus the-king and after very-many battles between them
fugavit eum de civitate in civitatem, donec eum trusit
he-put-to-flight him from city to city until him he-thrust
in Cirecestriam, et obsedit. Ubi Isembardus nepos Ludovici
into Cirencester and besieged where Isembard nephew of-Louis
regis Francorum venit ad eum, et cum eo fœdus amicitiæ
king of-the-Franks came to him and with him a-treaty of-friendship
inivit, et Christianitatem suam tali pacto pro amore ejus
entered and Christianity his-own on-such terms for love of-him
deseruit, ut auxilio ejus regnum Galliæ avunculo eripere
forsook that by-the-help of-him the-kingdom of-Gaul from-the-uncle to-snatch
posset, a quo (ut aiebat) vi et injuste expulsus erat.
he-might by whom as he-said by-force and unjustly expelled he-had-been
Capta tandem prædicta civitate et succensa, commisit
taken at-last the-aforesaid city and fired he-joined
prælium cum Caretico, et eum fugavit ultra Sabrinam
battle with Careticus and him put-to-flight beyond the-Severn
in Guallias. Mox depopulans agros, ignem cumulavit in
into Wales soon ravaging the-fields fire he-heaped upon
finitimas quasque civitates: qui non quievit accensus, donec
neighboring all cities which not rested kindled until
cunctam pene superficiem insulæ, a mari usque ad
the-whole almost surface of-the-island from sea all-the-way to

mare exussit: ita ut cunctæ coloniæ crebris arietibus,
sea it-burned-up so that all settlements with-frequent rams
omnesque coloni cum sacerdotibus ecclesiæ, mucronibus
and-all settlers with the-priests of-the-church blades
undique micantibus, ac flammis crepitantibus, simul humi
on-every-side flashing and flames crackling together on-the-ground
sternerentur. Diffugiebant ergo reliquiæ tantis cladibus
were-laid-low fled therefore the-remnants by-such disasters
affectæ, quocunque tutamen ipsis cedentibus patebat.
afflicted wherever safety to-them yielding lay-open

Auctoris in Britones exprobatio

IX · THE AUTHOR'S REPROACH TO THE BRITONS

Geoffrey asks the idle, sinful Britons why, thirsting always for civil war, they have so weakened themselves. Once they conquered distant kingdoms, but now, like a good vine turned bitter, they cannot defend their wives and children. Since their kingdom is divided against itself, as the Gospel warns, and pride will not let them obey one king, their country is laid waste by pagans, and their descendants will scarcely recover it.

Quid, ociosa gens pondere immanium scelerum oppressa:
why O-idle people by-the-weight of-monstrous crimes oppressed
quid semper civilia bella sitiens, tete domesticis in tantum
why always civil wars thirsting thyself by-domestic to so-great-a-degree
debilitasti motibus, quæ cum prius longe posita regna
hast-weakened commotions who though before far placed kingdoms
potestati tuæ subdideris, nunc velut bona vinea degenerata, in
to-power thy thou-subjected now like a-good vine degenerated into
amaritudinem versa, patriam et conjuges liberosque nequeas
bitterness turned country and wives and-children thou-canst-not

ab inimicis tueri? Age ergo, age civile dissidium: parum
from enemies to-defend carry-on therefore carry-on civil discord little
intelligens Evangelicum illud: Omne regnum in se ipsum
understanding Gospel-saying that every kingdom against it itself
divisum desolabitur, et domus supra domum cadet. Quia ergo
divided will-be-desolated and house upon house will-fall because therefore
regnum tuum in se divisum fuit: quia furor civilis discordiæ
kingdom thy against itself divided was because the-fury of-civil discord
et livoris fumus mentem tuam hebetavit: quia superbia tua uni
and of-envy the-smoke mind thy has-dulled because pride thy to-one
regi obedientiam ferre non permisit: cernis idcirco patriam tuam
king obedience to-bear not permitted thou-seest therefore country thy
ab impiissimis paganis desolatam, domos etiam ejusdem supra
by most-impious pagans desolated the-houses also of-the-same upon
domos ruentes, quod posteri tui in futurum lugebunt. Videbunt
houses falling which descendants thy into the-future will-mourn they-will-see
etenim barbaræ leænæ catulos oppida, civitates, atque ceteras
for of-the-barbarous lioness the-cubs towns cities and the-other
eorundem possessiones obtinere. Ex quibus misere expulsi,
of-the-same possessions to-hold from which wretchedly expelled
prioris dignitatis statum vel nunquam vel vix recuperabunt.
of-former dignity the-state either never or scarcely they-will-recover

Loegriam Saxones iterum occupant: Britones in Cornubiam et Gualias fugiunt

X · THE BRITONS FLEE TO CORNWALL AND WALES

Gormund gives most of the island, called Loegria, to the Saxons, and the remnants of the Britons withdraw to Cornwall and Wales, from which they raid the enemy. The archbishops of the City of the Legions, London, and York flee to the Welsh forests with the relics of the saints, and many sail to Armorica. Geoffrey will tell of this elsewhere, when he translates the book on their exile.

Postquam autem (ut prædictum est) infaustus Tyrannus
after moreover as said-before it-has-been the-ill-starred Tyrant
cum innumerabilibus Africanorum milibus totam fere
with countless of-Africans thousands the-whole almost
insulam vastavit, majorem partem ejus quæ Loëgria vocabatur,
island laid-waste the-greater part of-it which Loegria was-called
præbuit Saxonibus, quorum proditione applicuerat. Secesserunt
he-gave to-the-Saxons whose by-the-treachery he-had-landed withdrew
itaque Britonum reliquiæ in Occidentales regni
and-so of-the-Britons the-remnants into the-Western of-the-kingdom
partes, Cornubiam videlicet atque Gualias. Unde crebras
parts Cornwall namely and Wales whence frequent
et ferales irruptiones incessanter hostibus fecerunt. Tres
and deadly onrushes unceasingly on-the-enemies they-made three
igitur archipræsules, videlicet urbis Legionum, Theonus
therefore archprelates namely of-the-City of-the-Legions Theonus
Londoniensis, et Thadioceus Eboracensis, cum omnes
of-London and Thadioceus of-York when all
ecclesias sibi subditas, usque ad humum destructas
churches to-them subject all-the-way to the-ground destroyed
vidissent: cum omnibus ordinatis, qui in tanto discrimine
they-had-seen with all ordained who in so-great peril

superfuerant, diffugiunt ad tutamina nemorum in Gualias
had-survived flee to the-safeties of-the-woods in Wales
cum reliquiis sanctorum, timentes ne barbarorum irruptione
with the-relics of-the-saints fearing lest of-the-barbarians by-the-onrush
delerentur tot et tantorum veterum sacra ossa, si
should-be-destroyed of-so-many and so-great old-ones the-sacred bones if
ipsa in imminenti periculo desererent, et sese instanti
them in imminent peril they-should-desert and themselves to-pressing
martyrio offerrent. Plures etiam Armoricanam Britanniam
martyrdom should-offer many also Armorican Britain
magno navigio petiverunt: ita ut tota ecclesia duarum
with-great fleet sought so that the-whole church of-two
provinciarum, Loegriæ videlicet et Northanhumbriæ, a
provinces of-Loegria namely and of-Northumbria by
conventibus suis desolaretur: sed hæc alias referam, cum
convents its-own was-desolated but these elsewhere I-shall-relate when
librum de exulatione eorum transtulero.
the-book about the-exile of-them I-shall-have-translated

Ita Britones regnum amittunt

XI · SO THE BRITONS LOSE THE KINGDOM

For a long time the Britons lose the crown and the island, and the part left to them, subject to three tyrants, they waste with civil war. Nor do the Saxons yet win the crown of the island. Subject to three kings, they fight sometimes among themselves and sometimes against the Britons.

Amiserunt deinde Britones regni diadema multis
lost then the-Britons of-the-kingdom the-diadem for-many
temporibus, et insulæ monarchiam, nec pristinam
times and of-the-island the-monarchy nor the-former

dignitatem recuperare nitebantur: immo partem illam
dignity to-recover strove rather part that
patriæ quæ eis adhuc remanserat, non uni regi:
of-the-country which to-them still had-remained not to-one king
sed tribus tyrannis subditam, civilibus præliis sæpissime
but to-three tyrants subject with-civil battles very-often
vastabant. Sed nec Saxones diadema insulæ adhuc adepti
they-laid-waste but nor the-Saxons the-diadem of-the-island yet gained
sunt, qui tribus etiam regibus subditi, quandoque sibi
have who to-three also kings subject sometimes on-them
ipsis, quandoque Britonibus inquietationem inferebant.
themselves sometimes on-the-Britons disturbance brought

Augustinus, a Gregorio Papa missus, in Britanniam venit

XII · AUGUSTINE COMES TO BRITAIN

Pope Gregory sends Augustine to preach to the English, who have wiped out Christianity in their part of the island. Among the Britons the faith has flourished since Pope Eleutherius, with seven bishoprics, an archbishopric, and many abbeys, among them Bangor, whose monks number over two thousand. Its abbot Dinoot refuses Augustine's demand for subjection, since the Britons have their own archbishop and hate the Saxons as dogs.

Interea missus est Augustinus a beato Gregorio papa in
meanwhile sent was Augustine by blessed Gregory the-pope into
Britanniam, ut Anglis verbum Dei prædicaret, qui Pagana
Britain that to-the-English the-word of-God he-might-preach who by-Pagan
superstitione cæcati in illa insulæ parte quam habebant,
superstition blinded in that of-the-island part which they-held
totam deleverant Christianitatem. In parte autem Britonum
all had-destroyed Christianity in the-part moreover of-the-Britons

adhuc vigebat Christianitas, quæ a tempore Eleutherii papæ
still flourished Christianity which from the-time of-Eleutherius the-pope
habita, nunquam inter eos defecerat. Postquam autem venit
held never among them had-failed after moreover came
Augustinus, invenit in eorum provincia septem Episcopatus et
Augustine he-found in their province seven Bishoprics and
Archiepiscopatum religiosissimis præsulibus munitos, et abbatias
an-Archbishopric with-most-religious prelates furnished and abbeys
complures: in quibus grex domini rectum ordinem tenebat.
very-many in which the-flock of-the-Lord right order kept
Inter ceteros, erat in civitate Bangor quædam nobilissima
among the-others was in the-city Bangor a-certain most-noble
ecclesia, in qua tantus fertur fuisse numerus monachorum,
church in which so-great is-said to-have-been the-number of-monks
ut cum in septem portiones esset cum præpositis sibi
that when into seven portions was with set-over to-them
Prioribus monasterium divisum, nulla harum portio minus
Priors the-monastery divided no of-these portion less
quam trecentos monachos haberet: qui omnes labore manuum
than three-hundred monks had who all by-the-labor of-hands
suarum vivebant. Abbas autem eorum Dinoot vocabatur:
their-own lived the-Abbot moreover of-them Dinoot was-called
miro modo liberalibus artibus eruditus. Qui Augustino
in-wondrous manner in-the-liberal arts learned who to-Augustine
petenti ab episcopis Britonum subjectionem, et suadenti ut
seeking from the-bishops of-the-Britons subjection and urging that
secum genti Anglorum communem evangelizandi laborem
with-him for-the-people of-the-English common of-evangelizing the-labor
susciperent: diversis argumentationibus, ipsos ei nullam
they-should-undertake with-diverse arguments they to-him no
subjectionem debere respondit, nec suam prædictionem
subjection to-owe answered nor their-own preaching

inimicis suis impendere: cum et suum Archipræsulem
on-enemies their-own to-spend since both their-own Archprelate
haberent, et gens Saxonum patriam propriam eisdem
they-had and the-people of-the-Saxons country own from-the-same
auferre perstarent. Unde eos summo habebant odio:
to-take-away persisted whence them in-the-highest they-held hatred
fidemque et religionem eorum pro nihilo habebant: nec in
and-the-faith and religion of-them for nothing they-held nor in
aliquo Anglis magis quam canibus communicabant.
anything with-the-English more than with-dogs they-communed

Ethelfridus, rex Northumbriæ, monachos Britones interficit

XIII · ETHELFRID KILLS THE MONKS OF BANGOR

Ethelbert of Kent, angered that the Britons spurn Augustine, urges Ethelfrid of Northumbria to destroy Bangor. At Leicester, where monks and hermits have gathered to pray for their people, Ethelfrid defeats Brocmail and has twelve hundred monks killed, crowned that day with martyrdom. The British leaders Bledericus of Cornwall, Margadud, and Cadvan then wound and rout Ethelfrid, killing ten thousand of his men, though Bledericus falls.

Ethelbertus ergo rex Cantiorum, ut vidit Britones
Ethelbert therefore king of-the-Kentishmen when he-saw the-Britons
dedignantes subjectionem Augustino facere, et eosdem
disdaining subjection to-Augustine to-make and the-same
prædicationem suam spernere: hoc gravissime ferens,
preaching his-own to-spurn this most-grievously bearing
Ethelfridum regem Northanhumbrorum, et ceteros regulos
Ethelfrid king of-the-Northumbrians and the-other petty-kings
Saxonum instimulavit, ut collecto grandi exercitu, in
of-the-Saxons goaded that gathered a-great army upon

civitatem Bangor abbatem Dinoot et ceteros clericos, qui eos
the-city Bangor the-abbot Dinoot and the-other clerics who them
spernerent, perditum irent. Acquiescentes ergo consilio
spurned to-destroy they-should-go assenting therefore to-the-counsel
ejus, collegerunt mirabilem exercitum, et provinciam Britonum
of-him they-gathered a-wondrous army and the-province of-the-Britons
petentes, venerunt Legecestriam, ubi Brocmail consul urbis
seeking came to-Leicester where Brocmail consul of-the-city
adventum eorum expectabat. Venerant autem ad eandem
the-coming of-them awaited had-come moreover to the-same
civitatem ex diversis Britonum provinciis innumerabiles
city from diverse of-the-Britons provinces countless
monachi et eremitæ, et maxime de civitate Bangor, ut pro
monks and hermits and especially from the-city Bangor that for
salute populi sui orarent. Collectis igitur undique
the-safety of-the-people their-own they-might-pray gathered therefore from-everywhere
exercitibus, Ethelfridus rex Northanhumbrorum prælium inivit
armies Ethelfrid king of-the-Northumbrians battle entered
cum Brocmail: qui pauciori numero militum resistens, ad
with Brocmail who with-a-smaller number of-knights resisting at
ultimum relicta civitate, sed prius maxima strage hostibus
the-last left the-city but first very-great slaughter on-the-enemies
illata, diffugit. At Ethelfridus civitate capta, cum intellexisset
inflicted fled but Ethelfrid the-city taken when he-had-understood
causam adventus prædictorum monachorum, jussit in eos
the-cause of-the-coming of-the-aforesaid monks ordered against them
primum arma verti, et sic mille ducenti eorum in
first arms to-be-turned and so thousand two-hundred of-them on
ipsa die martyrio decorati, regni cælestis adepti
that-very day with-martyrdom adorned of-the-kingdom heavenly gained
sunt sedem. Deinde cum prædictus Saxonum tyrannus
have a-seat then when the-aforesaid of-the-Saxons tyrant

Bangornensium urbem peteret: audita ipsius insania, venerunt
of-the-men-of-Bangor the-city sought heard of-him the-madness came
undique obviam illi duces Britonum, Bledericus videlicet
from-everywhere in-the-way to-him the-leaders of-the-Britons Bledericus namely
dux Cornubiæ, et Margadud rex Demetorum, Caduanus
duke of-Cornwall and Margadud king of-the-Demetians Cadvan
Venedotorum: et conserto prælio, ipsum vulneratum in
of-the-Venedotians and joined battle him wounded into
fugam propulerunt: sed et tantum numerum exercitus ejus
flight drove but also so-great number of-the-army of-him
peremerunt, ita quod decem milia circiter, et sexaginta
they-slew so that ten thousand about and sixty
sex corruerunt. In parte etiam Britonum cecidit Bledericus
six fell on the-side also of-the-Britons fell Bledericus
dux Cornubiæ, qui ducatum in eisdem præliis præstabat.
duke of-Cornwall who the-leadership in the-same battles furnished

BOOK XII

Britannia tota inter Caduanum et Ethelfridum dividitur

I · CADVAN AND ETHELFRID

The British princes make Cadvan king at Leicester and pursue Ethelfrid beyond the Humber, but friends make peace between them, Ethelfrid holding the land beyond the Humber and Cadvan the land this side of it. Ethelfrid's cast-off wife, pregnant, takes refuge with Cadvan and bears her son there; Cadvan's queen, who conceived at the same time, bears a son a little after. The boys, Cadwallo and Edwin, are raised together and sent to King Salomon of Armorica, where they win fame in war.

Exin convenerunt omnes principes Britonum in civitatem
thereafter came-together all the-princes of-the-Britons into the-city
Legecestriam, communemque assensum habuerunt, ut
Leicester and-common assent they-had that
Caduanum facerent sibi regem, ipsoque duce
Cadvan they-should-make for-themselves king and-him as-leader
Ethelfridum ultra Humbrum persequerentur. Insignitoque
Ethelfrid beyond the-Humber they-should-pursue and-crowned
illo regni diademate, undique confluentes Humbrum
him of-the-kingdom with-the-diadem from-everywhere flocking the-Humber
præterierunt. Cumque id Ethelfrido nunciatum esset,
they-passed and-when this to-Ethelfrid announced had-been
associavit sibi omnes reges Saxonum, obviusque Caduano
he-joined to-himself all the-kings of-the-Saxons and-in-the-way to-Cadvan
perrexit. Denique cum catervas suas in utraque parte
went-forward finally when companies their-own on either side
statuerent, venerunt amici eorum, talique pacto pacem inter
they-set came friends of-them and-on-such terms peace between
eos fecerunt: ut Ethelfridus trans Humbrum: Caduanus
them made that Ethelfrid across the-Humber Cadvan

vero citra Humbrum fluvium Britanniam possiderent.
but this-side-of the-Humber river Britain should-possess
Cum autem conventionem suam obsidibus jurejurando
when moreover agreement their-own with-hostages by-oath
confirmassent, orta est tanta amicitia inter eos, ut omnia
they-had-confirmed arisen has so-great friendship between them that all-things
sua communia haberent. Interea contigit ut expulsa propria
their-own common they-held meanwhile it-happened that expelled own
conjuge Ethelfridus aliam duceret: expulsamque tanto haberet
wife Ethelfrid another married and-the-expelled in-such held
odio, ut eam ex regno Northanhumbriæ expelleret. Porro
hatred that her from the-kingdom of-Northumbria he-drove further
illa puerum in utero habens regem Caduanum adivit: orans
she a-child in womb having king Cadvan approached praying
ut ejus interventione marito suo resociaretur. Cumque
that his by-the-intervention to-husband her-own she-might-be-reunited and-when
id ab Ethelfrido nullatenus impetrari potuisset: remansit
this from Ethelfrid in-no-way to-be-obtained could-have remained
illa in thalamo Caduani, donec dies partus filium quem
she in the-chamber of-Cadvan until the-day of-birth the-son whom
conceperat in mundum produxit. Natus est etiam paulo
she-had-conceived into the-world brought-forth born was also a-little
post Caduano regi filius ex regina conjuge sua: nam
after to-Cadvan the-king a-son from the-queen wife his-own for
et illa eodem tempore gravida facta fuerat, exin nutriti
also she at-the-same time pregnant made had-been thereafter reared
sunt pueri, ut regium genus decebat, quorum alter videlicet
were the-boys as royal race befitted of-whom one namely
Caduallo nuncupatur, alter vero Edwinus. Interea cum
Cadwallo is-called the-other but Edwin meanwhile when
progressior ætas ipsos in adolescentiam promovisset: miserunt
more-advanced age them into youth had-promoted sent

eos parentes ad Salomonem regem Armoricanorum Britonum,
them the-parents to Salomon king of-the-Armorican Britons
ut in domo ejus documenta militiæ, ceterarumque
that in the-house of-him the-lessons of-knighthood and-of-other
curialium consuetudinem addiscerent. Excepti itaque diligenter
courtly the-custom they-might-learn received and-so diligently
ab eo, in familiaritatem ipsius accedere cœperunt; ita ut non
by him into intimacy of-him to-approach they-began so that not
esset alter ætatis eorum in curia, qui posset cum rege
there-was another of-age their in the-court who could with the-king
aut esse secretius, aut loqui jucundius. Denique frequenter
either to-be more-privately or to-speak more-pleasantly finally frequently
ante illum in præliis congressum cum hostibus faciebant:
before him in battles encounter with the-enemies they-made
virtutemque suam præclaris probitatibus famosam agebant.
and-valor their-own by-splendid feats-of-prowess famous they-made

Cadwallo pactum cum Edwino facit, postea interrumpit

II · CADWALLO AND EDWIN

Returning after their fathers' deaths, Cadwallo and Edwin rule as friends, until Edwin asks leave to wear a crown in Northumbria. At the parley by the Douglas, Cadwallo's nephew Brian weeps onto the king's face. The Britons, Brian says, have had no prince to restore them since Malgo, and the Saxons, who betrayed Vortigern, Aurelius, Arthur, and Careticus, should be crushed, not exalted.

Succedente tandem tempore, defunctis parentibus in
succeeding at-last time having-died the-parents into
Britanniam reversi sunt, susceptoque regni gubernaculo,
Britain returned they-have and-taken-up of-the-kingdom the-helm
eam amicitiam, quam prius patres eorum habuerant,
that friendship which before the-fathers of-them had-had

exercere cœperunt. Emenso deinde biennio, rogavit
to-practice they-began having-passed then two-years asked
Cadwallonem Edwinus, ut sibi diadema habere
Cadwallo Edwin that to-himself the-diadem to-have
liceret, celebraretque statutas solennitates in
it-might-be-allowed and-he-might-celebrate the-appointed solemnities in
partibus Northanhumbrorum, quemadmodum ipse citra
the-parts of-the-Northumbrians as he this-side-of
Humbrum antiquo more consueverat. Cumque inde juxta
the-Humber in-the-ancient manner had-been-wont and-when thereof beside
fluvium Duglas colloquium facere incœpissent, disponentibus
the-river Douglas a-parley to-hold they-had-begun arranging
sapientioribus ut melius fieri poterat: jacebat Cadwallo in
the-wiser that better to-be-done it-could lay Cadwallo on
alia parte fluminis in gremio cujusdam nepotis sui, quem
the-other side of-the-river in the-lap of-a-certain nephew his-own whom
Brianum appellabant. At dum legati hinc et inde
Brian they-called but while the-envoys from-here and from-there
mutua responsa deferrent, flevit Brianus, lacrimæque ex oculis
mutual answers carried wept Brian and-tears from the-eyes
ejus manantes ita ceciderunt, ut faciem regis et barbam
of-him flowing so fell that the-face of-the-king and beard
irrorarent. Qui imbrem cecidisse ratus, erexit vultum suum,
they-bedewed who rain to-have-fallen having-thought raised face his-own
videnque juvenem in fletum solutum, causam tam subitæ
and-seeing the-youth into weeping dissolved the-cause of-so sudden
mœstitiæ inquisivit. Cui ille: Flendum mihi est, gentique
grief asked to-whom he to-be-wept by-me it-is and-for-the-people
Britonum perpetuo: quæ a tempore Malgonis barbarorum
of-the-Britons perpetually which from the-time of-Malgo of-the-barbarians
irruptione vexata, nondum adepta est talem principem, qui
by-the-onrush harried not-yet obtained has such a-prince who

eam ad pristinam dignitatem reduceret. Adhuc etiam id
it to former dignity might-lead-back still also that
tantillum honoris quod ei remanebat, te patiente, minuitur,
so-little of-honor which to-it remained thee permitting is-diminished
cum advenæ Saxones, qui semper proditores ejus extiterant,
since the-foreign Saxons who always betrayers of-it had-been
in uno cum illa regio diademate incipiant insigniri. Nomine
in one with it royal diadem begin to-be-crowned by-the-name
etenim regis elati, famosiores per patriam ex qua venerunt
for of-king elated more-famous through the-country from which they-came
efficientur, citiusque concives suos invitare poterunt,
they-will-be-made and-more-quickly fellow-citizens their-own to-invite they-will-be-able
qui genus nostrum exterminare insistent. Consueverunt
who race our to-exterminate will-press-on they-have-been-wont
namque proditionem semper facere, nec ulli firmam fidem
for treachery always to-do nor to-anyone firm faith
tenere. Unde a nobis opprimendos esse, non exaltandos
to-keep whence by us to-be-crushed to-be not to-be-exalted
censerem. Cum ipsos primo rex Vortegirnus retinuit, sub
I-should-judge when them first king Vortigern retained under
umbra pacis remanserunt, quasi pro patria pugnaturi: sed
the-shadow of-peace they-remained as-if for the-country about-to-fight but
cum nequitiam suam manifestare quiverunt, malum pro bono
when wickedness their-own to-show they-could evil for good
reddentes, prodiderunt eum, populumque regni sæva
returning they-betrayed him and-the-people of-the-kingdom with-savage
clade affecerunt. Prodiderunt deinde Aurelium Ambrosium:
disaster afflicted they-betrayed then Aurelius Ambrosius
cui post horribilia sacramenta, una cum eo convivantes,
to-whom after dreadful oaths together with him feasting
venenum potare dederunt. Prodiderunt quoque Arturum,
poison to-drink they-gave they-betrayed also Arthur

quando cum Modredo nepote suo, postposito jure quo
when with Mordred nephew his-own set-aside the-law by-which
obligati fuerant, contra illum dimicaverunt. Postremo Caretico
bound they-had-been against him they-fought finally to-Careticus
regi fidem mentientes, Gormondum Africanorum regem
the-king faith belying Gormund of-the-Africans king
super ipsum conduxerunt: cujus inquietatione et patria
upon him they-brought whose by-the-disturbance both the-country
civibus erepta est, et prædictus rex indecenter expulsus.
from-the-citizens snatched was and the-aforesaid king shamefully expelled

De ira inter Cadwallonem et Edwinum coorta

III · THE ANGER BETWEEN CADWALLO AND EDWIN

Cadwallo repents of the pact and tells Edwin that his counselors will not allow an island of one crown to be under two crowned kings. Edwin leaves in anger, saying he will be crowned without Cadwallo's leave. Cadwallo replies that he will cut off his head under the crown if he presumes to be crowned in Britain.

Hæc eo dicente, pœnituit Cadwallonem incœptæ pactionis:
these him saying it-repented Cadwallo of-the-begun pact
mandavitque Edwino, quod nullatenus a consiliariis
and-sent-word to-Edwin that in-no-way from counselors
suis impetrare poterat, ut permitterent eum petitioni
his-own to-obtain he-could that they-should-permit him to-the-petition
illius acquiescere. Aiebant enim contra jus veterumque
of-him to-assent they-said for against the-law and-of-the-ancients
traditionem esse, insulam unius coronæ duobus coronatis
tradition to-be the-island of-one crown to-two crowned-ones
submitti debere. Iratus igitur Edwinus, dimisso colloquio,
to-be-submitted to-be-bound angered therefore Edwin dismissed the-parley

secessit in Northanhumbriam, dicens sese sine licentia
withdrew into Northumbria saying himself without the-leave
Cadwallonis regali diademate initiandum. Quod cum
of-Cadwallo with-royal diadem to-be-initiated which when
Cadwalloni indicatum esset, nuntiavit ei per legatos,
to-Cadwallo indicated had-been he-announced to-him through envoys
se amputaturum ei caput sub diademate, si intra
himself about-to-cut-off from-him the-head under the-diadem if within
regnum Britanniæ coronari præsumeret.
the-kingdom of-Britain to-be-crowned he-should-presume

Edwinus Cadwallonem a regno fugat

IV · EDWIN DRIVES CADWALLO FROM THE KINGDOM

Cadwallo is defeated beyond the Humber and flees to Ireland, and Edwin ravages the Britons' lands. The Spanish augur Pellitus foretells every landing, so that Edwin wrecks Cadwallo's ships at every port. Sailing for Armorica, Cadwallo's fleet is scattered by a storm and his ship barely reaches Guernsey, where he refuses food until he craves game, and Brian, finding none, cuts flesh from his own thigh and serves it as venison, and the king recovers and comes to Salomon.

Orta igitur discordia inter eos, cum utrorumque homines
having-arisen therefore discord between them when of-both the-men
sese plurimis decertationibus inquietavissent: convenerunt
each-other with-very-many contests had-harried came-together
ambo ultra Humbrum, factoque congressu, amisit Cadwallo
both beyond the-Humber and-made the-encounter lost Cadwallo
multa millia suorum, et in fugam versus est. Arrepto
many thousands of-his-own and into flight turned was taken
quoque per Albaniam itinere, Hiberniam insulam adivit.
also through Albany the-way Ireland island he-approached

At Edwinus ut triumpho potitus fuit, ducit exercitum
but Edwin when of-the-triumph gained had he-leads army
suum per provincias Britonum: combustisque civitatibus,
his-own through the-provinces of-the-Britons and-burned cities
cives et colonos pluribus tormentis affecit. Dum autem
citizens and settlers with-very-many torments afflicted while moreover
sævitiæ suæ indulgeret, conabatur Cadwallo semper navigio
to-savagery his-own he-indulged tried Cadwallo always by-ship
in patriam suam reverti: nec poterat: quia ad quemcunque
into country his-own to-return nor could because at whatever
portum applicare incipiebat, obviabat ei Edwinus cum
port to-land he-began met him Edwin with
multitudine sua, introitumque ei negabat. Venerat namque
multitude his-own and-entry to-him denied had-come for
ad eum quidam sapientissimus augur ex Hispania, vocabulo
to him a-certain most-wise augur from Spain by-name
Pellitus, qui volatus volucrum cursusque stellarum edoctus,
Pellitus who in-the-flights of-birds and-the-courses of-the-stars instructed
prædicebat ei omnia infortunia quæ accidebant. Unde
foretold to-him all misfortunes which befell whence
reditu Cadwallonis notificato, obviavit ei Edwinus, navesque
the-return of-Cadwallo made-known met him Edwin and-the-ships
ejus illidebat, ita ut mersis sociis eidem omnem portum
of-him dashed so that drowned the-comrades to-the-same every port
abnegaret. Nescius ergo Cadwallo quid faceret, cum fere
he-denied not-knowing therefore Cadwallo what he-should-do when almost
in desperationem revertendi incidisset: tandem apud se
into despair of-returning he-had-fallen at-last with himself
deliberat, quod Salomonem regem Armoricanorum Britonum
deliberates that Salomon king of-the-Armorican Britons
adiret, rogaretque illum auxilium et consilium, quo
he-should-approach and-ask him help and counsel by-which

in regnum suum reverti quivisset. Cumque vela Armoricam
into kingdom his-own to-return he-might-be-able and-when the-sails Armorica
versus dirigeret, tempestates ex improviso validæ ruunt,
toward he-directed storms from unforeseen strong rush
disperguntque naves sociorum ejus, ita ut in brevi nulla
and-scatter the-ships of-the-comrades of-him so that in short none
cum altera remaneret. Invasit ilico timor nimius rectorem
with another remained seized on-the-spot fear excessive the-steersman
navis regis, quam, relicto remige, dispositioni fortunæ
of-the-ship of-the-king which abandoned the-oarsman to-the-disposal of-fortune
commisit. Ut igitur cum periculo mortis tota nocte inter
he-committed when therefore with peril of-death the-whole night among
obstantes undas nunc huc nunc illuc expulsa fuit: in
opposing waves now hither now thither driven it-had-been at
sequentis diei aurora applicuerunt in quandam insulam quæ
of-the-following day the-dawn they-landed on a-certain island which
Garnareia nuncupatur: ubi maximo labore nacti sunt
Guernsey is-called where with-the-greatest labor gained they-have
tellurem. Occupavit continuo Cadwallonem tantus dolor et
the-land seized at-once Cadwallo such grief and
ira ob suorum sociorum amissionem, ut tribus diebus
wrath on-account-of of-his-own comrades the-loss that for-three days
et noctibus cibo vesci aspernaretur, ac in lecto infirmatus
and nights on-food to-feed he-disdained and in bed weakened
jaceret. Quarto deinde instante die cœpit eum maxima
lay on-the-fourth then approaching day began him a-very-great
cupiditas edendi ferinam carnem: vocatoque Briano, indicavit
desire of-eating game flesh and-called Brian he-indicated
quod concupiscebat. At ille sumpto arcu cum pharetra, cœpit
what he-desired but he taken the-bow with the-quiver began
ire per insulam, ut si casus aliquam feram offerret, escam
to-go through the-island that if chance some wild-beast should-offer food

ille ex ea acquireret. Cumque eam totam peragrasset, nec id
he from it might-acquire and-when it all he-had-traversed nor that
quod quærebat reperisset, maximis cruciatus est angustiis,
which he-sought had-found with-the-greatest tormented he-was distresses
quia domini subvenire nequiret affectui. Timebat ei
because of-his-lord to-come-to-the-aid he-could-not to-the-craving he-feared for-him
ne mors infirmitatem illius subsequeretur, si appetitum suum
lest death the-sickness of-him should-follow if appetite his-own
explere non valuisset. Usus ergo arte nova, scidit femur
to-fill not he-had-been-able having-used therefore art new he-cut thigh
suum, et inde frustum carnis abstraxit: paratoque veru torruit
his-own and thence a-piece of-flesh drew-off and-prepared the-spit roasted
illud, et ad regem pro venatione portavit. Mox ille ferinam
it and to the-king for venison carried soon he game
carnem esse existimans, cœpit ea vesci et sese reficere,
flesh to-be thinking began on-it to-feed and himself to-refresh
admirans, quod tantam dulcedinem in aliis carnibus non
marveling that such sweetness in other meats not
reperisset. Satiatus tandem, hilarior factus est et levior,
he-had-found sated at-last more-cheerful made he-was and lighter
ita ut post tres dies totus sanus fieret. Incumbente deinde
so that after three days wholly sound he-became pressing then
congruo vento, armamenta navis parant: erectoque velo
a-fitting wind the-tackle of-the-ship they-prepare and-raised the-sail
æquoreum iter aggrediuntur, et in Kidaletam urbem applicant.
the-sea way they-undertake and at Kidaleta city they-land
Deinde venientes ad regem Salomonem, suscepti ab illo sunt
then coming to king Salomon received by him they-were
benigne, et ut decebat venerati: et cum causam adventus
kindly and as befitted honored and when the-cause of-the-coming
eorum didicisset, auxilium eis in hunc sermonem promisit.
of-them he-had-learned help to-them in this speech promised

Salomonis regis Armoricani oratio

V · THE SPEECH OF KING SALOMON OF ARMORICA

Salomon grieves that the Britons have lost so fruitful an island and cannot resist the English, whom his own people despise. While Armorica's people and the island's were one, only the Romans could conquer them, and only through the nobles' discord. Since Maximianus and Conan came to Armorica, weaker heirs have lost the kingdom to invaders, while his own Britons still defend Armorica against all its neighbors.

Dolendum nobis est, egregii juvenes, patriam avorum
to-be-grieved by-us it-is O-excellent youths the-country of-the-grandfathers
vestrorum a Barbara gente oppressam esse, et vos
your by a-Barbarian people oppressed to-be and you
ignominiose expulsos. Et cum ceteri homines regna sua
ignominiously expelled and when other men kingdoms their-own
tueri queant, mirum est populum vestrum tam fœcundam
to-defend are-able wondrous it-is people your so fruitful
insulam amisisse: nec genti Anglorum, quam nostrates pro
an-island to-have-lost nor the-people of-the-English whom our-countrymen for
vili habent, resistere posse. Dum gens hujus meæ Britanniæ
vile hold to-resist to-be-able while the-people of-this my Britain
una cum vestratibus in vestra Britannia cohabitaret,
together with your-countrymen in your Britain dwelt
dominabatur omnium provincialium regnorum, nec fuit uspiam
it-ruled of-all provincial kingdoms nor was anywhere
populus, præter Romanos, qui eam subjugare quivisset. Nec
a-people except the-Romans who it to-subjugate could-have nor
hoc quidem per suam potestatem Romani fecerunt, ut
this indeed through their-own power the-Romans did as
mihi nuper dictum est: sed per dissidium inter nobiles
to-me lately told it-has-been but through discord among the-nobles

dictæ insulæ ortum. Romani autem, licet eam ad tempus
of-the-said island arisen the-Romans moreover though it for a-time
subditam habuissent, amissis rectoribus suis ac interfectis,
subject they-had-held lost rulers their-own and killed
cum dedecore expulsi abscesserunt. Sed postquam Maximiano
with dishonor expelled departed but after Maximianus
et Conano ducibus ad hanc venerunt provinciam, residui
and Conan as-leaders to this they-came province the-remnant
qui remanserunt nunquam eam deinceps gratiam habuerunt,
who remained never that thereafter grace had
ut regni diadema continue haberent. Quanquam enim
that of-the-kingdom the-diadem continually they-should-have although for
multi principes eorum antiquam patrum dignitatem servarent,
many princes of-them the-ancient of-the-fathers dignity kept
plures tamen debiliores heredes succedebant, qui eam penitus,
more yet weaker heirs succeeded who it utterly
invadentibus hostibus, amittebant. Unde debilitatem populi
invading enemies lost whence the-weakness of-the-people
vestri doleo, cum ex eodem genere simus: et sic Britones
your I-grieve since from the-same race we-are and so Britons
nominentur, sicut et gens regni quæ patriam, quam
they-are-named as also the-people of-the-kingdom which the-country which
videtis, omnibus vicinis adversatam viriliter tuetur."
you-see to-all neighbors opposed manfully defends

Cadwallonis responsum

VI · CADWALLO'S REPLY

Cadwallo answers that the nobles followed Maximianus and Conan, leaving the ignoble to inherit their honors, who, as Gildas testifies, gave themselves to pride, fornication, and every vice. Kings were anointed for cruelty and killed for mildness, and the clergy sinned with the laity, so God sent a foreign people to punish them. He asks for help as Salomon's kinsman, since both descend from Malgo, whose son Runo's daughter was Salomon's ancestress.

Postquam his et aliis finem dicendi fecit, aliquantulum,
after to-these and others an-end of-speaking he-made somewhat
verecundans Cadwallo, in hunc modum respondit: "Gratias
abashed Cadwallo in this manner answered thanks
multimodas tibi ago, rex, regibus atavis edite: quia
manifold to-thee I-give O-king from-kings ancestral sprung because
auxilium mihi promittis, ut regnum meum recuperem. Hoc
help to-me thou-promisest that kingdom my I-may-recover this
autem quod dicebas, mirum esse gentem meam non servasse
moreover which thou-saidst wondrous to-be people my not to-have-kept
avorum dignitatem, postquam Britones ad has provincias
of-the-grandfathers the-dignity after the-Britons to these provinces
venerunt: nequaquam id admirandum censeo. Nobiliores
came by-no-means that to-be-wondered-at I-judge the-nobler
namque totius regni prædictos duces secuti fuerunt, et
for of-the-whole kingdom the-aforesaid leaders followed had and
ignobiles remanserunt, qui ipsorum potiti sunt honoribus.
the-ignoble remained who of-them gained have the-honors
Qui cum vicem nobilium obtinere cœpissent, extulerunt
who when the-place of-the-nobles to-hold they-had-begun raised
se ultra quam dignitas expetebat, et ob divitiarum
themselves beyond what dignity required and on-account-of of-riches

affluentiam superbi, cœperunt tali et tantæ fornicationi
the-abundance proud they-began to-such and so-great fornication
indulgere, qualis nec inter gentes audita est: et (ut
to-indulge as not-even among the-gentiles heard has-been and as
Gildas historicus testatur) non solum hoc vitium, sed omnia
Gildas the-historian testifies not only this vice but all-things
quæ humanæ naturæ accidere solent, perpetrarunt. Et invaluit
which to-human nature to-befall are-wont they-perpetrated and prevailed
præcipue, quod totius boni evertit statum, odium veritatis
especially what of-all good overturns the-state hatred of-truth
cum assertoribus suis: amorque mendacii cum fabricatoribus
with asserters its-own and-love of-falsehood with fabricators
suis: susceptio mali pro bono: veneratio nequitiæ pro
its-own acceptance of-evil for good veneration of-wickedness for
benignitate: exceptio Satanæ pro Angelo lucis. Ungebantur
kindness reception of-Satan for an-Angel of-light were-anointed
reges non propter Deum, sed qui ceteris crudeliores
kings not for-the-sake-of God but who than-the-others crueler
exstarent: et paulo post ab unctoribus, non pro veri
stood-out and a-little after by the-anointers not for of-the-truth
examinatione, trucidabantur: aliis electis trucioribus. Si quis
examination were-butchered others chosen more-savage if any
vero eorum mitior, et veritati aliquatenus propior videretur,
indeed of-them milder and to-truth somewhat nearer seemed
in hunc quasi Britanniæ subversorem, omnium odia
against this-one as-if of-Britain the-subverter of-all the-hatreds
telaque torquebantur. Denique omnia quæ Deo placebant
and-weapons were-hurled finally all-things which to-God pleased
et displicebant, æquali lance inter eos pendebant, si non
and displeased in-an-equal balance among them weighed if not
graviora essent displicentia. Itaque agebantur cuncta quæ
heavier were the-displeasing and-so were-done all-things which

saluti erant contraria: ac si nihil medicinæ a vero omnium
to-salvation were contrary as if no of-medicine by the-true of-all
medico largiretur. Et non solum hoc seculares viri, sed et
physician were-bestowed and not only this secular men but also
ipse grex domini, ejusque pastores sine discretione faciebant.
itself the-flock of-the-Lord and-its shepherds without discernment did
Non igitur admirandum est, degeneres tales, Deo ob
not therefore to-be-wondered-at it-is degenerates such to-God on-account-of
talia scelera invisos, patriam illam amittere, quam prædicto
such crimes hateful the-country that to-lose which in-the-aforesaid
modo maculaverant. Volebat etenim Deus vindictam ex ipsis
manner they-had-defiled wished for God vengeance from them
sumere, dum externum populum supervenire passus est, qui
to-take while a-foreign people to-come-upon allowed has who
nos patriis agris exterminaret. Dignum tamen esset,
us from-ancestral fields should-drive-out worthy yet it-would-be
si Deus permitteret, cives pristinæ dignitati restituere: ne
if God should-permit the-citizens to-former dignity to-restore lest
generi nostro opprobrium sit, nos debiles fuisse rectores, qui
to-race our reproach it-be we weak to-have-been rulers who
tempore nostro in id non desudaverimus. Idem etenim nobis
in-time our at it not have-toiled the-same for to-us
atavus fuit: unde auxilium tuum securius postulo. Malgo
ancestor was whence help thy more-securely I-ask Malgo
namque summus ille rex Britanniæ, qui post Arturum quartus
for highest that king of-Britain who after Arthur fourth
regnaverat, duos genuit filios, quorum unus Ennianus, alter
had-reigned two begot sons of-whom one Ennianus the-other
vero Runo vocabatur. Ennianus autem genuit Belin: Belin
but Runo was-called Ennianus moreover begot Belin Belin
Iagonem: Iago Caduanum patrem meum. Runo autem, qui
Iago Iago Cadvan father my Runo moreover who

post obitum fratris expulsus fuit inquietatione Saxonum,
after the-death of-the-brother expelled was by-the-disturbance of-the-Saxons
hanc provinciam adivit: deditque filiam suam Hoelo duci,
this province approached and-gave daughter his-own to-Hoel the-duke
filio magni Hoeli: qui cum Arturo patrias subjugaverat.
the-son of-great Hoel who with Arthur the-countries had-subjugated
Ex illa natus est Alanus; ex Alano Hoelus pater tuus, qui
from her born was Alan from Alan Hoel father thy who
dum vixit, toti Galliæ non minimum inferebat timorem."
while he-lived on-all Gaul not the-least brought fear

Brianus Edwini Magum occidit

VII · BRIAN KILLS EDWIN'S MAGUS

Brian crosses to Britain in a beggar's clothes with a sharp iron staff to kill the augur Pellitus. Among the poor at Edwin's gate in York he meets his sister, carried off by Edwin from Worcester, who points out the Magus. Brian stabs Pellitus under the breast and escapes to Exeter, which he fortifies, and King Penda of Mercia besieges him there.

Interea hiemante eo apud Salomonem consilium inierunt, ut
meanwhile wintering him with Salomon counsel they-entered that
Brianus in Britanniam transfretaret, Magumque Edwini regis
Brian into Britain should-cross and-the-Magus of-Edwin the-king
aliquo modo perimeret, ne solita arte adventum Cadwallonis
in-some way should-slay lest by-wonted art the-coming of-Cadwallo
ei indicaret. Cumque in portum Hamonis applicuisset,
to-him he-should-indicate and-when into the-port of-Hamo he-had-landed
finxit se intra vestimenta cujusdam pauperis, pauperem:
he-feigned himself within the-clothes of-a-certain poor-man a-poor-man
fecitque sibi baculum ferreum et acutum, quo Magum
and-made for-himself a-staff iron and sharp with-which the-Magus

interficeret, si illum casus obtulisset. Deinde perrexit
he-might-kill if him chance should-have-offered then he-went-on
Eboracum. Nam tunc Edwinus in eadem urbe manebat. Ut
to-York for then Edwin in the-same city stayed when
igitur illam ingressus est, associavit se pauperibus, qui ante
therefore it entered he-has he-joined himself to-the-poor who before
januam regis eleemosynam expectabant. Eunte autem eo
the-door of-the-king alms awaited going moreover him
et redeunte, egressa est soror ejus ex aula, habens pelvim
and returning gone-out has the-sister of-him from the-hall having a-basin
quandam in manu, ut aquam reginæ apportaret: illam
certain in hand that water to-the-queen she-might-bring her
rapuerat Edwinus ex urbe Wigornensium, dum post fugam
had-carried-off Edwin from the-city of-the-Worcester-men while after the-flight
Cadwallonis in provincias Britonum desæviret. Cum itaque
of-Cadwallo on the-provinces of-the-Britons he-raged when and-so
ante Brianum præteriret, agnovit eam continuo, et in fletum
before Brian she-passed he-recognized her at-once and into weeping
solutus, eam demissa voce vocavit. Ad vocem ergo ipsius,
dissolved her with-lowered voice called at the-voice therefore of-him
faciem puella vertens, dubitavit primo quis ipse esset: at ut
face the-girl turning doubted at-first who he was but when
propius accessit, agnito fratre, pene in extasim collapsa
nearer she-approached recognized the-brother almost into a-swoon collapsed
est, timens ne aliquo infortunio notificatus ab hostibus
she-has fearing lest by-some misfortune made-known by the-enemies
caperetur. Postpositisque osculis et familiaribus verbis, indicavit
he-be-taken and-set-aside kisses and familiar words she-indicated
fratri breviter, quasi aliud loquens, statum curiæ, et
to-the-brother briefly as-if other-things speaking the-state of-the-court and
Magum, quem ipse quærebat, qui forte tunc inter pauperes
the-Magus whom he sought who by-chance then among the-poor

deambulabat, dum eleemosyna eisdem distribueretur. Porro
walked-about while alms to-the-same were-distributed further
Brianus, ut viri notitia usus est, præcepit sorori,
Brian when of-the-man with-the-knowledge used has instructed to-the-sister
nocte sequenti ex thalamis furtim egredi, et ad se extra
on-night the-following from the-chambers stealthily to-go-out and to him outside
urbem juxta quoddam templum vetus venire, ubi ipse adventum
the-city beside a-certain temple old to-come where he the-coming
ejus in crepidinibus loci expectaret. Deinde intromisit
of-her in the-recesses of-the-place would-await then he-put
se intra turbam pauperum, in parte illa ubi Pellitus
himself within the-crowd of-the-poor in the-part that where Pellitus
ipsos collocabat. Nec mora: cum aditum percutiendi habebat,
them placed nor delay when access of-striking he-had
erexit burdonem quem supra dixi, infixitque Magum sub
he-raised the-pilgrim's-staff which above I-said and-fixed the-Magus under
pectore, atque eodem ictu interfecit. Mox projecto baculo
the-breast and with-the-same blow killed soon thrown-away the-staff
inter ceteros delituit pauperes, nulli astantium suspectus, et
among the-other he-hid poor to-none of-the-bystanders suspected and
præfata latibula favente Deo petivit. At soror, instante jam
the-aforesaid hiding-places favoring God sought but the-sister approaching now
nocte pluribus modis egredi conata est: nec valuit, quia Edwinus
night in-many ways to-go-out tried has nor was-able because Edwin
ob necem Pelliti exterritus, vigiles circa curiam posuerat,
on-account-of the-killing of-Pellitus terrified watchmen around the-court had-placed
qui quæque abdita explorantes, egressum ei abnegabant.
who all hidden-places exploring exit to-her denied
Cumque id comperisset Brianus, recessit ex illo loco, ivitque
and-when this he-had-learned Brian withdrew from that place and-went
Exoniam, ubi convocatis Britonibus, ea quæ fecerat,
to-Exeter where called-together the-Britons those-things which he-had-done

notificavit. Missis postmodum ad Cadwallonem legatis, munivit
made-known sent afterward to Cadwallo envoys he-fortified
urbem illam: mandavitque universis Britonum proceribus, ut
city that and-sent-word to-all of-the-Britons the-nobles that
oppida sua et civitates defensare insisterent, lætique
towns their-own and cities to-defend they-should-press-on and-joyful
adventum Cadwallonis expectarent, qui in brevi Salomonis
the-coming of-Cadwallo should-await who in short of-Salomon
auxilio fretus, eis præsidio veniret. Hoc itaque per
on-the-help relying to-them for-protection would-come this and-so through
totam insulam divulgato, Peanda rex Merciorum cum maxima
the-whole island spread-abroad Penda king of-the-Mercians with a-very-great
multitudine Saxonum venit Exoniam, Brianumque obsedit.
multitude of-Saxons came to-Exeter and-Brian besieged

Cadwallo Peandam, exercitu ejus fugato, captivum facit

VIII · CADWALLO CAPTURES PENDA

Cadwallo lands with ten thousand knights from Salomon and relieves Exeter, capturing Penda, who submits and gives hostages. He ravages Northumbria, and Edwin meets him with the English kings at Hevenfeld. Edwin is killed with almost all his people, his son Offrid, and Godbold, king of the Orkneys.

Interea applicuit Cadwallo cum decem millibus militum,
meanwhile landed Cadwallo with ten thousands of-knights
quos ei Salomon rex commiserat: petivitque celeriter
whom to-him Salomon the-king had-entrusted and-sought swiftly
obsidionem quam prædictus rex tenebat. Ut autem cominus
the-siege which the-aforesaid king held when moreover near
perrexit: divisit milites suos in quatuor partes, hostesque
he-went-on he-divided knights his-own into four parts and-enemies

suos adire non distulit. Conserto deinde prælio, captus
his-own to-approach not delayed joined then battle taken
est Peanda continuo, et exercitus ejus peremptus. Cunque
was Penda at-once and the-army of-him slain and-when
ipse alium aditum salutis non haberet, subdidit se
he other access of-safety not had subjected himself
Cadwalloni, deditque obsides, promittens sese cum illo
to-Cadwallo and-gave hostages promising himself with him
Saxones inquietaturum. Triumphato itaque illo, convocavit
the-Saxons about-to-harass triumphed-over and-so him called-together
Cadwallo proceres suos multo tempore dilapsos: petivitque
Cadwallo nobles his-own for-long time scattered and-sought
Northanhumbriam contra Edwinum, patriamque vastare non
Northumbria against Edwin and-the-country to-lay-waste not
cessavit. Quod cum Edwino nunciatum esset: associavit sibi
ceased which when to-Edwin announced had-been he-joined to-himself
omnes regulos Anglorum, et in campo, qui Hevenfeld
all the-petty-kings of-the-English and in the-field which Hevenfeld
appellatur, obviam veniens, bellum cum Britonibus commisit.
is-called in-the-way coming war with the-Britons joined
Illato ocyus prælio interficitur Edwinus, et totus fere
brought more-swiftly the-battle is-killed Edwin and the-whole almost
populus quem habebat: nec non et filius ejus Offridus cum
people which he-had nor not also the-son of-him Offrid with
Godboldo rege Orcadum, qui eis in auxilium venerat.
Godbold king of-the-Orkneys who to-them in help had-come

Cadwallo Osricum et Ædanum in pugna occidit

IX · CADWALLO KILLS OSRIC AND AEDAN IN BATTLE

Cadwallo roams the English provinces sparing neither women nor children, meaning to wipe the English from Britain. He kills Edwin's successor Osric and his two nephews. He also kills Aedan, king of the Scots, who came to their aid.

Habita igitur victoria, Cadwallo universas Anglorum provincias
had therefore the-victory Cadwallo all of-the-English provinces
pervagando ita debacchatus est in Saxones, ut ne sexui
by-roaming so raged has against the-Saxons that not to-sex
quidem muliebri vel parvulorum ætati parceret: quoniam
even female or of-little-ones to-age he-spared since
omne genus Anglorum ex finibus Britanniæ abradere
every race of-the-English from the-borders of-Britain to-scrape-away
volens, quoscunque reperiebat, inauditis tormentis afficiebat.
wishing whomever he-found with-unheard-of torments he-afflicted
Deinde commisit prælium cum Osrico qui Edwino successerat:
then he-joined battle with Osric who to-Edwin had-succeeded
atque illum interemit, et duos nepotes ejus, qui post illum
and him slew and two nephews of-him who after him
regnare debuerunt. Sed et Ædanum regem Scotorum, qui
to-reign ought but also Aedan king of-the-Scots who
eis auxilio venerat.
to-them for-help had-come

Oswaldus rex fit Northanhumbriæ

X · OSWALD BECOMES KING OF NORTHUMBRIA

Oswald succeeds in Northumbria, and Cadwallo drives him to Severus' wall and sends Penda against him. Besieged at Hevenfeld, the heavenly field, Oswald raises the cross and has his men pray aloud to the living God against the proud British king. At dawn they win, but Cadwallo pursues the holy king, and at Burne Penda kills him.

Eis itaque interfectis, successit Oswaldus in regnum
them and-so killed succeeded Oswald in the-kingdom
Northamhumbriæ, quem Cadwallo post ceteros qui eum
of-Northumbria whom Cadwallo after the-others who him
inquietaverunt, in provinciam, usque ad murum, quem
harried into the-province all-the-way to the-wall which
Severus Imperator olim inter Britanniam Scotiamque
Severus the-Emperor once between Britain and-Scotland
construxerat, fugavit. Postea misit Peandam regem
had-built put-to-flight afterward he-sent Penda king
Merciorum, et maximam partem sui exercitus ad
of-the-Mercians and the-greatest part of-his-own army to
eundem locum, ut cum eo bellum consereret. At Oswaldus,
the-same place that with him war he-might-join but Oswald
dum a prædicto Peanda, in loco qui vocatur Hevenfeld,
while by the-aforesaid Penda in the-place which is-called Hevenfeld
id est, celestis campus, quadam nocte obsideretur: erexit
that is heavenly field on-a-certain night he-was-besieged raised
ibidem crucem domini, et commilitonibus suis indixit,
there the-cross of-the-Lord and to-fellow-soldiers his-own he-enjoined
ut suprema voce in hæc verba clamarent: Flectamus
that with-the-utmost voice in these words they-should-cry let-us-bend

genua omnes, et Deum omnipotentem vivum et verum in
knees all and God almighty living and true in
commune deprecemur, ut nos ab exercitu superbo Britannici
common let-us-entreat that us from the-army proud of-the-British
regis, et ejusdem nefandi ducis Peandæ defendat: scit enim
king and of-the-same unspeakable leader Penda he-may-defend knows for
ipse, quia justa pro salute gentis nostræ bella suscepimus.
he that just for the-safety of-the-people our wars we-have-undertaken
Fecerunt ergo omnes ut jusserat: et sic incipiente diluculo
did therefore all as he-had-ordered and so beginning the-dawn
in hostes progressi, juxta suæ fidei meritum
against the-enemies having-advanced according-to of-their-own faith the-merit
victoria potiti sunt. Quod ut Cadwalloni nunciatum fuit,
of-the-victory gained they-have which when to-Cadwallo announced was
acri ira ignescens, collegit exercitum suum, et sanctum
with-keen wrath kindling he-gathered army his-own and the-holy
regem Oswaldum insequutus est: et collato prælio, in loco
king Oswald pursued he-has and joined battle in the-place
qui Burne vocatur, irruit in eum Peanda atque interfecit.
which Burne is-called rushed upon him Penda and killed

Oswius post Oswaldum rex factus, Cadwalloni se submittit

XI · OSWY SUBMITS TO CADWALLO

Oswald's brother Oswy buys peace from Cadwallo, now master of Britain, with gold and silver, and Alfrid and Ethelwald rise against him and flee to Penda. Penda asks Cadwallo for leave to attack Oswy, accusing him at a Pentecost crown-wearing in London of fetching Saxons from Germany. He accuses Oswy of breaking the peace and of driving out his own kinsmen.

Perempto igitur Oswaldo cum multis milibus suorum,
slain therefore Oswald with many thousands of-his-own
successit ei in regnum Northanhumbrorum frater ejus
succeeded to-him in the-kingdom of-the-Northumbrians the-brother of-him
Oswius, qui multa donaria auri et argenti Cadwalloni toti
Oswy who many gifts of-gold and of-silver to-Cadwallo the-whole
jam Britanniæ imperanti donans, pacem ejus adeptus est,
now Britain commanding giving the-peace of-him gained has
et sese ipsi submisit, Nec mora, insurrexerunt in eum
and himself to-him submitted nor delay rose-up against him
Alfridus frater ejus et Ethelwaldus filius fratris ejus. Sed
Alfrid brother his and Ethelwald son of-the-brother his but
cum perstare nequivissent, diffugerunt ad Peandam regem
when to-stand-firm they-had-been-unable they-fled to Penda king
Merciorum, ipsum implorantes, ut collecto exercitu cum eis
of-the-Mercians him imploring that gathered an-army with them
trans Humbrum iret: regique Oswio regnum suum
across the-Humber he-should-go and-from-the-king Oswy kingdom his-own
auferret. At Peanda timens pacem infringere, quam rex
should-take but Penda fearing the-peace to-break which king
Cadwallo per regnum Britanniæ statuerat, distulit sine
Cadwallo through the-kingdom of-Britain had-established put-off without

licentia ipsius inquietationem incipere, donec illum aliquo
the-leave of-him disturbance to-begin until him in-some
modo incitaret: ut vel ipse in Oswium regem insurgeret,
way he-might-incite that either he against Oswy the-king should-rise-up
vel sibi cum eo congrediendi copiam concederet.
or to-himself with him of-engaging the-opportunity should-grant
Quadam igitur solennitate Pentecostes, cum rex Cadwallo
on-a-certain therefore solemnity of-Pentecost when king Cadwallo
diadema Britanniæ portando, festum Londoniis celebraret: et
the-diadem of-Britain by-wearing the-feast at-London celebrated and
universi Anglorum reges, præter Oswium solum, nec non
all of-the-English the-kings except Oswy alone nor not
et Britonum duces adessent, adivit Peanda regem, et ab
also of-the-Britons the-leaders were-present approached Penda the-king and from
eo quæsivit, cur Oswius solus aberat, cum ceteri Saxonum
him asked why Oswy alone was-absent when the-other of-the-Saxons
principes adessent. Cui cum Cadwallo respondisset, ipsum
princes were-present to-whom when Cadwallo had-answered him
infirmitatis causa deesse: adjecit ipse, dicens, illum misisse
of-sickness by-reason to-be-absent added he saying him to-have-sent
propter Saxones in Germaniam, ut fratrem suum Oswaldum
for the-Saxons into Germany that brother his-own Oswald
in ipsos utrosque vindicaret. Adjecit etiam, illum pacem
upon them both he-might-avenge he-added also him the-peace
regni infregisse, qui solus prælium et contentionem inter
of-the-kingdom to-have-broken who alone battle and strife between
eos inceperat, cum Ethelfridum regem Northanhumbrorum,
them had-begun when Ethelfrid king of-the-Northumbrians
et Ethelwaldum fratris sui filium, bellis inquietatos,
and Ethelwald of-the-brother his-own the-son with-wars harried

a patria propria expulisset. Petivit quoque licentiam ut
from the-country own he-had-expelled he-sought also leave that
eum, vel interficeret, vel a regno fugaret.
him either he-might-kill or from the-kingdom he-might-put-to-flight

Margadud Cadwalloni consilium dat

XII · MARGADUD COUNSELS CADWALLO

Cadwallo consults his household. Margadud, king of the Demetians, reminds him that he meant to drive the English from Britain and that no faith is owed to those who always plot treachery. He urges him to let Penda attack Oswy, so that the English may destroy one another in civil war.

Rex igitur in diversas meditationes inductus, familiares
the-king therefore into diverse meditations led intimates
suos sevocavit, præcepitque conjicere quid super tali re
his-own called-aside and-ordered to-conjecture what about such a-matter
autumarent. Conjicientibus eis plura, Margadud rex
they-thought conjecturing them many-things Margadud king
Demetiorum inter ceteros dixit: "Domine, quoniam genus
of-the-Demetians among the-others said O-lord since the-race
Anglorum te ex finibus Britanniæ expulsurum proposuisti,
of-the-English thyself from the-borders of-Britain about-to-expel hast-proposed
cur a proposito tuo divertens, ipsos inter nos in pace
why from purpose thy turning-aside them among us in peace
manere pateris? Eia ergo, permitte saltem, ut ipsi inter
to-remain dost-thou-suffer come therefore permit at-least that they among
semetipsos civilem habeant discordiam, et mutuis cladibus
themselves civil may-have discord and by-mutual disasters
affecti a patria nostra exterminentur. Non est enim fides
afflicted from country our may-be-driven-out not is for faith

illi servanda, qui semper insidiatur, ut eum cui eam
to-him to-be-kept who always lies-in-wait that him to-whom it
debet versutis laqueis capiat. Saxones ergo, ex quo
he-owes with-crafty snares he-may-catch the-Saxons therefore from when
primum patriam nostram ingressi sunt, semper insidiantes
first country our entered have always lying-in-wait
gentem nostram prodiderunt. Quam itaque fidem eis tenere
people our have-betrayed what therefore faith to-them to-keep
debemus? Da ocyus Peandæ licentiam, ut in prædictum
ought-we give more-swiftly to-Penda leave that against the-aforesaid
Oswium insurgat: ut sic civili discordia inter eos exorta
Oswy he-may-rise that so civil discord between them having-arisen
alter alterum perimens, ab insula nostra deleantur."
the-one the-other slaying from island our they-may-be-destroyed

Peanda ab Oswio occiditur

XIII · PENDA IS KILLED BY OSWY

Penda ravages Oswy's lands and refuses his gifts, and Oswy, trusting in God, kills him and thirty leaders by the Winwaed. Penda's son Wulfred rebels against Oswy until Cadwallo orders peace. Cadwallo dies after forty-eight years, worn by age and sickness, on 17 November; the Britons set his embalmed body in a bronze image on a bronze horse over London's west gate, a terror to the Saxons, and build Saint Martin's church beneath it.

His igitur et pluribus aliis dictis motus Cadwallo, Peandæ
these therefore and many others said moved Cadwallo to-Penda
licentiam dedit congrediendi cum Oswio. Qui deinde collecto
leave gave of-engaging with Oswy who then gathered
innumerabili exercitu, petivit Humbrum, et provinciam ejusdem
a-countless army sought the-Humber and the-province of-the-same

patriæ vastando, prædictum regem acriter cœpit inquietare. At
country by-laying-waste the-aforesaid king fiercely began to-harry but
Oswius ad ultimum necessitate coactus, promisit ei innumera
Oswy at the-last by-necessity compelled promised him countless
regia ornamenta, et majora donaria quam credi potest, ut
royal ornaments and greater gifts than to-be-believed can that
patriam suam vastare desineret, et prætermissa inquietatione
country his-own to-lay-waste he-should-cease and abandoned the-disturbance
quam inceperat, domum rediret. Cumque ille precibus ejus
which he-had-begun home should-return and-when he to-the-prayers of-him
nullatenus assensum præberet: rex ille ad divinum respiciens
in-no-way assent offered king that to divine looking
adjutorium, licet minorem haberet exercitum, inivit tamen
aid though a-smaller he-had army he-entered yet
prælium cum illo juxta fluvium Winved, et Peanda, nec non
battle with him beside the-river Winwaed and Penda nor not
et triginta ducibus peremptis, victoriam adeptus est. Interfecto
also thirty leaders slain victory gained has killed
igitur Peanda, Wulfredus filius ejusdem, donante Cadwallone,
therefore Penda Wulfred son of-the-same granting Cadwallo
successit in regnum, qui consociatis sibi Eba et Edberto
succeeded in the-kingdom who joined to-himself Eba and Edbert
Merciorum ducibus, rebellavit adversus Oswium: sed jubente
of-the-Mercians leaders rebelled against Oswy but ordering
tandem Cadwallone, pacem cum illo habuit. Completis tandem
at-last Cadwallo peace with him had completed at-last
quadraginta octo annis, nobilissimus ille atque potentissimus
forty eight years most-noble that and most-mighty
Cadwallo rex Britonum, senio et infirmitate gravatus,
Cadwallo king of-the-Britons by-old-age and sickness burdened
xv Kalendas Decemb. ab hoc seculo migravit. Cujus
on-the-fifteenth Kalends of-December from this world departed whose

corpus Britones balsamo et aromatibus conditum in quadam
body the-Britons with-balsam and spices embalmed in a-certain
ænea imagine, ad mensuram staturæ ejus fusa, mira
bronze image to the-measure of-the-stature of-him cast with-wondrous
arte posuerunt. Imaginem autem illam super æneum equum,
art placed image moreover that upon a-bronze horse
miræ pulcritudinis armatam, et super Occidentalem portam
of-wondrous beauty armed and over the-Western gate
Londoniarum erectam in signum prædictæ victoriæ, et
of-London raised for a-sign of-the-aforesaid victory and
Saxonibus in terrorem statuerunt. Sed et ecclesiam subtus,
to-the-Saxons for terror they-set but also a-church beneath
in honorem sancti Martini ædificaverunt, in qua pro ipso
in honor of-saint Martin they-built in which for him
et fidelibus defunctis, divina celebrantur obsequia.
and the-faithful departed divine are-celebrated services

Cadwalloni filius Cadwalladrus succedit

XIV · CADWALLO'S SON CADWALLADER SUCCEEDS

Cadwallader, whom Bede calls the youth Ethelwald, rules manfully and peacefully at first. After twelve years he falls sick, and civil discord breaks out among the Britons. His mother was Penda's half-sister, whom Cadwallo married after making peace with her brother.

Successit itaque in regni gubernaculum Cadwalladrus filius
succeeded and-so in of-the-kingdom the-helm Cadwallader son
ejus, quem Beda Ethelwaldum juvenem vocat, et in initio
his whom Bede Ethelwald the-youth calls and in the-beginning
viriliter et pacifice tractavit. At cum duodecim annos post
manfully and peaceably he-governed but when twelve years after

sumptum diadema præteriisset, in infirmitatem cecidit, et
taken the-diadem he-had-passed into sickness he-fell and
civile dissidium inter Britones ortum est. Mater ejus fuerat
civil discord among the-Britons arisen has the-mother of-him had-been
soror Peandæ: patre tantum eodem: matre vero diversa, ex
the-sister of-Penda by-father only the-same by-mother indeed different from
nobili genere Gewisseorum edita fuerat. Eam memoratus
the-noble race of-the-Gewissae born she-had-been her the-mentioned
rex Cadwallo, post factam cum fratre concordiam, in
king Cadwallo after made with the-brother concord into
societatem thori accepit: et Cadwalladrum ex illa progenuit.
fellowship of-the-bed received and Cadwallader from her begot

Britones ex Britannia abeunt: Cadwalladri lamentum

XV · CADWALLADER'S LAMENT

Famine and then a plague so great that the living cannot bury the dead drive the Britons overseas, singing that God has given them as sheep to the slaughter. Sailing for Armorica, Cadwallader laments that God's vengeance uproots a people whom neither Romans, Scots, Picts, nor Saxons could drive out. He bids the Romans, Scots, Picts, Ambrones, and Saxons return, since Britain lies open to them, deserted by God's wrath.

Quo igitur (ut dicere cœperam) languente, discordia afficiuntur
him therefore as to-say I-had-begun languishing by-discord are-afflicted
Britones, et opulentam patriam detestabili dissidio destruunt.
the-Britons and the-opulent country with-detestable dissension they-destroy
Accessit etiam aliud infortunium: quia fames dira ac
was-added also another misfortune because famine dire and
famosissima insipienti populo adhæsit, ita ut totius cibi
most-notorious to-the-foolish people clung so that of-all food

sustentaculo quæque vacuaretur provincia, excepto venatoriæ
of-the-support each was-emptied province except of-the-hunting
artis solatio. Quam famem pestifera mortis lues consecuta est:
art the-solace which famine a-pestilent of-death plague followed has
quæ in brevi tantam populi multitudinem stravit, quantam
which in short so-great of-the-people a-multitude laid-low as
non poterant vivi humare. Unde miseræ reliquiæ, patriam
not could the-living to-bury whence the-wretched remnants the-country
factis agminibus diffugientes, transmarinas petebant regiones,
made columns fleeing overseas sought regions
et cum ululatu magno sub velorum sinibus hoc modo
and with wailing great under of-the-sails the-folds in-this manner
cantantes: "Dedisti nos Deus tanquam oves escarum: in
singing thou-hast-given us O-God as sheep of-food among
gentibus dispersisti nos." Ipse etiam rex Cadwalladrus
the-nations thou-hast-scattered us he-himself also king Cadwallader
cum navigio miserabili Armoricam petens, prædictum planctum
with a-fleet wretched Armorica seeking the-aforesaid lament
hoc modo augebat: Væ nobis peccatoribus, ob immania
in-this manner increased woe to-us sinners on-account-of monstrous
scelera nostra, quibus Deum nullatenus offendere diffugimus,
crimes our by-which God in-no-way to-offend we-shunned
dum pœnitentiæ spatium habebamus. Incumbit ergo illius
while of-penitence room we-had presses therefore of-that
potestatis ultio: quæ nos ex natali solo extirpat: quos
power the-vengeance which us from native soil uproots whom
nec olim Romani, nec deinde Scoti vel Picti: nec versutæ
neither once the-Romans nor afterward the-Scots or Picts nor the-crafty
Saxonum proditiones exterminare quiverunt. Sed in vanum
of-the-Saxons treacheries to-drive-out could but in vain
patriam contra illos toties recuperavimus: cum non fuit Dei
the-country against them so-often we-recovered since not was of-God

voluntas, ut in ea perpetuo regnaremus. Ipse verus judex,
the-will that in it perpetually we-should-reign he-himself the-true judge
cum vidisset nos nullatenus a sceleribus nostris cessare velle,
when he-had-seen us in-no-way from crimes our to-cease to-wish
ac neminem genus nostrum a regno expellere posse:
and no-one race our from the-kingdom to-expel to-be-able
volens corripere stultos, indignationem suam direxit, qua
wishing to-chastise the-foolish indignation his-own directed by-which
propriam nationem catervatim deserimus. Redite ergo, Romani:
own nation in-troops we-desert return therefore O-Romans
redite Scoti et Picti: redite Ambrones et Saxones: ecce patet
return O-Scots and Picts return O-Ambrones and Saxons behold lies-open
vobis Britannia, ira Dei deserta: quam vos desertam
to-you Britain by-the-wrath of-God deserted which you deserted
facere nequivistis. Non nos fortitudo vestra expellit: sed
to-make could-not not us strength your drives-out but
summi regis potentia, quam nunquam offendere distulimus.
of-the-highest king the-power which never to-offend we-delayed

Britones Alanum regem petunt: Saxones tota Britannia potiuntur

XVI · THE SAXONS TAKE ALL BRITAIN

Cadwallader is welcomed by King Alan, Salomon's nephew, while Britain lies desolate for eleven years, deadly to Saxons and Britons alike. When the plague ends, the surviving Saxons summon their countrymen from Germany. The newcomers settle the empty land from Albany to Cornwall, the Britons' remnant keeps to the Welsh forests, and from that time the English reign.

Ut igitur inter hos et alios gemitus in Armoricanum
when therefore amid these and other groans on the-Armorican
littus appulsus fuit: venit cum tota multitudine sua
shore driven he-was he-came with the-whole multitude his-own
ad regem Alanum Salomonis nepotem: et ab illo digne
to king Alan of-Salomon nephew and by him worthily
susceptus est. Britannia ergo cunctis civibus, exceptis
received he-was Britain therefore of-all citizens excepted
paucis, quibus in Gualliarum partibus mors pepercerat,
a-few whom in of-Wales the-parts death had-spared
desolata, per undecim annos Britonibus horrenda fuit.
desolated for eleven years to-the-Britons dreadful was
Saxonibus quoque eadem tempestate ingrata, qui in illa sine
to-the-Saxons also at-the-same time unwelcome who in it without
intermissione moriebantur. Quorum residui, cum tam feralis
intermission died of-whom the-survivors when so deadly
lues cessavisset, continuum morem servantes, nunciaverunt
plague had-ceased continual custom keeping announced
concivibus suis in Germania, Britanniam insulam indigena
to-fellow-citizens their-own in Germany Britain the-island of-native
gente carentem, facile illis subdendam, si in illam habitaturi
people lacking easily to-them to-be-subjected if into it about-to-dwell

convenirent. Quod cum ipsis indicatum fuisset, nefandus
they-should-come which when to-them indicated had-been unspeakable
populus ille, collecta innumerabili multitudine virorum ac
people that gathered a-countless multitude of-men and
mulierum, applicuit in partes Northanhumbriæ: et desolatas
of-women landed in the-parts of-Northumbria and the-desolate
provincias ab Albania usque ad Cornubiam inhabitavit. Non
provinces from Albany all-the-way to Cornwall inhabited not
enim aderat habitator qui prohiberet, præter pauperculas
for was-present an-inhabitant who might-forbid except the-poor
Britonum reliquias quæ superfuerant, quæ intra abdita
of-the-Britons remnants who had-survived who within the-hidden-places
nemorum in Gualliis commanebant. Ab illo tempore potestas
of-the-woods in Wales dwelt from that time the-power
Britonum in insula cessavit: et Angli regnare cœperunt.
of-the-Britons in the-island ceased and the-English to-reign began

Cadwalladrum ad Britanniam redeuntem angelus Dei deterret

XVII · AN ANGEL FORBIDS THE RETURN

When his people have recovered and the island is purified of the plague, Cadwallader asks Alan's help to win back his kingdom. As he readies the fleet, an angelic voice thunders that God will not let the Britons reign until the time Merlin foretold to Arthur. He is to go to Pope Sergius in Rome and do penance, and the Britons will regain the island only when they bring his relics back from Rome.

Deinde cum aliquantulum temporis emensum esset, et
then when a-little of-time passed had and
prædictus populus roboratus fuisset, recordatus Cadwalladrus
the-aforesaid people strengthened had-been having-remembered Cadwallader
regni sui jam a supradicta contagione purificati,
of-the-kingdom his-own now from the-above-said contagion purified

auxilium ab Alano petivit: ut pristinæ potestati restitueretur.
help from Alan sought that to-former power he-might-be-restored
At cum id a rege impetravisset, intonuit ei vox
but when this from the-king he-had-obtained thundered to-him a-voice
angelica, dum classem pararet, ut cœptis suis
angelic while the-fleet he-prepared that from-undertakings his-own
desisteret. Nolebat enim Deus Britones in insula Britanniæ
he-should-desist was-unwilling for God the-Britons in the-island of-Britain
diutius regnare, antequam tempus illud venisset, quod
longer to-reign before the-time that had-come which
Merlinus Arturo prophetaverat. Præcepit etiam illi, ut Romam
Merlin to-Arthur had-prophesied it-ordered also him that to-Rome
ad Sergium Papam iret, ubi peracta pœnitentia inter
to Sergius the-Pope he-should-go where completed penance among
beatos annumeraretur. Dicebat etiam populum Britonum per
the-blessed he-might-be-numbered it-said also the-people of-the-Britons through
meritum suæ fidei insulam in futuro adepturum, postquam
the-merit of-their-own faith the-island in the-future about-to-gain after
fatale tempus superveniret. Nec id tamen prius futurum,
the-fated time should-come nor that yet sooner about-to-be
quam Britones reliquiis ejus potiti, illas e Roma in
than the-Britons of-the-relics of-him having-gained them from Rome into
Britanniam asportarent. Tunc demum revelatis etiam ceterorum
Britain should-carry then at-length revealed also of-the-other
sanctorum reliquiis, quæ propter paganorum invasionem
saints the-relics which on-account-of of-the-pagans the-invasion
absconditæ fuerant, amissum regnum recuperarent. Quod
hidden had-been the-lost kingdom they-would-recover which
cum auribus beati viri intimatum fuisset: accessit ilico
when to-the-ears of-the-blessed man made-known had-been he-went on-the-spot
ad Alanum regem, et quod sibi revelatum fuerat, indicavit.
to Alan the-king and what to-him revealed had-been indicated

Cadwalladrus Romam petit, ubi paulo post moritur

XVIII · CADWALLADER GOES TO ROME AND DIES THERE

Alan compares the revelation with the prophecies of the Eagle of Shaftesbury, the Sibyl, and Merlin, finds them in agreement, and urges Cadwallader to obey, leaving Britain and sending his son Ivor and nephew Ini to rule the British remnant. Cadwallader renounces the world and goes to Rome. Confirmed by Pope Sergius, he falls suddenly sick and dies on 20 April 689, entering the hall of the heavenly kingdom.

Tunc Alanus sumptis diversis libris, et de prophetiis Aquilæ
then Alan taken diverse books both of the-prophecies of-the-Eagle
qui Sehstoniæ prophetavit, et de carminibus Sibyllæ ac
who at-Shaftesbury prophesied and of the-songs of-the-Sibyl and
Merlini, cœpit scrutari omnia, ut videret, an revelatio
of-Merlin began to-examine all that he-might-see whether the-revelation
Cadwalladri scriptis oraculis concordaret. Et cum nullam
of-Cadwallader with-the-written oracles agreed and when no
discrepantiam reperisset: suggessit Cadwalladro, ut divinæ
discrepancy he-had-found he-suggested to-Cadwallader that divine
dispensationi pareret: et Britannia postposita, quod angelicus
to-the-dispensation he-should-obey and Britain set-aside what the-angelic
ei præceperat monitus, perficeret, filium autem suum
to-him had-ordered warning he-should-perform son moreover his-own
Ivor, ac Ini nepotem suum ad reliquias Britonum regendas
Ivor and Ini nephew his-own for the-remnants of-the-Britons to-be-ruled
in insulam dirigeret: ne gens antiquo illorum genere edita,
into the-island he-should-send lest a-people from-ancient their race born
libertatem barbarica irruptione amitteret. Tunc Cadwalladrus
liberty by-barbarian onrush should-lose then Cadwallader
abjectis mundialibus, propter Deum regnumque perpetuum,
cast-off worldly-things for-the-sake-of God and-the-kingdom everlasting

venit Romam, et a Sergio Papa confirmatus, non multo
came to-Rome and by Sergius the-Pope confirmed not much
post inopino etiam languore correptus est, duodecima
after by-unexpected also sickness seized he-was on-the-twelfth
autem die Kalendarum Majarum, anno ab incarnatione
moreover day of-the-Kalends of-May in-the-year from the-incarnation
Dominica sexcentesimo octogesimo nono, a contagione
of-the-Lord six-hundredth eightieth ninth from the-contagion
carnis solutus, cœlestis regni aulam ingressus est.
of-the-flesh released of-the-heavenly kingdom the-hall entered he-has

Ivor et Ini frustra Saxones inquietant

XIX · IVOR AND INI HARASS THE SAXONS IN VAIN

Ivor and Ini harry the English for forty-nine years, but plague, famine, and habitual discord have so degraded the proud people that they cannot drive the enemy back. Grown barbarous, they are no longer called Britons but Welsh. The wiser Saxons keep peace, till the land, and rebuild the cities, and under Athelstan, the first to wear a crown among them, they rule all Loegria, while the Welsh never recover the island's monarchy and suffer ceaseless strife.

Cum autem Ivor et Ini naves sibi collegissent,
when moreover Ivor and Ini ships for-themselves had-gathered
quos potuerunt associaverunt sibi, et applicuerunt in
whom they-could they-joined to-themselves and landed on
insulam, atque xlix annis gentem Anglorum sævissima
the-island and for-forty-nine years the-people of-the-English with-most-savage
inquietatione affecerunt: sed non multum profuit. Supra
harassment afflicted but not much it-profited above
dicta namque mortalitas, et fames, atque consuetudinarium
said for the-mortality and famine and habitual

dissidium, in tantum coegerat populum superbum
dissension to such-a-degree had-compelled the-people proud
degenerare, quod hostes longius arcere nequiverant.
to-degenerate that the-enemies farther to-keep-off they-had-been-unable
Barbarie etiam irrepente, jam non vocabantur Britones, sed
barbarism also creeping-in now not they-were-called Britons but
Gualenses: vocabulum sive a Gualone duce eorum, sive a
Welsh the-word whether from Gualo leader their or from
Guales eorum regina, sive a barbarie trahentes. At Saxones
Guales their queen or from barbarism drawing but the-Saxons
sapientius agentes, pacem etiam et concordiam inter se
more-wisely acting peace also and concord among themselves
habentes, agros colentes, civitates et oppida reædificantes
having the-fields tilling cities and towns rebuilding
erant, et sic abjecto Britonum dominio, jam toti Loegriæ
were and so cast-off of-the-Britons the-dominion now over-all Loegria
imperaverant, duce Athelstano, qui primus inter eos diadema
had-ruled as-leader Athelstan who first among them the-diadem
portavit. Degenerati autem a Britannica nobilitate Gualenses,
wore degenerated moreover from British nobility the-Welsh
nunquam postea monarchiam insulæ recuperaverunt: immo,
never afterward the-monarchy of-the-island recovered rather
nunc sibi interdum Saxonibus ingrati, consurgentes,
now to-themselves sometimes to-the-Saxons hostile rising-up
internas atque domesticas clades incessanter habebant.
internal and domestic disasters unceasingly had

Auctor finem historiæ suæ facit

XX · THE AUTHOR ENDS HIS HISTORY

Geoffrey leaves the later Welsh kings to his contemporary Caradoc of Llancarfan. He leaves the Saxon kings to William of Malmesbury and Henry of Huntingdon, whom he bids be silent about the British kings. They do not have the book in the British tongue that Walter, archdeacon of Oxford, brought, which Geoffrey has taken care to translate into Latin.

Reges autem illorum qui ab illo tempore in Gualiis
the-kings moreover of-them who from that time in Wales
successerunt: Karadoco Lancarbanensi contemporaneo meo, in
succeeded to-Caradoc of-Llancarfan contemporary my in
materia scribendi permitto. Reges vero Saxonum Guillelmo
the-matter of-writing I-leave the-kings but of-the-Saxons to-William
Malmesberiensi, et Henrico Huntingdonensi: quos de
of-Malmesbury and to-Henry of-Huntingdon whom about
regibus Britonum tacere jubeo, cum non habeant illum
the-kings of-the-Britons to-be-silent I-bid since not they-have that
librum Britannici sermonis, quem Gualterus Oxinefordensis
book of-the-British tongue which Walter of-Oxford
archidiaconus ex Britannia advexit: quem de historia
archdeacon from Britain brought which about the-history
eorum veraciter editum in honore prædictorum principum,
of-them truthfully composed in honor of-the-aforesaid princes
hoc modo in Latinum sermonem transferre curavi.
in-this manner into the-Latin tongue to-translate I-have-taken-care